XEROX

Xerox University Microfilms
Ann Arbor, Michigan 48106

WESTERN AMERICANA

Reproduced from the original in the collection of
THE HENRY E. HUNTINGTON LIBRARY AND ART GALLERY

ORIGINAL JOURNALS
OF THE
LEWIS AND CLARK EXPEDITION
1804-1806

WITH FACSIMILES, MAPS, PLANS, VIEWS, PORTRAITS, AND A BIBLIOGRAPHY

IN SEVEN VOLUMES AND AN ATLAS

VOLUME ONE

Journals and Orderly Book of Lewis and Clark, from
River Dubois to Two-Thousand-Mile Creek:
Jan. 30, 1804—May 5, 1805

Meriwether Lewis

ORIGINAL JOURNALS
OF THE
LEWIS AND CLARK EXPEDITION
1804-1806

PRINTED FROM THE ORIGINAL MANUSCRIPTS
in the Library of the American Philosophical Society and
by Direction of its committee on Historical Documents

TOGETHER WITH

MANUSCRIPT MATERIAL OF LEWIS AND CLARK
from other sources, including Note-Books, Letters, Maps, etc.,
and the Journals of Charles Floyd and Joseph Whitehouse

NOW FOR THE FIRST TIME PUBLISHED IN FULL
AND EXACTLY AS WRITTEN

Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Index, by

REUBEN GOLD THWAITES, LL.D.

Editor of "The Jesuit Relations and Allied Documents," etc.

VOLUME ONE

NEW YORK
DODD, MEAD & COMPANY
1904

F592
L55
v.1

Copyright, 1904
BY THE AMERICAN PHILOSOPHICAL SOCIETY

Copyright, 1904
BY JULIA CLARK VOORHIS
ELEANOR GLASGOW VOORHIS

Copyright, 1904
BY THE STATE HISTORICAL SOCIETY OF WISCONSIN

Copyright, 1904
BY DODD, MEAD & COMPANY

Published July, 1904

THE UNIVERSITY PRESS
CAMBRIDGE, U.S.A.

To

THEODORE ROOSEVELT, LL.D.

PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES

Upon the Hundredth Anniversary of the Departure of the
Trans-Mississippi Expedition of Lewis and Clark, this
first publication of the Original Records of
their "Winning of the West" is most
respectfully dedicated

Madison, Wisconsin
May 14, 1904

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

THE greater part of the Original Manuscript Journals of Meriwether Lewis and William Clark, herein literally followed, are in the library of the American Philosophical Society at Philadelphia, and are published by arrangement with and at the suggestion of its committee on Historical Documents.

Several important note-books by William Clark, together with an Orderly Book, a Field Book, the maps in the Atlas, and a number of letters, memoranda, etc., are the property of Mrs. Julia Clark Voorhis and Miss Eleanor Glasgow Voorhis, of New York, General William Clark's granddaughter and great-granddaughter, respectively; and are published by arrangement with them.

The Journal of Charles Floyd is published by consent of the State Historical Society of Wisconsin, in whose library the original manuscript is preserved.

The Journal of Joseph Whitehouse was purchased by the publishers expressly for this work, but now is the property of Edward Everett Ayer, Esq., of Chicago.

The material in the Appendix is from various sources, as therein indicated.

CONTENTS TO VOL. I

INTRODUCTION. *The Editor*

PREVIOUS EXPLORATIONS

PAGE
Spain xvii
New France xvii
England xviii
Missouri River Expeditions xix
French Traders and Trappers xix
Jefferson's Dream xx
Proposition to G. R. Clark xx
Ledyard's Project xx
Armstrong's Attempt xxi
The Michaux Plan xxi
On the Northwest Coast xxii
Congressional Aid Secured xxiii

MERIWETHER LEWIS

Early Years xxiv
Military Experiences xxiv
Selected to Command Expedition xxv
In Training xxvi

WILLIAM CLARK

A Notable Family xxvii
Military Services xxviii
Lewis's Invitation xxx

THE EXPEDITION

The Louisiana Purchase xxx
Personelle xxxi
At River Dubois Camp xxxi
The First Season xxxii
At Fort Clatsop xxxii
The Return xxxiii

CONTENTS

THE STORY OF LEWIS AND CLARK'S JOURNALS

PAGE
Jefferson's Concern xxxiv
The Various Journals xxxiv
Journalizing Methods xxxv
The First News xxxvi
Gass's Journal xxxvi
Lewis's Prospectus, 1807 xxxvii
Delayed by Public Duties xxxvii
Lewis's Death xxxviii
Clark Engages Biddle xxxviii
Biddle at Work xl
Wanted: A Publisher xli
A Publisher Found xlii
Paul Allen's Revision xlii
A Profitless Undertaking xliv
Difficulty of Biddle's Task xliv
Barton's Proposed Work xlv
A Successful Paraphrase xlv
Jefferson Dissatisfied xlvi
Jefferson's Search for Original Journals xlvi
Biddle Surrenders Note-books xlviii
Used by Coues xlix
Coues's Report on Codices xlix
Philosophical Society concludes to publish l
Search for Ordway Journal l
The Voorhis Collection li
Clark Journals li
Miscellaneous Material lii
Maps liii
An Interesting Query liii
Neglected Manuscripts liv
Pryor, Floyd, Frazier, and Woodhouse Journals liv
All Records now in Sight lvi
A New View of Lewis and Clark lvi
Editorial Problems lvii
Acknowledgments lviii

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL DATA. *Victor Hugo Paltsits*

INTRODUCTORY lxi
JEFFERSON'S MESSAGE lxiii
COUNTERFEIT PUBLICATIONS lxvi
GASS lxxi
GENUINE HISTORY lxxvii
MISCELLANEA lxxxiv

CONTENTS

THE ORIGINAL JOURNALS OF CAPTAINS MERIWETHER LEWIS AND WILLIAM CLARK. *The Journals Proper*

PAGE

CHAPTER I. — FROM RIVER DUBOIS TO THE PLATTE . 3

Clark's Journal and Orders, January 30—July 22, 1804.
Entries and Orders by Lewis, February 20, March 3, May 15, 20, 26, and July 8, 12.

CHAPTER II. — FROM THE PLATTE TO VERMILION RIVER 89

Clark's Journal, July 23—August 24, 1804.

CHAPTER III. — FROM THE VERMILION TO TETON RIVER 121

Clark's Journal, August 25—September 24, 1804.
Entries and Orders by Lewis, August 26, 28, and September 16, 17.

CHAPTER IV. — FROM TETON RIVER TO THE MANDANS 164

Clark's Journal and Orders, September 25 — October 26, 1804.
Order by Lewis, October 13.

CHAPTER V. — AMONG THE MANDANS 208

Clark's Journal, October 27—December 27, 1804.

CHAPTER VI. — AMONG THE MANDANS 242

Clark's Journal, December 28, 1804—February 2, 1805; February 13—March 21, 1805.
Entries by Lewis, February 3-13 and March 16.

CHAPTER VII. — FROM FORT MANDAN TO THE YELLOWSTONE 277

Clark's Journal, March 22—April 27, 1805.
Lewis's Journal, April 7-27.

CHAPTER VIII. — FROM THE YELLOWSTONE TO THE MUSSELSHELL (Part I.) 348

Lewis's Journal, April 28—May 5, 1805.
Clark's Journal, April 28—May 5.

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

Portrait of Meriwether Lewis . . . . *Frontispiece*

PAGE

Sketch Map of Trail to John Hay's Winter Station on the Assiniboin River (text cut) 6

Manuscript Page, dated May 14th, 1804, giving Clark's start from River Dubois 16

Figure Painted on Rock (text cut) 40

Sketch Plan of Fortification 136

War Hatchet (text cut) 251

Battle Axe (text cut) 255

Sketch Map by Clark of Red and St. Peter's Rivers 286

INTRODUCTION

PREVIOUS EXPLORATIONS

Spain

SLOWLY pushing northward from Mexico, Spaniards had by the close of the seventeenth century established towns and Indian missions at many points in Texas, New Mexico, and Arizona — a slender chain, stretching across the continent from the Gulf of Mexico to the Pacific Ocean. By the opening of our Revolutionary War, their mission villages, with an aggregate population of over thirteen thousand barbarian converts, extended upwards through California to San Francisco and Monterey; Spanish mariners, seeking vainly for a waterway through to the Atlantic, that should furnish a short route between Spain and India, had by this time become familiar with the coast as far north as the modern Sitka, and developed a considerable trade with the natives, chiefly at Nootka Sound, on Vancouver's Island; while adventurous Spanish missionaries had contemporaneously penetrated eastward to the Great Basin.

New France

The pioneers of New France, on their part seeking a transcontinental waterway from the east, had throughout the first two-thirds of the eighteenth century made several costly attempts to discover and surmount the great divide. Upon New Year's day, 1743, the Chevalier de la Vérendrye, journeying overland from his fur-trading post on the Assiniboin River, sighted the Wind River Range. Affairs moved slowly, under the French régime; but yearly the prospect was growing brighter of reaching the Pacific by way of a chain of posts across the Canadian Rockies, via the Assiniboin and Saskatchewan, when the victory of Wolfe cut short these ambitious projects, and England succeeded both to the responsibilities and the dreams of New France.

England

The Hudson's Bay Company, organized in London in 1667, had long held actual dominion over the sub-arctic regions to the north of New France; and on paper claimed the far-stretching lands to the south and west, upon which the more adventurous French had actively ranged from Lake Superior westward to the headwaters of the Saskatchewan — a distance of twelve hundred miles. At first disinclined to explore beyond the sphere of influence immediately exerted by her profitable posts on Hudson and James bays, "the old lady of Fenchurch Street" was early in the eighteenth century forced by public opinion in England to make a show of seeking from the East the waterway which Sir Francis Drake, in the "Golden Hind," had sought from the Pacific as early as 1579, and for which both Spain and France were still vainly striving. The company's spasmodic, apathetic, and fruitless searches for the "Northwest Passage" extended through half a century.

When New France fell, both independent and organized English and Scotch fur-traders, with headquarters at Montreal and Mackinac, disregarding the claims of the Hudson's Bay Company at once occupied the vast country through which Vérendrye and his compatriots had so long conducted their wilderness barter. The story of the rival trading corporations — chiefly the Hudson's Bay Company on the one hand, and the North West Company (1783) on the other — although with occasional disruptions of the latter, and several kaleidoscopic reshiftings and amalgamations — is a stirring and sometimes bloody chapter in the history of the continental interior.

The situation cultivated mighty passions within strong men. One of these, Samuel Hearne, in the employ of the Hudson's Bay Company, stirred by great ambitions, descended the Coppermine River in 1770, and reached the Arctic Ocean. Nineteen years later (1789), Alexander Mackenzie, a "Nor' Wester" in charge of the Athabasca department, reached the Arctic Ocean by way of Mackenzie River; in 1793, after almost incredible difficulties, he crossed the Canadian Rockies and descended Fraser River to the Pacific, a feat preceding Lewis and Clark's venture by a dozen years.

While these various hardy enterprises were in progress in the North, many deemed the Missouri River the most feasible gateway to the Pacific. There long existed a tradition among Indians living upon the Mississippi, that the Missouri sprung from a low-lying watershed that might easily be portaged to some stream flowing into the Western Ocean. Joliet and Marquette (1673) had at first hoped that the Mississippi might be found emptying into the Pacific; but ascertaining that its flood was received by the Gulf of Mexico, they looked upon the Missouri as the undoubted highway to the Ocean of the West. Thirty years later, charts were published in Europe which showed west-flowing waters interlocking with the Missouri. Several French expeditions were organized for exploring the Missouri and some of its lower affluents — La Harpe and Du Tisné (1719), De Bourgmont (1722), and Mallet (1739); but they accomplished little more than obtaining a knowledge of the country for a few hundred miles above the mouth, with side ventures upon the South Fork of the Platte, the Arkansas, and the plains southwestward to the Spanish seat of Santa Fé.

Missouri River Expeditions

Upon the eve of the downfall of New France, the crafty Louis XV, in order to prevent England from obtaining them, ceded to Spain (November, 1762) the town and neighborhood of New Orleans and the broad possessions of France west of the Mississippi. But the Spaniards who came to New Orleans and St. Louis were in the main only public officials. French *habitans* occupied their little waterside villages, as of old; being joined in the closing decade of the century by Kentuckians like Boone, who, weary of the legal and social restraints of growing American settlements, were willing to accept Spanish land grants with their promise of a return to primitive conditions, in which farming operations alternated with hunting. French trappers, many of them blood relatives of the red men, and now released from the tyranny of the fur-trade monopoly of New France, freely plied their nomadic calling upon the lower reaches of the Missouri and its branches, and even up the Platte and Arkansas to the bases of the Rockies. French and half-breed

French traders and trappers

fur-traders — either on their own account or, in the northern regions, as agents of the warring British companies — wandered far and near among the tribesmen, visiting them in their permanent villages and accompanying them upon hunting-, fishing-, and war-parties. Their long journeyings by land and water occasionally carried them as far afield as the great northern bend of the Missouri, where were the villages of the trade-loving Mandans, who bartered indiscriminately with Gauls from St. Louis and Britons from the Assiniboin.

Jefferson's dream

Such was the situation when the United States was born, and when Thomas Jefferson — philosopher, seer, statesman — always interested in the Middle West, first felt within him yearnings for a more intimate knowledge of the spacious territory of Louisiana, lying beyond the great river. The country belonged to Spain, but this fact gave him no pause; he felt that so long as British traders were profitably exploiting the trans-Mississippi, Americans might be excused for opening through it a trade route to the Pacific, and incidentally extending the bounds of human knowledge, in geography and the natural sciences.

Proposition to G. R. Clark

In 1783 he proposed to General George Rogers Clark, the hero of Kaskaskia and Vincennes, to lead an expedition "for exploring the country from the Missisipi to California;" he intimated that a similar enterprise was being broached in England — "they pretend it is only to promote knoledge. I am afraid they have thoughts of colonising into that quarter."[1] Nothing came of this suggestion — possibly Clark did not reply; or very likely Jefferson, just then in private life, thought that the necessary funds could not be raised.

Ledyard's project

Three years later, when minister to Paris, Jefferson met John Ledyard, a Connecticut adventurer who had been a petty officer with Captain James Cook on the latter's third voyage around the world (1778), and had written a widely-read account of that enterprise. Ledyard agreed to cross Europe and Asia to Kamchatka, thence embarking on a Russian vessel trading to Nootka Sound, from which he was to find his way to the sources of the Missouri, whose current was to be descended to the American settlements. But Ledyard, when within a few days of the Kamchatka port, was arrested by imperial orders from St. Petersburg, and ignominously carried back to Poland, where, "disappointed, ragged, and penniless," he was dismissed.

---

[1] See Appendix for facsimile of this document, the original of which is in the Draper MSS. Collection, Wisconsin Historical Library.

Armstrong's attempt

In 1789, General Henry Knox, Washington's secretary of war, ordered General Josiah Harmar, commanding the Western frontier at Cincinnati, to "devise some practicable plan for exploring that branch of the Mississippi called the Messouri, up to its source," and possibly beyond to the Pacific. Captain John Armstrong, then in command at Louisville, was despatched upon this adventure in the spring of 1790. Entirely alone in a canoe, he "proceeded up the Missouri some distance above St. Louis . . . but, meeting with some French traders, was persuaded to return in consequence of the hostility of the Missouri bands to each other, as they were then at war, and he could not safely pass from one nation to the other."

The Michaux plan

Jefferson was the next to make a venture in transcontinental exploration. This time (1793) in his capacity as a vice president of the American Philosophical Society at Philadelphia, he made an arrangement therefor with André Michaux, a distinguished French botanist then herborizing in the United States. A small subscription was raised by the society, to which many of the prominent men of the day contributed, and detailed instructions for Michaux were drafted by Jefferson.[1] The intending explorer was to "cross the Mississippi and pass by land to the nearest part of the Missouri above the Spanish settlements, that you may avoid the risk of being stopped;" he was then to "pursue such of the largest streams of that river as shall lead by the shortest way and the lowest latitudes to the Pacific ocean." The previous year, Captain Robert Gray, of Boston, had discovered the mouth of the Columbia, and Jefferson hoped that this stream might be found to interlock with the sources of the Missouri. Just then, however, there had arrived in the United States Charles Genet, minister of the French Republic, who was charged with the secret mission of forming a filibustering army of American frontiersmen in the Carolinas, Georgia, and Kentucky to attack Spanish possessions on the Gulf of Mexico and beyond the Mississippi. Michaux was selected by Genet as his agent to deal with the Kentuckians, led by George Rogers Clark, who had proposed, under the banner of France, to descend the Mississippi with fifteen hundred borderers and attack New Orleans. Michaux tarried in Kentucky to carry out these ill-fated plans, with the result that his project of exploration was abandoned.[1]

---

[1] See Appendix, for this document.

On the Northwest Coast

Meanwhile, there had been important developments upon our Northwest Coast. We have seen that by the opening of the Revolutionary War the Spanish had explored the whole extent of this shore, nearly up to the site of the modern Sitka. In 1778 Captain Cook was here, on behalf of England, searching for the Northwest Passage, a movement which induced fresh zeal on the part of Spanish navigators, and watchfulness on the part of the Russians in Alaska. Eight years later, the French navigator and scientist, Count de la Pérouse, visited these shores and gave to the world its first definite knowledge of Spain's California missions. English fur-trading vessels now appeared on the scene, bartering with the natives for furs, which were carried to China, to be there exchanged for teas, silks, spices, and other Oriental wares. Friction between Spanish and English trading interests at Nootka Sound — where the latter had made small settlements — led to a spirited controversy that might readily have precipitated war, but which ended peacefully in the withdrawal of Spain (1795). By this time, American trading craft were sharp competitors for the China-American fur traffic of the Northwest Coast. Owing to the monopoly of the East India Company in British trade on the Pacific Ocean, most of the Englishmen gradually withdrew:

---

[1] Several important documents connected with these early American projects in transcontinental exploration, will be found in the Appendix to the present work. For a fuller narrative, see Thwaites, *Rocky Mountain Exploration* (N. Y., 1904), chap. iv.

thus for some twenty years leaving New England navigators almost complete masters of the situation.

When Thomas Jefferson became president of the United States, perhaps two score American trading vessels were annually visiting Nootka Sound and the mouth of the Columbia; British overland traders were operating among the Mandans and their neighbors, at and below the great bend of the Missouri; French and half-breed trappers and traders, together with a few expatriated Kentuckians, were familiar with the Missouri and its lower affluents; upon St. Peter's River (near the Minnesota), British free-traders were profitably operating among the Sioux, a proximity which caused much uneasiness among Americans in the West. As yet, few citizens of the United States were operating in the vast territory of Louisiana, which Napoleon, dreaming of another New France in North America, had now (October 1, 1800) obliged Spain to retrocede to him; but of which he had not thus far taken formal possession.

Congressional aid secured

Amidst the manifold duties of his great office, Jefferson had not forgotten his early scheme for exploring the trans-Mississippi. Greater opportunity now presented itself — he possessed influence to secure governmental aid, and recognized the existence of a stronger public spirit. The lapse in the winter of 1802–03 of an "act for establishing trading houses with the Indian tribes," was made the occasion for addressing (January 18) a secret message to Congress,[1] in which he urged the importance of reaching out for the trade of the Indians on the Missouri River, that thus far had in large measure been absorbed by English companies; and suggested an exploring party as the best means of accomplishing this object. He recognized that the country which he thus proposed to enter was the property of France, although still governed by Spain; but thought that as the latter nation's interests were now waning, she would not be disposed to jealousy and would regard the enterprise merely "as a literary pursuit." An estimate of the necessary expenses was placed at only $2,500; but the correspondence which we give in the Appendix, shows that Jefferson intended that the exploring party should, while still in the United States, be subsisted by the War Department; and in addition thereto we shall see that he issued in their favor a general letter of credit, which proved of no avail, but further demonstrates the fact that the explorers were not expected to limit themselves to the appropriation.

---

[1] See Appendix, for this document.

MERIWETHER LEWIS

Early years

Congress having proved complaisant, in secretly giving the necessary authority and passing the modest appropriation, Jefferson at once appointed his private secretary, Captain Meriwether Lewis, as head of the proposed expedition. Lewis was born near Charlottesville, Virginia, August 18th, 1774, his people being prominent in colonial and Revolutionary affairs. His father, William, died when Meriwether, named for his mother's family, was a child. The boy came under the guardianship of his uncle Nicholas, who had in 1776 commanded a regiment in the campaign against the Cherokees; but his education remained under the direction of his mother, a woman of capacity and judgment. When but eight years of age, the lad had established a local reputation as a hunter; and until his thirteenth year, when he was sent to a Latin school, had ample opportunity to satisfy his adventurous cravings in this direction. After five years of tuition, he returned to his mother's farm, where the succeeding two years were spent in careful attention to the details of husbandry, in the course of which he acquired some skill in botany, that was to stand him well in stead during the great expedition of a few years later.

Military experiences

In 1794, when Lewis was twenty years of age, the so-called Whisky Rebellion, against a federal excise tax, broke out in Western Pennsylvania, and threatened to spread into Virginia and Maryland. President Washington issued a requisition for some thirteen thousand militia from New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Virginia, and this force promptly marched towards the seat of disturbance, thus speedily causing the subsidence of what was practically an insurrection against the national government. Lewis enlisted as a private in this little army, and at the close of the disturbance was given employment in the regular service — originally as ensign in the First Infantry (May 1, 1795), later as first lieutenant, and then captain (1797) in the same regiment. He served with distinction under General Wayne, in the latter's Northwestern campaigns, and in the first year of his captaincy was in charge of the infantry in Captain Isaac Guion's expedition to take over the Spanish posts in Mississippi.[1] He also was for several years the paymaster of his regiment.[2]

Selected to command Expedition

Captain Lewis appears early to have won the esteem and confidence of his distinguished neighbor, Thomas Jefferson; and in the spring of 1801 the latter, as president of the United States, appointed him as his private secretary.[3] We have already seen that in 1783 Jefferson, not then in official life, suggested to George Rogers Clark an exploration of the trans-Mississippi country, and that his subsequent negotiations with Ledyard (1788) and Michaux (1793) came to naught. The last-named mission had been unsuccessfully sought by his adventurous young friend Lewis, although but nineteen years old. When, apparently as early as July, 1802, President Jefferson revived his long-considered project, he offered the post of leader to his private secretary, who, now having attained the age of twenty-eight, had again pleaded for this honor. In his Memoir of Lewis,[1] the president pays him this generous tribute:

---

[1] See Claiborne, *Mississippi* (Jackson, 1880), p. 184, *note*.

[2] A manuscript book in the possession of the American Philosophical Society, containing Lewis's meteorological and natural history data, also has a few brief records of his accounts as paymaster in 1800. In that year he made an extended official tour by land and water, to the posts at Pittsburg, Cincinnati, Fort Wayne, and Detroit, visiting Limestone (Maysville, Ky.), Chillicothe, and Wheeling en route.

[3] The original of Jefferson's letter to Lewis, offering this appointment (dated Washington, February 23, 1801), is in the Bureau of Rolls, Department of the Interior, Washington, where its press-mark is "Jefferson Papers, 2d series, vol. 51, doc. 110." Jefferson writes that the salary is but $500, "scarcely more than an equivalent for your pay & rations" in the army; but it is an easier office, would give him opportunity to meet distinguished people, and he could board and lodge with the president's family, free of charge. The original of Lewis's letter of acceptance, dated Pittsburg, March 10th, may be found in *ibid*, doc. 95.

> I had now had opportunities of knowing him intimately. Of courage undaunted; possessing a firmness and perseverance of purpose which nothing but impossibilities could divert from its direction; careful as a father of those committed to his charge, yet steady in the maintenance of order and discipline; intimate with the Indian character, customs, and principles; habituated to the hunting life; guarded, by exact observation of the vegetables and animals of his own country, against losing time in the description of objects already possessed; honest, disinterested, liberal, of sound understanding, and a fidelity to truth so scrupulous that whatever he should report would be as certain as if seen by ourselves — with all these qualifications, as if selected and implanted by nature in one body for this express purpose, I could have no hesitation in confiding the enterprise to him.

The president had at first sought as commandant a scientist who possessed, in addition to his scholarly attainments, the necessary "courage, prudence, habits & health adapted to the woods & some familiarity with the Indian character."[2] Failing in this, Captain Lewis was chosen as being, in his chief's opinion, "brave, prudent, habituated to the woods, & familiar with Indian manners and character. He is not regularly educated, but he possesses a great mass of accurate observation on all the subjects of nature which present themselves here, & will therefore readily select those only in his new route which shall be new."[3]

In training

In order to acquire "a greater familiarity with the technical language of the natural sciences, and readiness in the astronomical observations necessary for the geography of his route," Lewis proceeded to Philadelphia,[4] where he received instruction in the rudiments of the sciences from several eminent specialists — that city being the home of the American Philosophical Society, and then the principal seat of learning in the country. His correspondence with Jefferson during this period, which is given in our Appendix, abounds in allusions to scientific and practical details, showing him to have been not only an apt pupil, but already possessed of a large fund of information of the sort essential to the equipment of an explorer.

---

[1] Introduction to Biddle edition, pp. xi, xii.

[2] Jefferson's letter to Dr. Caspar Wistar, in Appendix.

[3] Jefferson's letter to Dr. Benjamin Rush, in Appendix.

[4] Jefferson's Memoir of Lewis does not mention that Lewis went to Philadelphia as early as July, 1802; but his letter to Lewis, dated January 22d, 1803 (see Appendix), indicates that such was the fact.

WILLIAM CLARK

Early in the course of these preparations Lewis determined, with Jefferson's consent, to secure a companion who should share his honors and responsibilities. His choice fell upon Captain William Clark, four years his senior, but who had been the friend of his boyhood in Virginia, and his comrade in Wayne's Indian campaigns.

A notable family

The Clarks, a large and now widely-ramified family group, had long lived in Albermarle County, Virginia, near the seat of the Lewis family, and here were born the two oldest children of John Clark and his wife Ann Rogers — Jonathan (1750–1816) and George Rogers (1752–1818). In 1754 John Clark removed to the neighborhood of Charlottesville, in Caroline County, where William, their ninth child, was born August 1st, 1770. This branch of the family — preceded several years by George Rogers Clark, who had become famous because of his campaign against Kaskaskia and Vincennes — moved to Kentucky in 1784, their estate being Mulberry Hill, on Beargrass Creek, near Louisville. The Clark home was the centre of hospitality and sociability for the region roundabout. It was frequented not only by sturdy pioneers of the Kentucky movement, with their tales of Indian warfare, and other perils and hardships of the early settlements; but the second generation of Kentucky emigrants also found here a welcome — gentlemen and lawyers of the new settlements, Revolutionary soldiers seeking homes in the growing West, men of enterprise, culture, and promise, permanent founders of a new civilization.

Among them all, young "Billy" was a marked favorite. In his nineteenth year he marched in the ranks of Colonel John Hardin's expedition against the tribesmen north of the Ohio River; the following year he was despatched upon a mission to the Creeks and Cherokees; and in 1791 was ensign and acting lieutenant on the Wabash Indian expedition, under General Scott. "Your brother William," writes one of the family friends,[1] "is gone out as a cadet with Gen! Scott on the Expedition. He is a youth of solid and promising parts, and as brave as Cæsar." Two years later (1793) we find him commissioned as a first lieutenant in the Fourth sub-legion, in General Anthony Wayne's Western Army.

Military services

After being engaged as an engineer in constructing forts along the line of advance, he was, late in the season, sent upon a perilous expedition up the Wabash as far as Vincennes, during which his progress was for several weeks blocked by ice. The next year (1794) we read of him as being in charge of a train of seven hundred pack-horses and eighty men, transporting supplies to Fort Greenville. Attacked by the savages, he lost five men, but gallantly repulsed the enemy and won praise from Wayne, under whom he later (August 20) fought in the Battle of Fallen Timbers. Twice (1795) he was entrusted by his general with important commissions to the Spaniards, an account of which is to be found in the Spanish Papers of the Draper Manuscripts, in the Wisconsin Historical Library. It is said that no officer impressed the Spanish with a more wholesome respect than young Lieutenant William Clark. His four years' service in the Western Army had familiarized him with the methods of handling large bodies of men under military discipline, and given him opportunity to exercise the courage and resource needed to deal with savage foes; and it put him in touch with the prominent men of his time. It had also — an important consideration, in view of his subsequent career — once more thrown him into the company of Meriwether Lewis, now a fellow campaigner, and upon at least one expedition he was Lewis's superior officer.[1]

---

[1] Dr. James O'Fallon to Colonel Jonathan Clark, Caroline County, Virginia, May 30th, 1791. — Draper MSS., 2 L 28.

Retiring from the army in 1796 — apparently with the brevet rank of captain, for thereafter he was given that title — William Clark lived quietly at home with his family, chiefly occupied in seeking to adjust the tangled affairs of his brother, George Rogers, who had been sued by many persons for supplies furnished in the Illinois campaigns. In the attempted settlement of these claims, William not only gave his time and effort, but sacrificed the small estate he had himself accumulated.

Such was the situation of his affairs when, on the sixteenth of July, 1803, he received a letter from his friend Captain Lewis[2] — dated Washington, June 19th — in which the latter,

---

[1] Much confusion has arisen because three William Clarks were prominent in the West, in those stirring days. (1) Judge William Clark, of Indiana Territory, who died at Vincennes in 1802; (2) William Clark, the son of Benjamin, and a cousin of George Rogers Clark; and (3) the subject of this sketch. Confusion between Nos. 2 and 3 has been especially common, among historians; Coues's sketch, in his *Lewis and Clark* (i, pp. lxviii, lix) is an instance — the "captain of militia," whose commission is given on the latter page, undoubtedly being William No. 2. In the Draper MSS., in the Wisconsin Historical Library, the papers of these two men have been indiscriminately commingled. This was the more natural, because the signatures of the two are so similar that it would require an expert to differentiate them. William No. 2 was one of the most efficient officers in the Illinois campaigns. He must have been quite young at the time; but in the later period of the Revolutionary War was entrusted with various important commissions. When Fort Jefferson was built in 1780, near the mouth of the Ohio, Lieutenant William Clark was sent with a convoy from Kaskaskia to provision it, and late the following year he removed to the Falls of Ohio, where Louisville now stands. He was here employed in garrison duty and in protecting the new settlement against its Indian foes. So valuable were his services, that on the reduction of the regiment in February, 1783, he was one of three officers retained in the service; and was only finally mustered out by the order of the governor in 1784. About this time a large tract of land (150,000 acres) was assigned to the Illinois regiment in return for its services, and laid off on the Indiana side of the Ohio River, opposite Louisville. Clark was appointed one of the allotment commissioners, also principal surveyor of the grant. From that time until his death in 1791, he was chiefly occupied in the business of this office. A man of good habits, kind heart, courage, and resource, he was popular and successful among the early inhabitants of that country. He was on intimate terms with his more illustrious cousins, and it is to be conjectured that he was particularly admired by William Clark No. 3, just then growing into manhood. He never married, and at his death left a considerable landed property to his brothers and sisters, most of whom had not yet removed from Virginia.

[2] See Appendix, for the correspondence in full.

Lewis's invitation

after giving confidential information of the projected expedition to the Pacific, proposed that Clark "participate with me in it's fatiegues, it's dangers and it's honors," assuring him that "there is no man on earth with whom I should feel equal pleasure in sharing them as with yourself." Clark promptly responded to this cordial offer, saying, "as my situation in life will admit of my absence the length of time necessary to accomplish such an undertaking, I will cheerfully join you."

It will be seen that Lewis's letter, owing to the slowness of Western mails, was nearly a month in reaching Clark. Failing to hear from his comrade as soon as he had expected, and fearing that he could not go, Lewis opened tentative negotiations with Lieutenant Moses Hooke of his own regiment (the First Infantry), who was then in charge of military stores at Pittsburg. In a letter to Jefferson (July 26, 1803)[1] Lewis describes him as a young man "about 26 years of age, endowed with a good constitution, possessing a sensible well informed mind, is industrious, prudent and persevering and withall intrepid and enterprising." A few days later, however (August 3), Lewis, then at Pittsburg, anxiously waiting for his keel-boat to be completed, received Clark's acceptance, and promptly expressed to the latter that he felt "much gratifyed with your decision; for I could neither hope, wish, or expect from a union with any man on earth, more perfect support or further aid in the discharge of the several duties of the mission, than that, which I am confident I shall derive from being associated with yourself."

THE EXPEDITION

The Louisiana Purchase

It will be remembered that when Jefferson instituted the ambitious enterprise, the original records of which we are here publishing for the first time, the trans-Mississippi was the property of France, although still in the hands of Spain. This fact gave rise to the secrecy with which the preparations were invested. But upon the second of May, 1803,[1] the American commissioners in Paris had signed a treaty with Napoleon by which Louisiana was sold to the United States.[2] Lewis's invitation to Clark shows that some inkling of this unexpected and startling negotiation had reached Jefferson by that date (June 19); but the official news thereof did not arrive in Washington until the first days in July. The circumstance in no way altered Lewis's arrangements, save that it was no longer necessary to maintain that privacy as to the purpose of the exploration, which had been hitherto enjoined upon him.

---

[1] For text, see Appendix.

Personelle

At River Dubois Camp

Organized as a military detachment, under the orders of the secretary of war — although President Jefferson remained the moving spirit — the party, when complete, consisted of twenty-nine persons officially recognized on the rolls; with French and half-breed interpreters, Clark's negro slave York, and the Indian woman Sacajawea as supernumeraries — forty-five in all, including the two captains.[3] Lewis — who had bidden good-bye to his friends at the White House on the morning of July 5th — embarked at Pittsburg on the thirty-first of August; but owing to shallows in the Ohio River, and the necessity of stopping at some of the forts to obtain volunteers from their garrisons, his passage was slow. At Louisville he picked up Clark and several young Kentucky recruits. December was a third spent, before the expedition went into winter camp at River Dubois, in Illinois, opposite the mouth of the Missouri, where the men were rigorously drilled both as soldiers and frontiersmen. It had been Lewis's intention to camp at some distance up the Missouri; but the lateness of the season, the technical objections raised by Spanish officials, and Jefferson's characteristic suggestion[4] that a camp on the east side, in American territory, would save the appropriation by allowing the men to draw their winter's rations from the War Department, induced him to stop at River Dubois.

---

[1] The actual date of signing, although the treaty was dated April 30th.

[2] See Thwaites, *Rocky Mountain Exploration*, chap. v, for account of the Louisiana Purchase.

[3] The number during the first year out (1804); but there were some changes in the spring of 1805. See list in note on p. 12 of the present volume; also the rolls in the Orderly Book, on pp. 13, 14, 30, 31, *post*.

[4] Letter to Lewis, of November 16th, 1803, in Appendix.

The journals show that the winter was a busy one — Clark being engaged at camp for the most part, in organizing and disciplining the party, and accumulating stores and boats for the long up-river journey; while Lewis was often in St. Louis, consulting with French fur-traders and others who knew the country. On March 9th and 10th, 1804, we find him the chief official witness at the formal transfer of Upper Louisiana — at first from Spain to France, and then from France to the United States.

The first season

The expedition started from Camp River Dubois on May 14th, "in the presence of many of the neighboring inhabitants, and proceeded on under a jentle brease up the Missouri." The long and painful up-stream journey during the summer and autumn of 1804 was followed by a winter spent in log huts enclosed by a stout palisade, among the Mandan Indians not far from the present Bismarck, North Dakota. Making a fresh start from Fort Mandan, upon the seventh of April, 1805, there ensued a toilsome experience all the way to the headspring of Jefferson Fork of the Missouri, which was reached August 12th. Then came the crossing of the rugged, snow-clad Bitterroot Mountains, which here constitute the divide, and the descent of the foaming rapids and cataracts of the Columbia, until the Pacific Coast was reached in November. By Christmas the party were safely housed within Fort Clatsop, a rude structure — like Fort Mandan, log huts within a palisade covering a plot of ground some fifty feet square.[1]

At Fort Clatsop

Another dreary but busy winter was spent in studying the natives and making other scientific observations in the neighborhood, and filling their large note-books with these interesting data. This was not the season, however, for meeting any of the numerous trading mariners who frequented the Northwest Coast; thus the letter of credit which Jefferson had given to Lewis proved of no avail, and for several months the explorers were obliged to exercise great ingenuity in making trinkets with which to obtain supplies from the natives, who exhibited an avaricious temperament.

---

[1] See plan of the fort, in chapter xxi, vol. iii of the present work.

The return

Leaving Fort Clatsop the twenty-third of March, 1806, the return of the expedition was delayed by heavy snows on the mountainous divide, and much hardship was experienced. The actual crossing of the range commenced June 15th. By the first of July the party had arrived at Travellers' Rest Creek, where the native trails converged, and here they divided into two sections — Lewis's party going direct to the Falls of the Missouri, and afterwards exploring Maria's River with a view to ascertaining its availability as a fur-trade route to the north; Clark and his contingent proceeding to the head of navigation of the year before, and then crossing over to the Yellowstone and descending that stream to its junction with the Missouri. Parting company on the third of July, it was the twelfth of August before the two branches of the expedition reunited on the Missouri, several days below the mouth of the Yellowstone. Their final happy arrival at St. Louis, on the twenty-third of September, after an absence of two years, four months, and nine days, is one of the familiar events in American history.

THE STORY OF LEWIS AND CLARK'S JOURNALS

The final entry in the journal of Captain Clark is significant:

> *Friday* 25th [26] *of Septr.* 1806
>
> a fine morning we commenced wrighting &c.

This shows that on the third day after their return to civilization, the commanders began placing its literary records into definitive form. The history of these records, thus promptly commenced, proved to be almost as romantic as that of the great discovery itself.

In his detailed instructions to Lewis (June 20, 1803),[1] President Jefferson had displayed particular concern for the journals of the proposed expedition to the Pacific, which with all possi-

---

[1] For this document, see Appendix.

Jefferson's concern

ble scientific data were to be prepared "with great pains & accuracy, to be entered distinctly, & intelligibly for others as well as yourself." The notes of the two captains were to be guarded against loss by making copies of them — "one of these copies [to] be written on the paper of the birch, as less liable to injury from damp than common paper."[1] Not only were Lewis and Clark to keep such journals, but they were to encourage their men to do likewise. Jefferson especially requested of Lewis that "several copies of . . . your notes should be made at leisure times & put into the care of the most trustworthy of your attendants, to guard by multiplying them, against the accidental losses to which they will be exposed." The captain was reminded that "in the loss of yourselves, we should lose also the information you will have acquired;" and as a further precaution was required "to communicate to us, at reasonable intervals, a copy of your journal, notes & observations of every kind, putting into cypher whatever might do injury if betrayed" — for we have seen that at the time these instructions were written the country to be explored and thus opened to American trade, was in the hands of the Spanish, whose suspicions must not be aroused.

The various journals

The two leaders faithfully performed their duty in this regard, and the four sergeants — Charles Floyd, Patrick Gass, John Ordway, and Nathaniel Pryor — also wrote journals.[2] Tradition has it that at least three of the twenty-three privates (Robert Frazier, Joseph Whitehouse, and possibly George Shannon) were, as well, diarists upon the expedition — but the only private's note-book now known to us is that of Whitehouse.

It was the daily custom of the captains to make rough notes, with rude outline maps, plans, and miscellaneous sketches,[3] in field-books which they doubtless carried in their pockets. When encamped for a protracted period, these were developed into more formal records. In this development, each often borrowed freely from the other's notes — Lewis, the better scholar of the two, generally rewriting in his own manner the material obtained from Clark; while the latter not infrequently copied Lewis practically verbatim, but with his own phonetic spelling. Upon returning to St. Louis, these individual journals were for the most part transcribed by their authors into neat blank books — bound in red morocco and gilt-edged — with the thought of preparing them for early publication. After this process, the original field-books must have been cast aside and in large measure destroyed; for but one of these[1] is now known to exist. There have come down to us, however, several note-books which apparently were written up in the camps.

---

[1] This suggestion was not adopted, in practice.

[2] In the camp orders issued by Lewis and Clark, May 26th, 1804 (see *post*, p. 33), occurs this sentence: "The serg^{ts}. in addition to those [other] duties are directed to keep a seperate journal from day to day of all passing occurrences, and such other observations on the country &c. as shall appear to them worthy of notice."

[3] Clark was the draughtsman of the party. His maps, sketches of birds, fishes, leaves, etc., in the note-books of both Lewis and himself, and on separate sheets of paper (for which latter, see our atlas volume), are worthy of an engineer with better training than he had received. They are all carefully reproduced in the present work.

Journalizing methods

Collectively, these journals of the captains cover each and every day the expedition was out — largely a double record, although there are occasional periods when we have the journal of but one of them.[2] The manuscripts well exemplify the habits and characteristics of the two men — Clark, the more experienced frontiersman of the two, expressing himself sententiously with Doric simplicity and vigor of phrase, and often amusingly eccentric orthography; Lewis, in more correct diction, inclined to expatiate on details, especially with regard to Indians and natural history, and frequently revealing a poetic temperament and a considerable fund of humor.

---

[1] By Clark, dated Sept. 13th–Dec. 31st, 1805, and described *post*.

[2] We have much more of Clark in these journals, than of Lewis. The lacunæ in the Lewis manuscripts, as compared with the dates covered by Clark, are as follows:

1804 — May 14, 16–19, 21–September 15; September 18–December 31 = 228 days.

1805 — January 1–February 2; February 14–April 6; August 27–September 8; September 11–17, 23–November 28; December 1–31 = 168 days.

1806 — August 13–September 26 = 45 days. But during much of this period Lewis was disabled from a wound, and therefore unable to write.

The only apparent gap in the Clark journals, is the brief period from February 3 to 12 (inclusive), 1805 = 10 days. But the omission is only nominal, for under February 13th he gives a summary of events during this period of absence; see vol. i, p. 253, note, and pp. 259–261. Actually, we have from Clark a perfect record of his movements day by day throughout the expedition.

Whether the missing Lewis entries (441 days, as compared with Clark; but we may eliminate 41 for the period when he was disabled, thus leaving 400) are still in existence or not, is unknown to the present writer. There appears to be no doubt that he regularly kept his diary. It is possible that the missing notes, in whole or in part, were with him when he met his death in Tennessee, and were either accidentally or purposely destroyed by others.

The first news

In February, 1806, when the expedition was upon the Pacific coast, President Jefferson sent to Congress a message enclosing, among other matters, a letter from Lewis, dated at Fort Mandan in the previous April, just as the explorers were leaving for the upper country;[1] at that point the party had passed their first winter. This communication, describing the experiences of the expedition as far as Fort Mandan, was accompanied by brief reports of explorations on the Red and Washita rivers by Dr. Sibley, Dr. Hunter, and William C. Dunbar, together with statistics of the Western tribes and other data of the kind; the ill-assorted whole being promptly printed as a public document.[2] Based upon this fragmentary publication there soon sprung up, both in England and America, a long list of popular compilations telling the story of the Lewis and Clark expedition during its first year, expanded with miscellaneous information about the Western Indians, picked up here and there — some of it singularly inaccurate.[3]

Gass's Journal

A year later (early in 1807), only a few months after the return of the party, there was published at Philadelphia the first detailed report of the entire tour; being the journal of Sergeant Patrick Gass, an observant man, whose rough but generally accurate notes had been expanded with small regard to literary style, by an Irish schoolmaster, named David McKeehan, of Wellsburg, West Virginia. This little volume of about 83,000 words,[4] with its curiously crude illustrations, was reprinted in London in 1808, while new American editions appeared at Philadelphia in 1810, 1811, and 1812, and a French translation at Paris in 1810. It is now, in any form, a rarity.

---

[1] For this document, see Appendix.

[2] See first item in Bibliographical Data, in the present volume, *post.*

[3] See "Counterfeit Publications," in Bibliographical Data.

[4] See Bibliographical Data, for description of the various editions of Gass's Journal.

It had been the intention of Lewis and Clark to publish their own journals; they had presented no official detailed report to the government, it being left with them by Jefferson, as we shall see, to make such literary use of their material as they saw fit. During the year following the return, and the one in which Gass's Journal had appeared, Lewis issued a prospectus announcing the speedy publication of the official narrative by C. & A. Conrad, of Philadelphia. The first volume was to contain the "narrative of the voyage," the second to be devoted chiefly to an account of "the Indian nations distributed over that vast region," and the third "exclusively to scientific research." Apart from this, was to be published "Lewis and Clark's Map of North America, from longitude 9° west to the Pacific Ocean, and between 36° and 52° north latitude, with extensive marginal notes, dimensions five feet eight inches by three feet ten inches, embracing all their late discoveries, and that part of the continent heretofore the least known."[1]

Lewis's prospectus, 1807

Unfortunately for this enterprise, both explorers soon after their return had received, together with commissions as generals, important government appointments: Lewis being made governor of Louisiana Territory, and Clark its superintendent of Indian affairs and brigadier-general of militia.[2] The onerous duties appertaining to these offices, in the new and vast territory through which they had journeyed, were necessarily absorbing; and neither being a literary man, the task of publication under such circumstances was easily deferred.

Delayed by public duties

Urged by Jefferson — who from the first had been keenly desirous to have the records of the exploration as soon as possible made the common property of the world — it was in 1809 agreed that General Lewis should in earnest undertake the work. He was travelling on horseback through Tennessee, on his way to Washington, intending thereafter to go to Philadelphia to enter upon this editorial task, when he lost his life during the night of October 11th. A guest, at the time, of a wayside settler some sixty miles southwest of Nashville, it was reported that he had committed suicide — a theory which Jefferson, probably his closest friend, accepted without question; but it was and still is believed by many that he was murdered for the small sum of money upon his person at the time.[1]

---

[1] See Appendix, for this prospectus.

[2] Upon the expedition, Lewis held a captaincy in the First Infantry; Clark had been commissioned as second lieutenant of artillery. On their return they both resigned from the army — Clark on February 27th, 1807, and Lewis on March 2d following. March 3d, Jefferson signed Lewis's commission, and nine days later Clark's.

Lewis's death

Clark, now the sole surviving head of the expedition, prompted by the indefatigable Jefferson, appears to have soon sought the assistance of an editor in bringing out the proposed publication. It seems that, probably early in 1810, overtures were made to him from some literary person in Richmond, Virginia;[2] but these he rejected, and earnestly solicited the aid of Nicholas Biddle, of Philadelphia. Biddle, who was descended from one of the oldest Philadelphia families, had graduated from Princeton in his sixteenth year (1801); he had been secretary to John Armstrong, our minister to France (1804), and while in Paris had superintended the payment of American claims growing out of the Louisiana Purchase — in this capacity greatly surprising the French officials both by his brilliancy and his youth. After travelling extensively in Europe, he became secretary to Mr. Monroe while the latter was minister to Great Britain, but in 1807 returned to practise law in Philadelphia. At the time of Clark's invitation, Biddle was but twenty-four years of age; nevertheless he had already attained considerable reputation as a financier, lawyer, and man of letters — in the last-named field being editor of the *Port-folio* — and socially was by many considered both the handsomest and the most charming man in Philadelphia, as he certainly was one of the most cultivated. It is small wonder that Clark selected him as the writer of the narrative.

Clark engages Biddle

---

[1] See discussion in Coues, *Lewis and Clark*, i, pp. xl–lvii; and Wheeler, *The Trail of Lewis and Clark* (New York, 1904), i, pp. 61–74.

[2] See Biddle-Clark correspondence in Coues, *Lewis and Clark*, i, pp. lxxxii *et seq.*

In his second letter to Biddle, dated February 20th, 1810, from the home of his father-in-law, Colonel George Hancock, near Fincastle, Virginia — then being visited by the general — he invites his correspondent to come to him at that place, "where I have my books and memorandoms and stay with me a week or two; read over & make yourself thereby acquainted with everything which may not be explained in the Journals. . . . Such parts as may not be full, I can explain, and add such additional matter as I may recollect. I brought the Books with me to Copy such parts as are intended for the Botanical work which I shall send to Doct! Barton, and will deliver the Books to you if you will engage to write the naritive &c."

On the third of March Biddle replied to Clark, regretting "that it will be out of my power to undertake what you had the politeness to offer;" explaining that "My occupations necessarily confine me to Phil! and I have neither health nor leisure to do sufficient justice to the fruits of your enterprize and ingenuity. You cannot be long however without making a more fortunate selection."

Two weeks later, however (March 17), he again addressed Clark — who was still at Fincastle — and reports having been seen by some of the latter's friends in Philadelphia; the result of the conference being that he "will therefore very readily agree to do all that is in my power for the advancement of the work; and I think I can promise with some confidence that it shall be ready as soon as the publisher is prepared to print it. Having made up my mind today, I am desirous that no delay shall occur on my part." He therefore will soon visit the general at Fincastle. The latter replied (March 25) with "most sincere acknowledgements for the friendly sentiments," and urged an immediate visit, "as my business calls me to Louisiana; and nothing detains me, but the business I wish with you."

Biddle made the trip to Fincastle, noted Clark's oral statements, and carried back with him to Philadelphia the journals and maps of the expedition, from which he at once began to prepare its history. In May, Clark sent to the editor George

Biddle at work

Shannon[1] who, when a lad of sixteen years, had creditably served as one of the privates in the detachment. Then twenty-three years old, and studying for the law, Shannon appears to have remained in Philadelphia during most of the time spent in draughting the narrative, and to have materially assisted Biddle both in interpreting the note-books and giving personal recollections of the tour. Not only did Clark tender the services of Shannon, but he himself was in frequent correspondence with the editor,[2] and purchased and forwarded to him the journal of Sergeant Ordway. The journal of Sergeant Gass being already in print, was of course also accessible to Biddle.

The talented young editor at once surrendered himself almost completely to the difficult task before him; he had promised Clark that the narrative should be ready for the press within twelve months. By the seventh of July he appears to have finished the story up to July 7th, 1805, above the Falls of the Missouri; for in a note to his distinguished correspondent, chiefly concerning the maps for the publication,[3] he playfully says: "Today I have sent you and ten men up into a bottom to look for wood to make canoes after the unhappy failure of your iron boat." A year later (July 8, 1811) he wrote to Clark, informing him that he had "completed the work agreeable to our engagement," and was "ready to put it to the press whenever Mr. Conrad chose."

---

[1] Shannon was born in Pennsylvania, of a good family, in 1787. After the return of the expedition he lost a leg as the result of a wound at the hands of Indians, the amputation having taken place at St. Charles, Mo. Soon after serving Biddle, he was admitted to the bar at Louisville, Ky.; becoming a circuit judge in Kentucky, a state senator in Missouri, and U. S. district attorney for Missouri. He died suddenly in court in 1836, aged forty-nine years.

[2] The following memoranda, found in Clark-Voorhis note-book No. 4, were evidently made by General Clark at this time:

"Mem. Enquire at St Louis into the Situation & number of the Crow Indians & which, if either, of their bands is called the Paunch Indians.
Also for some Indian speeches.
Story of the Osage on the subject of the Beaver.
Send to Mr Biddle every thing authentic & not yet published on the subject of the Fur Trade.
Get an Indian Song
about the Fur Trade
Fur Compy" — Ed.

[3] Which were being prepared by F. R. Hassler, of Schenectady, N. Y.

Wanted: a publisher

In our day, a manuscript of this character would eagerly be sought by publishers. Stanley, Nordenskjöld, Nansen, and Hedin have had but to choose among applicants from the book-trade. Ninety years ago, the situation was far different. John Conrad, a prominent publisher of his day, was finally prevailed upon to undertake the work, the financial outcome of which seemed to some others doubtful. He appears to have entered into the project with much interest; but by the time Biddle was ready, Conrad had fallen into financial straits, and in due course was plunged into bankruptcy; for this was the period of the second war with England, and business was unsettled. Biddle accordingly writes to Clark, July 4th, 1811, stating the facts in the case, and incidentally mentioning that "Last winter I was prevented from going to the legislature chiefly by a desire to stay & superintend the printing." He has, however, made an arrangement with Thomas Bradford, "one of the best booksellers here," and hopes that "we can proceed vigorously & soon get the volumes out."

Despite Biddle's optimism affairs dragged slowly, for Bradford's terms were unsatisfactory. Over a year later (September 5, 1812), we find Clark offering Biddle "the half of every profit arising from it, if you will attend to it, have it Completed as far as it is possible and necessary. printed published &c. including the advances which have and may be necessary &c." Biddle does not appear to have accepted this financial proposition; familiar with the book market, he probably anticipated the failure of the project.

Throughout the course of the work Conrad continued his friendly concern, and assisted Biddle in his strenuous search for a publisher. November 12th, he writes Biddle that he has tried Johnson & Warner without success; that firm "seem to have so incorrect an idea of the value of the work and probable profits arising from the publication of it." He advises Biddle to "agree to Mr. Bradfords offer. It is I am confident the best bargain you can make for Genl Clarke. The copyright I presume will be in him (Genl. C.) & I suppose he will derive the entire benefit of the sale of the M. S. in England."

This advice Biddle in due time felt impelled to accept, and February 23d, 1813, tells Clark that having found Bradford's terms "not such as I thought advantageous I made proposals to all the booksellers in town. The stagnation in that branch of business was so great that no one was willing to embark in it, and after a great deal of fruitless negociation I was obliged to return and on the advice of M^r^ Conrad accept M^r^ Bradford's proposals . . . I now wait only for the engravers who will soon I hope finish their work and then we can strike off the printing immediately & in a little time the work will be published." Nevertheless a year was spent in the mechanical execution of the two small volumes. Meanwhile the publishing firm of Bradford & Inskeep, who had undertaken the work, in their turn became insolvent and at the actual time of publication (February 20, 1814)[1] were in the bankruptcy court.

A publisher found

Just before going to press, Biddle was elected to the legislature, in which he soon won an enviable reputation for statesmanlike qualities. Being thus prevented from paying that attention to the book which he thought it deserved, he engaged Paul Allen, a Philadelphia newspaper writer, to supervise the issue. In a letter to Clark (March 23), reviewing some of the circumstances of the publication, Biddle says: "The gentleman who received and prepared it for the press, Mr. Allen, is a very capable person, and as I did not put the finishing hand to the volumes I did not think it right to take from him the credit of his own exertion and care by announcing personally the part which I had in the compilation. I am content that my trouble in the business should be recognized only by the pleasure which attended it and also by the satisfaction of making your acquaintance, which I shall always value. I could have wished that your time had permitted you to revise the whole of the work, as no doubt some errors and inadvertencies have from the nature of the volumes and the circumstances attending the publication crept into them. I hope however that you will not

Paul Allen's revision

---

[1] The date of the first sale of volumes. See Coues, *Lewis and Clark*, i, pp. xci, xcii, for detailed statement of the financial outcome of the enterprise.

find them very numerous or important . . . Henceforth you may sleep upon your fame, which must last as long as books can endure. Mr. Bradford has I presume sent you a copy of the work."

Despite Biddle's determination to claim no credit for the narrative which has long been regarded a classic in American history, it is quite apparent that Allen's connection with the enterprise was but that of reviser for the press. He himself frankly states in the Preface, that he does not wish "to arrogate anything from the exertions of others;" that "he found but little to change, and that his labor has been principally confined to revising the manuscript, comparing it with the original papers, and inserting such additional matter as appears to have been intentionally deferred by the writer [Mr. Biddle] till the period of a more mature revisal." Allen secured from President Jefferson an admirable memoir of Lewis; possibly, he also blocked out the chapters; and in a measure the mechanical form may be due to him. His labors were doubtless important from the typographical and clerical side; but of course the credit for the enterprise should chiefly rest with Biddle. That the latter had finished the work, ready for the final touches of a practical reviser for the press, is evident from his own letters to Clark, as well as the confirmatory statement which has come down to us from Conrad.

In his richly annotated edition of the *Travels* (N. Y., 1893, 4 vols.), Dr. Elliott Coues spends much space and energy in persistently heaping vituperation on Allen for fathering a work mainly performed by another. Biddle had the undoubted right to withdraw his name from public connection with the narrative. We may consider his reasons Quixotish, but he was entitled to be guided by them, and they certainly bespeak a nature more generous than we are accustomed to meet. As for Allen, it is evident that he did his part with becoming modesty; no doubt he well earned the fee of $500 — partly taken out in trade — with which he was rewarded by the publishers. Press-revision and proof-reading are no light tasks; although we might wish that, while he was at it, he had also given us an index.

A profitless undertaking

The size of the edition was, apparently, 2,000 copies.[1] Of these it would seem that 583 were either lost in some manner — "supposed to be destroyed in binder's or printer's hands" — or were defective from lacking plates; this would leave for sale only 1,417 perfect copies, which explains why the book is now rare. The net profits on the enterprise were computed at $154.10, of which neither Clark nor Biddle appears to have received a penny. The copper plates of the engraved maps became the property of the latter, and are now owned by his son, the Hon. Craig Biddle, of Philadelphia. To Clark was left the copyright. As for the heirs of Lewis, we find them[2] as late as 1816–17 making application to Clark for their share of the earnings, "persuaded that profit arising from that work has been received," and being informed by the latter of the dismal result of the enterprise.

Over two and a half years after the publication, a letter from Clark to Jefferson (October 10, 1816)[3] reveals the fact that the explorer had himself "not been so fortunate as to procure a single volume, as yet" — thus showing that Bradford, in the midst of his financial troubles, had not carried out the above-mentioned agreement with Biddle, to transmit a copy of the work to the man chiefly concerned in its appearance.

Difficulty of Biddle's task

The service of Biddle in editing the journals of the Lewis and Clark expedition, was a far more difficult literary undertaking than is commonly supposed. The entire mass of notes which he had before him may be thus roughly computed:

Lewis and Clark journals (Amer. Philosophical Society codices)	900,000 words
Gass Journal (as printed)	83,000 "
Ordway Journal — unknown, but possibly . .	100,000 "
	1,083,000

To this we should add about 160,000 words in the Clark-Voorhis collection, later to be described, and undoubtedly at one time in Biddle's hands; and whatever additional notes he may himself have made during conversations with Clark and Shannon, or as the result of correspondence with the former — and they must have been copious. A large proportion of the scientific matter of the Lewis and Clark note-books, however, which may have aggregated a fourth of the journals as a whole, had at the outset been eliminated by Clark and Biddle. This material, carefully copied out, was sent to Dr. Benjamin Smith Barton, an eminent naturalist in Philadelphia.[1] Dr. Barton agreed to edit a special volume, "which was to have been (by contract) prepared in six months from the time" of the appearance of the narrative of the journey. Owing to Barton's illness and consequent death, this "cientific part"[2] was not written. Thus, while the Biddle narrative gives a popular account of some of the principal discoveries, the scientific data so laboriously kept by Lewis and Clark, chiefly the former, has not heretofore been published.

---

[1] In this, I follow Coues.

[2] Coues, *L. and C.*, i, pp. xciii, xciv.

[3] Published in our Appendix.

Barton's proposed work

It was Biddle's task to weave this mass of heterogeneous data into a readable paraphrase which should have unity and a simple and forceful literary style. Adopting so far as possible the language of the original journals, where essential he amplifies and explains them from his additional data — Clark and Shannon's verbal statements, and the Ordway and Gass journals, assisting him to a more complete understanding. The nearly 1,500,000 words of manuscript he condensed into 370,000 printed words. The first person plural is used, save where the captains are individually mentioned, and then we have the third person singular. So skilfully is the work done, that probably few have realized that they had not before them the veritable journals of the explorers themselves, written upon the spot. The result will always remain one of the best digested and most interesting books of American travel, comparable in many respects with *Astoria* and *Bonneville's Adventures* — of course lacking Irving's

A successful paraphrase

---

[1] A professor of medicine in the University of Pennsylvania, and a vice-president of the American Philosophical Society.

[2] Clark's letter to Jefferson, dated St. Louis, Oct. 10, 1816, given in our Appendix.

charm of style, but possessing what Irving's two Western classics do not, the ring of truth, which never fails to appeal to those who love a tale of noble adventure in the cause of civilization.[1]

Jefferson dissatisfied

We have seen that Jefferson, who set on foot the expedition, had from the first expressed much concern in its records, both in the making and the publication. He had urged their early printing, and on Lewis's death spurred Clark to action; with what result, has been related. The dilatoriness of that performance — for which Clark, however, was only partly responsible — fretted the great man. December 6th, 1813, he wrote to Baron von Humboldt: "You will find it inconceivable that Lewis's journey to the Pacific should not yet have appeared; nor is it in my power to tell you the reason. The measures taken by his surviving companion, Clark, for the publication, have not answered our wishes in point of dispatch. I think, however, from what I have heard, that the mere journal will be out within a few weeks in two volumes, 8vo. These I will take care to send you with the tobacco seed you desired, if it be possible for them to escape the thousand ships of our enemies spread over the ocean. The botanical and zoological discoveries of Lewis will probably experience greater delay, and become known to the world through other channels before that volume will be ready. The Atlas, I believe, waits on the leisure of the engraver."[2] Nearly a hundred years have elapsed, and until the present work neither scientific data nor atlas has been given to the public.

Jefferson's search for Original Journals

Three years later (1816), we find Jefferson instituting a search for the manuscript journals of the explorers, with a view of placing them in the archives of the American Philosophical Society. He writes (April 26)[3] to Prof. Joseph F. Correa da Serra, a botanist then holding membership in the Society, asking him in the cause of science to interest himself in the matter, and describing in some detail the character of the documents — with which he was himself familiar, for he had handled them at Monticello. These papers, he informs Da Serra, "are the property of the government, the fruits of the expedition undertaken at such expence of money and risk of valuable lives. They contain exactly the whole of the information which it was our object to obtain for the benefit of our own country and of the world, but we were willing to give to Lewis and Clarke whatever pecuniary benefits might be derived from the publication, and therefore left the papers in their hands, taking for granted that their interests would produce a speedy publication, which would be better if done under their direction. but the death of Capt Lewis, the distance and occupations of General Clarke, and the bankruptcy of their bookseller, have retarded the publication, and rendered necessary that the government should attend to the reclamation & security of the papers. their recovery is now become an imperious duty. their safest deposit as fast as they can be collected, will be the Philosophical society, who no doubt will be so kind as to recieve and preserve them, subject to the order of government. . . . As to any claims of individuals to these papers, it is to be observed that, as being the property of the public, we are certain neither Lewis nor Clarke would undertake to convey away the right to them, and that they could not convey them, had they been capable of intending it. . . . my interference will, I trust, be excused, not only from the portion which every citizen has in whatever is public, but from the peculiar part I have had in the design and execution of this expedition."

---

[1] For a bibliographical account of the Biddle paraphrase, see Mr. Paltsits's Bibliographical Data in the present volume.

[2] See full text, in Appendix.

[3] The correspondence here cited is given in full in the Appendix.

It appears that Biddle, who still held the majority of the note-books, was disinclined to surrender them to Jefferson save on order of Clark. September 8th, Jefferson wrote to the general, soliciting such an order, to "be given in favor either of the War office or myself. . . . I should receive them only in trust for the War office to which they belong, and take their orders relating to them." He wishes to deposit with the Philosophical Society "for safekeeping the travelling pocket journals as originals to be recurred to on all interesting questions arising out of the published journal;" his desire being to secure "to the world all the beneficial results we were entitled to expect from it [the expedition], and which would so fully justify the expences of the expedition incurred by the United States in that expectation."

October 10th, Clark responds to Jefferson by enclosing "an Order on my friend M^{r} Biddle for the papers in his possession," Biddle being at the same time instructed, as his agent, "to collect all the Books, papers, specimens, &c." in the hands of Dr. Barton's heirs or others. Clark expresses interest in Jefferson's desire to collect the papers, and adds: "From the mortification of not haveing succeeded in giving to the world all the results of that expedition, I feel Relief & greatitude for the interest which you are willing to take, in effecting what has not been in my power to accomplish." Nevertheless, we shall presently see that Clark had retained in his possession at St. Louis five of his own original journals, nearly all the maps made by him upon the expedition, and many miscellaneous documents concerning the enterprise; these he did not surrender.

Jefferson now writes to Dr. John Vaughan of the Society (June 28, 1817), saying that although Da Serra had obtained several note-books from Mr. Biddle and Mrs. Barton, considerable difficulty is being experienced in collecting all the documents. Evidently much annoyed, he proposes to bring pressure to bear, through the secretary of war, "that office having some rights to these papers." The further suggestion is made, that the Society publish "in their Transactions or otherwise," a digest of the "zoological, vegetable & mineralogical papers & subjects."

Biddle surrenders note-books

On the eighth of April, 1818, we learn from the manuscript minutes of the corporation that "Mr. Nicholas Biddle deposited the original journals of Lewis and Clark, with an account of them and of those journals and documents which he was not possessed of." The deposit consisted of eighteen note-books and twelve parcels of loose sheets; of these, thirteen are in red-morocco covers — seven by Lewis and six by Clark.[1]

---

[1] The correspondence touching upon this event will be found in full in the Appendix.

Here the records of Jefferson's search suddenly cease. Neither the federal government nor the American Philosophical Society having decided to publish them, these precious manuscripts slumbered untouched for nearly seventy-five years in the library vault of the Society, practically unknown to historical scholars outside of that institution. In 1892, Dr. Elliott Coues, eminent as a scientist and traveller, as well as an editor of American historical sources, was engaged in preparing the new edition of Biddle, to which frequent reference has already been made. Most if not all of his matter was before him in galley proofs, when he learned for the first time of the existence of the original manuscripts in Philadelphia. Armed with a letter from the explorer's son, Jefferson Kearny Clark, of St. Louis, Coues requested the loan of the note-books from their custodian. This was granted by the Society (vote of December 16), and the manuscripts were accordingly sent to him at Washington. Concluding that it was too late to block out the work afresh and discard Biddle's text, he compromised by enriching his notes with many citations from the originals — unfortunately freely modernized, as was his custom with all the Western manuscripts which he edited; and from them he also compiled a new chapter in the Biddle style, which he inserted into the body of the book, as though a part of the Biddle text. His modified excerpts but served to whet the appetites of students of American history, and thus led to the project for their eventual publication in extenso and with literal accuracy.

Used by Coues

In returning the journals to the Society, Coues transmitted therewith a detailed report upon their scope and condition.[1] While in his possession, he attached to each codex (note-book) a memorandum summarizing its contents, and to each gave an identifying letter, running from A to T. This was commendable; but certain other liberties which he took with the manuscripts merit our condemnation — for in many codices he freely interlined the text with his own verbal changes and comments; and in general appeared

Coues's report on codices

---

[1] Published in American Philosophical *Proceedings*, xxi (No. 140), pp. 17–33; reprinted, in abbreviated form, in our Appendix.

to treat the material as though mere copy for the printer, which might be revised by him with impunity. Apparently the codices remained unopened after their return; for it was not until the summer of 1903 that the Society authorities were made aware, by one who was examining them in detail, of the surprising treatment to which they had been subjected.

Philosophical Society concludes to publish

The next chapter in the story opened in the spring of 1901, when the Society's Committee on Historical Manuscripts determined — in view of the forthcoming centennial of the Louisiana Purchase — at last to carry out Jefferson's suggestion, and secure the publication of the Lewis and Clark journals direct from the original manuscripts in their custody. They interested in this project the present publishers, who in turn engaged the writer as Editor of the work.

In the course of consequent investigation into the sources, there came to view in the Society's library a few other Lewis and Clark items, besides the codices handled and labelled by Coues; these were chiefly statistical tables regarding the Western Indians, a meteorological record, and a list of the explorers' specimens sent from Fort Mandan to the Society[1] — matters of considerable although not commanding importance.[2]

Search for Ordway Journal

In Coues's report on the codices, occurs this note: "One of Clark's Journals is now in the possession of his son, [the late] Mr. Jefferson K. Clark, of St. Louis. I am not informed of the date covered by this volume, nor of the nature of its contents." Upon assuming charge of the proposed publication, the present writer at once approached the heirs of General William Clark for permission to use the Ordway Journal, in case it could be found among the family papers. As the result of protracted negotiations, an unexpected situation was revealed. The third son and fourth child of General Clark and his first wife, Julia Hancock, was George Rogers Hancock Clark, born at St. Louis in 1816 and dying in 1858. This son was his father's executor, and as such came into possession of the explorer's papers and many other family relics, which he appears to have arranged and labelled with some care. Upon his death they descended to his eldest child, now Mrs. Julia Clark Voorhis of New York City, whose proprietary rights are at present shared with her daughter, Miss Eleanor Glasgow Voorhis.

---

[1] See Appendix, for this document.

[2] Several copies of the Indian vocabulary blank prepared by Jefferson are also in the possession of the American Philosophical Society, having been presented by him in October, 1820. It consists of a sheet 7¼ x 19¼", printed on both sides — although there are some which were printed on but one side of a sheet twice this width, the two pages standing side by side. Those filled out represent, among others, the Miami, Micmac, Shawnee, Chippewa, and Lenâpe languages; while several are still blank. In the collection are no vocabularies which appear to have emanated from the Lewis and Clark expedition.

The Voorhis collection

It appears that a few years ago Mrs. Voorhis began the examination of the collection with a view to selecting therefrom, for a projected compilation of her own, certain documents which pertained to the public careers of various members of the Clark family, particularly William and George Rogers. This examination was still privately in progress when, in the autumn of 1903, the present Editor — quite unconscious of the existence of other historical manuscripts at the Voorhis home — appeared upon the scene with his application for the Ordway Journal. Indeed, the ladies themselves were as yet unaware of the full significance of their treasures, especially those appertaining to the great expedition. The result was that the writer in several visits personally completed the examination of the collection, with the papers of the expedition especially in view; and arrangements were concluded between the proprietors of the documents and the publishers, by which all those essential to the complete narrative of the Lewis and Clark exploration are to be published in the present work.

The Voorhis collection of Lewis and Clark material is of surprising richness, and consists of the following items:

Clark Journals

Red morocco note-book No. 1 — Diary, April 7-July 3, 1805; 38,000 words, with 3 maps of the Falls of the Missouri.

Field-book, bound in a rude piece of elk skin, secured by a thong and button, and undoubtedly carried in Clark's pocket upon the expedition — Diary, Sept. 11–Dec. 31, 1805; 20,000 words, with over a dozen full-page sketch-maps of the trail over the mountains, and the neighborhood of Fort Clatsop, interwoven with the badly blurred text. On the skin cover is a rude plan of the fort itself.

Red morocco note-book No. 2 — Diary, Jan. 30–April 3, 1806; 41,000 words, with numerous pen sketches of canoes, birds, dwellings, tools, etc. by the same hand (Clark's) as those contained in Lewis's codices of similar dates, in the American Philosophical Society's collection.

Red morocco note-book No. 3 — Diary, April 4–June 6, 1806; 35,000 words, with some sketch-maps.

Fragment or Journal — Detached leaves, giving evidently first draft of entries, April 16–21, 1806; 2,300 words.

Red morocco note-book No. 4 — No diary, but containing sundry notes and tables of weather, distances, astronomical and ethnological data — all covered, however, in more finished manuscripts in the American Philosophical Society's collection. There are also in this book four excellent colored maps.

Miscellaneous Material

An orderly book, by several hands, running from April 1 to Oct. 13, 1804, and a detached entry for Jan. 1, 1806; detached orders promulgated at River Dubois camp, Feb. 20 and March 4, 1804; also a few detached orders issued during the expedition.

Ten letters (some of them drafts) — Lewis offering (June 19, 1803) Clark an equal partnership in command of the expedition; Clark's acceptance thereof (July 17); Clark's letter to President Jefferson (July 24), informing him of this fact; Lewis to Clark (Aug. 3), expressing his gratification at the latter's favorable response; six others, chiefly by Clark, relating to various phases of the expedition.

Letter of Clark to "Mr. Hugh Henry at the N. W. Co. establishments on the Assiniboin River," written from the Yellowstone, July 20, 1806 (2,000 words); and Clark's order to Sergeant N. Pryor, dated July 25, 1806, directing him to take the aforesaid letter to Henry, together with twelve or fourteen horses (320 words).

An address from the citizens of Fincastle and its vicinity to Captains Lewis and Clark, dated January 8, 1807 (300 words); and Clark's undated answer thereto (300 words).

Numerous other letters and memoranda — among them the original of Jefferson's letter of credit; Clark's various military commissions, before, during, and after the expedition; fragmentary records of courses and distances, Indian tribes, weather data, and the like; information concerning the Assiniboin country obtained from British traders at Fort Mandan; and one of Clark's speeches to the Indians, in 1806.

Maps

Most important of all are about sixty detailed maps, for the most part made by Clark while on the trip, he being engineer of the detachment. Collectively, these illustrate the greater part of the journey both going and returning, indicate camping-places, and contain many interesting comments on the country and the Indians. These charts vary in size from eight inches square to several feet long.

In addition to the above manuscripts, there are in this collection several oil paintings of the Clarks — chiefly George Rogers and William — together with numerous valuable relics of these men, making of the Voorhis home a museum of great interest to students of Western history.

An interesting query

Why did not General Clark surrender this wealth of manuscripts either to the American Philosophical Society or to Jefferson, when the latter was searching for all the documents of the expedition, stoutly claiming them as the undoubted property of the government? The probable answer is, that Biddle found the four Clark-Voorhis morocco note-books of no service to him; for practically all the facts contained in them are either in Lewis's journals of similar dates or in other drafts by Clark. He doubtless returned the books to Clark, in the early stages of the work, keeping only those which later were placed in the Society's archives. It is probable, also, that the engraver having completed such maps as he deemed necessary for the publication, all the charts made upon the expedition were returned to Clark. As for the skin-bound field-book, this having already been transcribed into a red morocco note-book, very likely the original did not go to Biddle at all; the orderly book, the various fragments, the Lewis-Clark correspondence, and the letter of credit, were doubtless also retained at St. Louis as being deemed, for Biddle's purpose of a popular narrative, unusable material. On his part, it is probable that Clark had either forgotten the existence of these documents, or, like Biddle, considered them as of relatively slight historical value. His seemingly careless treatment of them would appear to bear out the last conclusion. In all events, they remained among his papers untouched, until tied into packets and labelled by his son and executor, George Rogers Hancock Clark.[1] The manuscripts again suffered a long period of neglect, and eventually were sent to New York, where they became the property of Mrs. Voorhis, the story of whose connection with them has already been told.

Neglected manuscripts

It has often been asserted that Sergeant Pryor wrote a journal of the expedition, and some have assumed that Biddle used it in preparing the narrative of 1814; but evidence to this effect is wanting — in any event, no one now seems to know the whereabouts of this manuscript.

Pryor, Floyd, Frazier, and Woodhouse Journals

The journal (12,500 words, covering the dates March 13 — August 18, 1804) of Sergeant Floyd, the only man of the party to meet death during the trip,[2] was in the spring of 1805

---

[1] General William Clark's appointment as Superintendent of Indian Affairs and Brigadier General of Militia for the Territory of Louisiana (1807) has already been noted in the text. In this dual part, he was eminently successful. Governor Lewis had been succeeded in that office by Benjamin Howard, and the following year (1810) the name of the territory was changed to Missouri. July 1, 1813, Clark was appointed by President Madison as governor of Missouri Territory, being several times recommissioned as such — in 1816, 1817, and 1820. In the last-named year, Missouri entered the Union, and Clark was a candidate for the first State governor, but was defeated in the election by Alexander McNair. In 1820, President Monroe appointed him to the newly created office of federal Superintendent of Indian Affairs; two years later, he was commissioned as Surveyor General for the States of Illinois and Missouri and the Territory of Arkansas. He died at St. Louis, September 1st, 1838, in his sixty-ninth year, and was given an impressive funeral, in which the entire community took part. Governor Clark was twice married — first, at Fincastle, Virginia, January 5, 1808, to Julia Hancock, who died in 1820, leaving four sons and a daughter; second, at St. Louis, November 28, 1821, to Mrs. Harriet Kennerly Radford, who died in 1831, leaving one son by William Clark.

[2] Floyd, aged about twenty years (possibly twenty-three), died near the site of the present Sioux City, Iowa, May 14th, 1804, and was buried on the top of a neighboring bluff. The site is now marked by a stately stone monument dedicated (May 30, 1901) to his memory by the Floyd Memorial Association. See *Reports* of the association — First, 1897; Second, 1901.

The Floyds were prominent Kentucky pioneers. Colonel John Floyd, the head sent from Fort Mandan to his parents in Kentucky, and eventually became the property of the Wisconsin Historical Society. With many textual errors in transcription, it was published in 1894 in the *Proceedings* of the American Antiquarian Society, with an introduction by Dr. James Davie Butler.

Soon after the return of the expedition, Robert Frazier, one of the privates, solicited subscriptions in Vermont for a publication of his journal, to be "contained in about 400 pages octavo;" but it did not appear, and the present writer has no knowledge of the manuscript.[1]

The existence of a journal by Private Joseph Whitehouse was unknown until recently. It was purchased in San Francisco by Dodd, Mead & Co., to be published in connection with the Original Journals of Lewis and Clark; after having been edited for the press, the manuscript (containing 67,000 words, covering the dates May 14, 1804–November 6, 1805) was acquired from the publishers by Edward E. Ayer, the well known Chicago collector.[2]

---

of the family, was a friend and contemporary of Daniel Boone and George Rogers Clark. But little is known of the young sergeant's personal history, save that his father, also Charles, was a surveyor and a friend of Boone. Governor John Floyd, of Virginia, father of John B. Floyd, Buchanan's secretary of war, was a first cousin of the sergeant. Much prominence has been given to Sergeant Floyd, because he was the only man to suffer death upon this expedition, because it is thought that he was the first United States soldier to lose his life west of the Mississippi River, and because his captains praised him as a faithful man — see entry by Clark, *post*, under date August 20th, 1804. Floyd's Journal — which was discovered by the present writer among hitherto-neglected papers of the late Dr. Lyman C. Draper, in February, 1893 — has of course greatly added to his reputation, and made of him a far more important character in the annals of the expedition than he otherwise would have been.

[1] See Appendix, for Frazier's prospectus.

[2] Nothing appears to be known concerning the history of Joseph Whitehouse, save that he was one of the nine young Kentuckians whom Clark recruited for the expedition. The manuscript of his journal was purchased by Dodd, Mead & Co. from Mrs. Gertrude Haley (widow of Captain John Haley), of San Francisco, from whom it has been impossible for the present Editor to obtain any very definite information concerning its career. According to Mrs. Haley's statements, obtained only after a protracted correspondence with her, it would appear that Whitehouse, when upon his death-bed (date unknown), gave the journal to his confessor, Canon de Vivaldi, who subsequently (1860) went as a Roman Catholic missionary to Patagonia. Upon leaving the United States, Vivaldi deposited the manuscript with the New York Historical Society, in whose museum it rested until 1893. In that year, Vivaldi was in Los Angeles, California. Captain and Mrs. Haley were stopping at the same

Thus, seventy-five years after Jefferson's quest, and within the centennial year of the departure of the Lewis and Clark expedition from their preliminary camp on River Dubois, there have at last been located presumably all the literary records now extant, of that notable enterprise in the cause of civilization. The Original Journals, now definitively published to the world, in a dress which surely would have satisfied Jefferson, must create a new interest in the deeds of Lewis and Clark. They are, in the mass, much more extensive than the Biddle narrative; the voluminous scientific data here given — in botany, zoölogy, meteorology, geology, astronomy, and ethnology — is almost entirely a fresh contribution; and we obtain from the men's note-books as written from day to day, a far more vivid picture of the explorers and their life, than can be seen through the alembic of Biddle's impersonal condensation.

All records now in sight

The pages of the journals are aglow with human interest. The quiet, even temper of the camp; the loving consideration that each of the two leaders felt for the other; the magnanimity of Lewis, officially the leader, in equally dividing every honor with his friend, and making no move without the latter's consent; the poetic temperament of Lewis, who loved flowers and animals, and in his notes discoursed like a philosopher who enjoyed the exercise of writing; the rugged character of Clark, who wrote in brief, pointed phrase, and, less educated of the two, spelled phonetically, capitalized chaotically, and occasionally slipped in his grammar — all these and more, are evident on every page; causing the reader deeply to admire the men, and to follow

A new view of Lewis and Clark

---

hotel. Mrs. Haley says that her husband advanced money to the missionary, and was in return given an order on the New York Society for the journal, which the historian, Hubert Bancroft, had told them was of great value. Haley obtained the document in 1894, and it remained Mrs. Haley's property until sold to the present publishers. The Editor's attention had been directed to the manuscript because of its being offered to the Library of Congress. That institution declined to pay the price asked for it, and Dodd, Mead & Co.'s successful negotiations followed. The authenticity of the journal is self evident, and its historical value is considerable. While for the most part in the writing of Whitehouse, many entries are in other hands as will be noted in the publication of the document itself, in vol. vi of the present work.

them in their often thrilling adventures with the keenest sympathy and anticipation. We shall henceforth know Lewis and Clark as we never knew them before. The Biddle narrative will no doubt continue to live as the brief popular account of an exploration fraught with great consequence to American expansion; but at least the student of history will feel that the original records, as the men wrote them on the spot, are by far the more satisfying of the two.

Editorial problems

In preparing for the press these Original Journals of the Lewis and Clark Expedition, many editorial problems have arisen, which it is unnecessary here to discuss in detail. In brief, it may be said that the abundance of material has in itself often proved an embarrassment. As already stated, the two captains frequently rewrote their records; for the most part, only the definitive form remains to us, but there are long periods for which we have two or more drafts. Then again, each leader freely copied from the other, although generally with some variation. In the case of the narrative proper, the Editor has, with a few exceptions, thought best to retain the several drafts in the order of their preparation; this method involves occasional repetition of statement, but in a publication of the original records it appears advisable to exhibit the literary methods of the explorers. With regard, however, to the statistical and scientific material, it has not seemed essential to publish the different drafts — the best only has been presented. In the department of Scientific Data, it will be noted that in a few instances some of the tabular matter has been co-ordinated, the sources being indicated either by differentiation in type or by explanatory foot-notes. Some of the tables were prepared by the explorers in a manner quite impossible of reproduction in type. But wherever practicable, we have sought to imitate the original as closel as the limitations of typography will allow.

We have seen that the codices in the possession of the American Philosophical Society contain many erasures, interlineations, and emendations — by Clark, Biddle, Coues, and an unknown hand. The scientific entries were generally crossed in red ink, with the note, "Copy for Dr. Barton;" this meant that such matter was to be reserved for Barton's proposed volume on the scientific results of the expedition, which, however, was not prepared. The present Editor has disregarded marks of this character. His method of indicating to the reader the various emendations, is explained in the foot-note to page 11 of the present volume, *post*.

The arrangement of chapters follows the Biddle edition of 1814. In that narrative the chapters were of proper and nearly equal length; whereas in this, owing to the greater extent of material, they are unequal and some of them abnormally extended. A new system of chaptering would have obviated this difficulty and thus presented a better mechanical appearance. Nevertheless, it has been deemed best to retain the Biddle chapters — they are convenient chronological and geographical divisions; they are familiar to scholars, and thus have acquired a certain historical and bibliographical standing; moreover, comparisons between the Biddle paraphrase and the Original Journals will be facilitated by their retention.

Acknowledgments

A work of this character, involving so wide a range of territory, interests, and studies, must in considerable measure be co-operative in its character. The Editor's requests for advice and assistance have on every hand met with most cordial responses, for which a mere enumeration of names seems only cold acknowledgment; it is hoped that each of his correspondents and colleagues will between the lines read a heartier appreciation than to others may be apparent. The Bibliographical Data contributed to the present work by Mr. Victor Hugo Paltsits, of the New York Public Library, is a work of great value; like the Original Journals themselves, this chapter on the literature of the subject will doubtless prove definitive. The officers of the American Philosophical Society, particularly the secretary, Dr. I. Minis Hays, have been kindness itself. Valuable notes on the scientific results of the expedition have been freely contributed by Dr. William Trelease, Director of the Missouri Botanical Garden at St. Louis; Messrs. Stewardson Brown and Witmer Stone, assistants to the curators of the Academy of Natural Sciences at Philadelphia; Mr. James Newton Baskett, of

Mexico, Missouri; Professor Edwin H. Barbour, of the University of Nebraska; Professor E. E. Blackman, archæologist for the Nebraska Historical Society; Professor Charles V. Piper, botanist and entomologist of the Washington (State) Agricultural and Experiment Station at Pullman; and Professor Franklin H. King, of the United States Department of Agriculture. Detailed information concerning the over-mountain trail of the expedition has been obtained from Mr. Olin D. Wheeler, of the General Passenger and Ticket Department of the Northern Pacific Railway, whose two-volume work, *The Trail of Lewis and Clark*, will prove of much practical value to American historians; and Professor F. G. Young, of the University of Oregon. Mrs. Eva Emery Dye, of Oregon City, Oregon, has contributed most liberally from the surprisingly rich store of historical materials which, with remarkable enterprise and perseverance, she accumulated during her preparation for the writing of *The Conquest;* her persistent helpfulness has laid the Editor under unusual obligations. Courtesies of various kinds have also been received from the following persons — to mention but a few of the many who, throughout the past two years, have aided the publication: Hon. Pierre Chouteau, and Hon. Walter B. Douglas, of St. Louis, members of the Missouri Historical Society, and the society's librarian, Miss Mary Louise Dalton; Hon. Craig Biddle, of Philadelphia; Mrs. Laura E. Howey, secretary and librarian of the Historical and Miscellaneous Department of the Montana State Library; Mrs. S. Lou Monroe-Farmer, of Portland, Oregon; Mr. Peter Koch, of Bozeman, Montana; Mr. Charles H. Conover, of Chicago; Mr. J. W. Cheney, librarian of the War Department, Mr. Robert Chapman, of the United States Coast and Geodetic Survey, Mr. C. H. Lincoln, of the Manuscripts Division of the Library of Congress, and Major William Hancock Clark, of Washington, D. C.; Mr. C. H. Anderson, of Ivy Depot, Virginia; Hon. Nathaniel P. Langford, of St. Paul; and Mr. William Harvey Miner, of Cleveland.

Emma Helen Blair, A.M., editorial assistant upon *The Jesuit Relations and Allied Documents* and now one of the editors of *The Philippine Islands, 1493–1898*, assisted materially upon a majority of the annotations; further help in this direction, as well as in the difficult work of comparing transcriptions with the original manuscripts, has been rendered by Louise Phelps Kellogg, Ph.D., of the Manuscripts Division of the Wisconsin Historical Library. Finally, the Editor takes especial pleasure in acknowledging the patient and kindly cooperation of the Publishers, who have exhibited the deepest interest in every detail of the work, which owes much to their many suggestions and their generous determination to leave nothing undone that might add to its scholarly value and artistic embellishment.

R. G. T.

Madison, Wisconsin
May 14, 1904

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL DATA

BY VICTOR HUGO PALTSITS

APART from a few insignificant references in the prefaces or introductions of some of the earlier editions of Lewis and Clark, the first attempt to record the publications related to the expedition of those explorers was made by Joseph Sabin in his *Dictionary of Books relating to America*, vol. vi, p. 443, under William Fisher; vol. vii, p. 181, under Patrick Gass; and vol. x, pp. 310–313, under Merriwether Lewis. Unfortunately Sabin read into his record several titles or editions that never existed, and in his descriptions committed a number of egregious errors, which have been only too freely copied and perpetuated by others.

An incomplete list was given by Field in his *Essay towards an Indian Bibliography* (New York, 1873).

The late Elliott Coues made the first comprehensive bibliographical study of these problematic books in his *An Account of the various publications relating to the Travels of Lewis and Clarke* (*sic*), printed in the "Bulletin of the Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories" (Hayden's), Second Series, No. 6, published by the Department of the Interior in 1876. A few copies thereof were also issued as separates. This material Coues "recast and improved" for his 1893 edition of the Lewis and Clark *History*; it appears in vol. i, pp. cvii–cxxxii. In many respects it is a worthy endeavor, especially if regarded as a pioneer effort; yet it must be admitted that it teems with errors, some of which are inexplicable.

There are some brief bibliographical notes in Hubert Howe Bancroft's *Northwest Coast*, vol. ii. pp. 7, 8, 31, which present some inaccuracies. The same may be said of Justin Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History of America*, vol. vii, pp. 556–558.

The latest attempt to cover the subject was made by William Harvey Miner, in *The Literary Collector*, vol. iii (1902), pp. 204–209. The form is poor; the collations are not nearly accurate, and numerous errors perpetuated from Coues and Sabin, as well as some omissions, detract from its usefulness as a bibliography.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL DATA

In order to serve its real purpose — namely, to afford the scholar, the librarian, and the collector media for determining what is a complete work — a monographic bibliography must give in minutest detail an analysis of each volume. Only by this method can imperfections and variations be determined. Starting out with this ideal in view, I have endeavored to find and examine one or more copies of every work related to the expedition. This task was great, but an insatiable appetite would not permit deviation from this plan. If the results attained prove at all of service, the compiler will consider himself rewarded for his arduous labor.

The material is arranged in five chronological groups, namely: Jefferson's Message (1806–1808); Counterfeit Publications (1809–1851); Gass (1807–1904); Genuine History (1814–1904); Miscellanea (1804–1904). Only a few analytical references have been included, on account of their special importance, and magazine articles have intentionally been barred. The various editions of Jefferson's *Writings* and *Works*, edited by Washington and by Ford, are worth consulting for valuable materials. References to the official publications of the government of the United States, not included here, are given by another hand at the end of my bibliography.

The following key is explanatory of the abbreviations used to locate copies:

AAS = American Antiquarian Society, Worcester, Mass.
BA = Boston Athenæum
BM = British Museum, London
BPL = Boston Public Library
C = Library of Congress, Washington, D. C.
CHC = Collection of Charles H. Conover, Esq., Chicago
CHS = Connecticut Historical Society, Hartford
CU = Columbian University, Washington, D. C.
EI = Essex Institute, Salem, Mass.
HC = Harvard College Library, Cambridge, Mass.
HSP = Historical Society of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia
LCP = Library Company of Philadelphia, Philadelphia
MHS = Massachusetts Historical Society, Boston
NA = New York Public Library (Astor Library Building)
NL = New York Public Library (Lenox Library Building)
NYHS = New York Historical Society, New York
NYSL = New York State Library, Albany
WD = War Department Library, Washington, D. C.
WHS = State Historical Society of Wisconsin, Madison

JEFFERSON'S MESSAGE

1806

Message | from the | President of the United States, | communicating | Discoveries | made in exploring | the Missouri, Red River and Washita, | by | Captains Lewis and Clark, Doctor Sibley, | and | Mr. Dunbar; | with | a Statistical Account | of the | countries adjacent. | February 19, 1806. | Read, and ordered to lie on the table. |

City of Washington: | A. & G. Way, Printers. | 1806. |

8vo; title, verso blank; "Message", pp. [3] and 4; "Extract of a Letter from Captain Meriwether Lewis, | to the President of the United States, dated | Fort Mandan, April 17th, 1805", pp. [5]–8; "A Statistical View", pp. [9]–65; "Historical Sketches", pp. [66]–86; "To General Henry Dearborn", signed by John Sibley, pp. 87–112; "Distances up Red river by the course of the river", pp. 113–115; "Observations", etc., pp. 116–171; "Meteorological observations", pp. (7); two folded broadsides, to follow pp. 30 and 34. Signatures: [1]–22 in fours, 23 in two (the last leaf blank).

This is the original and official edition, as well as the first separate publication with data on the expedition of Lewis and Clark.

Copies: AAS; BM; BPL; C; CHC; CHS; CU; EI; HC; LCP; MHS; NA; NL; WD; WHS.

1806

Message | from the | President of the United States, | communicating | Discoveries | made in exploring the | Missouri, Red River, and Washita, | by | Captains Lewis and Clark, Doctor Sibley, | and Mr. Dunbar; | with | a Statistical Account | of the | countries adjacent. | Read in Congress, February 19, 1806. |

New-York: | Printed by Hopkins and Seymour, | and sold by G. F. Hopkins, No. 118, Pearl-Street. | 1806. |

8vo; title, verso blank; "Message", pp. [3] and 4; "Extract of a Letter from Captain Meriwether Lewis, | to the President of the United States, dated | Fort Mandan, April 17th, 1805", pp. [5]–8; "A Statistical View", pp. [9]–47; "Historical Sketches", pp. [48]–62; "To General Henry Dearborn", signed by John Sibley, pp. 63–81; "Distances up Red river by the course of the river", pp. 82–83; "Observations", pp. 84–125; "Meteorological Observations", beginning on p. 125–128; table of "Siouxs proper" to follow p. 25. Signatures: [A]–Q in fours.

Copies: AAS (uncut copy); BPL; CHC; LCP; NYHS; WHS.

1806

Discoveries | made in exploring | the Missouri, Red River | and Washita, | by | Captains Lewis and Clark, Doctor Sibley, | and | William Dunbar, Esq. | with | a Statistical Account | of the | Countries adjacent. | With an Appendix by Mr. Dunbar. |

Natchez:. | Printed by Andrew Marschalk, | 1806. |

8vo; title, verso blank; "Message", pp. [3] and 4; "Extract of a letter from Captain Meriwether Lewis, to the Preſident of the United States, dated Fort Mandan, April 17th, 1805", pp. [5]–8; "A statistical View of the Indian Nations", pp. [9]–64; "Historical Sketches of the several Indian Tribes of Louisiana", pp. [65]–83; "To General Henry Dearborn, Secretary of War", signed by John Sibley, pp. 84–109; "Distances up Red river by the course of the river", pp. 110–112; "Observations", pp. 113–164; "Extracts from the Appendix", pp. [165]–166, 159–169; "Meteorological observations", pp. 170–177; verso of last leaf blank. Two pages 127, also erratic pagination after 166. Signatures: [A]–W in fours, X in six.

The only copy which I have seen was one kindly loaned to me by Dr. Samuel A. Green, of Boston, Mass., purchased by him many years ago in Paris, France. It appears not to be in the various libraries which I have visited, but the British Museum has a copy.

1806

The | Monthly Anthology, | and | Boston Review, | Containing | Sketches and Reports | of | Philosophy, Religion, History, | Arts and Manners, | Omnes undique flosculos carpam atque delibem. | Vol. 3d | 1806. |

Boston | Published by | Munroe & Francis | N° 7 Court Street. | 1806 | Callender Sc° |

8vo. The appendix, entitled, "The Political Cabinet", consists of 96 pp. On pp. 39, ff. Jefferson's Message of February 19, 1806 and other documents are printed in part.

[*Same title*] Vol. 4th | 1807 | Boston | Published by | Munroe & Francis | N° 7 Court Street. | 1807 | Callender Sc° | The appendix of this fourth volume, also entitled, "The Political Cabinet", consists of 80 pp. On pp. 6, ff. is printed a "Letter from Capt. Clark", dated at "St. Louis, 23d Sept. 1806."

These descriptions are from a set in MHS. Also in WHS.

1807

Travels | in the | Interior Parts of America; | communicating | Discoveries | made in exploring | the Missouri, Red River and Washita, | by | Captains Lewis and Clark, Doctor Sibley, | and |

Mr. Dunbar; | with | a Statistical Account | of the | Countries adjacent. | As laid before the Senate, | by the | President of the United States. | In February, 1806, | and never before published in Great Britain. |

London: | Printed for Richard Phillips, 6, Bridge Street, | Blackfriars, | By J. G. Barnard, 57, Snow-hill. | 1807. |

8vo; title, verso blank; text in composite, pp. [3]–24, 17–116. Signatures: A—C, C—O in fours, P in two. Folded table of "Siouxs Proper" at p. 24 of first series of pagination.

This edition is part of Richard Phillips's A | Collection | of | Modern and Contemporary | Voyages | and | Travels: | . . . | . . . | . . . | . . . | . . . | . . . | . . . | . . . | . . . | Vol. VI. |

The copy described[1] is in HC. It is also in BM; C; CHC; NYSL; WHS.

1808

American | State Papers, | containing | Authentic Documents | relative to | the History, Politicks, Statisticks, &c. | of the | United States of America. | Communicated | to Congress by the President. |

Boston: | Printed by Munroe, Francis, & Parker, | No. 4, Cornhill. | 1808. |

8vo. On pp. 39, ff. Jefferson's Message of February 19, 1806 and other documents are printed in part; and on pp. 6, ff. the "Letter from Capt. Clark", dated at "St. Louis, 23d Sept. 1806." It is a reissue, with separate title-page, of the appendixes from the *Monthly Anthology*, vols. 3 and 4.

The description is from a copy in MHS. Also in WHS.[1]

---

[1] Jefferson's Message of February 19th, 1806, was printed many times in collected works, without the accompanying documents, of which the following is by no means a complete list: (1) *Addresses and Messages*. New York: Charles Lohman, 1837; (2) *Addresses and Messages*. New York: Edward Walker, 1841; (3) *Addresses and Messages*. New York: Edward Walker, 1846; (4) *True American*. By Joseph Coe. Concord, N. H.: Morrill, Silsby & Co., 1841; (5) *Statesman's Manual*. By E. Williams. New York: Edward Walker, 1853; (6) Richardson's *Messages and Papers of the Presidents*. Washington: Government Printing Office, 1896–99; (7) *Writings of Thomas Jefferson*. Edited by H. A. Washington. Washington, D. C.: Taylor & Maury, 1853–54; (8) *Writings*. [Idem]. New York: J. C. Riker, 1854–56; (9) *Works*. [Idem]. Philadelphia: J. B. Lippincott & Co., 1864; (10) *Works*. [Idem]. New York: Townsend MacCoun, 1884. — It is not in Paul Leicester Ford's collection of Jefferson's *Writings*.

COUNTERFEIT PUBLICATIONS

1809

The | Travels | of | Capts. Lewis & Clarke, | by order of the | Government of the United States, | performed in the years 1804, 1805, & 1806, | being upwards of three thousand miles, from | St. Louis, by way of the Missouri, and | Columbia Rivers, to the | Pacifick-Ocean: | Containing an Account of the Indian Tribes, who inhabit | the Western part of the Continent unexplored, | and unknown before. | With copious delineations of the manners, cus- | toms, religion, &c. of the Indians. | Compiled | From various authentic sources, and Documents. | To which is subjoined, | A Summary of the Statistical view of the Indian | Nations, from the Official Communication of | Meriwether Lewis. | Embellished with a Map of the Country inhabited by | the Western tribes of Indians, and five Engravings | of Indian Chiefs. |

Philadelphia: | Published by Hubbard Lester. | 1809. | Price — 1 dollar 62½ cts. |

12mo; title, with copyright on verso; "Recommendation" of Jefferson, verso blank; "Message", verso blank; "Introduction", pp. [vii]–xi; "Estimate", p. xii; "Travels to the Pacifick Ocean", pp. [13]–153; "Statistical View", pp. [154]–178; "Historical Sketches of the several Indian Tribes in Louisiana", pp. [179]–204; "Origin", pp. 204–228; "Observations", pp. [229]–292; "Anecdotes", pp. 293–300. Five portraits, of "Sioux Warrior", "Sioux Queen", "Mahas King", "Ottoes Queen", and "Serpentine Chief"; also folded map, entitled, "Map of the Country Inhabited by the Western Tribes of Indians". Two of the plates in different copies exhibit a curious metamorphosis, by serving in one case for masculinity and in the other for femininity, namely, as "Mahas King" and "Mahas Queen"; "Ottoes Chief" and "Ottoes Queen". Signatures: [A]–BB in sixes.

Copies: C; CHC; NL (lacks map); NYHS (two copies, one lacks map).

1809

The | Travels | of | Capts. Lewis & Clarke, | from | St. Louis, by way of the Missouri and Columbia Rivers, | to the | Pacific Ocean; | performed in the years 1804, 1805, & 1806, | by order of the | Government of the United States. | Containing | Delineations of the Manners, Customs, | Religion, &c. | Of the Indians, | compiled from | Various Authentic Sources, and Original Documents, | and | a Summary of the Statistical View of | the Indian Nations, | from the official communication of | Meriwether Lewis. | Illustrated with a Map of the Country, inhabited by the | Western Tribes of Indians. |

London: | Printed for Longman, Hurst, Rees, and Orme, | Paternoster Row. | 1809 |.[1]

8vo; title, with printer's name on verso; “Message”, pp. [iii]–iv; “Introduction,” pp. [v]–ix; one blank page; “Travels to the Pacific Ocean”, pp. [1]–156; “Statistical View”, pp. 157–183; “Historical Sketches of the several Indian Tribes in Louisiana”, pp. 184–210; “Origin of the American Indian Population”, pp. 211–237; “Observations”, pp. 238–307; “Common Names of some of the Trees”, etc., pp. 308–309; verso of p. 309 blank. P. 38 is misprinted 83. Folded “Map of the Country Inhabited by the Western Tribes of Indians”, engraved by Neele. Signatures: A in five, B–U in eights, X in two, Y in one.

Copies: BM; C; CHC; HC; NL; NYHS; NYSL.

1811

Die | Reisen | der Capitaine | Lewis und Clarke; | unternommen | auf Befehl der | Regierung der Vereinigten Staaten | in den Jahren 1804, 1805 und 1806, | über | eine Länderstrecke von mehr als 3000 Meilen, | von St. Louis, auf dem Missouri und | Columbia, nach dem stillen Meer. | Enthaltend: | Eine Beschreibung der Indianischen Völkerstämme, | welche dem westlichen Theil von Nord-America, | der uns bisher unbekannt und unentdeckt | war, bewohnen. | Samt | einer statistischen Uebersicht der Indianer Nationen, | aus dem Official Bericht von | Meriwether Lewis. | [Mit vier Abbildungen Indianischer Könige.] |

Libanon, (P.) | Gedruckt bey Jacob Stöver. — 1811. |.

18mo; title, verso blank; “Empfelung”, with “Vorbericht” on verso, 1 leaf; “Reise nach dem stillen Meer”, pp. [5]–23; “Statistische Uebersicht”, pp. 23–33; “Beobachtungen”, pp. 34–47; “Louisiana”, pp. 47–51; “Ueber den Ursprung der Indianer”, pp. 52–59; “Anekdote”, pp. 59–60. Signatures: 1–5 in sixes.

On p. 60 the publisher says: “☞ Die unerwartet grosse Ermunterung, die diese gegenwärtige Reisebeschreibung durch eine zahlreiche Subscription von einem geehrten Publikum erhalten hat, und wofür der Herausgeber hiermit seinen aufrichtigsten Dank abstattet” [etc.].

The only copy I have found is in the Historical Society of Pennsylvania (Cassel Collection).

---

[1] See *Eclectic Review* for November, 1809, p. 1052, for a caustic review of this publication, which is reprinted in *Monthly Anthology and Boston Review*, viii, p. 142. — ED.

1812

Die | Reisen | der Capitaine | Lewis und Clarke; | unternommen | auf Befehl der | Regierung der Vereinigten Staaten | in den Jahren 1804, 1805 und 1806, | über | eine Länderstrecke von mehr als 3000 Meilen, | von St. Louis, auf dem Missouri und | Columbia, nach dem stillen Meer. | Enthaltend: | Eine Beschreibung der Indianischen Völkerstämme, | welche den westlichen Theil von Nord-Amerika, | der uns bisher unbekannt und unentdeckt | war, bewohnen. | Samt | einer statistischen Uebersicht der Indianer Nationen, | aus dem Official Bericht von | Meriwether Lewis. | [Mit Abbildungen Indianischer Könige.] |

Friedrichstadt: | Gedruckt bey M. Bärtgis. — 1812. |

12mo; title, verso blank; "Empfehlung" [extract from Jefferson's Message], p. [3]; "Vorbericht", p. [4]; "Reise nach dem stillen Meer", pp. [5]–11; "Bericht des Capitains Clarke, in einem Briefe an den Gouvernör Harrison. Fort Madan, den 2ten April, 1806", pp. 12–15; "Brief des Capt. Clarke an seinen Bruder. St. Louis, den 22ten Sept. 1806", etc., pp. 15–24; "Statistische Uebersicht aller westlichen Indianer Stämme", pp. 24–36; "Beobachtungen über die Sitten u. Gebräuche die Indianer", pp. 36–51; "Louisiana", pp. 51–56; "Ueber den Ursprung der Indianer", pp. 56–64. Signatures: A–E in sixes, F in two. The third leaf of sig. D is misnumbered C_2. A complete copy, apparently, should have several cuts of Indian chiefs ("Abbildungen Indianischer Könige").

This little pamphlet, printed at Frederick, Maryland, is entirely unknown to bibliographers, and Seidensticker did not know of a single item printed there during the year 1812. The only copy I have located is owned by Charles H. Conover, Esq., of Chicago, who kindly loaned it to me for this study. It has not the cuts of Indian chiefs which the title-page calls for.

1812 (FISHER)

An | interesting Account | of the | Voyages and Travels | of | Captains Lewis and Clark, | in the Years 1804, 1805, and 1806. | Giving a faithful description of the river Missouri and | its source — of the various tribes of Indians through | which they passed — manners and customs — soil — climate | — commerce — gold and silver mines — animal and vege- | table productions interspersed with very enter- | taining anecdotes, and a variety of other useful and | pleasing information remarkably calculated to de- | light and instruct the readers. — To which is added a | complete dictionary of the Indian tongue. | By William Fisher, Esq. |

Baltimore. | Printed by Anthony Miltenberger, | For the Purchasers. | 1812. |

Sm. 12mo; two frontispieces, Lewis and Clark; title, verso blank; "Recommendation", p. (1); "Message", pp. (2); "Introduction", pp. [x]-xiv; "Estimate", p. xv; text, pp. [16]-326. Pp. 179 and 265 are mispaged 178 and 295, respectively. Signatures: [A]-Bb in sixes, Cc in one.

Copies: BM; BPL; C; CHC; NYHS.

1812 (FISHER)

New Travels | among the | Indians of North America; | being | a compilation, taken partly from the communications already | published, of | Captains Lewis and Clark, | to the | President of the United States; | and | partly from other authors who travelled among | the Various Tribes of Indians. | Containing | a variety of very pleasant anecdotes, remarkably calculated | to amuse and inform the mind of every curious reader; | with | a Dictionary of the Indian Tongue. | Compiled | by William Fisher, Esqr. |

Philadelphia: | Published by James Sharan. | J. Maxwell, printer. | 1812. |

12mo; two leaves with portraits of Lewis and Clark; title, with "Copyright secured" on the verso; a second title: "The | Voyages and Travels | of | Captains Lewis and Clarke", with verso blank; "Recommendation", p. (1); "Message", pp. (2); one blank page; "Introduction", pp. [vii]-xi; "An Estimate", etc. on p. xii; "Travels to the Pacific Ocean", etc., pp. [13]-153; "Statistical View", pp. [154]-178; "Historical Sketches of the several Indian Tribes in Louisiana", pp. [179]-204; "Origin", pp. 204-228; "Observations", pp. [229]-292; "Anecdotes", pp. [293]-300. The pagination of 155 is inverted in some copies. In most copies the second title-page is lacking. Signatures: Two leaves with portraits: | Main title-page, A—BB in sixes.

Copies: BM; C; CHC; NA; NL; NYHS; NYSL; WHS.

1813 (FISHER)

An | interesting Account | of the | Voyages and Travels | of | Captains Lewis and Clarke, | in the Years 1804-5, & 6. | Giving a faithful description of the river Missouri and | its source—of the various tribes of Indians through | which they passed—manners and customs—soil | —climate—commerce—gold and silver | mines—animal and vegetable | productions. | Interspersed | With very entertaining anecdotes, and a variety of | other useful and pleasing information, re- | markably calculated to delight and | instruct the readers. | To which is added | A complete Dictionary of the Indian Tongue | By William Fisher, Esq. |

Baltimore: | Printed and published by P. Mauro, | Nº 10, North Howard St. | 1813. |

12mo; title, verso blank; "Recommendation", p. (1); "Message", pp. [vi]–vii; "Introduction", pp. [viii]–xi; "Estimate", p. (1); text, pp. [13]–266. There are no pp. 125, 126, 149, 150, 179, 180, 209, 210; and pp. 173, 174 are repeated. Signatures: [A]–X in sixes, Y in three. Three illustrations, at pp. 35, 80, 230.

Copies: BPL (lacks one plate); C; CHC; NYSL; WHS.

1840

The | Journal | of | Lewis and Clarke, | to the Mouth of the Columbia River | beyond the Rocky Mountains. | In the Years 1804–5, & 6. | Giving a faithful description of the river Missouri | and its source — of the various tribes of Indians | through which they passed — manners and cus- | toms — soil — climate — commerce — gold and | silver mines — animal and vegetable | productions, &c. | New Edition, with Notes. | Revised, corrected, and illustrated with numerous | wood cuts. | To which is added | a complete dictionary of the Indian tongue. |

Dayton, O. | Published and sold by B. F. Ells. | John Wilson, Printer. | 1840. |

16mo; two leaves with portraits; title, with advertisement and copyright on the verso; extracts from "Message", etc., pp. (2); "Preface", pp. [ix]–xii; text, pp. [15]–224; "Dictionary of Indian Words and Phrases", pp. [225]–234; "Appendix", pp. 234–237; "Contents", pp. [238]–240. Page [xiii] is blank. Plates: Portraits of Lewis and of Clark, before the title; other illustrations on pp. [xiv], 18, 39, 44, 68, 82, 84, 98, 105, 111, 126, 138, 176, 222. Signatures: [1]–15 in eights.

Copies: BPL (lacks portraits); C; CHC; HSP; NYHS; WHS.

1851

The Journal of Lewis and Clarke. Dayton: Ells, Claflin & Co. 1851. 12mo, pp. 240.

This title is given in Sabin's *Dictionary of Books relating to America*, No. 40832. I have not been able to authenticate his reference, and it has not been found in any collection or library known to me.

GASS

1807

A Journal | of the | Voyages and Travels | of a Corps of Discovery, | under the command of Capt. Lewis and Capt. | Clarke of the army of the United States, | from | the mouth of the river Missouri through the | interior parts of North America | to the Pacific Ocean, | during the years 1804, 1805 & 1806. | Containing | An authentic relation of the most interesting transactions | during the expedition, — A description of the country, — | And an account of its inhabitants, soil, climate, curiosities | and vegetable and animal productions. | By Patrick Gass, | one of the persons employed in the expedition. | With | Geographical and Explanatory Notes | by the publisher. | [Copy-right secured according to law.] |

Pittsburgh, | printed by Zadok Cramer, | for David M'Keehan, Publisher and | Proprietor . . . . 1807. |

18mo; title, with copyright on verso; "Preface", pp. [iii]–viii; half-title, verso blank; text, pp. [11]–262. No illustrations. Signatures: A–Y in sixes, the last blank.

Copies: BA; BM (two copies); C; CHC; CHS; HC; HSP; LCP; NL; NYHS; NYSL; WHS.

1808

A | Journal | of the | Voyages and Travels | of | a Corps of Discovery, | under the Command of Captain Lewis and | Captain Clarke, of the Army of | the United States; | from the mouth of the | River Missouri, | through the | Interior Parts of North America, | to the Pacific Ocean; | during the years 1804, 1805, & 1806. | Containing | An Authentic Relation of the most interesting Transactions during | the Expedition: A Description of the Country: And an | Account of its Inhabitants, Soil, Climate, Curiosities, | and Vegetable and Animal Productions. | By Patrick Gass, | One of the Persons employed in the Expedition. |

Pittsburgh: Printed for David M'Keehan. | London: Re-printed for J. Budd, Bookseller to | His Royal Highness the Prince of | Wales, Pall-Mall. 1808. |

8vo; title, with printers' name on verso; "Advertisement by the English Publisher", pp. [iii]–iv; "Preface, by the American Publisher", pp. [1]–9;

one blank page; half-title to Journal, with verso blank; "Journal | of the | Voyages and Travels, &c. &c.", pp. 13–381; verso of the last page blank; "Books lately published by J. Budd", pp. (2). Signatures: [A] in two, B–BB in eights. Published in paper covers with label-title, "Gass's | Voyages | and | Travels | through | North America. | 9's."

Copies: AAS; CHC; HSP; MHS; NA; NL; NYHS; NYSL; WHS.

1810

Voyage | des Capitaines | Lewis et Clarke, | Depuis l'embouchure du Missouri, jusqu'à l'entrée | de la Colombia dans l'Océan Pacifique; | fait dans les années 1804, 1805 et 1806, | par ordre du gouvernement des États-Unis: | contenant | Le Journal authentique des Événements les plus remar- | quables du Voyage, ainsi que la Description des | Habitants, du Sol, du Climat, et des Productions | animales et végétales des pays situés à l'ouest de | l'Amerique Septentrionale. | Rédigé en Anglais par Patrice Gass, Employé dans | l'Expédition; | Et traduit en Français par A. J. N. Lallemant, | l'un des Secrétaires de la Marine. | Avec des Notes, deux Lettres du Capitaine Clarke, | et une Carte gravée par J. B. Tardieu. |

A Paris, | Chez Arthus-Bertrand, Libraire, rue Hautefeuille, n° 23. | 1810. |

8vo; half-title, with publisher's list on verso; title, verso blank; "Message", pp. [v]–vij; one blank page; "Préface de l'éditeur américain", pp. [ix]–xviij; text, pp. [1]–415; "Lettre du capitaine Clarke à S. E. le gouverneur Harrison", dated "Fort Mandanne, 2 avril 1805", pp. 416–422; "Lettre du capitaine Clarke à son frère le général Clarke", dated "Saint-Louis, 23 septembre 1806", pp. 423–432; "Table des Chapitres", pp. 433–443; verso of last page blank. Colophon at the foot of p. 443, thus: "De l'Imprimerie de M^{e} V^{e} Jeunehomme, | Rue Hautefeuille, n° 20." Page 358 is mispaged 258. Signatures: Nine preliminary leaves, sig. 1–27 in eights, 28 in six. Folded map, engraved by J. B. Tardieu, entitled: "Carte | Pour servir au Voyage | des Cap^{es} Lewis et Clarke, | à l'Océan Pacifique." It measures 7¾ by 9½ inches.

Copies: BM; BPL; CHC; HC; NYHS; NYSL.

1810

A | Journal | of the | Voyages and Travels | of a Corps of Discovery, | under the command of Capt. Lewis and Capt. | Clarke of the army of the United States, | from | the mouth of the river Missouri through the | interior parts of North America | to the Pacific Ocean, | During the Years 1804, 1805 and 1806. | Containing | An authentic relation of the most interesting transac- | tions during the expedition, — A description of | the country, — And an account of its inhabi- | tants, soil, climate, curiosities and ve- | getable and animal productions. | By Patrick Gass, | one of the persons employed in the expedition. | With geographical and explanatory notes. | Second Edition — with six engravings. | [Copy-Right secured according to Law.] |

Philadelphia: | Printed for Mathew Carey, | No. 122, Market-street. | 1810. |

12mo; title, with copyright on verso; "Preface by the publisher of the first edition", pp. [iii]–viii; half-title, with verso blank, forming pp. [9–10]; "Journal", pp. [11]–262. Signatures: A–Y in sixes, the last leaf blank. This is the first Gass which has plates, as follows: Frontispiece, to p. 220, "A Canoe striking on a Tree"; opp. p. 26, "Captains Lewis & Clark holding a Council with the Indians"; opp. p. 60, "Captain Clark & his men building a line of Huts"; opp. p. 95, "Captain Clark and his men shooting Bears"; opp. p. 239, "An American having struck a Bear but not killed him, escapes into a Tree"; opp. p. 245, "Captain Lewis shooting an Indian." These cuts are very crude, artistically considered, and are insets.

The subject-matter and location of the plates in Carey's three editions, 1810, 1811, 1812, are the same, but the plates as engraved differ in each edition. For example, the bear in the plate to page 239 of the 1810 edition looks like a Newfoundland dog; in the other editions he looks either like a pig or anything other than a bear. On the whole, the best illustrations are those of the 1812 edition, and this has a map of Louisiana not in the preceding editions. The three editions are typographically different.

Copies of 1810 edition: CHC; HC; HSP; LCP; NYHS; NYSL; WHS.

1811

Journal | of the | Voyages and Travels | of | a Corps of Discovery, | Under the command of Capt. Lewis and Capt. Clarke | of the army of the United States, | from the mouth of the river Missouri through | the interior parts of North America | to the Pacific Ocean, | During the Years 1804, 1805, and 1806. | Containing | An authentic relation of the most interesting transactions | during the expedition; a description of the country; | and an account of its inhabitants, soil, cli- | mate, curiosities, and vegetable | and animal productions. | By Patrick Gass, | One of the persons employed in the expedition. | With geographical and explanatory Notes. | Third Edition — With six Engravings. | [Copy-right secured according to Law.] |

Printed for Mathew Carey, | No. 122 Market Street, | Philadelphia. | 1811. |

12mo; title, with copyright on verso; "Preface. By the publisher of the first edition", pp. [iii]–viii; half-title (Journal | of the | Voyages and Travels | of | a Corps of Discovery.), with verso blank; text, pp. [11]–262. Page 170 is misnumbered 70. Signatures: A–X in sixes, Y in five. Six illustrations to pp. 26, 60, 95, 220 (frontispiece), 239 and 245.

Copies: BPL (lacks one plate); CHC; NL (imperfect); WHS.

1812

Journal | of the | Voyages and Travels | of | a Corps of Discovery, | Under the command of Capt. Lewis and Capt. Clarke | of the army of the United States, | from the mouth of the river Missouri through the | interior parts of North America to | the Pacific Ocean, | During the Years 1804, 1805, and 1806. | Containing | An authentic relation of the most interesting transactions during the expedi- | tion; a description of the country; and an account of its inhabitants, | soil, climate, curiosities, and vegetable and animal productions. | By Patrick Gass, | One of the persons employed in the expedition. | With geographical and explanatory notes. | Fourth Edition — with six Engravings. | [Copyright secured according to Law.] |

Printed for Mathew Carey, | No. 122, Market-Street, | Philadelphia, | 1812. |

12mo; "Review of this Work", pp. (2); title, with copyright on verso; "Preface. By the publisher of the first edition", pp. [v]–x; "Journal", pp. [11]–262. Small folded map of "Louisiana", at the beginning, measuring 7⅝ by 5¾ inches; frontispiece to p. 220, and also plates to pp. 26, 60, 95, 239 and 245. Signatures: A–Y in sixes, the last leaf being blank.

Copies: AAS (this is Isaiah Thomas's copy, in the original roan binding); CHC; NL; NYHS (lacks map).

1814

Tagebuch | einer | Entdeckungs-Reise | durch | Nord-America, | von | der Mündung des Missuri an bis zum Einfluss der | Columbia in den stillen Ocean, | gemacht | in den Jahren 1804, 1805 und 1806, | auf | Befel der Regierung der Vereinigten Staaten, | von | den beiden Capitäns Lewis und Clarke. | Uebersetzt | von | Ph. Ch. Weyland. | Mit einer Charte. |

Weimar, | im Verlage des H. S. privil. Landes-Industrie-Comptoirs. | 1814. |

8vo; title, verso blank; "Bothschaft des Präsidenten der Vereinigten Staaten an die beiden Kammern des Congresses", pp. iii–v; "Vorbericht des Uebersetzers", pp. vi–viii; "Inhalt", pp. ix–x; half-title to text, with verso blank;

text, in twenty-five chapters, pp. [3]–345; "Schreiben vom Capitän Clarke an Se. Excell. den Gouverneur Harrison", pp. [346]–352; "Schreiben vom Capitän Clarke an seinen Bruder, den General Clarke", pp. [353]–362. Map, as below. Signatures: *a* in five, A–Y in eights, Z in five.

This is a translation made from the French edition (Paris, 1810), and is so uncommon in the United States that Dr. Coues had never seen it, and was unable to identify it. I have not traced a copy in any of the many large libraries which I have consulted, and it was only after some difficulty that I succeeded in obtaining a copy from Germany which contains a later map. Subsequently, by good fortune, I procured a perfect copy with the correct map. This chart measures 7½ by 9¼ inches, and is entitled: "Carte | Pour Servir au Voyage | des Capes Lewis et Clarke, | à l'Océan Pacifique." The similar map in the French edition was engraved by Tardieu, but no engraver's name is attached to the German copy. In my other copy of the book, this map is replaced by a much larger colored map, possibly designed for a reissue of the book, and is entitled: "Nord | America | entworfen u. gezeichnet | von | C. F. Weiland. | Weimar | im Verlage des Geograph. Instituts. | 1839." It measures 12½ by 14¼ inches, and was probably also included in Stieler's atlas of the period. There is a copy of the book in the British Museum. In Germany it is classed as "Selten" (rare). The German translator, Philipp Christoph Weyland, in his preface refers to Gass as "Sir Patrick Gass." Weyland was the translator of several works of travel.

1847

Lewis and Clarke's | Journal | to the | Rocky Mountains | In the years 1804, –5, –6; | as related by | Patrick Gass, | one of the officers in the expedition. | New Edition with Numerous Engravings. |
Dayton, | Published by Ells, Claflin, & Co. | 1847. |

12mo; frontispiece, with recto blank; title, with copyright and first part of "Preface" on verso; the "Preface" extends from pp. [iv]–viii; two leaves with portraits of Lewis and Clark; "Journal", pp. [13]–238; "Books published by Ells, Claflin, & Co.", etc., pp. (2). Portraits on pp. [x] and [xi], and illustrations on pp. 23, 27, 40, 47, 51, 62, 79, 91, 98, 117, 131, 151, 173, 196, 222, and frontispiece. Signature: [1]–15 in eights.
Copies: CHC; NYHS; WHS.

1852

Patrick Gass. | [To accompany bill H. R. No. 152.] | January 29, 1852. | Mr. G. W. Thompson, from the Committee on Private Land Claims, made | the following | Report: | The Committee on Private Land Claims, to whom was referred the petition | of Patrick Gass, report: | [*followed by the text of the Report*]

8vo; pp. 2. House Report No. 56, 32d Congress, 1st Session.

1854

Patrick Gass. | [To accompany bill H. R. No. 419.] | June 23, 1854. | Mr. Hillyer, from the Committee on Private Land Claims, made the | following | Report. | The Committee on Private Land Claims, to whom was referred the petition | of Patrick Gass, report: | [*followed by the text of the Report*]

8vo; pp. 2. House Report No. 215, 33d Congress, 1st Session.

1859

The | Life and Times | of | Patrick Gass, | now sole survivor | of the overland expedition to the Pacific, | under Lewis and Clark, in 1804-5-6; | also, | a soldier in the war with Great Britain, from | 1812 to 1815, and a participant in the | Battle of Lundy's Lane. | Together with | Gass' Journal of the Expedition condensed; | — and — | sketches of some events occurring during the | last century in the upper Ohio country, | biographies, reminiscences, etc. | By J. G. Jacob. |

Jacob & Smith, | Publishers and Printers, Wellsburg, Va. | 1859. |

12mo; title, with copyright on verso; "Preface", pp. [iii]–v; "Contents", pp. [vi]–viii; "Life and Times of Patrick Gass", pp. [9]–193; portrait of Washington on p. 194; "Civil History", pp. [195]–280. No signatures. Frontispiece portrait of Gass, with autograph; "Mandan Indians", to p. 59; "Big White-Ball Costume", to p. 108; tailpiece on p. 202; "Going to Church in Old Times", to p. 248.

Dr. Elliott Coues learned from the author of this volume that the substance of it appeared in the columns of the Wellsburg (Va.) *Herald* before it was made up in book form.

Copies: BA; BPL; CHC; HSP; NYHS; NYSL; WHS.

1904

[A Journal of the Voyages and Travels of a Corps of Discovery, etc., by Patrick Gass.]

A. C. McClurg & Co., of Chicago, have announced that they will issue during the year 1904 a reprint of Gass's *Journal,* in one volume, with an introduction by James K. Hosmer, uniform with their library edition of the Biddle version of Lewis and Clark, published in 1902.

GENUINE HISTORY

1814

History | of | the Expedition | under the command of | Captains Lewis and Clark, | to | the Sources of the Missouri, | thence | across the Rocky Mountains | and down the | River Columbia to the Pacific Ocean. | Performed during the years 1804–5–6. | By order of the | Government of the United States. | Prepared for the press | by Paul Allen, Esquire. | In two volumes. | Vol. I. [II.] |

Philadelphia: | Published by Bradford and Inskeep; and | Abm: H. Inskeep, New York. | J. Maxwell, Printer. | 1814. |

2 vols; 8vo. Vol. I: Title, with copyright on verso; "Preface", signed by Paul Allen, pp. [iii]–v; p. [vi] blank; "Life of Captain Lewis", pp. [vii]–xxiii; p. [xxiv] blank; "Contents", pp. [xxv]–xxviii; text, pp. [1]–470. Plates: "Fortification", opp. 63; "The Falls and Portage", opp. p. 261; large folded map entitled, "A | Map of | Lewis and Clark's Track, | Across the Western Portion of | North America | From the | Mississippi to the Pacific Ocean; | By Order of the Executive | of the | United States. | in 1804. 5 & 6. | Copied by Samuel Lewis from the | Original Drawing of W$^{\underline{m}}$ Clark. | Sam^{l} Harrison fc^{t} | " Vol. II: Title, with copyright on verso; "Contents", pp. [iii]–ix; one blank page; text, pp. [1]–433; p. [434] blank; "Appendix", pp. [435]–522. Plates: "Great Falls of Columbia River", opp. p. 31; "The Great Shoot or Rapid", opp. p. 52; "Mouth of Columbia River", opp. p. 70. Signatures: Vol. I–[a]–c in fours, d in two, B–30 in fours, the last leaf blank. Vol. II–[A] in six (the first blank), B–3u in fours, 3x in one.

Copies: AAS; BA; BM; C; CHC; HC (two copies); HSP; LCP; NL (two copies, one without the map); NYHS (uncut copy, with titles on original board covers); NYSL; WHS.

1814

Travels | to the | Source of the Missouri River | and across the | American Continent | to the | Pacific Ocean. | Performed | by Order of the Government of the United States, | in the years | 1804, 1805, and 1806. | By Captains Lewis and Clarke. | Published from the Official Report, | and | illustrated by a map of the route, and other maps. |

London: | Printed for Longman, Hurst, Rees, Orme, and Brown, | Paternoster-Row. | 1814. |

4to; half-title, with "J. G. Barnard, | Skinner-street, London", on the verso; title, verso blank; "Preface, by the English Editor", pp. [v]–xiv, signed at end by "Thomas Rees", and dated at "Barnard's Inn, April 30, 1814"; "Contents", pp. [xv]–xxiv; text, pp. [1]–663; catalogue of "Works published" on verso of p. 663. P. 323 is misprinted 223. Signatures: [a] in two, b–c in fours, d in two; B–4P in fours. Large folded map, "Neele. sculp. 352. Strand"; five plates on three leaves, intended for pp. 47, 191, 364, 379, 398.

Copies: BM (two copies); C; CHC; MHS; NYHS (imperfect); NYSL.

1815

Travels | to the source of | the Missouri River | and across the | American Continent | to | the Pacific Ocean. | Performed by order of | the government of the United States, | in the years | 1804, 1805, and 1806. | By Captains Lewis and Clarke. | Published from the official report, | and illustrated by a map of the route, | and other maps. | A new edition, in three volumes. | Vol. I. [II.] [III.] |

London: | Printed for Longman, Hurst, Rees, Orme, and Brown, | Paternoster-Row. | 1815. |

3 vols; 8vo. Vol. I: Title, with "Printed by A. Strahan, Printers-Street, London" on verso; "Preface, by the English editor", signed by Thomas Rees, pp. [iii]–xix; p. [xx] blank; "Contents of the first volume", pp. [xxi]–xxvi; text, pp. [1]–411; verso of last page blank. Plates: Large folded map engraved by Neele; "Ancient Fortification on the Missouri", opp. p. 87 (but the plate is misnumbered 47); "Great Falls of the Missouri", opp. p. 191. Vol. II: Title, with printer's name on verso; "Contents of the second volume", pp. [v]–xii; text, pp. [1]–434. Plates: "Great Falls of Columbia River", opp. p. 364; "Lower Falls of the Columbia", opp. p. 379; "Mouth of Columbia River", opp. p. 398. Vol. III: Title, with printer's name on verso; "Contents of the third volume", pp. [iii]–xii; text, pp. [1]–394. No plates. Signatures: Vol. I — A in eight, a in eight (the last three represented only by stubs), B–CC in eights, DD in four, EE in two. Vol. II — a in six (the first being blank), B–EE in eights, FF in one. Vol. III — A in six, B–BB in eights, CC in four, DD in one.

Copies: BM; C; CHC; HSP; NL.

1817

Travels | to the source of | the Missouri River, | and across the | American Continent | to | the Pacific Ocean. | Performed by order of | the government of the United States, | in the years | 1804, 1805, and 1806. | By Captains Lewis and Clarke. | Published from the official report, | and illustrated by a map of the route, | and other maps. | A new edition, in three volumes. | Vol. I. [II.] [III.] |

London: | Printed for Longman, Hurst, Rees, Orme, and Brown, | Paternoster-Row. | 1817.

This edition collates almost the same as the preceding London edition of 1815. The large map and plates are the same in both, but the editions differ typographically; the 1817 edition is entirely reset. The following variations should be noted: A comma at the end of the third line of the title-pages, not in the 1815 edition. On the verso of sig. a_8, in vol. i, "Directions for placing the Maps", not in the 1815 edition. A half-title to vol. ii, with verso blank, making sig. A in six, of which this half-title is the first leaf. In vol. iii sig. A is arranged in six leaves, as follows: Title, with printer's name on verso; "Contents of the third volume", pp. [iii]–xii.

Copies: CHC; HSP; WHS.

1817

History | of | the Expedition | under the command of | Captains Lewis and Clarke, | to | the Sources of the Missouri, | thence | across the Rocky Mountains | and down the | River Columbia to the Pacific Ocean. | Performed during the years 1804–5–6. | By order of the | Government of the United States. | Prepared for the press | by Paul Allen, Esq. | With the life of Captain Lewis, | by T. Jefferson, | President of the United States of America. | In two volumes. | Vol. I. [II.] |

Philadelphia: Published by Bradford and Inskeep; and Abm. H. | Inskeep, New York. | Dublin: | Printed by J. Christie, 170, James's-Street. | 1817. |

2 vols; 8vo. Vol. I: Title, with American copyright on verso; "Contents of the first volume", pp. (6); "Preface", pp. [iii]–v; p. [vi] blank; "Life of Captain Lewis", pp. [vii]–xxvii; p. [xxviii] blank; text, pp. [1]–588. P. viii is misprinted iiiv, and p. 418 is given as 18. Folded map on thin paper, copied in reduced size after that of the 1814 Philadelphia edition; plates of "Fortification", opp. p. 78; "Principal Cascade of the Missouri", a view, opp. p. 326; "The Falls and Portage", opp. p. 327. Vol. II: Title, with American copyright on verso; "Contents of the second volume", pp. [i]–xii; "Subscribers", pp. (3); "Directions for placing the plates" in both volumes, p. (1); text, pp. [3]–544; "Appendix", pp. [545]–643, verso of last leaf blank. The appendix consists of "Observations and reflections on the present and future state of Upper Louisiana"; "Estimate of the Western Indians"; "Reflections and Remarks"; "A summary statement of the rivers", etc. P. 261 is mispaged 2. Plates of "Great Falls of Columbia River", opp. p. 40; "The Great Shoot or Rapid", opp. p. 67; "Mouth of Columbia River", opp. p. 90. Signatures: Vol. I—[a] for title, b in six, B–4H in fours. Vol. II—[a] for title, b and c in fours, [A] in three, B–4M in fours, 4N in two.

Copies: C; CHC; MHS; NL; WHS.

1816–1818

Reize | naar | de Bronnen van den Missouri, | en door het vaste Land van America | naar de Zuidzee. | Gedaan op last van de Regering der Vereenigde Staten van America, | in de jaren 1804, 1805 en 1806. | Door de Kapiteins | Lewis en Clarke. | Met eene Kaart. | Uit het Engelsch vertaald door | N. G. Van Kampen. | Eerste [Tweede] [Derde en Laatste] Deel. | [*Star*] |

Te Dordrecht, | bij A. Blussé & Zoon. | 1816. |

3 vols; 8vo. Vol. I: Title, verso blank; "Voorberigt van den Vertaler", pp. [iii]–xviii; "Voorberigt van den Engelschen Uitgever", pp. [xix]–xxviii; "Inhoud", pp. xxix–xxxii; text, pp. [1]–398; large folded "Kaart | der Reizen van Lewis en Clarke | door het Westelijk gedeelte van | Noord Amerika, | van den | Mississippi tot de Zuid Zee, | op last van de Uitvoerende Magt der | Vereenigde Staten, | in 1804, 5 en 6. | C. van Baarsel en Zoon, sculps." Vol. II: Title, verso blank; "Inhoud", pp. [iii]–viii; text, pp. [1]–390; p. 98 is mispaged 70. Vol. III: Title, verso blank; "Inhoud", pp. [v]–xii; text, pp. [1]–326; "Bijlagen", pp. 327–335; verso of p. 335 blank; pp. 119, 161 and 300 are mispaged 116, 163 and 30, respectively. Signatures: Vol. I — * and ** in eights, A–Bb in eights, the last apparently completed by one blank leaf. Vol. II — * in four, A–Aa in eights, Bb in four, the last apparently completed by one blank leaf. Vol. III — * in six, one being blank, A–X in eights. In Vol. I sig. O_6 is misprinted O_5; and in Vol. II. sig. A_2 is misprinted A_5.

In this work the imprints of the first two volumes agree, save that the second volume is dated 1817; but the third volume has the following imprint: "Te Dordrecht, | bij Blussé en Van Braam. | 1818. |" The only copy which I have seen is in the Library of Congress. It is also in WHS.

1842–1901

History | of | the Expedition | under the command of | Captains Lewis and Clarke, | to | the sources of the Missouri, thence across the Rocky | Mountains, and down the River Columbia to the | Pacific Ocean: performed during the | Years 1804, 1805, 1806, | by order of the | Government of the United States. | Prepared for the press | by Paul Allen, Esq. | Revised, and abridged by the omission of umimportant [*sic*] de- | tails, with an introduction and notes, | by Archibald McVickar. | In two volumes. | Vol. I. [II.] |

New-York: | Harper and Brothers, 82 Cliff-St. | 1842. |

2 vols.; 18 mo. Vol. I: — Title, with copyright on verso; "Advertisement", pp. [iii]–vi; "Contents", pp. [i]–v; p. [vi] blank; "Introduction", pp. [vii]–li; p. [lii] blank; text, pp. [53]–371; "Catalogue of

Books", on verso of p. 371. Vol. II: — Title, with copyright on verso; "Contents", pp. [iii]–x; text, pp. [9]–338; "Appendix", pp. [339]–395; verso of p. 395 blank. Plates: Vol. I, "Map of Lewis and Clark's, Track across the Western Portion of North America, . . . Drawn & Engraved by W. G. Evans N. York", to face title; "Fortification" opp. p. 87; "Principal Cascade of the Missouri" opp. p. 223; "The Falls & Portage" opp. p. 234. Vol. II, "Great Falls of Columbia River" opp. p. 64; "The Great Shoot or Rapid" opp. p. 79; "Mouth of Columbia River" opp. p. 92. Signatures: Vol. I, 3 prel. leaves, A–H h in sixes; x_2 misprinted H_2. Vol. II, 5 prel. leaves, A in two, B–K k in sixes.

The foregoing description is from a set of the original edition in the Library of Congress. It is a curious fact that all of the editions which I have seen, even those of a late date, perpetuate an error in the stereotype plates, namely "unimportant" on the title-pages, which is given as "umimportant."

By the kindness of Mr. A. V. S. Anthony, of Harper and Brothers, I have been able to test my record of subsequent editions by the books of the publishers. He also states that "several small editions have been published since 1891, of which no record was kept." The following is a conspectus of the issues of this oft-printed work, brought out originally in Harpers' popular "Family Library": — September, 1842; January, 1843; May, 1843; January, 1844; July, 1845; April, 1847; May, 1850; August, 1851; June, 1855; April, 1858; November, 1860; February, 1868; March, 1871 (vol. II); April, 1872 (vol. I); February, 1874 (vol. II); December, 1875 (vol. I); 1876 (copy in NYHS, but publishers have no record); February, 1881; March, 1882; July, 1883; April, 1886; February, 1887; June, 1891; June, 1901; several undated editions of late publication (one such in NYHS).

Sabin in his *Dictionary of Books relating to America* mentions a London, 1842, edition of McVickar, but it is not in the British Museum. I have not been able to verify his statement, yet it is not unlikely that the American publishers may have made up some sets for the English market.

1893

History of the Expedition | under the command of | Lewis and Clark, | To the Sources of the Missouri River, thence across the Rocky Mountains and | down the Columbia River to the Pacific Ocean, performed during | the Years 1804–5–6, by Order of the | Government of the United States. | A New Edition, | Faithfully Reprinted from the only Authorized Edition of 1814, with Copious | Critical Commentary, Prepared upon Examination of Unpublished | Official Archives and Many Other Sources of Information, | Including a Diligent Study of the | Original Manuscript Journals | and | Field Notebooks of the Explorers, | together with | A New Biographical and Bibliographical Introduction, New Maps | and other Illustrations, and a Complete

Index, | by | Elliott Coues, | Late Captain and Assistant Surgeon, United States Army, | Late Secretary and Naturalist, United States Geological Survey, | Member of the National Academy of Sciences, etc. | In Four Volumes. | Vol. I. [–IV.] |

New York. | Francis P. Harper. | 1893. |

4 vols., 8vo. Vol. I: Half-title, with certification of the edition on verso; title, with copyright on verso; "Dedication", verso blank; "Preface to the new edition", pp. v–x; "Contents of the first volume", pp. xi–xii; "Preface to the original edition", pp. xiii–xiv; "Memoir of Meriwether Lewis", pp. xv–xlii; "Supplement to Jefferson's Memoir of Meriwether Lewis. By Dr. Coues", pp. xliii–lxii; "Memoir of William Clark. By Dr. Coues", pp. lxiii–xcvii; p. [xcviii] blank; "Memoir of Patrick Gass. By Dr. Coues", pp. xciv–cvi; "Bibliographical Introduction. By Dr. Coues", pp. cvii–cxxxii; text, pp. [1]–352; frontispiece portrait of Lewis, and facsimiles of holograph letters of Lewis and of Clark, opposite pp. xv and lxiii. Vol. II: Half-title, verso blank; title, with copyright on verso; "Contents of the second volume", pp. v–vi; text pp. 353–820; frontispiece portrait of Clark. Vol. III: Half-title, verso blank; title, with copyright on verso; "Contents of the third volume", pp. v–vi; text, pp. 821–1213; p. [1214] blank; "Appendix I. Essay on an Indian policy", pp. 1215–1243; "Appendix II. Estimate of the western Indians", pp. 1244–1256; "Appendix III. Summary statement", pp. 1257–1263; "Appendix IV. Meteorological register", pp. 1264–1298. Vol. IV: Half-title, verso blank; title, with copyright on verso; "List of maps and other plates", p. v; one blank page; folded "Tabular statement of the lineal issue of William Clark"; folded "Tabular statement of the living issue of William Clark"; "Index", pp. 1299–1364; plans and maps as follows: "Fortification", "The Falls and Portage", "Great Falls of Columbia River", "The Great Shoot or Rapid", "Mouth of Columbia River", folded "Map of Lewis and Clark's Track", folded "Map of part of the Continent of North America"; "New Map of the Route of Lewis and Clark in 1804–5–6, Prepared by Elliott Coues for comparison with Clark's Map of 1814". No signatures. The edition consisted of one thousand copies, of which Nos. 1 to 200 were printed on handmade paper, and Nos. 201 to 1000 on fine book paper.

Dr. Coues did not believe in strictly adhering to the text of the 1814 edition. "I have not found it necessary to make a fetich of that text", is his declaration. So in his other edited works he took liberties with originals; for example, in *Lárpenteur* he tells us that "there was scarcely a sentence in it all that did not need to be recast to some extent in preparing the manuscript for publication. But this is a mere matter of grammar; I have simply helped the author to express himself; the sense and sentiment are his own, if the style is not." Of the Lewis and Clark he says, "I have punctiliously preserved the orthography of proper names in all their variance and eccentricity; and wherever I have amplified any statement in the text, or diverted the sense of a passage by a hair's breadth, square brackets indicate the fact. Yet I have not hesitated to touch the text here and there in a mere matter of grammar or punctuation. For the rest, I have prepared new titles and synopses of the chapters, and new headlines of the pages; one new chapter is interpolated, by digesting the Clatsop diary for that purpose. Excepting in these several respects, the present edition is literally true to the original. Nothing whatever is omitted."

Copies: AAS; BA; BPL; C; CHC; HC; LCP; NA; NL; NYHS; NYSL; WHS.

1902

History | of | the Expedition | under the command of | Captains Lewis | and Clark | to | the sources of the Missouri, across the Rocky | Mountains, down the Columbia River | to the Pacific in 1804–6 | A reprint of the edition of 1814 to | which all the members of the | expedition contributed | with maps | In three volumes | Vol. I. [II.] [III.]

New Amsterdam Book Company | Publishers: New York, 1902 |

3 vols; sm. 8vo. Vol. I: Title, verso blank; "Preface", pp. v–vii; one blank page; "Life of Captain Lewis", pp. ix–xxvii; one blank page; "Contents", pp. xxix–xxxiii; one blank page; text, pp. 35–416; portrait frontispiece of Lewis; plan of "Fortification", opp. p. 108; "The Falls and Portage", opp. p. 347. Vol. II: Title, verso blank; "Contents", pp. iii–ix; one blank page; text, pp. 11–410, with two blank leaves between pp. 406 and 407; a final blank leaf to complete the last signature; portrait frontispiece of Clark; "Great Falls of Columbia River", opp. p. 210; "The Great Shoot", etc., opp. p. 234; "Mouth of Columbia River", opp. p. 257. Vol. III: Title, verso blank; "Contents", pp. iii–xi; one blank page; text, pp. 13–283; one blank page; "Appendix", pp. 285–382; "The Commonwealth Library", pp. (4). Signatures: Vol. I: [1]–26 in eights, the first leaf blank; Vol. II: [1] to 10 in eights, 11 in four, 12 in four, 12–26 in eights. Vol. III: [1] to 24 in eights, and one additional leaf. Large folded map in a pocket of Vol. III, entitled, "A Map of Lewis and Clark's Track . . . Sam Harrison fc^{t}". This edition is included in the series known as "The Commonwealth Library". Described from a set in the Library of Congress. There is also a special edition on large paper.

An issue for the Canadian market from the same sheets and in the same binding of "The Commonwealth Library", has the following imprint on the title-pages: "George N. Morang & Company, Limited | Toronto | ". This is the only variation from the regular New York edition.

1902

History | of | the Expedition | of | Captains Lewis and Clark | 1804–5–6 | Reprinted from the edition of 1814 | With introduction and Index | by | James K. Hosmer, LL.D., | [*Four lines*] | In Two Volumes, with Portraits and Maps | Volume I. [II.] | Chicago | A. C. McClurg & Co. | 1902 |

2 vols; 8vo. Vol. I: Half-title, verso blank; title, with copyright, etc. on verso; facsimile of 1814 title and original copyright, pp. (2); "Publishers' Note", with verso blank, one leaf; "Contents of Volume I", pp. [ix]–xiii; one blank leaf; "List of Portraits and Maps", with verso blank, one leaf; "Introduction", pp. [xvii]–xxxv; "Preface To the Edition of 1814", pp. [xxxvii]–xxxix; one blank leaf; "Life of Captain Lewis", pp. xli–lvi; half-title to text, verso blank; text, pp. [1]–500. Maps and portraits as shown in the volume itself. Vol. II: Half-title, verso blank; title, with copyright, etc. on verso; "Contents of Volume II", pp. [v]–xi; one blank page; "List of Portraits and Maps", with verso blank, one leaf; text, pp. [1]–461; p. [462] blank; "Appendix", pp. [463]–550; "Index", pp. [551]–586. Maps and portraits as shown in the volume itself. Described from a set in the Library of Congress.

1904

History of the Expedition under the Command of Captains Lewis and Clark to the Sources of the Missouri, Across the Rocky Mountains, Down the Columbia River to the Pacific in 1804–6. With an account of the Louisiana Purchase, by Prof. John Bach MacMaster, and an introduction identifying the route, by Ripley Hitchcock. New York: A. S. Barnes & Co., 1904.

12mo; 3 vols. This edition is included in "The Trail Makers" series. The title is taken from the publishers' circular announcement.

MISCELLANEA

1804

Report | of | the Committee | of | Commerce and Manufactures, | who were instructed, | by a Resolution of this House, | of the 18th ult. | "To Enquire | into the | expediency of authorising | the | President of the United States, | to employ persons | to explore such parts of the province | of | Louisiana, | as he may deem proper". | 8th March, 1804. | Read, and ordered to be committed to a committee of the | whole House, on Wednesday next. |

8vo; title, verso blank; text, pp. [3]–7; verso of last leaf blank. Merely has an allusion to Lewis and Clark on p. 4, who are there designated as "two enterprising conductors", etc.

1806

Message | from the | President of the United States, | containing his | Communication | to | both houses of Congress, | at the commencement | of the Second Session of the Ninth Congress. | 2d December, 1806. | Printed by Order of the Senate. |
Washington City: | Printed by Duane & Son. | 1806. |

8vo; title, verso blank; text, pp. [3]–12. In this message Jefferson refers incidentally to Lewis and Clark, and mentions that "they have traced the Missouri nearly to its source."

1806

Report | of the Committee | appointed | on the third instant, | on so much of the | Message of the President | of the | United States | as relates to | the farther exploring | of the | western waters. | December 22, 1806. | Referred to a committee of the whole House on Thursday next. |
City of Washington: | A. & G. Way, Printers. | 1806. |

8vo; title, verso blank; text, p. [1], with verso blank. Refers to Lewis and Clark.

1806? — PROPOSALS FOR PUBLISHING FRAZER'S JOURNAL[1]

[From a MS. in the Library of the Wisconsin Historical Society.]

Proposals for publishing by subscription *Robert Frazer's Journal*, from St. Louis in Louisiana to the Pacific ocean, — containing an accurate description of the Missouri and its several branches, of the mountains separating the eastern from the western waters, of the Columbia River and the Bay it forms on the Pacific ocean, of the face of the country in general; of the several tribes of Indians on the Missouri and Columbia rivers; of the vegetable, animal [and mineral] productions discovered in those extensive regions, the latitudes and longitudes of some of the most remarkable places, — together with a variety of curious and interesting occurrences during a voyage of 2 years 4 months and 9 days, conducted by Captains Lewis and Clark.

---

[1] Early in the first decade of our [the nineteenth] century a brother of my father sold a hat in Vermont to Robert Frazer, a fencing-master there, who absconded without paying for it. This Frazer enlisted under Capt. Lewis, and his name was given to a rapid and a creek near the head-waters of the Missouri. Before Frazer's return to St. Louis, my uncle himself had removed thither and was managing the hotel to which Frazer came for entertainment. Each recognized the other, and my uncle had no difficulty in collecting his debt. But Frazer proved to be one of the seven journalists [of the Lewis and Clark expedition] and purposed to print his journal, he having, as well as Gass, obtained permission from Capt. Lewis. His prospectus, which of necessity was written, since there was no printing in St. Louis till 1808, shows beautiful chirography, and promised a volume of four hundred pages. A copy of it is in my hands, which came to my father in Vermont from his brother at the West. — James Davie Butler, in "The New Found Journal of Charles Floyd", *Proceedings* of American Antiquarian Soc., April 25th, 1894.

Later, Professor Butler presented this MS. prospectus to the Wisconsin Historical Society, as above. Apparently there was insufficient patronage, for the proposed book was not published. The whereabouts of the Frazer Journal is unknown to the present Editor. — Ed.

Published by permission of Capt. Meriwether Lewis. This work will be contained in about 400 pages octavo, and will be put to the press as soon as there shall be a sufficient subscription to defray the expenses. Price to subscribers three dollars.

1807

Documents | accompanying | a Bill making Compensation | to | Messieurs Lewis and Clarke, | and | their Companions, | presented | the 23d January, 1807. |

Washington City: | A. & G. Way, Printers. | 1807. |

8vo; title, verso blank; communication signed by "Willis Alston, Jun.", dated January 12, 1807, on p. [3]; answer to the former by H. Dearborn, dated January 14, 1807, pp. [4]–5; letter from Meriwether Lewis to Gen. Dearborn, dated at "City of Washington, January 15, 1807", pp. [6]–8; large folded broadside entitled, "A Roll | Of the men who accompanied captains Lewis and Clarke on their late tour to the Pacific ocean, through the interior of the continent of | North America, shewing their rank, with some remarks on their respective merits and services", signed with Meriwether Lewis's name, and dated at "City of Washington, January 15, 1807."

Copies: BPL; C; CHS; WD.

1808, ETC.

The Navigator, published in many editions at Pittsburgh, by Zadok Cramer, contains in an appendix to some of the editions a short account of the expedition of Lewis and Clark. This work is a composite, mostly devoted to "directions for navigating the Monongahela, Allegheny, Ohio, and Mississippi rivers", together with correlative matter. Its structure is crude. The first edition appeared in 1801. It was in its inception a small pamphlet, devoted solely to the Ohio.

So far as I can ascertain, the Lewis and Clark appeared for the first time in the "Sixth Edition" of 1808, on pp. 146–156, based on Gass, etc. It is entitled, "A brief account of the Missouri river, and the extensive and fertile country through which it winds, as traversed by captain Lewis and captain Clark — A short notice of the Indians and their customs — different kinds of wild animals — fowls — fish — curiosities &c. And of the Columbia river." In the "Advertisement" of "The Editor", this part purports to have been "collected from the letters of captain Clark and other publications since the return of the party". The "Seventh Edition" (1811) reproduced this text on pp. 254–268. Beginning with the "Eighth Edition" (1814), pp. 343–349, the text is very different from that of the sixth and seventh editions. All of these subsequent editions have a mere summary headed, "Abridgment of Lewis and Clark's Expedition." I have seen the editions of 1802 (third), 1808 (sixth), 1811 (seventh), 1814 (eighth), 1817 (ninth), 1818 (tenth), and 1821 (eleventh); but there were others.

1830

Tales of Travels | west of the Mississippi | [*Cut*] | By Solomon Bell, | Late Keeper of the Traveller's Library, Province-House Court, Boston. | With a map, and numerous engravings. |
Boston: | Gray and Bowen — Washington Street. | 1830. |

18mo; advertisement leaf, pp. (2); half-title, with frontispiece illustration on verso; title, with copyright on verso; "Prefatory, including some account of the author", pp. [vii]–x; "Contents", pp. [xi]–xvi; text and illustrations, pp. [1]–162. Numerous woodcuts in the text. Signatures: [*]–** in fours, 1–13 in sixes, 14 in four, the last leaf being blank. The volume is the first of a series by the publishers, having for design the supplying "to the children of the United States" of "an entertaining abstract of the most popular books of travels, which have lately appeared". Lewis and Clark's travels make up the bulk of the volume; the remainder being devoted to Long and Jewitt. Described from a copy loaned by Mr. Charles H. Conover.

1848

In Senate of the United States. | January 20, 1848. | Submitted, and ordered to be printed. | Mr. Westcott made the following | Report: | The Committee of Claims, to whom was referred the petition of Da- | vid Whelply, report: | [*text of the report*]

8vo; pp. 3, verso of last leaf blank. David Whelply claimed governmental aid as a reward for his participation in Pike's explorations. Lewis and Clark are introduced by the petitioner as one of the precedents under which he lodged his claim. It was, however, adversely reported by the senatorial Committee of Claims. The public document is in Senate Reports of Committees, 30th Cong., 1st Sess., No. 37.

1866

Oregon and Eldorado; | or, | Romance of the Rivers. | By | Thomas Bulfinch, | . . .
Boston: | J. E. Tilton and Company. | 1866. |

12mo; half-title, verso blank; title, with copyright, etc. on verso; "Preface", pp. ix–x; "Contents", pp. xi–xiv; half-title to "Oregon", verso blank; text to "Oregon" and "Eldorado", pp. 1–464. Signatures: Six preliminary leaves, 1–29 in eights. The Lewis and Clark matter begins on p. 14 (chap. II). Described from a copy in the Library of Congress.

1876

Department of the Interior. | United States Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories. | F. V. Hayden, U. S. Geologist-in-Charge. | An Account | of the various publications relating to | the Travels of Lewis and Clarke, | with a | Commentary on the Zoological Results of | their Expedition. | By | Dr. Elliott Coues, U. S. A. | [Extracted from Bulletin of the Geological and Geographical Survey | of the Territories, No. 6, Second Series.] | Washington, February 8, 1876. |

8vo; title on cover, verso blank; text, pp. [417]–444. Divided into two parts, the first of which is bibliographical, and the second zoological. This is the separate edition. The Bulletin from which it is an extract has the following title: Department of the Interior. | Bulletin | of | the United States | Geological and Geographical Survey | of | the Territories. | Bulletin, No. 6. — Second Series. | Washington: | Government Printing Office. | February 8, 1876. |

Copies of this Bulletin are in B; NYSL. The separate is in B; CHC. These I have seen or located, but there are of course others.

1876

Sketch | of | Gov. Merriwether Lewis. | By General Marcus J. Wright. | [First published in the June number, 1876, of "Ware's Valley Monthly."] | Washington, D.C. |

8vo; title, verso blank; text, pp. [3] — 10; one blank leaf.
Copies: HSP; NYHS; WHS.

1886–1888

Children's Stories | of | American Progress | By | Henrietta Christian Wright | *** | Illustrated by J. Steeple Davis |
New York | Charles Scribner's Sons | 1888 |

8vo; half-title, with advertisement on verso; title, with copyright, etc. on verso; "Contents", pp. [v] – vii; one blank page; "List of Illustrations", verso blank; text, pp. [1] – 333; one blank page; advertisements, pp. (8); one blank leaf. Chapter IV (pp. 86–103) relates to "The Expedition of Lewis and Clarke to the Pacific Ocean". This describes the issue of 1888, but the book was copyrighted in 1886.

1893

Description of the Original Manuscript Journals and Field Note-books of | Lewis and Clark, on which was based Biddle's History of the Expedi- | tion of 1804–6, and which are now in the possession of the American | Philosophical Society in Philadelphia. |

8vo. Forms pp. 17–33 of the "Proceedings | of the | American Philosophical Society | held at Philadelphia | for | Promoting Useful Knowledge. | Vol. xxxi. | January to December, 1893. | Philadelphia: | Printed for the Society | by MacCalla & Company. 1893." It is No. 140, which was printed March 4, 1893.

Described from a copy in AAS. It is also in CHC and WHS.[1]

1893

Explorers and Travellers. By General A. W. Greely.

See for full description *infra*, under 1902.

1893

Old South Leaflets. | Eleventh series, 1893. No. 6. | Captain Meriwether Lewis. | By Thomas Jefferson. |

12mo; pp. 16. The cover-title to this series is entitled "The Opening of the West". Described from a copy in HC.

1893

Old South Leaflets. | General Series, No. 44. | Captain | Meriwether | Lewis. | By Thomas Jefferson. | [1893]

12mo; pp. 16. Forms part of a volume, the general title of which is "Old South Leaflets. | Volume II. | 26–50. | Boston: | Directors of the Old South Work. | Old South Meeting House".

Copies: BPL; HC; HSP; NYSL; WHS.

---

[1] A condensation of this article is given in the Appendix to the present edition. — Ed.

1894

The New Found Journal | of Charles Floyd, | a sergeant under Captains Lewis and Clark. | By | James Davie Butler. | From Proceedings of the American Antiquarian Society, at the Semi- | annual Meeting, held in Boston, April 25, 1894. |

Worcester, Mass., U. S. A. | Press of Charles Hamilton, | 311 Main Street. | 1894. |

8vo; half-title on cover; title, verso blank; introduction by Butler, pp. [3] — 15; "Appendix", pp. [16] — 30, of which Floyd's Journal is the principal part.

Copies: CHC; HC; WHS (where also is the original MS. of the Journal).[1]

1898–1899

The Plants of Lewis and Clark's Expedition across the Con- | tinent, 1804–1806. | By Thomas Meehan.

Forms pp. 12–49 of "Proceedings | of the | Academy of Natural Sciences | of | Philadelphia. | 1898. | Committee on Publication: | [*Five names*] | Editor: Edward J. Nolan, M.D. | Philadelphia: | Academy of Natural Sciences, | Logan Square. | 1899". It is a section of part I (Jan.–March, 1898). Described from a copy in AAS.

1900

Baldwin's Biographical Booklets | The Story | of | Captain Meriwether Lewis and | Captain William Clark | for young readers | By | Nellie F. Kingsley | With an Introduction by The Editor | [*Cut*] |

Werner School Book Company | New York Chicago Boston | [1900]

18mo; title, with list of series, etc. on verso; "Contents" on p. 3; portrait of Lewis on p. [4]; "Introduction", pp. 5–12; text, with illustrations, pp. 13–128. Many illustrations in the text. No signatures. Copyright, 1900.

1901

Lewis and Clark | Meriwether Lewis | and | William Clark | By William R. Lighton | [*Printer's mark*] |

Boston and New York | Houghton, Mifflin and Company | The Riverside Press, Cambridge | 1901

---

[1] Republished in the present series directly from the original MS. The publication above noted contained numerous minor errors. — Ed.

16mo; four preliminary leaves; text, pp. [1]–159; colophon on verso of p. 159. No signatures. Frontispiece with photogravure portraits of Clark and Lewis.

Copies: BA; BPL; C; CHC; HC; NA; NYHS; NYSL; WHS.

1901

First | Across the Continent | the Story of | The Exploring Expedition of Lewis | and Clark in 1803–4–5 | By Noah Brooks |
New York | Charles Scribner's Sons | 1901 |

8vo; half-title, verso blank; title, with copyright, etc. on verso; "Preface," pp. [v]–vii; one blank page; "Contents", pp. [ix]–x; "List of Illustrations", pp. [xi]–xii; half-title, verso blank; text, pp. [1]–361; one blank page; "Index," pp. [363]–365; one blank page. Twenty-four plates as registered in the "List of Illustrations", and folded map at end of the volume. Signatures: Eight preliminary leaves, the first being blank; 1–23 in eights, the last leaf being blank.

"It is hoped that the present version of the story of the expedition, told as fully as possible in the language of the heroic men who modestly penned the record of their own doings and observations, will be acceptable to many readers, especially to young folks, who will here read for the first time a concise narrative of the first exploring expedition sent into a wilderness destined to become the seat of a mighty empire." — PREFACE.

Copies: CHC; LCP; WHS.

1902

Four | American Explorers | Captain Meriwether Lewis | Captain William Clark | General John C. Frémont | Dr. Elisha K. Kane | A Book for Young Americans | By | Nellie F. Kingsley |
Werner School Book Company | New York Chicago Boston | [*Copyright* 1902]

12mo; title, with list of series, etc. on verso; "Contents", pp. 3–4; map on p. [5]; p. [6] blank; half-title on p. [7]; portrait on p. [8]; "Introduction", pp. 9–16; text of Lewis and Clark, pp. 17–132; text, etc. of Fremont and Kane, pp. [133]–271; advertisement on verso of p. 271. No signatures. This volume is the eighth in "The Four Great Americans Series", and was published in the spring of 1902.

1902

The Conquest | The True Story of Lewis | and Clark | By | Eva Emery Dye | Author of | "McLoughlin and Old Oregon" | [*Publishers' mark*] |
Chicago | A. C. McClurg & Company | 1902 |

12mo; half-title, with advertisement on verso; title, with copyright, etc. on verso; "Note of acknowledgment", with verso blank; "Contents", pp. [vii]–ix; "Foreword", pp. (1); half-title to Book I, with verso blank; text, pp. [1]–443; one blank page. Portrait frontispiece of "Judith." Signatures: Six preliminary leaves, 1–27 in eights, 28 in six, but printed off in an erratic manner. The work was first "Published Nov. 12, 1902." There have been several subsequent editions. Historical fiction with considerable antiquarian detail. Described from a copy in NL.

1902

Men of Achievement | Explorers and Travellers | By |General A. W. Greely, U. S. A. | Gold Medallist of Royal Geographical Society and Société de | Géographie, Paris | [*Publishers' mark*] |
New York | Charles Scribner's Sons | 1902 |

12mo; half-title, with list of "Men of Achievement Series" on verso; title, with copyright on verso; "Preface", pp. [3]–4; "Contents", p. [5]; "List of Illustrations", pp. [6]–8; text, pp. [9]–373; verso of last leaf blank. There are seven full-page illustrations not a part of the regular pagination, and sixty-two full page and text-illustrations included in the regular pagination. The original issue appeared in 1893, and it has been kept in print ever since that date. I have here described the latest issue. The fifth chapter, pp. [105]–162, is entitled, "Captain Meriwether Lewis and Lieut. William Clark. First Trans-Continental Explorers of the United States."

1903

The Louisiana Purchase and the Exploration, early History and Building of the West. By Ripley Hitchcock. Boston: Ginn & Co., 1903.

12mo; pp. 21, 349. Illustrations, portraits and maps. Part 2 is devoted to the Lewis and Clark expedition. Copyright 1903, but really issued early in 1904. The author's full name is James Ripley Wellman Hitchcock. Not seen.

1904

A Brief History of | Rocky Mountain | Exploration | with especial reference to the | Expedition of Lewis and Clark | By | Reuben Gold Thwaites | . . . | . . . | . . . | With illustrations and maps | | [*Publishers' cut*] |
New York | D. Appleton and Company | 1904 |

8vo; half-title, with list of the "Series" on verso; title, with copyright, etc. on verso; dedication, verso blank; "Preface", pp. vii–ix; one blank page;

"Contents", verso blank; "List of Illustrations", verso blank; text, pp. 1–252; "Index", pp. 253–276; publishers' advertisements, pp. (14). Views, map, portraits, etc., making ten subjects, as in the printed "List of Illustrations". "Published February, 1904" in Appletons' "Expansion of the Republic Series". Signatures: [1]–19 in eights.

1904

The Trail of Lewis and Clark. A Story of the Great Exploration Across the Continent, 1804–06; with a Description of the Old Trail, Based upon Actual Travel over it, and of the Changes Found a Century Later. By Olin D. Wheeler, member of the Minnesota Historical Society. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1904.

8vo; 2 vols, with colored frontispieces and about two hundred illustrations, including maps and diagrams. From the publishers' spring announcements of 1904.

The Original Journals of Captains Meriwether Lewis and William Clark

THE JOURNALS PROPER

The ORIGINAL JOURNALS OF LEWIS AND CLARK

CHAPTER I

FROM RIVER DUBOIS TO THE PLATTE

Clark's Journal and Orders, January 30—July 22, 1804
Entries and Orders by Lewis, February 20, March 3, May 15, 20, 26, and July 8, 12

[PRELIMINARY MEMORANDA]

[Clark]

CAPT^{s}. LEWIS & CLARK wintered at the enterance of a Small river opposit the Mouth of Missouri Called Wood River,[1] where they formed their party, Composed of robust helthy hardy young men, recomended [Sentence unfinished. — ED.].[2]

[The following memoranda of events in the history of the expedition prior to its departure from River Dubois, May 14, 1804, are selected from a record, mainly of natural phenomena, kept by Clark, which is written near the end of Codex C;

---

[1] Local traditions here place the mouth of the Missouri River in 1803 at one mile north of Maple Island; it is now four miles below the island. The mouth of Wood River is one mile below Maple Island, and is supposed to have been in the same place in 1803. — G. B. DORSEY, Gillespie, Ill.

[2] This unfinished memorandum is found on the fly-leaf at beginning of the small note-book designated by Elliott Coues — in his report upon the journals, made to the American Philosophical Society, Jan. 20, 1893, and reprinted in our Appendix, *post* — as "Codex A," from which book is here reproduced Clark's journal of the expedition from May 13 to August 14, 1804. Occasional entries, written by Lewis during that period, will be here designated by his name within brackets at the beginning of such matter.

As stated in the Introduction to the present volume, there are two collections of original journals of the explorers — that made by Thomas Jefferson and now in the custody of the American Philosophical Society at Philadelphia; and that owned by this begins at p. 231, and continues (the pages being in reverse order) to p. 216, covering the time from Jan. 1, 1804 to April 7, 1805. The expedition had gone into camp in December. — Ed.]

January 30th

Capt Lewis arrived from Kahokia

Feby 29

The weather had been clear since Capt Lewis lef[t] Camp untill this[1]

March 19th

Visited St Charles

20th

Return from St Charles after haveing arrested the progress of a Kickapoo war party

21st

I arrived at River Dubois from St Charles

28th

Capt Lewis returned to Camp

29th

Tried Several men for missconduct

April 2nd

Capt Lewis went to St. Louis. Mr Hay arrive[d]

[The following memorandum, by both Lewis and Clark, occupies a detached sheet in the Clark-Voorhis collection. — Ed.]

[Lewis:]

Information of Mr John Hay, commencing at the discharge of the Ottertail Lake, which forms the source of the Red River, to his winter station on the Assinneboin River.

Mrs. Julia Clark Voorhis and Miss Eleanor Glasgow Voorhis, of New York — granddaughter and great grand-daughter, respectively, of William Clark. In all references to the Philadelphia codices, we shall for convenience give Coues's lettered designations thereof (e. g., "Codex A"); the four Voorhis note-books will be designated by their Arabic numerals (e. g., "Clark-Voorhis note-book, No. 1"). Other Clark manuscripts in the Voorhis collection will be specifically alluded to, as they appear in our volumes. — Ed.

[1] Lewis appears to have spent his time chiefly in St. Louis, where, on March 9 and 10, he was principal witness to the formal transfer of Upper Louisiana. See act of transfer, in Billon, *Annals of St. Louis* (St. Louis, 1886), pp. 360, 361. — Ed.

From Ottertail Lake	Leagues
To the Shugar rappid	18.
Buffaloe River — N. Side	10.
Commencement of shaved prarie	9.
Expiration of D° d°	18.
{Tho' on a streight line not thought more than *6. leagues*}	
Stinking bird river, South side (heads with river St Peters)	60.
Shayen or Shaha South side	14.
River au Bouf North side	4.
Tree River South side	10.
Wild oates river N. Side	2.
Goose river South side	7.
Pond River S. side	⅓
Sand Hill river — not certain but b[e]lieved to be on the South side	5.
To the grand fork or *Red Lake River* N. Side	20.
Turtle river S. Side	3.
Dirty water river S. side	3.
Salt water river N. side at the head of this river is a salt spring	18.
Pierced wood river N. S.	12.
Pembenar river N. S.	3.
To a wintering establishment of the N. W. Company on the S. side	8.
Paemicon river S. side	3.
Mr Reaum's Fort S. side 1792	⅓
Pond river S. side	14.
Kuckould burr river S. side	3½
Rat river N side	7.
Assinniboin N side	16½
	269
Dead river S. side	8.
Lake Winnepique	10.
From the mouth of the Assinaboin up the same to To the mouth of Mouse River S side	139½

Notes — 1) the general course of the red River from Leaf river to the mouth of the assinnaboin is due West

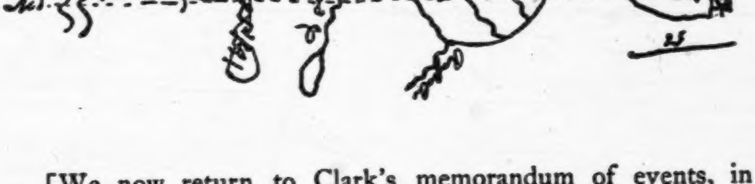
(2d) the River Pembenar heads in three large lakes bearing as it proceds upwards towards the Assinnaboin — the first lake three leagues in length and 1 in width, the turtle mountain bearing S W. dist^{nt} 7 leagues, the second smaller lying N N W. not very distant from the former the third and last large and extending within a few miles of the mouth of Mouse river branch of the Assinnaboin

(3) Salt is made in sundry places on the Red river (to it) [to wit] just below the mouth of river Pembenar on the S. side head of salt river, also on the South side of the red river a little way below the dirty water river

[Clark:]

The Course from the Fort Mandan to the Fort *Chaboillez's* on the Assinna Boin is North 150 Miles

	mls	
Mirey creek	12	& Big C. of wood 16 to the E to a lake
Mous river 30 yd wide	50	to the river La sou[rie] 4 L
and	20	Legues to a Small creek of the Mous R
&	3	d° to the next
&	1	League cross the Lasou or M.[ouse]
&	20	L cross the Ditto to the R Pass Turtle Hites at 6 L.
	27	to Assinnibon
	51	



[We now return to Clark's memorandum of events, in Codex C. — Ed.]

3rd Mr Garrous[1] Boat loaded with provisions pass up for Prarie du chien, to trade

18th at St. Louis

The Country about the Mouth of Missouri is pleasent rich and partially Settled On the East Side of the Mississippi a leavel rich bottom extends back about 3 miles, and rises by several elevations to the high Country, which is thinly timbered with Oakes & On the lower Side of the Missouri, at about 2 miles back the Country rises graduilly, to a high plesent thinly timberd Country, the lands are generally fine on the River bottoms and well calculating for farming on the upper Country

in the point the Bottom is extensive and emensly rich for 15 or 20 miles up each river, and about ⅔ of which is open leavel plains in which the inhabtents of St Charles & portage de Scioux had ther crops of corn & wheat. on the upland is a fine farming country partially timbered for Some distance back.

[DISCIPLINE AND ORGANIZATION]

[The following "Detachment Orders" are in the Voorhis collection of Lewis and Clark manuscripts — see note 2, p. 3, *ante*. The documents show that the "robust helthy hardy young men," many of them fresh from the Kentucky woods, found it not easy to accustom themselves to the rigid discipline of a military corps; and illustrate the difficulties which beset the two captains during the first winter camp. The orders relating to the personnel of the expedition, with the organization of the messes, etc., are especially interesting and suggestive.— Ed.][2]

---

[1] Little is known of this Garreau, save that it is probably his son Pierre (whose mother was an Arikara woman) who was long an interpreter at Fort Berthold; see Coues's *Narrative of Larpenteur* (N. Y., 1898), i, pp. 125, 126. Clark's Garreau may be the Jearreau (of Cahokia, Ill.) mentioned by Pike in 1806; see Coues's *Expeditions of Pike* (N. Y., 1895), i, p. 263. — Ed.

[2] The first two orders (Lewis) are on separate sheets of paper. The others are contained in a pocket note-book, which we designate as the "Orderly Book." This

Detatchment Orders
[Lewis:] *Camp River Dubois, Feb^{y} 20th 1804.*

The Commanding officer directs that During the absence of himself and Cap^{t} Clark from Camp, that the party shall consider themselves under the immediate command of Serg^{t} Ordway, who will be held accountable for the good poliece and order of the camp during that period, and will also see the subsequent parts of this order carried into effect.

The sawyers will continue their work untill they have cut the necessary quantity of plank, the quantity wanting will be determined by Pryor; during the days they labour they shall recieve each an extra gill of whiskey p^{r} day and be exempt from guard duty; when the work is accomplished, they will join the party and do duty in common with the other men.

The Blacksmiths will also continue their work untill they have completed the articles contained in the memorandom with which I have furnished them, and during the time they are at work will recieve each an extra gill of whiskey p^{r} day and be exempt from guard duty; when the work is completed they will return to camp and do duty in common with the detatc[h]ment.

The four men who are engaged in making sugar will continue in that employment untill further orders, and will recieve each a half a gill of extra whiskey p^{r} day and be exempt from guard duty.

The practicing party will in futer discharge only one round each p^{r} day, which will be done under the direction of Serg^{t} Ordway, all at the same target and at the distance of fifty yards off hand. The prize of a gill of extra whiskey will be recieved by the person who makes the best shot at each time of practice.

Floyd will take charge of our quarte[r]s and store and be exempt from guard duty untill our return, the commanding

---

book (at first in Clark's hand, and then for the most part in that of Sergeant John Ordway, with a few entries by Lewis) covers the dates April 1–October 13, 1804. It is but a fragment; the remaining leaves are missing, save those containing an entry dated Fort Clatsop, January 1, 1806. After the start of the expedition from River Dubois camp, we have incorporated into the text the several entries from this document, designating them as "[Orderly Book:]". —ED.

Officer hopes that this proof of his confidence will be justifyed by the rigid performance of the orders given him on that subject.

No man shal absent himself from camp without the knowlege and permission of Serg^{t} Ordway, other than those who have obtained permission from me to be absent on hunting excurtions, and those will not extend their absence to a term by which they may avoid a tour of guard duty, on their return they will report themselves to Serg^{t} Ordway and recieve his instructions.

No whiskey shall in future be delivered from the Contractor's store except for the legal ration, and as appropriated by this order, unless otherwise directed by Cap^{t} Clark or myself.

Meriwether Lewis Cap^{t}
1st U. S. Reg^{t} Infty.

Serg^{t} Ordway will have the men paraded this evening and read the inclosed orders to them.

M. Lewis

[Indorsed:] to Floyd

[Lewis:]

Detatchment Orders
March 3rd 1804.

The Commanding officer feels himself mortifyed and disappointed at the disorderly conduct of Reubin Fields, in refusing to mount guard when in the due roteen of duty he was regularly warned; nor is he less surprised at the want of discretion in those who urged his oposition to the faithfull discharge of his duty, particularly Shields, whose sense of propryety he had every reason to believe would have induced him reather to have promoted good order, than to have excited disorder and faction among the party, particularly in the absence of Cap^{t} Clark and himself: The Commanding officer is also sorry to find any man, who has been engaged by himself and Cap^{t} Clark for the expedition on which they have entered, so destitute of understanding, as not to be able to draw the distinction between being placed under the command of another officer, whose will in such case would be their law, and that of obeying the orders of

Capt Clark and himself communicated to them through Sergt Ordway, who, as one of the party, has during their necessary absence been charged with the execution of their orders; acting from those orders expressly, and not from his own caprice, and who, is in all respects accountable to us for the faithfull observance of the same.

A moments reflection must convince every man of our party, that were we to neglect the more important and necessarry arrangements in relation to the voyage we are now entering on, for the purpose merely of remain[in]g at camp in order to communicate our orders in person to the individuals of the party on mear points of poliece, they would have too much reason to complain; nay, even to fear the ultimate success of the enterprise in which we are all embarked. The abuse of some of the party with respect [to the] prevelege heretofore granted them of going into the country, is not less displeasing; to such as have made hunting or other business a pretext to cover their design of visiting a neighbouring whiskey shop, he cannot for the present extend this previlege; and dose therefore most positively direct, that Colter, Bolye, Wiser, and Robinson do not recieve permission to leave camp under any pretext whatever for *ten days*, after this order is read on the parade, unless otherwise directed hereafter by Capt Clark or himself. The commanding officers highly approve of the conduct of Sergt Ordway.

The Carpenters Blacksmiths, and in short the whole party (except Floid who has been specially directed to perform other duties) are to obey implicitly the orders of Sergt Ordway, who has recieved our instructions on these subjects, and is held accountable to us for their due execution.

MERIWETHER LEWIS.
Capt 1st U. S. Regt Infty Comds Detatchment

[Indorsed:] Sergt Ordway will read the within order to the men on the parade the morning after the reciept of the same.

M. LEWIS Capt

Detachment Order
[Orderly Book; Clark:] *Camp River Dubois april 1st 1804*

The Commanding officers did yesterday proceed to take the necessary inlistments, and select the Detachment destined for the Expedition through the interior of the *Continent* of North America; and have accordingly seelected the persons herein after Mentioned, as those which are to Constitute their Perminent Detachment. (Viz).

William Bratten
John Colter
John Collins
Reubin Fields
Joseph Fields
Charles Floyd
Patric Gass
George Gibson
Silas Goodrich
Thomas P. Howard
Hugh Hall
Hugh Mc Neel
John Newmon

John Ordway
Nathaniel Pryor
John Potts
Moses B Reed
George Shannon
John Shields
John B. Thompson
Richard Winser
William Werner
Peter Wiser
Joseph Whitehouse
Alexander Willard

The commanding officers do also retain in their service untill further Orders: The following Persons, Richard Warvington, Robert Frasure, John Robertson, & John Boyley (*Moses B. Read*)[1] who whilst they remain with the Detachment shall be incorperated with the second, and third squads of the same, and are to be treated in all respects as those men who form the Permonant detachment, except with reguard to an advance of Pay, and the distrebutions of Arms and Accoutrements intended for the expedition.

---

[1] The Lewis and Clark manuscripts were, as explained in the Introduction, *ante*, for a time in the hands of Nicholas Biddle, who prepared from them his paraphrase *Narrative*, published in 1814. Clark, in assisting Biddle, not infrequently made interlineations in the text; so did Biddle — in our opinion, the former thus wrote in black ink, the latter in red. In 1893, Elliott Coues also made emendations in the Philadelphia codices; and there are some erasures and interlineations by an unknown hand. In seeking to reproduce the manuscripts with fidelity, the present Editor has deemed it desirable to retain all emendations made by contemporaries, although he has ignored many made by Coues, who often sought to correct and modernize the spelling of proper names. Words reproduced by us in Italics enclosed by parentheses, are corrections in red ink, presumably by Biddle — e. g. (*Moses B. Read*); those set in Italics enclosed by brackets, are in black ink and by several persons — Clark, Coues, or an unknown hand — e. g. [*Petite Côte*]; words in Italics, unenclosed, were underlined by the author himself; the present Editor's signed or unsigned emendations are in Roman, bracketed — e. g. [Lewis]; plain parentheses (enclosing matter in Roman type) are as in the text. — Ed.

The following persons (viz *Charles Floyd*, *John Ordway*, and *Nathaniel Pryor* are this day *appointed Sergeants*, with equal Powers (unless when otherwise specially ordered). The authority, Pay, and emouliments, attached to the Said rank of Sergeants in the Military Service of the United States, and to hold the Said appointments, and be respected Accordingly, dureing their good behaviour or the Will and pleasure of the s^d Commanding officers.[1]

To insure order among the party, as well as to promote a regular Police in Camp, The Commanding Officers have thought proper to devide the detachment into three *Squads* and to place a Sergeant in Command of each, who are held imediately responsible to the Commanding officers, for the regular and orderly deportment of the individuls Composeing their respective Squads.

The following individuals after being duly balloted for, have fallen in the several *Squads* as hereafter stated, and are Accordingly placed under the derection of the Sergeants whose names preceeds those of his squad. (Viz:)

---

[1] The above spelling is somewhat erratic. Following is the now generally accepted list of members of the expedition, as verified by the official pay-roll at the close of the venture: Meriwether Lewis, Captain in 1st Reg. U. S. Infantry, commanding; William Clark, 2nd Lieutenant in U. S. Artillery; sergeants — John Ordway, Nathaniel Pryor, Charles Floyd, Patrick Gass; and privates — William Bratton, John Colter, John Collins, Peter Cruzatte, Reuben Fields, Joseph Fields, Robert Frazier, George Gibson, Silas Goodrich, Hugh Hall, Thomas P. Howard, Francis Labiche, Hugh McNeal, John Potts, George Shannon, John Shields, John B. Thompson, William Werner, Joseph Whitehouse, Alexander Willard, Richard Windsor, Peter Wiser. Besides these men, the party included two interpreters, George Drewyer (or Drouillard) and Toussaint Charbonneau; an Indian woman, Sacajawea ("Bird-woman"), Charbonneau's wife; and a negro slave of Captain Clark's, named York. Two soldiers, John Newman and M. B. Reed, who had set out with the expedition, were punished for misconduct, and sent back to St. Louis on April 7, 1805. Baptiste Lepage was enlisted in Newman's place, at Fort Mandan, Nov. 2, 1804, and remained with the expedition until the discharge of its men at St. Louis, Nov. 10, 1806. For more detailed information regarding them, see Coues's *Lewis and Clark*, i, pp. 253-259. — ED.

1st Squad

Sergeant Nathaniel Pryor.

Privates

George Gibson
Thomas P. Howard
George Shannon
John Shields
John Collins
Joseph Whitehouse
Peter Wiser
Hugh Hall

2nd Squad

Sergt. *Charles Floyd*

Privates

Hugh McNeel
Patric Gass
Reubin Fields
Joseph Fields
John B: Thompson
Richard Winser
Richard Worthington
Robert Frasure.

3rd Squad

Sergt. *John Ordeway*

Privates

William Bratten
John Colter
Alexander Willard
William Warner
Silas Goodrich
John Potts
John Robertson
John Boleye

The Camp Kettles, and other Public utensels for cooking shall be produced this evening after the parade is Dismissed; and an equal division shall take place of the same, among the non commissioned officers Commanding the squads. Those non-commissioned officers shall make an equal Division of the proportion of those utensels between their own Messes of their respective squads, — each squad shall be devided into two Messes, at the head of one of which the commanding Sergeant shall Preside. the sergeants Messes will Consist of four privates only to be admited under his discression, the ballance of each squad shall form the second mess of each squad.

Dureing the indisposition of Sergeant Pryor, George Shannon is appointed (protempor) to discharge his the Said Pryor's duty in his squad.

The party for the co[n]venience of being more imediately under the eye of the several sergeants haveing charge of them, will make the necessary exchanges of their *Bunks* and rooms for that Purpose as shall be verbally derected by us.

Untill otherwise derected, Sergeant John Ordway will continue to keep the *rouster* and detaile the men of the detachment for the several duties which it may be necessary, they should perform, as also to transcribe in a book furnished Him for that purpose, those or such other orders as the Commanding officers shall think proper to publish from time, to time for the government of the Party.

Signed

MERIWETHER LEWIS
W^{m} CLARK

Detachment Order

[Orderly Book; Ordway:][1] *River a Dubois April 7th 1804.*

During the absence of the Commanding officers at S^{t} Louis, the Party are to Consider themselves under the immediate command of Serg^{t} John Ordway; who will be held accountable for the Poliece; and good order of the Camp, dureing that period. Every individual of the party will Strictly attend to all the necessarry duties required for the benefit of the party; and to the regulations heretofore made which is now in force. Serg^{t} Floyd will stay in our quarters, attend to them, and the Store; and to the other duties reqeired of him; he will also assist Serg^{t} Ordway as much as possable.

Signed

W^{m} CLARK
MERIWETHER LEWIS

Detachment Orders

[Orderly Book:] *April 21st 1804*

Dureing the absence of the Commanding officers at S^{t} Louis the Party are to be under the immediate Command of Sergeant John Ordway agreeable to the Orders of the 7th Instant

Signed W^{m} CLARK Cap^{t}

[Orderly Book:] *Camp at River a Dubois May the 4th 1804*

ORDERS Corporal Warvington, Frasier, Boley & the Detachment late from Captain Stoddards Company will form a mess under the direction of the Corporal, who shall be held accountable for their conduct in Camp.

---

[1] From this point until the end of the Orderly Book, the entries therein are by that officer, unless otherwise noted. — ED.

ORDERS: The Sergeants are to mount as officers of the Day During the time we delay at this place, and exhibet on Duty to Command the Detachment in the absence of the Commanding officer — he is to see that the Guard doe their Duty, and that the Detachment attend to the regulations heretofore made and those which may be made from time to time, No man of the Detachment Shall leave Camp without permission from the Commanding officer present, except the French Hands who have families may be allowed to Stay with their families whilst at this place

2 Serg^{t} Ordway for Duty to Day. Serg^{t} Floyd tomorrow & Serg^{t} Pryor the next day.

Signed W^{m} CLARK
Cap^{t} Command^{t}

[Clark:] *A Memorandom of Articles in readiness for the Voyage*[1]

Viz:	14	Bags of Parchmeal of 2 bus:		each about .	1200^{w}
	9	do - Common Do . do .		do .	800
	11	do - Corn Hulled . do .		do .	1000
	30	half Barrels of flour)	(Gross 3900^{w})	do	
	2	Bags of . do)		.	3400
	7	do of Biscuit)			
	4	Barrels do) .	Gross 650)	do .	560
	7	Barrels of Salt of 2 bus: each	" (870)	do .	750
	50	Kegs of Pork .	(gross 4500) .	do .	3705
	2	Boxes of Candles 70^{lb} and about 50^{lb} (one of which has 50^{lb} of soap .		do .	170
	1	Bag of Candle-wick . .		do .	8
	1	do " Coffee . . .		. .	50
	1	do " Beens & 1 of Pees .		. .	100
	2	do " Sugar . . .		do .	112
	1	Keg of Hogs Lard . .		do .	100
	4	Barrels of Corn hulled (650) .		do .	600
	1	do of meal	170	do .	150
	600^{lb}	Grees			
	50	bushels meal			
	24	do Natchies Corn Huled			
	21	Bales of Indian goods			
		Tools of every Description &c &c.			

---

[1] A loose sheet, in the Voorhis collection, with map of neighborhood of River Dubois camp on reverse side. — ED

our party

2 Cap^{ts} 4 Sergeants, 3 Intp^{trs}, 22 Am^{ns} 9 or 10 French, & York also I Corp^{l} & Six in a perogue with 40 Days provisions for the party as far as these provisions last

[Indorsed:] A List of Arti[c]les for Missouri voyage

[COMMENCEMENT OF THE JOURNALS PROPER]

[Clark:][1] *River a Dubois opposet the mouth of the Missourie River*
Sunday May the 13th 1804.

I despatched an express this morning to Cap^{t} Lewis at S^{t} Louis, all our provisions Goods and equipage on Board of a Boat of 22 oars[2] (*Party*) a large Perogue of 71 oares (*in which 8 French*) a Second Perogue of 6 oars, (*Soldiers*) Complete with Sails &c. &c. Men comp^{d} with Powder Cartragies and 100 Balls each, all in health and readiness to set out. Boats and everything Complete, with the necessary stores of provisions & such articles of merchandize as we thought ourselves authorised to procure — tho' not as much as I think ness^{y} for the multitude of Ind^{s} thro which we must pass on our road across the Continent &c. &c.

Lat^{d} 38° - 55′ - 19″ - 6/10 North of equator
Long^{td} 89 - 57 - 45 - West of Greenwich

Monday May 14th 1804

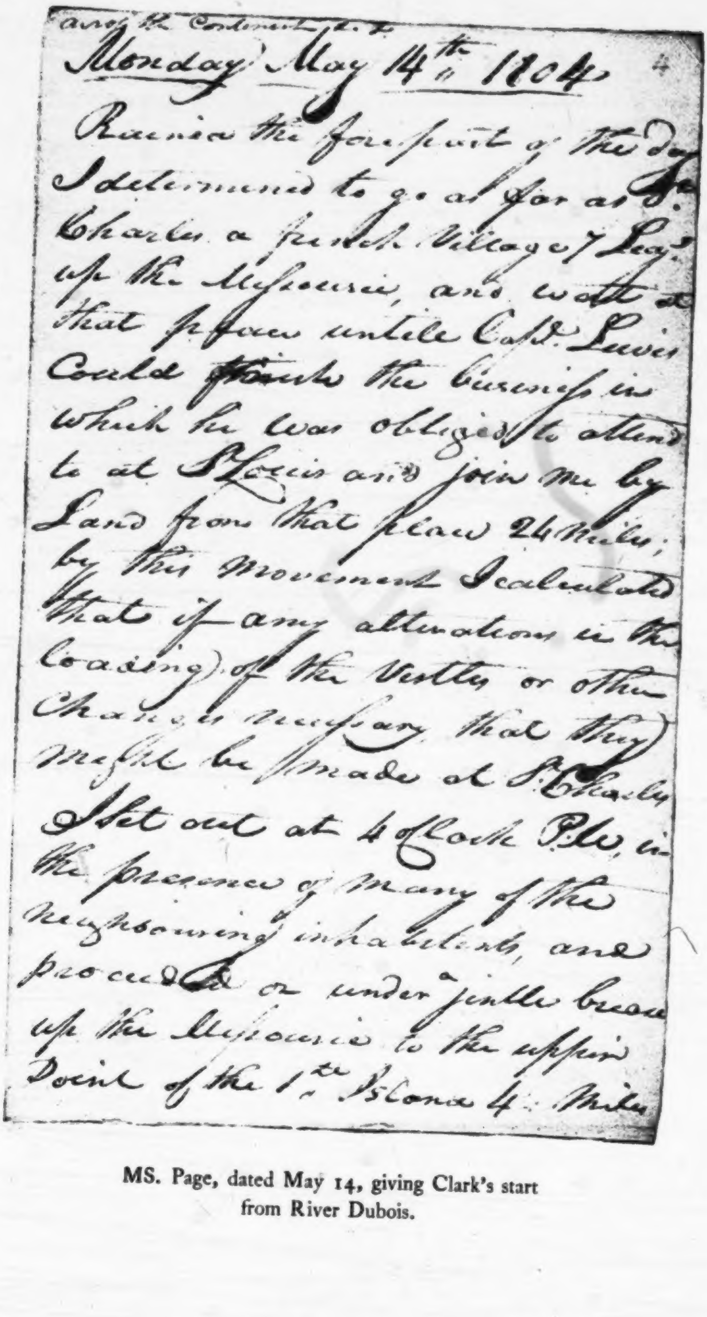
Rained the fore part of the day I determined to go as far as S^{t} Charles a french Village 7 Leag^{s} up the Missourie, and wait at that place untill Cap^{t} Lewis could finish the business in which he was obliged to attend to at S^{t} Louis and join me by Land from that place 24 miles; by this movement I calculated that if any alterations in the loading of the Vestles or other Changes necessary, that they might be made at S^{t} Charles

I Set out at 4 oClock P.M, in the presence of many of the neighbouring inhabitents, and proceeded on under a jentle

---

[1] This and subsequent Clark entries, up to and including Aug 14, 1804, are from Codex A. — ED.

[2] "A keel boat fifty-five feet long, drawing three feet water, carrying one large square sail and twenty-two oars, a deck of ten feet in the bow, and stern formed a forecastle and cabin, while the middle was covered by lockers, which might be raised so as to form a breastwork in case of attack." — BIDDLE, i, p. 2.



acros the Continent &c

4

Monday May 14th 1804

Rained the fore part of the day
I determined to go as far as St.
Charles a french Village 7 Leags.
up the Missourie, and wait at
that place untile Capt. Lewis
Could finish the business in
which he was obliged to attend
to at St Louis and join me by
Land from that place 24 Miles;
by this movement I calculated
that if any alterations in the
loading of the Vestles or other
Changes necessary, that they
might be made at St. Charles
I Set out at 4 oClock P.M, in
the presence of many of the
neighbouring inhabitents, and
proceeded on under a jentle breese
up the Missourie to the upper
Point of the 1st Island 4 Miles

MS. Page, dated May 14, giving Clark's start from River Dubois.

brease up the Missourie to the upper Point of the 1st Island 4 Miles and camped on the Island which is Situated Close on the right (or Starboard) Side, and opposit the mouth of a Small Creek called Cold water,[1] a heavy rain this after-noon

The Course of this day nearly *West* wind from N. E.

[Lewis:]

Tuesday May 15th—

It rained during the greater part of last night and continued untill 7 OCk. A. M. after which the party proceeded, passed two Islands and incamped on the Stard. shore at Mr. Fifer's landing opposite an Island. the evening was fair. some wild gees with their young brudes were seen to-day. the barge run foul three several times on logs, and in one instance it was with much difficulty they could get her off; happily no injury was sustained, tho' the barge was several minutes in eminent danger; this was cased by her being too heavily laden in the stern. Persons accustomed to the navigation of the Missouri and the Mississippi also below the mouth of this river, uniformly take the precaution to load their vessels heavyest in the bow when they ascend the stream in order to avoid the danger incedent to runing foul of the concealed timber which lyes in great quantities in the beds of these rivers[2]

[Clark:][3]

May 15th Tuesday—

Rained the greater part of the last night, and this morning untill 7 oClock. at 9 oClock Set out and proceeded on 9 miles passed two Islands & incamped on the Starbd. Side at a Mr. Pipers Landing opposet an Island, the Boat run on Logs three times to day, owing [to] her being too heavyly loaded a Sturn, a fair after noon, I saw a number of Goslings to day on the Shore, the water excessively rapid, & Banks falling in.

---

[1] This creek was just above Bellefontaine, Mo., where a U. S. military post was established in 1803. — ED.

[2] This entry, made by Lewis, is found at end of Codex Aa. — ED.

[3] Where, as herein, there are consecutive entries by the same hand, we only thus indicate the commencement of a stretch. — ED.

Course & Distance assending the Missourie Tuesday 15th May

Course	Mls	
West	1 - 0	To a pt on St Side
N 80° W	2 - 0	To a pt on St Side
N. 11° W	2 - ½	To a pt on Stbd Side
N 20° W	1 - ½	To a pt on Lbd Side
S 10° W	1 - ½	To a pt on Stbd Side
S 22° W	1 - 0	To a pt on Stbd Side.
	9 - ½	(See *Suplemt in No.* 3)

May 16th Wednesday

A fair morning Set out at 5 oClk pass a remarkable Coal Hill on the Larboard Side, Called by the French Carbonere, this hill appear to Contain great quantity of Coal (*& ore of a appearance*) from this hill the Village of St Charles may be Seen at 7 miles distance. we arrived at St Charles at 12 oClock a number Spectators french & Indians flocked to the bank to See the party. This Village is about one mile in length, Situated on the North Side of the Missourie at the foot of a hill from which it takes its name *Peetiete Coete* [*petite côte*] or the *Little hill* This Village Contnd about 100 (*frame*) houses, the most of them small and indefferent and about 450 inhabitents Chiefly French, those people appear Pore, polite & harmonious. I was invited to Dine with a Mr Ducett [*Duquet*], this gentleman was once a merchant from Canadia, from misfortunes aded to the loss of a Cargo, Sold to the late Judge Turner he has become Somewhat reduced, he has a Charming wife an elegent Situation on the hill Serounded by orchards & a excellent gardain.

Course & Distance assending the Missourie the 16th of May —

Course	Mls	
South	2.0	To a pt on Lbd Side
S. 85° W.	7.0	To the mid. of St Charles passed much hard water & 3 Isds.
	9 - 0	

[Orderly Book:] *St Charles May 16th 1804*

Note the Commanding officer is full[y] assured that every man of his Detachment will have a true respect for their own

Dignity and not make it necessary for him to leave St Charles for a more retired situation.

[Clark:] *May the 17th Thursday 1804*

A fair day compelled to punish for misconduct, Several Kickapoos Indians visit me to day, George Drewyer arrive.

Took equal altitudes of Suns L L made it 84° - 39′ - 15″ ap. T.

A. M.	8h - 35′ - 40″	P. M.	3h - 23′ - 24″
	8 - 37 - 50		3 - 24 - 50
	8 - 38 - 20		3 - 25 - 50

Measured the river found it to be 720 yards Wide, a Keel Boat came up to day. Several of the inhabitents Came abord to day, reseved Several Speces of vegatables from the inhabitents to day

[Orderly Book:] *Orders St Charles Thursday* the 17th of May 1804

A Sergeant and four men of the Party destined for the Missourri Expidition will convene at 11 oClock to day on the quarter Deck of the Boat, and form themselves into a Court martial to hear and determine (in behalf of the Capt) the evidences aduced against William Warner & Hugh Hall for being absent last night without leave; contrary to orders; — & John Collins 1st for being absent without leave — 2nd for behaveing in an unbecomeing manner at the Ball last night — 3dly for Speaking in a language last night after his return tending to bring into disrespect the orders of the Commanding officer

Signd W. Clark Comdg

Detail for court martial

Sergt John Ordway Prs
R. Fields
R. Windsor members
J. Whitehouse
Jo Potts

The Court convened agreeable to orders on the 17th of May 1804

Sgt John Ordway P.

members

Joseph Whitehouse	Reuben Fields
John Potts	Richard Windsor

after being duly Sworn the Court proceded to the trial of William Warner & Hugh Hall on the following Charges Viz: for being absent without leave last night contrary to orders, to this charge the Prisoners plead *Guilty*. The Court are of oppinion that the Prisoners Warner & Hall are Both Guilty of being absent from camp without leave, it being a breach of the Rules and articles of War and do Sentence them each to receive twenty-five *lashes* on their naked back, but the Court recommend them from their former Good conduct to the mercy of the commanding officer. — at the Same court was tried John Collins Charged
1st for being absent without leave.
2d for behaveing in an unbecomming manner at the ball last night.
3dly for Speaking in a language after his return to camp tending to bring into disrespect the orders of the Commanding Officer.

The Prisoner Pleads Guilty to the first Charge but not Guilty to the two last Charges. after mature deliberation & agreeable to the evidence aduced, The Court are of oppinion that the Prisoner is Guilty of all the charges alledged against him it being a breach of the rules & articles of War and do Sentence him to receive fifty lashes on his naked back.

The Commanding Officer approves of the proceedings & Desicon of the Court *martial and orders* that the punishment of John Collins take place this evening at *Sun Set* in the Presence of the Party. The punishment ordered to be inflicted on William Warner & Hugh Hall, is remitted under the assurence arriseing from a confidence which the Commanding officer has of the Sincerity of the recommendation from the Court.

after the punishment Warner Hall & Collins will return to their Squads and Duty

The Court is Disolved
Sign Wm Clark

[Clark:] *May the 18th Friday 1804*

a fine morning, I had the loading in the Boat & perogue examined and changed so as the Bow of each may be heavyer loded than the Stern, Mr Lauremus who had been Sent by Cap Lewis to the Kickapoo Town on public business, return'd and after a Short delay proceeded on to St Louis, I sent George Drewyer with a Letter to Capt Lewis Two Keel Boats arrive from Kentucky to day loaded with whiskey Hats &c &c. the wind from the S. W.

Took equal altitudes with Sexten [sextant. — Ed.] made it 97° - 42' - 37" M. T.

A. M.	9h - 9' - 51"	P. M.	2h - 49' - 24"
	9 - 10 - 16		2 - 50 - 50
	9 - 11 - 34		2 - 51 - 10

Error of Sextion 8' - 45".

May 19th — Satturday 1804 —

A violent Wind last night from the W. S. W. accompanied with rain which lasted about three hours. Cleared away this morn'g at 8 oClock, I took receipt for the pay of the men up to the 1st of Decr next, R Fields kill a Deer to day, I reseve an invitation to a Ball, it is not in my power to go. George Drewyer return from St Louis and brought 99 Dollars, he lost a letter from Capt Lewis to me, Seven Ladies visit me to day

Took equal altituds of ⊙ L. L[1] & made it 76° - 33' - 7"

A. M.	8h - 12' - 20"	P. M.	3h - 45' - 49"
	8 - 14 - 9		3 - 46 - 22
	8 - 15 - 30		3 - 47 - 41

Error of Sexton as usual.

---

[1] These characters are used by Clark to signify "the sun's lower limb;" or, with "U. L.," its "upper limb." — Ed.

May 20th Sunday 1804 —

(at St. Charles) A Cloudy morning rained and hard Wind from the last night, The letter George lost yesterday found by a Country man, I gave the party leave to go and hear a Sermon to day delivered by Mr [Blank space in MS.] a roman Carthlick Priest

at 3 oClock Capt Lewis, Capt Stoddard accompanied by the Officers & Several Gentlemen of St Louis arrived in a heavy Showr of Rain. Messrs Lutenants Minford & Worriss. Mr Choteau[,] Grattiot, Deloney, Laberdee, Rankin. Dr Sodrang[1]

rained the greater part of this evening, Suped with Mr Charles Tayon, the late Comdt of St Charles a Spanish Ensign.

[Lewis:] *Sunday May 20th* 1804.

The morning was fair, and the weather pleasent; at 10 OCk A M. agreably to an appointment of the preceeding day, I was joined by Capt Stoddard, Lieutt. Milford & Worrell together with Messrs. A. Chouteau, C. Gratiot, and many other rispectable inhabitants of St. Louis, who had engaged to accompany me to the Vilage of St. Charles; accordingly at 12 OCk., after bidding an affectionate adieu to my Hostis, that excellent woman the spouse of Mr. Peter Chouteau, and some of my fair friends of St. Louis, we set forward to that vilage in order to join my friend companion and fellow labourer Capt. William Clark, who had previously arrived at that place with the party destined for the discovery of the interior of the continent of North America the first 5 miles of our rout laid through a beatifull high leavel and fertile prarie which incircles the town of St. Louis from N. W. to S. E. the lands through which we then passed are somewhat broken less fertile the plains and woodlands are here indiscriminately interspersed untill you arrive within three miles of the vilage when the woodland commences and continues to the Missouri the latter is extreemly fertile. At half after one P. M. our progress was interrupted by the near approach of a violent thunder-storm from the N. W. and concluded to take shelter in a little cabbin hard by untill the rain should be over; accordingly we alighted and remained about an hour and a half and regailed ourselves with a could collation which we had taken the precaution to bring with us from St. Louis.

---

[1] Louisiana (retroceded by Spain to France in 1800) was sold by Napoleon Bonaparte (April 30, 1803) to the United States; and Captain Amos Stoddard was the commissioner appointed by Jefferson to receive the upper portion of the territory from the Spanish authorities. France never having taken actual possession of Louisiana, the transfer from Spain to France took place at St. Louis, March 9, 1804, Lewis being chief official witness; the transfer from France to the United States occurred the following day; and Stoddard became military governor of Upper Louisiana, pending its reorganization by Congress, which took effect on October 1 of that year. One of his officers was Lieutenant Worrall (the name spelled Worriss by Clark); another was named Milford (Minford, in Clark).

Pierre and Auguste Chouteau were among the earliest settlers of St. Louis, and the Chouteau family has always been prominent in its annals; Pierre was the son of its founder, Pierre Laclede. Their sister Victoire was the wife of Charles Gratiot, who was engaged in the Indian trade in the Illinois country from 1774, settling at St. Louis in 1781; upon the organization of the District of Louisiana (1804), Gratiot was appointed the first presiding justice of the new Court of Quarter Sessions at St. Louis, afterward filling various public offices. Another sister, Pelagie Chouteau, married Sylvester Labbadie (misspelled Laberdee by Clark). David Delaunay was an associate justice in the above-mentioned court. James Rankin was another early settler of St. Louis. Dr. Antoine François Saugrain (the "Sodrang" of Clark) was a French chemist and mineralogist, who had made several voyages to America, for scientific purposes, from 1784 to 1788. In 1790, he was one of the French colonists who settled at Gallipolis, O., and finally located with his family at St. Louis, where he practised medicine until his death in 1820. See W. V. Byars's *Memoir* of Saugrain's life (St. Louis, 1903). For detailed accounts of these and other early settlers of St. Louis, see Scharf's *Saint Louis*, pp. 167–202; and Billon's *Annals of St. Louis*, pp. 389–492. — Ed.

The clouds continued to follow each other in rapaid succession, insomuch that there was but little prospect of it's ceasing to rain this evening; as I had determined to reach St. Charles this evening and knowing that there was now no time to be lost I set forward in the rain, most of the gentlemen continued with me, we arrived at half after six and joined Capt Clark, found the party in good health and sperits. Suped this evening with Monsr. Charles Tayong a Spanish Ensign & late Commandant of St. Charles at an early hour I retired to rest on board the barge. St. Charles is situated on the North bank of the Missouri 21 miles above it's junction with the Mississippi, and about the same distance N. W. from St. Louis; it is bisected by one principal street about a mile in length runing nearly parallel with the river, the plain on which it stands is narrow tho' sufficiently elivated to secure it against the annual inundations of the river, which usually happen in the month of June, and in the rear it is terminated by a range of small hills, hence the appellation of *petit Cote*, a name by which this vilage is better known to the French inhabitants of the Illinois than that of S^t^ Charles. The Vilage contains a Chappel, one hundred dwelling houses, and about 450 inhabitants; their houses are generally small and but illy constructed; a great majority of the inhabitants are miserably pour illiterate and when at home excessively lazy, tho' they are polite hospitable and by no means deficient in point of natural genious, they live in a perfect state of harmony among each other, and plase as implicit confidence in the doctrines of their speritual pastor, the Roman Catholic priest, as they yeald passive obedience to the will of their temporal master the commandant. a small garden of vegetables is the usual extent of their cultivation, and this is commonly imposed on the old-men and boys; the men in the vigor of life consider the cultivation of the earth a degrading occupation, and in order to gain the necessary subsistence for themselves and families, either undertake hunting voyages on their own account, or engage themselves as hirelings to such persons as possess sufficient capital to extend their traffic to the natives of the interior parts of the country; on those voyages in either case, they are frequently absent from their families or homes the term of six twelve or eighteen months and alwas subjected to severe and incessant labour, exposed to the ferosity of the lawless savages, the vicissitudes of weather and climate, and dependant on chance or accident alone for food, raiment or relief in the event of malady. These people are principally the decendants of the Canadian French, and it is not an inconsiderable proportion of them that can boast a small dash of the pure blood of the aboriginies of America. On consulting with my friend Capt C. I found it necessary that we should pospone our departure untill 2 P. M. the next day and accordingly gave orders to the party to hold themselves in readiness to depart at that hour.

Capt. Clark now informed me that having gotten all the stores on board the Barge and perogues on the evening of the

13th of May he determined to leave our winter cantoonment at the mouth of River Dubois the next day, and to ascend the Missouri as far as the Vilage of St Charles, where, as it had been previously concerted between us, he was to wait my arrival; this movement while it advanced us a small distance on our rout, would also enable him to determine whether the vessels had been judiciously loaded and if not timely to make the necessary alterations; accordingly at 4 P. M. on Monday the 14th of May 1804, he embarked with the party in the presence of a number of the neighbouring Citizens who had assembled to witness his departure. during the fore part of this Day it rained excessively hard. In my last letter to the President dated at St Louis I mentioned the departure of Capt. Clark from River Dubois on the 15th Inst, which was the day that had been calculated on, but having completed the arrangements a day earlyer he departed on the 14th as before mentioned. On the evening of the 14th the party halted and encamped on the upper point of the first Island which lyes near the Larbord shore, on the same side and nearly opposite the center of this Island a small Creek disimbogues called *Couldwater*.

The course and distance of this day was West 4 Miles — the Wind from N. E.[1]

[Clark:] *May 21st 1804 Monday* —

All the forepart of the Day arranging our party and procureing the different articles necessary for them at this place. Dined with Mr Ducett and Set out at half passed three oClock under three Cheers from the gentlemen on the bank and proceeded on to the head of the Island (which is Situated on the Stbd Side) 3 Miles Soon after we Set out to day a hard Wind from the W. S W accompanied with a hard rain, which lasted with Short intervales all night, opposit our Camp a Small creek coms in on the Lbd Side.

---

[1] The entry here closed, written by Lewis, is found in Codex Aa. — Ed.

Course & Distance 21st of May

	m	
S. 15°. W	- 1 - ¾ -	To bilge of Isd [1]
N 52° W	- 1 - ½ -	To Upper Pt of Isd Std Sd
	3 - ¼	

May 22nd Tuesday 1804 —

A Cloudy Morning Delay one hour for 4 french men who got liberty to return to arrange Some business they had forgotten in Town, at 6 oClock we proceeded on, passed Several small farms on the bank, and a large creek on the Lbd Side Called *Bonom* [*bon homme*] a Camp of Kickapoos[2] on the St Side (*An Indian nation residing on the heads of Kaskaskis & Illinois river 90 miles N.E. of the mouth of the Missouri, & hunt occasionally on the Missouri*)

Those Indians told me several days ago that they would Come on and hunt and by the time I got to their Camp they would have Some provisions for us, We camped in a Bend at the Mo: of a Small creek, Soon after we came too the Indians arrived with 4 Deer as a Present, for which we gave them two qts of Whiskey

Course & Distance the 22d May

S 60°. W.	3	Ms to a pt Lbd Side
S 43°. W.	4	Ms to a pt on Stbd Side
West .	3½	Ms to a pt on Stbd St psd *Bonom*
S. 75°. W.	7½	Ms to a pt in Bend to Stbd Side at the Mo. of Osage Womans R [3]
	18	

This day we passed Several Islands, and Some high lands on the Starboard Side, verry hard water.

---

[1] Apparently meaning the "bulge" or projection of St. Charles Island to the south. Most of the camping-sites of the expedition, and other localities named, are identified in the notes to Coues's *L. and C.*, q.v.; but as many of these are but conjectures, the reader will do well to compare carefully therewith the facsimiles of Clark's original maps, published in the present edition. — Ed.

[2] An Algonquian tribe, formerly located in southern Wisconsin, where is a river bearing their name. — Ed.

[3] Still named Femme Osage River. — Ed.

May 23rd Wednesday 1804—

We Set out early ran on a Log and detained one hour, proceeded the Course of Last night 2 miles to the mouth of a Creek [*R*] on the Stbd. Side called Osage Womans R, about 30 yds Wide, opposit a large Island and a [*American*] Settlement. (on this Creek 30 or 40 famlys are Settled, crossed to the Setlemt. and took in R & Jos Fields who had been Sent to purchase Corn & Butter &c Many people Came to See us, we passed a large *Cave* on the Lbd. Side (Called by the french the *Tavern*[1]—about 120 feet wide 40 feet Deep & 20 feet high many different immages are Painted on the Rock at this place the Inds. & French pay omage. Many names are wrote on the rock, Stoped about one mile above for Capt Lewis who had assended the Clifts which is at the Said Cave 300 fee[t] high, hanging over the waters, the water excessively Swift to day, We incamped below a Small Isld. in the Middle of the river, Sent out two hunters, one Killed a Deer.

Course & Distance 23rd May

S. 75 W 2 mils to Osage Womn. R the Course of last Night
S. 52 W 7 mils. to a pt. on St. Side.
9

This evening we examined the arms and amunition found those mens arms in the perogue in bad order. a fair evening. Capt. Lewis near falling from the Pinecles of rocks 300 feet, he caught at 20 foot.

May 24th Thursday 1804—

Set out early. passed a verry bad part of the River Called the Deavels race ground, this is where the Current Sets against some projecting rocks for half a Mile on the Labd. Side, above this place is the Mouth of a Small Creek called *queevere*, passed Several Islands, two Small Creeks on the Stbd. Side, and passed between a Isld. and the Lbd. Shore a narrow pass above this Isld. is a verry bad part of the river, We attempted to pass up under the Lbd. Bank which was falling in so fast that the evident danger obliged us to cross between the Starbd. Side and a Sand bar in the middle of the river, We *hove* up near the head of the Sand bar, the Same moveing & backing caused us to run on the sand. The Swiftness of the Current Wheeled the boat, Broke our *Toe* rope, and was nearly over Setting the boat, all hands jumped out on the upper Side and bore on that Side untill the Sand washed from under the boat and Wheeled on the next bank by the time She wheeled a 3rd Time got a rope fast to her Stern and by the means of swimmers was Carred to Shore and when her stern was down whilst in the act of Swinging a third time into Deep Water near the Shore, we returned, to the Island where we Set out and assended under the Bank which I have just mentioned, as falling in, here George Drewyer & Willard, two of our men who left us at St. Charles to come on by land joined us, we camped about 1 mile above where we were So nearly being lost, on the Labd. Side at a Plantation. all in Spirits. This place I call the *retragrade* bend as we were obliged to fall back 2 miles

---

[1] Thus named, according to Brackenridge (*Views of Louisiana*, p. 203), because this cave afforded "a stopping place for voyagers ascending, or on returning to their homes after a long absence." The American settlement just below this place was the Kentucky colony recently founded on Femme Osage River, about six miles above its mouth; among these settlers was Daniel Boone, who in 1798 had obtained a grant of land there from the Spanish authorities, whereon he resided until 1804. His death occurred at Femme Osage, on Sept. 26, 1820 (see the Draper MSS. Collection in library of Wisconsin Historical Society; press-mark, 16 C 28).—ED.

Course & Distance of the 24th May

S. 63° W, 4 Ms. to a pt. on Stbd. Side
S. 68 W, 3 Ms. to a pt on Lbd. Side
S. 75° W, 3 Ms. to a pt. on Stbd. Side
10

May 25th Friday 1804 —

rain last night, river fall several inches, Set out early psd. Several Islands passed Wood River on the Lbd. Side at 2 Miles passed [*again*] the Creek on the St. Side called La quevr [*quiver*] at 5 miles passed a [*small*] Creek (called R la *poceau*) at 8 miles, opse. an Isd. on the Lbd. Side, Camped at the mouth of a Creek called River a Chouritte, [*La Charrette*], above a Small french Village of 7 houses and as many families,[1] settled at this place to be conv^t. to hunt, & trade with the Indians, here we met with M. Louisell, imedeately down from the Seeder [*Cedar*] Isl^d. Situated in the Country of the Sciox [*Sioux*] 400 Leagues up he gave us a good Deel of information [and] Some letters he informed us that he Saw no Indians on the river below the *Poncrars* [*Poncaras*].[2] Some hard rain this evening.

Course & Distance 25th May

West	3	M^s Stb^d Side passed Creek
N. 57° W.	5	Ms. Lb^d Side ps^d Creek
N. 20° W	2	M^s to Mo: Chouritte Creek
	10	& *Village* on the S^t Side.

The people at this Village is pore, houses Small, they sent us milk & eggs to eat.

May the 26th Satturday 1804 —

Set out at 7 oClock after a heavy Shour of rain (George Drewyer, & John Sheelds, sent by Land with the two horses with directions to proceed on one day & hunt the next)

The wind favourable from the E.N.E. passed Beef Island and River on Lb^d Side at 3½ m^t [*a large island called Buffaloe Island separated from the land by a small channel into which Buffaloe creek empties itself*]. Passed a creek on the Lb^d Side called Shepperds Creek, passed Several Islands to day, great Deel of Deer Sign on the Bank, one man out hunting, W[e] camped on an Island on the Starboard Side [*near the Southern extrem^t of Luter Island* (*La L'outre*)[3]]

---

[1] Gass and Floyd, in their journals, call this place St. John's, and say that it was "the last white settlement on the river." — Ed.

[2] Referring to the Siouan tribe of Poncas, whose village was on the Ponca River, a stream flowing into the Missouri not far above the Niobrara River. When visited by our explorers, their town was found deserted, the tribe (then reduced to a few cabins) being absent on a hunting expedition, and having joined the Omahas, also a Siouan tribe, for mutual aid and protection. — Ed.

[3] L'Outre Island, as given on modern maps — this, as well as the form in the text, corrupted from the French word *loutre* ("otter"). Floyd and Biddle use the English name for the island or the creek. — Ed.

Course & Distance to day

S. 50° W.	3½	Ms to a pt S. Side opsd pt Buf Isd
N. 80° W	2½	Ms to pt Lbd Sd
N. 88° W	3½	Ms to pt Std Sd abov Buf Isd
N 82° W	1½	Ms to pt Sd Side
N 37° W	5	Ms to pt Lbd Sd passed 2 Is. & Shepd R.
N 60° W.	2	Ms to pt on St Sd pd a Isd S. S.
	18	

[Orderly Book; Lewis:]

Detatchment Orders.
May 26th 1804.

The Commanding Officers direct, that the three Squads under the command of Sergt. Floyd Ordway and Pryor heretofore forming two messes each, shall untill further orders constitute three messes only, the same being altered and organized as follows (viz)

Sergt Charles Floyd.

Privates

Hugh Mc Neal
Patric Gass
Reubin Fields
John B Thompson
John Newman
Richard Winsor
Francis Rivet & (*French*)
Joseph Fields

Sergt John Ordway

Privates

William Bratton
John Colter
Moses B. Reed (*Soldier*)
Alexander Willard
William Warner
Silas Goodrich
John Potts &
Hugh Hall

Sergt Nathaniel Pryor

Privates

George Gibson
George Shannon
John Shields
John Collins
Joseph Whitehouse
Peter Wiser
Peter Crusat &
Francis Labuche

The commanding officers further direct that the remainder of the detatchmen[t] shall form two messes; and that the same be constituted as follows. (viz)

Patroon, Baptist Dechamps

Engages.

Etienne Mabbauf
Paul Primaut
Charles Hébert
Baptist La Jeunesse
Peter Pinaut
Peter Roi &
Joseph Collin

Corpl. Richard Warvington

Privates.

Robert Frasier
John Boleye
John Dame
Ebinezer Tuttle &
Isaac White.

The Commanding officers further direct that the messes of Sergts. Floyd, Ordway and Pryor shall untill further orders form the crew of the Batteaux; the Mess of the Patroon LaJeunesse will form the permanent crew of the red Perogue; Corpl. Warvington's mess forming that of the white perogue.

Whenever by any casualty it becomes necessary to furnish additional men to assist in navigating the Perogues, the same shall be furnished by daily detale from the Privates who form the crew of Batteaux, exempting only from such detale, Thomas P. Howard, and the men who are assigned to the two bow and two stern oars. For the present one man will be furnished daily to assist the crew of the white perogue; this man must be an expert boatman.

The posts and duties of the Sergt. shall be as follows (viz) — when the Batteaux is under way, one Sergt. shall be stationed at the helm, one in the center on the rear of the starboard locker, and one at the bow. *The Sergt. at the helm*, shall steer the boat, and see that the baggage on the quarterdeck is properly arranged and stowed away in the most advantageous manner; to see that no cooking utensels or loos lumber of any kind is left on the deck to obstruct the passage between the burths — he will also attend to the compas when necessary.

The Sergt. at the center will command the guard, manage the sails, see that the men at the oars do their duty; that they come on board at a proper season in the morning, and that the boat gets under way in due time; he will keep a good lookout for the mouths of all rivers, creeks, Islands and other remarkable places and shall immediately report the same to the commanding officers; he will attend to the issues of sperituous liquors; he shall regulate the halting of the batteaux through the day to give the men refreshment, and will also regulate the time of her departure taking care that not more time than is necessary shall be expended at each halt — it shall be his duty also to post a centinel on the bank, near the boat whenever we come too and halt in the course of the day, at the same time he will (acompanied by two his guard) reconnoiter the forrest arround the place of landing to the distance of at least one hundred paces. when we come too for the purpose of encamping at night, the Sergᵗ of the guard shall post two centinels immediately on our landing; one of whom shal be posted near the boat, and the other at a convenient distance in rear of the encampment; at night the Sergᵗ must be always present with his guard, and he is positively forbidden to suffer any man of his guard to absent himself on any pretext whatever; he will at each relief through the night, accompanyed by the two men last off their posts, reconnoiter in every direction around the camp to the distance of at least one hundred and fifty paces, and also examine the situation of the boats and perogues, and see that they ly safe and free from the bank.

It shall be the duty of the *sergᵗ at the bow*, to keep a good look out for all danger which may approach, either of the enimy, or obstructions which may present themselves to the passage of the boat; of the first he will notify the Sergᵗ at the center, who will communicate the information to the commanding officers, and of the second or obstructions to the boat he will notify the Sergᵗ at the helm; he will also report to the commanding officers through the Sergᵗ at the center all perogues boats canoes or other craft which he may discover in the river, and all hunting camps or parties of Indians in view of which we may pass. he will at all times be provided with a seting pole and assist the bowsman in poling and managing the bow of the boat. it will be his duty also to give and answer all signals, which may hereafter be established for the government of the perogues and parties on shore.

The Sergᵗˢ will on each morning before our departure relieve each other in the following manner — (viz) The Sergᵗ at the helm will parade the new guard, relieve the Sergt. and the old guard, and occupy the middle station in the boat; the Sergt. of the old guard will occupy the station at the bow, and the Sergt. who had been stationed the preceeding day at the bow will place himself at the helm.

The sergts. in addition to those duties are directed each to keep a seperate journal from day to day of all passing occurrences, and such other observations on the country &c as shall appear to them worthy of notice.

The Sergts. are relieved and exempt from all labour of making fires, pitching tents or cooking, and will direct and make the men of their several messes perform an equal proportion of those duties.

The guard shall hereafter consist of one sergeant and six privates & engages.

Patroon Dechamp, *Copl. Warvington*, and *George Drewyer*, are exempt from guard duty; the two former will attend particularly to their perogues at all times, and see that their lading is in good order, and that the same is kept perfectly free from rain or other moisture; the latter will perform certain duties on shore which will be assigned him from time to time: all other soldiers and engaged men of whatever discription must perform their regular tour of gua[r]d duty.

All detales for guard or other duty will be made in the evening when we encamp, and the duty to be performed will be entered on, by the individuals so warned, the next morning. provision for one day will be issued to the party on each evening after we have encamped; the same will be cooked on that evening by the several messes, and a proportion of it reserved for the next day as no cooking will be allowed in the day while on the ma[r]ch.

Sergt. John Ordway will continue to issue the provisions and make the detales for guard or other duty.

The day after tomorrow lyed corn and grece will be issued to the party, the next day Poark and flour, and the day following indian meal and poark; and in conformity to that rotiene provisions will continue to be issued to the party untill further orders. should any of the messes prefer indian meal to flour they may recieve it accordingly — no poark is to be issued when we have fresh meat on hand.

Labuche and Crusat will man the larboard bow oar alternately, and the one not engaged at the oar will attend as the Bows-man, and when the attention of both these persons is necessary at the bow, their oar is to be maned by any idle hand on board.

MERIWETHER LEWIS Cap^t
W^m CLARK Cp^t

[Clark:] *May 27th Sunday 1804* —

as we were pushing off this morning two Canoos Loaded with fur &c came to from the Mahas [*Mahar;* Omaha — ED.] nation, [*living 730 miles above on the Missouri*] which place they had left two months, at about 10 oClock 4 *Cajaux*[1] or rafts loaded with furs and peltries came too, one from the *Paunees,* [*Paunees on the river Platt*] the others from Grand Osage, they informed nothing of Consequence, passed a creek on the Lb^d Side called *ash Creek* 20 yd^s Wide, passed the upper point of a large Island on the Sb^d Side back of which comes in three creeks one Called Otter Creek, her[e] the man we left hunting came in we camped on a Willow Island in the mouth of Gasconnade River George Shannon killed a Deer this evening.

Course & Distance 27th May.

N 71° W.	3	M^s to p^t Lb^d S^d p^d an Is^d
S 82° W.	6	M^s to p^t Lb^d S^d p^d 2 Is^d a Creek
N 74° W.	1½	M^s to p^t Lb^d S^d p^d up^r p^t big Is^d & 2 Creeks
S 70° W.	5	M^s to p^t ops^d the Gasconnade R
	15½	

---

[1] The word originally penned by Clark in the MS. has been erased both here and elsewhere, and over it is written the word "Cajaux," by the same hand which has made other black-ink emendations in Clark's text. This word (also written *cajeu* or *cajeux*) is a term used by the French-Canadian peasantry to designate a small raft; for its etymology, see *Jesuit Relations* (Thwaites's ed.), xxxii, p. 313. Cf. entries under June 5 and elsewhere, where the word appears as originally written, "Caissee," and "Chaussies." — ED.

May 28th. Munday 1804
Gasconnade

Rained hard all last night some thunder & lightning hard Wind in the forepart of the night from the S W. Ruben Fields killed a Deer Several hunters out to day. I measured the river found the Gasconnade to be 157 yds. Wide and 19 foot Deep the Course of this R. is S. 29° W, one of the hunters fell in with 6 Inds. hunting, onloaded the large Perogue on board of which was 8 french hands found many things wet by their cearlessessness, put all the articles which was wet out to Dry. this day so Cloudy that no observations could be taken, the river begins to rise, examine the mens arms and equapage, all in order

May 29th. Tuesday —

Rained last night, Cloudy morning 4 hunters sent out with orders to return at 12 oClock

Took equal altitudes of Suns Lower limb found it 105° - 31' - 45"
A M. 9 h - 25' - 24" P M 2 h - 35' - 31"
9 - 26 - 3 2 - 37 - 20
9 - 27 - 27 2 - 38 - 52
Error of Sextion 8'. 45" -
⊙' Magnetic Azzamuth S. 83° W.
Time at place of obsvn. by bromtr. P. M. 4 h - 4 m - 44 s
Double altitude of ⊙ L Limb — 71° - 24' - 00"

Cap Lewis observed Meridean altitude of ⊙ U L. back observation with the octant & artificeal horozen — gave for altitude on the Limb 38°. 44' - 00".
octant error — 2 - 0 - 0 +

had the Perogues loaded and all perpared to Set out at 4 oClock after finishing the observations & all things necessary found that one of the hunters had not returned, we determined to proceed on & leave one perogue to wate for him, accordingly at half past four we set out and came on 4 miles & camped on the Lbd. Side above a small Creek called Deer Creek, Soon after we came too we heard several guns fire down the river, we answered them by a Discharge of a Swivell on the Bow.

Course to day & Distance 29th May

N. 54° W,	2	Ms to pt Lbd Sd
N. 78° W	2	Ms to pt Lbd Sd pd Deer Creek
	4	

May 30th Wednesday 1804

Rained all last night. Set out at 6 oClock after a heavy shower, and proceeded on, passed a large Island a Creek opposit on the St Side, Just above a *Cave* Called *Monbrun* [*Montbrun's*] *Tavern* & River, passed a Creek on the Lbd Side call *Rush* Creek at 4 miles several Showers of rain, the Currents verry Swift, river rising fast. Passed Big Miry [*Muddy*] River at 11 miles on the Starboard Side, at the lower point of a Island, this River is about 50 yards Wide, Camped at the mouth of a Creek on Lbd Sd. of abt 15 yds Wide Called Grinestone Creek, opposit the head of a Isd and the mouth of Little Mirey [*Muddy*] River, on the St Side, a heavy wind accompanied with rain & hail we made 14 miles to day, the river Continud to rise, the Country on each Side appear full of Water.

Course & Distance of May 30th

West	2	Ms to a pt L. Sd opsd a Cave & pt Isd .
S 80° W.	2	Ms to a pt on L. Sd psd Isd & rush Creek
S 78° W.	3	Ms to a pt on L. Sd psd a Wil. Isd
S 66° W	4	Ms to a pt on Lbd Sd opsd Miry R: & Isd
S 48° W	6	Ms to a pt on St. Sd opsd som sm: Isds Psd
	17	say 17 mile a creek 2 ms Swift

May 31st Thursday 1804—

rained the greater part of last night, the wind from the West raised and blew with great force untill 5 oClock p. m. which obliged us to lay by a *cajaux* of Bear Skins and pelteries came down from the Grand Osarge, one french man, one Indian, and a squaw, they had letters from the man Mr Choteau Sent to that part of the Osarge nation settled on Arkansa River mentioning that his letter[1] was commited to the flaims, the Ind^{s} not believing that the Americans had possession of the Countrey they disregard'ed S^{t} Louis & their Supplies &c. Several *rats* of Considerable Size was Caught in the woods to day. Cap^{t} Lewis went out to the woods & found many curious Plants & Srubs, one Deer killed this evening.

June 1st 1804 Friday —

Set out early a fair morning Passed the mouth Bear Creek 25 yd^{s} Wide at 6 Miles, Several Small Islands in the river the wind a head from the West the current exceedingly rapid Came to at the point of the Osarges River on the Lab^{d} Side of Missouris this Osages river verry high, [*we*] falled all the Trees in the point to make observations Set up untill 12 oClock taken observation this night —

Course & Distance June 1st

S. 49° W - 4 m^{s} to p^{t} Is^{d} ps^{d} Little Muddy river on Lb^{d} S^{d} 30 y^{ds} wid
S 45° W - 6 m^{s} to Is^{d} ps^{d} Bear Creek L. S^{d} 20 y^{d} Wid.
S. 39 W. 3 m^{s} to Pt. of Osage River
13

June 2nd Satturday

Cap Lewis Took the Time & Distance of ⊙' & Moons nearest limbs, the Sun East — and Meridean altitude of Suns U. L. with Octant, back observation gave for altitude 37°-28'-00".

Errors of Octant 2°-00'-00" +. made Several other observations. I made an angle for the Wedth of the two rivers. The Missourie from the Point to the N. Side is 875 yards wide the Osage River from the point to the S. E. Side is 397 yards Wide, the destance between the two rivers at the p^{t} of high Land (100 foot above the bottom) and 80 poles up the Missouris from the point is 40 poles, on the top of this high land under which is a limestone rock two mouns or graves are raised. from this p^{t} which comds (*com-*

---

[1] In Biddle (i., p. 7) this phrase reads "the letter announcing the cession of Louisiana." — Ed.

mands) both rivers I had a delightfull prospect of the Missouris up and down, also the Osage R. up.[1]

George Drewyer & John Shields who we had sent with the horses by Land on the N. Side joined us this evening much worsted, they being absent Seven Days depending on their gun, the greater part of the time rain, they were obliged to raft or Swim many Creeks, those men gave a flattering account of of the Countrey Commencing below the first hill on the N Side and extend'g Parrelal with the river for 30 or 40 Ms The Two Muddy rivers passing thro & som fine Springs & Streems our hunters kill several Deer to day, Some Small licks on the SE of the Osage River.

June 3rd Sunday 1804 —

The forepart of the day fair Took Meridional altitude of ⊙' U. L. with the Octant and glass Horreson adjusted back observation. the instrement gave 38° – 2′ – 00″ it was Cloudy and the Suns disk much obscured and cannot be Depended on.

We made other Observations in the evening after the return of Capt Lewis from a walk of three or four ms round. We Set out at 5 oClock P. M. proceeded on five miles to the mouth of a Creek on the L. S. 20 yds wide Called Murow,[2] passed a Creek at 3 ms which I call *Cupbord* Creek as it mouths above a rock of that appearance. Several Deer killed to day. at the mouth of the Murow Creek I saw much sign of War parties of Inds haveing crossed from the mouth of this Creek. I have a bad cold with a Sore throat. near West 5 Miles

June 4th Monday 1804 —

a fair day three men out on the right flank passed a large Island on the St Side called Seeder Island, this Isd has a great Deel of Ceedar on it, passed a Small Creek at 1 ml 15 yd Wide which we named Nightingale Creek from a Bird of that discription which Sang for us all last night, and is the first of the Kind I ever heard.[1] passed the mouth of Seeder Creek at 7 Ms on the S. S. abt 20 yds Wide above Some Small Isds passed a Creek on the L. S. abt 15 yds wide, *Mast* [*Mast*] Creek, here the Serjt at the helm run under a bending Tree & broke the Mast, Some delightfull Land, with a jentle assent about this Creek, well timbered, Oake, Ash, Walnut &c. &c. passed, wind N W. by W. passed a small creek called Zancare C on the L. S: at this last point I got out and walked on the L. Sd thro a rush bottom for 1 Mile & a Short Distance thro: Nettles as high as my brest assended a hill of about 170 foot to a place where the french report that Lead ore has been found, I saw no Mineral of that description. Cap Lewis camped imediately under this hill,[2] to wate which gave me Some time to examine the hill, on the top is a mound of about 6 foot high, and about 100 acres of land which the large timber is Dead in Decending about 50 foot a projecting lime stone rock under Which is a Cave at one place in this projecting rocks I went on one which spured up and hung over the water from the top of this rock I had a prospect of the river for 20 or 30 ms up, from the Cave which incumpased the hill I decended by a Steep decent to the foot, a verry bad part of the river opposit this hill, the river continus to fall Slowly, our hunters killed 7 Deer to day The land our hunters passed thro: to day on the S. S. was verry fine the latter part of to day. the high land on the S. S. is about 2d rate

---

[1] Biddle here furnishes (pp. 8, 9) an enumeration of the bands of the Osage tribe, then numbering over 2,300 warriors; also their own tradition of their origin, which made them descendants of the beaver. — Ed.

[2] Moreau, in Biddle and on modern maps. — Ed.

Course & Distance 4th June

N. 30° - W.	4	Ms to a pt on S. Sd psd a C. & 2 Isd
N. 25° - W.	3	Ms to a pt on S. Sd psd Seeder C.
N. 58 W.	7½	Ms to pt on L. S. a Creek on L. S.
N. 75. W.	3	Ms to a pt on S. Sd opsd Mine Hill
	17½	

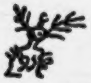
---

[1] No species of the true nightingale (*Daulias luscinia*) is found in North America; the so-called "Virginia nightingale" is the cardinal or red-bird (Cardinalis *virginianus*). — COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 14).

The ordinary mocking-bird sings in the night; so also, occasionally, do the catbird and the brown thrasher. — JAMES N. BASKETT.

[2] Brackenridge locates this hill nine miles above Cedar Creek. — COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 14).

June 5th Tuesday 1804 —

after Jurking[1] the meet killed yesterday and Crossing the hunting party we Set out at 6 oClock, from the last Course & distance, N 51° W. 5 M. to a pt. on the St. Sd. passed a small creek on the L. S: I call *Lead* C. passed a creek on the S. S. of 20 yds. Wide Cald. Lit: [*Little*] Good-Womans C. on the L. S. a Prarie extends from Lead C. parrelel with the river to Mine river, at 4 Ms. Passed the Creek of the big rock about 15 yds. wide on the L. Sd. at 11 oClock brought too a small Caissee [*raft made of two canoes tied together*] in which was two french men, from 80 Leagues up the Kansias [*Kanzas*] R. where they wintered, and Cought a great quantity of Beaver, the greater part of which they lost by fire from the Praries, those men inform [us] that the Kansas Nation are now out in the plains hunting Buffalow, they hunted last winter on this river Passed a projecting rock on which was painted a figure  and a Creek at 2 ms. above Called Little Manitou[2] Creek, from the Painted rock this Creek 20 yds. wide on the L. Sd. passed a Small Creek on L. S. opposit a verry bad Sand bar of Several Ms. in extent, which we named *Sand* C, here my Servent York Swam to the Sand bar to geather Greens for our Dinner, and returned with a Sufficent quantity wild *Creases* [*Cresses*] or Tung [*Tongue*] grass, we passed up for 2 ms. on the L. S. of this Sand and was obliged to return, the watr. uncertain the quick Sand moveing we had a fine wind, but could not make use of it, our Mast being broke, we passed between 2 Small Islands in the Middle of the Current, & round the head of three a rapid Current for one mile and Camped on the S. S. opsd. a large Island in the middle of the river, one Perogue did not get up for two hours, our Scout discovd. the fresh sign of about 10 Inds. I expect that those

---

[1] Coues claims (*L. d C.*, i, p. 31) that the word "jerk" (spelled "jurk" by Clark), as applied to the process of drying meat in the sun, is a corruption of a Chilian word *charqui*, meaning "sun-dried meat." — Ed.

[2] Corrupted on modern maps to Moniteau. — Ed.

Indians are on their way to war, against the Osages nation probably they are the Saukees.[1]

Course & Destance June 5th

N. 51°, W.	5	M^{s} to a p^{t} on S. S. ps^{d} 3 C, 1 S. 2 L. S.
N 23° W	7½	M^{s} a p^{t} L. S. ps^{d} Mon. [Manitou — Ed.] Creek
	12½	

June 6th Wednesday 1804

Mended our Mast this morning & Set out at 7 oClock under a jentle breese from S. E. by S passed the large Island, and a Creek Called Split rock Creek[2] at 5 M^{s} on the S. S. ps^{d} a place to the rock from which this Creek 20 yds. w^{d} takes its name, a projecting rock with a hole thro: a point of the rock, at 8 M^{s} passed the Mouth of a Creek Called *Saline* or Salt R. on the L. S^{d} this River is about 30 y^{ds} wide, and has So many Licks and Salt Springs on its banks that the water of the Creek is Brackish, one verry large Lick is 9 m^{s} up on the left Side the water of the Spring in this Lick is Strong as one bushel of the Water is said to make 7^{lb} of good Salt passed a large Is^{d} & several Small ones, the water excessivly Strong, so much so that we Camped Sooner than the usual time to waite for the perogue, The banks are falling in verry much to day river rose last night a foot.

Cap^{t} Lewis took Meridean alt^{d} of Sun U. L. with the Octant above Split Rock C. made the altitude 37° 6′ — 00″ error of oct. as usual 2° 0′ 0″ + The Country for Several miles below is good, on the top of the high land back is also tolerble land Some buffalow Sign to day[3]

---

[1] The Sauk Indians, an Algonquin tribe formerly resident in Wisconsin; they were the allies of the Foxes in the war waged by that tribe against the French during the early part of the eighteenth century. — Ed.

[2] The French name, Roche percée, is used on most maps. — Ed.

[3] The buffalo (more correctly designated as "American bison") ranged, during the seventeenth century, as far east as the Alleghany Mountains. For descriptive and historical information regarding this animal, see monographs thereon, as follows: J. A. Allen's "History of the American Bison," in *U. S. Geol. and Geog. Survey of the Territories, Ann. Rep.*, 1875, pp. 443–587; Wm. F. Hornaday's "Extermination of the American Bison," in *Smithsonian Institute Rep.*, 1887, part 2, pp. 367–548; and Charles Mair's "The American Bison," in *Canad. Roy. Soc. Proc.*, 1890, sec. 2, pp. 93–108. — Ed.

I am Still verry unwell with a Sore throat & head ake

Course & Distance June 6th

N. 28° W.	3½	Ms to a Hill on S. S. pd N. Bilg: of Isd
N 49° W	1½	Ms to a creek Split rock
West -	1½	Ms to a pt on S. S. opsd a Clift
N 31° W.	4½	Ms to a pt on L. S. psd Saline C. L. S.
N. 51° W	3	Ms to a bilg of an Isd to lift pd Sm. Isd
	14	

June 7th Thursday 1804 —

Set out early passed the head of the Island opposit which we Camped last night, and braekfast at the Mouth of a large Creek on the S. S. of 30 yds wide called big *Monetou,*[1] from the pt of the Isd o[u]r Course of last night to the mouth of this Creek is N 61° W 4½ Ms a Short distance above the mouth of this Creek, is Several Courious paintings and carving on the projecting rock of Limestone inlade with white red & blue flint, of a verry good quallity, the Indians have taken of this flint great quantities. We landed at this Inscription and found it a Den of Rattle Snakes, we had not landed 3 Minites before three verry large Snakes was observed in the Crevises of the rocks & killed. at the mouth of the last mentioned Creek Capt Lewis took four or five men & went to Some Licks or Springs of Salt Water from two to four miles up the Creek, on Rt Side the water of those Springs are not Strong, say from 4 to 600 gs of water for a Bushel of Salt passed some Small willow Islands and camped at the mouth of a small river Called *Good Womans* River[2] this river is about 35 yards Wide and said to be navagable for Perogues Several Leagues. Capt Lewis with 2 men went up the Creek a short distance. our Hunters brought in three *Bear* this evening, and informs that the Countrey thro: which they passed from the last Creek is fine, rich land, & well watered.

---

[1] Called by Gass and Floyd, "River of the Big Devil." — ED.

[2] More often known by its French name, Bonne Femme. — ED.

Course & Distance June 7th

N 61° W,	4½	M^s to Mo. of Manitou on S. S.
S 88° W,	2	M^s to p^t on Lb^d Side
S 81° W	4	M^s to p^t S. S. ps^d an Island
S 87° W	3½	M^s to p^t of High Land on L. S. ps^d W. Is^d
	14 M^s	Passed the Mo. of Good Womans R.

8th of June, Friday 1804 —

Set out this morning at Daylight proceeded on the Course of last night Passed two Willow Islands & a Small Creek above a Rock point on the L. S. at 6 miles on which there is a number of Deer Licks, passed the *Mine* River at 9 m^s this river is about 70 yards wide at its mouth and is Said to be navagable for Perogues 80 or 90 m^s the Main [*West*] branch[1] passes near the place where the Little Osage village formerly stood on the Missouries, & heads between the Osarge & Kansias Rivers, the left hand fork heads with nearer Branches of the Osage River, The french inform^d that Lead Ore has been found in defferent parts of this river, I took Sj^t Floyd and went out 4 M^s below this river, I found the land verry good for a mile or 1½ M^s back, and Sufficiently watered with Small Streems which lost themselves in the Missouries bottom, the Land rose graduelly from the river to the Summit of the high Countrey, which is not more than 120 foot above High Water Mark, we joined the Boat & Dined in the point above the mouth of this River, Cap^t Lewis went out above the river & proceeded on one mile, finding the countrey rich, the wedes & vines So thick & high he came to the Boat. proceeded on passed an Island and Camped at the lower point of an Island on the L. S. Called the Island of Mills about 4 M^s above Mine River at this place I found Kanteens, axs, Pumey Stone & peltry hid and buried (I suppose by some hunters) none of them (except the pumey Stone) was teched by one of our party, our hunters Killed 5 Deer to day, commenced raining Soon after we came too which prevented the party cooking their provisions. our Spies inform that the Countrey they passed thro: on S. S is a fine high bottom, no water.

---

[1] At the point of junction are some very rich salt springs; the west branch, in particular, is so much impregnated, that, for twenty miles, the water is not palatable. — BIDDLE (i, p. 12).

Course & Distance 8th June.

S. 81° W.	3	M^s to a p^t on S. S. ps^d Deer L. Creek L. S.
N 88° W,	3	M^s to a p^t on L Side
N. 83° W.	2	M^s to Mouth of Mine Riv. L. S.
N 64° W.	1	M^l to a p^t on S. S.
N 80° W.	3	M^s to the Lower p^t of Is^d of Mills
	12	

This day we met 3 men on a Cajaux from the River of the Soux above the *Mahar Nation* those men had been hunting 12 Mo: & made about 900$ in pelt^s & furs they were out of Provisions and out of Powder. rained this night.

9th of June 1804 Satturday —

a fair morning, the River rise a little we got fast on a Snag Soon after we Set out which detained us a Short time passed the upper Point of the Island, Several Small Chanels running out of the River below a Bluff [*Cliff of rocks called the arrow rock*[1]] & Prarie (Called the Prarie of Arrows) where the river is confined within the width of 300 [*200*] yd^s Passed a Creek of 8 yd^s wide Called Creek of Arrows, this Creek is Short and heads in the Praries on the L. S. passed a Small Creek called Blackbird Creek S.S. and an Island below & a Prarie above on the L. S. a small Lake above the Prarie. opposit the Lower point of the 2d Island on the S. S. we had like to have Stove our boat, in going round a Snag her Stern Struck a log under water & She Swung round on the Snag, with her broad Side to the Current exp^d to the Drifting timber, by the active exertions of our party we got her off in a fiew Mint^s without engerey [injury] and Crossed to the Island where we Camp^d[2] our hunters lay on the S. S. the Perogue crossed without Seeing them and the banks too uncertain to Send her over. Some wind from the S accompanied with rain this evening.

---

[1] So called from being resorted to by Indians for stone arrow-heads. — COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 18).

[2] Five miles above Blackbird (now Richland) Creek. — ED.

The Lands on the S. S. is a high rich bottom the L. S. appears even and of a good quallity riseing gradually to from fifty to 100 foot.

Course & Distance June 9th

N. 39° W,	4	M^{s} to a p^{t} on S. S. ops^{d} a Prarie
N. 34° E.	2	M^{s} to p^{t} of an Is^{d} L. S.
N. 83′ W,	1½	M^{s} to a p^{t} on L. S. ops^{d} B.Bs C^{r}.
N. 39. W.	2	M^{s} to a p^{t} of High L^{d} on L. S.
N. 32. E	3½	M^{s} to a p^{t} on L. S. ps^{d} an Isl^{d}
	13	

10th of June 1804 —

A hard rain last night, We set out this morning verry early passed Some bad placies in the river, Saw a number of Goslings [this] morning pass near a Bank which was falling in at the time we passed, passed two Rivers of *Charletons* which mouth together, above some high land which has a great quantity of Stone Calculated for whetstons the first of those rivers is about 30 yd^{s} Wide & the other is 70 yd^{s} w^{d} and heads Close to the R. Dumons [*des Moines*] The Aieways [*Ayauway*] Nation have a Village on the head of these Rivers.[1] they run through an even Countrey [*a broken rich thickly timbered country*] and is navagable for Perogues Cap Lewis took Med^{n} alt^{d} of ⊙ U. L. with Octant, back obsv^{n} made it 37° 12′ — 00″ delayed 1½ hours.

Cap. Lewis Killed a large Buck, passed a large Is^{d} call'd Shecco[2] and camped in a Prarie on the L. S. I walked out three miles, found the prarie composed of good Land and plenty of water roleing & interspursed with points of timber land. Those Praries are not like those, or a number of those

---

[1] The name Charleton now appears on maps as Chariton. The etymology of Des Moines is suggested in the form used by Clark, "Dumons." This river was formerly named (from the tribe dwelling on its shores) Rivière des Moihgonans — a name soon abbreviated to Moins, and that to River Des Moins (with many variants, of which Clark's is one). Aieway and Ayauway are among the many variants of the name of a Siouan tribe, now known as the Iowa, from whom a State and river are named. Biddle says that the Iowas numbered 300 men. — ED.

[2] Chicot (a French word, meaning "stump"), now Harrison Island. — COUES (*L. and C.* i, p. 20).

E. of the Mississippi void of every thing except grass, they abound with Hasel Grapes & a wild plumb of a Superior [*size &*] quallity, Called the Osages Plumb Grows on a bush the hight of a Hasel (and is three times the sise of other Plumbs,) and hang in great quantities on the bushes I saw great numbers of Deer in the Praries, the evening is Cloudy, our party in high Spirits.

Course & Distance June 10th

N. 8° E	2½	Ms to a pt on L. S.
North	1	Ml along the L. Side
N. 40° W	1	Ml do do do
N. 70° W.	0½	(opsd the Mos of Charltons R.
N 60° W	2	Ms to a pt on S. S.
N 80 W	3	Ms to a pt on S. S. opsd a Pln.
	10	

11th June 1804 Monday—

The N W. wind blew hard & cold as this wind was imediately a head, we could not proceed we took the advantage of this Delay and Dried our wet articles, examin'd Provisions &c. &c. the river begining to fall, the hunters killed two Deer G: Drewyer killed two Bear in the Prarie, they were not fat. we had the meat Jurked and also the venison, which is a constant Practice to have all the fresh meat not used, Dried in this way.

12th of June. Tuesday 1804

Set out early passed Some bad Placies, and a Small Creek on the L. S. called *plumb Creek* at abt 1 Ml at 1 oClock we brought too [to,] two Chaussies one loaded with furs & Pelteries, the other with Greece [*buffalow grease & tallow*] we purchased 300lbs of Greese, and finding that old Mr Durioun was of the party we questioned him untill it was too late to Go further, and Concluded to Camp for the night, those people inform nothing of much information.

Concluded to take old Durioun [*who went acc'*] back as fur as the Soux nation with a view to get some of their Cheifs to visit the Presdt of the United S. (This man being a verry confidential friend of those people, he haveing resided with the Nation 20 odd years) and to accompany them on[1] [Sentence incomplete. — Ed.]

Course & Distance June 12th

N. 25° W.	3½	Ms to L. S. passed Plumb C.
N 70 W	2½	Ms to pt on S. S.
N. 60° W	3	Ms to pt on S. S.
	9	

13th June Wednesday 1804 —

We Set out early passed a round bend to the S. S. and two Creeks Called the round bend Creeks between those two Creeks and behind a Small Willow Island in the bend is a Prarie in which the Missouries Indians once lived and the Spot where 300 [*200*] of them fell a sacrifise to the fury of the *Saukees*, this nation (Missouries) once the most noumerous nation in this part of the Continent now reduced to about 30 fs [fires, i. e., families — Ed.] and that fiew under the protection of the *Otteaus*[2] [*Ottoes*] on R Platt who themselves are declining, passed some willow Isds and bad Sand bars, Took Medn Altitude with Octent back observation it gave for altd on its Lowr L. 36° 58′ 0″ the E [Error] Enstrement 2° 00′ – 00″ +. the Hills or high land for Several days past or above the 2 Charletons does not exceed 100 foot, passed a Batteau on Sand rolling where the Boat was nearly turning over by her Strikeing & turning on the Sand. we came too in the mouth of Grand River on S. S. and Camped for the night, this River is from 80 to 100 yards wide at its mouth and navagable for Perogues a great distance, this river heads with the R. Dumoine, below its mouth is a butifull Plain of bottom land, the hills rise at ½ a mile back, the lands about this place is either Plain or over flown bottom. Capt Lewis and myself walked to the hill, from the top of which we had a butifull prospect of Serounding countrey, in the open

---

[1] An original letter by Dorion to George Rogers Clark, dated Cahokin, 1780, is in the Draper Collection, Wisconsin Historical Society (press-mark, 50 J 34). — Ed.

[2] The Missouri and Oto tribes belong to the Siouan stock. The remnants of both are now in the Indian Territory. — Ed.

Prarie we caught a racoon, our hunter brought in a Bear & Deer, we took some Lunar observations this evening.

Course & Distance 13th June 1804

N. 40° W	2½	Ms to a pt L. S.
S. 39 W.	3	Ms to a pt S. S. psd 2 Creeks
N. 28, W	1½	Ms to a pt Stbd S.
N. 30 W	2	Ms to a pt L. S. opsd Gd R
	9 Ms	

14th June Thursday —

We Set out at 6 oClock, after a thick fog passed thro: a narrow pass on the S. S. which forms a large Isd opposit the upper point of this Island on the L. S. is one of the worst quick or moveing sand bars Which I have Seen, notwithstanding all our precaustons to Clear the Sands and pass between them (which was the way we were compd to pass, from the immence Current & falling banks on the S. S.) the Boat Struck the point of one from the active exertions of the men, prevented her turning, if She had turned she must have overset. We met a *Causseu* [Cajaux, or raft — Ed.] from the Pania [Paunee] on the River Platt, we detained 2 hours with a view of engageing one of the hands to go to the Pania nation with a view to get those people to meet us on the river, (I went out & Shot a Deer) We passed a high land, & clay bluff on the S. S. Called the Snake bluff from the number of Snakes about this place, we passed a Creek above the Bluff about 18 yds wide, this Creek is Called Snake Creek,[1] a bad Sand bar just below, which we found Dificullty in passing & Campd above, our Hunters came in. George Drewyer, gives the following acs of a Pond, & at abt 5 Miles below here S. S. Passed a Small Lake in which there was many Deer feeding. he heard in this Pond a Snake makeing goubleing noises like a turkey. he fired his gun & the noise was increased, he has heard the indians mention this Species of Snake, one Frenchman gives a Similar account

---

[1] This may have been either Miami or Wakenda Creek of modern maps. — Coues (*L. and C.*, i, p. 25).

Course & Distance June 14th

S.	33°	W	2	Ms to Lowr pt on an Isd S. S.
S.	60°	W	1	Ml thro: a chanil on S. S.
S.	70°	W	2	Ms to pt L. S. passed a bad Sand
S.	5	E	3	Ms to a pt on S. S. passed a Creek S. S.
			8	

15th June, Friday 1804—

Set out early and had not proceeded far e'er we wheeled on a Sawyer which was near injuring us verry much, passed a plain on the L. S. a Small Isd in the midle, the river riseing, water verry swift Passed a Creek on the L. S. passed between two Islands, a verry bad place, moveing Sands, we were nearly being swallowed up by the rolling Sands over which the Current was so Strong that we could not Stem it with our Sales under a Stiff breese in addition to our ores, we were compelled to pass under a bank which was falling in, and use the Toe rope occasionally, Continued up pass two other Small Islands and Camped on the S. S. nearly opposit the *antient Village* of the *Little Osarges* and below the antd *Village* of the *Missouries* both Situations in view and within three Ms of each other,[1] the Osage were Settled at the foot [of] a hill in a butifull Plain, which extends back quite to the Osage River, in front of the Vilg: next to the river is an ellegent bottom Plain which extends several miles in length on the river in this low Prarie the *Missouries* lived after they were reduced by the *Saukees* at their Town Some Distc below. The little osage finding themselves much oppressed by the Saukees & other nations, left this place & built a village 5 Ms from the Grand *Osarge Town*, about years ago a fiew of the Missouries accompanied them, the remainder of that Nation went to the Otteaus on the River Platt. The River at this place is about 3 [*one*] Ms wide. our hunters did not come in this evening the river beginning to fall

---

[1] Near the present Malta Bend, and not far below the site of the old French Fort Orleans. — Ed.

Course & Distance June 15th

S. 35° W.	2	Ms along S. S.
S. 50° W.	1½	Ms a pt L. S. passed a pra: & Creek L. S.
S. 51° W.	2½	Ms a pt S. S. psd a Willow Isd
S. 8° W.	¾	Ms to a pt L. S. passd Low pt 2 Isds
S. 80° W.	2	Ms to upr Pt Isd S. S. psd bad place
S. 5° W.	2	Ms to a pt S. S. passed bad place
S. 12° W.	1½	Ms to a pt S. S. psd a Isd in Midl opsd old village Lit: Osage.
	12¼	

16th June Satturday 1804 —

Set out at 7 oClock at about a mile ½ we came to the Camp of our hunters, they had two Bear & two Deer, proceeded on pass a Island on the S. S. a heavy rain came on & lasted a Short time, we came to on the S. S. in a Prarie at the place where Mr Mackey lais down a old french fort,[1] I could See no traces of a Settlement of any kind, in the plain I discovered a kind of Grass resembling Timothey which appeared well Calculated for Hay. this Plain is verry extensive in the evening I walked on the S. S. to see if any timber was convt to make Oars, which we were much in want of, I found some indifferent timber and Struck the river above the Boat at a bad Sand bar, the worst I had Seen which the boat must pass or Drop back Several Miles & Stem a Swift Current on the ops^{d} Side of an Is^{d} the Boat however assended the middle of the Streem which was difficult Dangerious We came to above this place at Dark and Camped in a bad place, the Mosquitoes and Ticks are noumerous & bad.

---

[1] Lewis's map of 1806 indicates "Mr. J. Mackay's route," which embraces most of the valley of the Niobrara River; this Mackay may be the person referred to in the text. Biddle's narrative mentions (i, p. 44) a man of this name who had in 1795–96 a trading establishment farther up the Missouri. The French fort was probably the post (Fort Orleans) established by Bourgmont (1723) not far (according to Coues) from the Malta Bend of the Missouri (see Margry's *Découvertes et établissements*, vi, p. 393; Le Page du Pratz's *Louisiane*, i, p. 324; and Coues's *L. and C.*, i, p. 24, *note* 51).

The exact site of Fort Orleans is not definitely known, and there are diverse opinions regarding it. Hon. Walter B. Douglas, of St. Louis, thinks that the fort was on "the north bank of the Missouri, above the mouth of Wakenda Creek, in what is now Carroll County, and 15 to 20 miles above the town of Brunswick, which stands a little below the place where was the old mouth of Grand River (about six or seven miles from its present entrance). The action of the river-current has caused great changes in the course of both rivers, even within the last thirty years." Later there was another French post upon the river at a village of the Kansas Indians, not far from the present site of Fort Leavenworth. — ED.

Course & Distance June 16th

N. 68° W.	2½	M^{s} to a p^{t} L. S. pass Is^{d} S. S.
West	2	M^{s} to a b^{lg} in Snag Is^{d} L. S.
S. 85 W.	1	M^{l} on L. S. a bad Sand Mid.
S. 61 W.	1	M^{l} on L. S. do do and 2 sm. Is^{ds}
S. 30 W.	2½	M^{s} to a p^{t} S. S. passed up^{r} S^{d} Is^{d}
S. 40 W	1	M^{l} alg. S. S. an Is^{d} Md^{l} & bad p^{s}
	10	

June 17th Sunday 1804 (S. 65° W. 1 M^{l} S. Side.) —

Cloudy morning wind from the S. E we Set out early and proceeded on one mile & came too to make oars, & repair our cable & toe rope &c. &c. which was necessary for the Boat & Perogues, Sent out Sj^{t} Pryor and Some men to get ash timber for ores, and Set some men to make a Toe Rope out of the Cords of a *Cable* which had been provided by Cap^{t} Lewis at Pittsburg for the Cable of the boat. George Drewyer our hunter and one man came in with 2 Deer & a Bear, also a young Horse, they had found in the Prarie, this horse has been in the Prarie a long time and is fat, I Suppose, he has been left by Some war party against the *Osage*, This is a Crossing place for the war parties against that nation from the *Saukees*, *Aiaouez*, [*Ayauways*] & Souix. The party is much aflicted with *Boils*, and Several have the Deassentary, which I contribute to the water [*which is muddy.*] The Countrey about this place is butifull on the river rich & well timbered on the S. S. about two miles back a Prarie com^{s} [commences] which is rich and interspursed with groves of timber, the count^{y} rises at 7 or 8 miles Still further back and is rolling. on the L. S. the high lands & Prarie com^{s} in the bank of the river and and continus back, well watered and abounds in Deer Elk & Bear The Ticks & Musquiters are verry troublesome.

June 18th Monday

Some rain last night, and Some hard Showers this morning which delay our work verry much, Send out Six hunters in the Prairie on the L. S. they kill 5 Deer & Coht [caught] a Bear, which verry large & fat, the party to wok at the oars, make rope, & jurk their meat all Day Dry our wet Sales &c. in the evening, The Musquiters verry bad

June 19th Tuesday

rain last night after fixing the new oars and makeing all necessary arrangements, we set out under a jentle breese from the S. E. and proceeded on passed two large Islands on the S. S. leaving J. Shields and one man to go by land with the horses Some verry hard water, passed Several Islands & Sand bars to day at the head of one we were obliged to cleare away Driftwood to pass, passed a Creek on the L. Side Called *Tabboe* [*Tabo*] 15 yds. Wide passed a large Creek at the head of an Island Called Tiger River 25 yds. on the S. S. the Island below this Isd. is large and called the Isle of Pant[h]ers, formed on the S. S. by a narrow Channel, I observed on the Shore *Goose* & *Rasp* berries in abundance in passing Some hard water round a Point of rocks on the L. S. we were obliged to take out the roape & Draw up the Boat for ½ a mile, we came too on the L. S. near a Lake of the Sircumfrance of Several miles, Situated on the L. S. about two miles from the river[1] this Lake is Said to abound in all kinds of fowls, Great numbers of Deer frequent this Lake dureing Summer Season, and feed on the hows [haws] &c. &c. they find on the edgers the Land on the North Side of the river is rich and Sufficiently high to afford Settlements, the Ld. on the South Side assends Gradually from the River not So rich, but of a good quallity and appear well watered

---

[1] The musquitoes and other animals are so troublesome that musquitoe biers or nets were distributed to the party. — BIDDLE (i, p. 16).

Course & Distance June 19th

N 87° W.	3	M^{s} to up^{r} p^{t} of an Island.
S 80° W	1½	M^{s} to a p^{t} L. Side ps^{d} 4 wil. Is^{ds}
S. 70° W	1½	M^{s} along the L. S.
S 58° W	4½	M^{s} to a p^{t} S. S. ps^{d} a Is^{d} S. S.
S. 68 W	3	M^{s} to p^{t} S. S. ps^{d} Tabbo Creek
S. 83 W	4	M^{s} to p^{t} L. S. Camp^{d} 1 M^{l}[1]
	17½	

June 20th Wednesday—

Set out after a heavy Shower of rain and proceeded on the Same Course of last night passede a large butifull Prarie on the S. S. opposit a large Island, called Saukee Prarie, a jentle breese from the S. W. Some butifull high lands on the L. S. passed Som verry Swift water to day, I saw *Pelicans* to day on a Sand bar, My Servent York nearly loseing an Eye by a man throwing Sand into it, we came too at the lower Point of a Small Island, the party on Shore we have not Seen Since we passed Tiger R. The Land appear'd verry good on each Side of the river to day and well timbered, We took Some Loner observations, which detain^{d} us untill 1 oClock a butifull night but the air exceedingly Damp, & the Mosquiters verry troublesome

Course & Deistances June 20th

S. 42° W.	1	M^{l} along L. S.
S. 46° W	2	M^{l} to p^{t} S. S. ps^{d} an Is^{d}
S. 51° W	1½	M^{s} to p^{t} L. S. ops^{d} Is^{d} & Saukee Prarie on S. S.
S. 70° W	¾	M^{l} along L. S. water bad
S. 25° W	1½	M^{s} to a p^{t} S. S. ps^{d} Is^{d} & bad Sand
	6¾	

21st June Thursday—

The river rose 3 Inches last night after the Bows man Peter Crousat viewed the water on each Side of the Island which presented a most unfavourable prospect of Swift water over rolling Sands which rored like an immense falls, we concluded to assend on the right Side, and with much dificuelty, with the assistance of a long Cord or Tow rope, & the *anchors*, we got the Boat up without any further dang. than Braking a Cabbin window & loseing Some *oars* which were Swong under the windows, passed four Is^{ds} to day two large & two Small, behind the first large Island two Creeks mouth, called Eue-bert [*Hubert*] [1] Creek & River & Is^{d} the upper of those Creeks head against the Mine River & is large, passed a verry remarkable bend in the River to the S. forming an accute angle, the high lands come to the river on the S. S. opposit the upper large Island, this Is^{d} is formed by a narrow chanel thro. the P^{t} of the remarkable bend just mention^{d} below this Is^{d} on the L. S. is a Counter Current of about a mile. passed between several Small Islands Situated near the L. Side and camped above on the Same Side. Two men Sent out to hunt this evening brought in a Buck & a pore Turkey.

---

[1] At a place 7½ miles above the present town of Dover.—COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 28).

at Sunset the atmespier presented every appearance of wind, Blue & White Streeks centiring at the Sun as She disappeared and the Clouds Situated to the S. W. Guilded in the most butifull manner.

The Countrey and Lands on each Side of the river is various as useal, and may be classed as follows, viz: the low or overflown points or bottom land, of the groth of Cotton & Willow, the 2nd or high bottom of rich furtile Soile of the groth of Cotton, Walnut, Som ash, Hackberry, Mulberry, Lynn [Linden] & Sycamore. the third or high Lands rises gradually from the 2nd bottom (except whin it Coms to the river then from the river) about 80 or 100 foot roleing back Supplied with water (the small rivers of which loses themselves in the bottom land) and are covered with a variety of timber Such as Oake of different Kinds Blue ash, Walnut &c. &c. as far as the Praries, which I am informed lie back from the river, at Some places near & others a great Distance

---

[1] Biddle gives this name (i, p. 17) as "Eau Beau or Clearwater;" Gass calls it Du Beau or Du Bois. — ED.

Course & Distance June 21st 1804

S. 77° W.	2½	M^s along S. S. ps^d the h^d of a lg Is^d L. S.
N 30° E,	1½	M^s p^t L. S. ps^d a c^l Low p^t Is^d on L. S. (1)
North,	1	M^l along the Larboard Side
N 18° W	½	M^l do do do
N 84° W	½	M^l do do do
S. 80° W,	¾	M^l do do ps^d Sev^l Sm. Isd^s L. S.
S. 35 W	¾	M^l do do ps^d do do do
	7½	

22nd June Friday —

river rose 4 Inch last night I was waken'd before daylight this morning by the guard, prepareing the Boat to receve an apparent Storm which threttened violence from the West at daylight a violent wind accompanied with rain cam[e] from the W. and lasted about one hour, it Cleared away, and we Set out and proceeded on under a gentle breeze from the N. W. passed Some verry Swift water, crouded with Snags, pass two large Island opposit each other, and immediately opposit a large & extensive Prarie on the Lab^d Side, This Prarie is butifull a high bottom for 1½ mile back and rises to the Common leavell of of the Countrey (about 70 or 80 feet) and extends back out of view. Cap^t L walked on Shore a fiew miles this after noon (at 3 oClock P. M. Faren^{ht} Thermometer Stood at 87° = to 11° above Summer heat) We came too on the L. Side opposit the mouth of a large Creek called the River of the Fire Prarie,[1] at the mouth of this Creek, the Party on Shore were waiting our arrival, they informed that the Lands thro: which they passed was fine & well watered

Course & Distance June 22nd

S. 14° W.	2½	M^s to a p^t on the S. S.
S. 25°. W	3	M^s to a p^t on the S. S. *bad wat.*
S. 66° W.	½	M^l on S. Side
N. 60° W	4½	M^{ls} to a p^t on the L. S. ps^d 2 Is^{ds} and a Prarie
	10½	

---

[1] The present name of a creek on the *south* side of the Missouri; on the north side is Clear (or Fishing) creek, but four or five miles higher, which may be the one meant by Clark, as its mouth may have shifted since their time. Gass says that Fireprairie creek was 60 yards wide. — Coues (*L. and C.*, i, p. 30).

23rd June Satturday —

Some wind this morning from the N. W. we set out at 7 oClock, and proceeded on to the head of a Island on the S. S. the wind blew hard and down the river which prevented the P'ty moveing [*proceding*] from this Island the whole day,[1] Capt. Lewis had the arms examined &c. at the lower end of this Island I got out of the boat to walk on Shore, & expected the party on Shore would overtake me, at the head of the Island, they did not & I proceeded on round a round and extensive bend in the river, I Killed a Deer & made a fire, expecting the boat would come up in the evening. the wind continueing to blow prevented their moveing, as the distance by land was too great for me to return by night I concluded to Camp, Peeled Some bark to lay on, and geathered wood to make fires to keep off the musquitrs & knats, Heard the party on Shore fire, at Dark Drewyer came to me with the horses, one fat *bear* & a Deer, river fell 8 Inches last night

Course & Distance June 23rd

N 70° W	2	Ms. to an Isd. on S. S. (I went out)
N 75° E	1½	Ms. psd. the head of the Isd. to pt. L. S.
	3½	

24th June Sunday —

Set out at half after Six. I joined the boat this morng at 8 oClock (I will only remark that dureing the time I lay on the sand waiting for the boat, a large Snake Swam to the bank imediately under the Deer which was hanging over the water, and no great distance from it, I threw chunks and drove this snake off Several times. I found that he was so determined on getting to the meet, I was compelld. to kill him, the part of the Deer which attracted this Snake I think was the Milk from the bag of the Doe.) I observed great qut^{s} of Bear Signs, where the had passed in all Directions thro the bottoms in Serch of Mulberries, which were in great numbers. in all the bottoms thro which our party passed)

---

[1] Biddle here says: "Directly opposite on the south, is a high commanding position, more than seventy feet above high water mark, and overlooking the river which is here of but little width; this spot has many advantages for a fort, and trading house with the Indians." (And, in a foot-note:) "The United States built in September, 1808, a factory and fort at this spot, which is very convenient for trading with the Osages, Ayauways, and Kanzas." This place was the site of Fort Osage, at or near the present town of Sibley. — Ed.

Passed the mouth of a Creek 20 yd^{s} wide name [named] *Hay Cabbin Creek*[1] from Camps of Straw built on it came to about ½ M^{l} above this creek & jurked, the meet killed yesterday and this morning *Lattitude* of this place $38^{\circ} - 37' - 5''$ N. Cap^{t} Lewis walked on Shore & killed a Deer, pass a bad part of the river, on the S. S. the rocks projected into the river Some distance, a creek above called *Sharriton Carta*,[2] in the evening we Passed thro: between two Sand bars at the head we had to raise the Boat 8 Inches to get her over, Camped near the lower point of an Island on the on the L. Side, party in high Sperrits. The Countrey on each side of the river is fine interspursed with Praries, in which immence herds of Deer is Seen,[3] on the banks of the river we observe numbers of Deer watering and feeding on the young willow, Several killed to day

Course & Distance June 24th

N 80. E	¼	M^{l} on the Larboard Side
N 55. E	¼	M^{l} on other
West	3	M^{s} to a point on S. S.
N 80. W.	4½	M^{s} to a p^{t} on L. S. pass^{d} Hay Cab. Is.
West	½	M^{l} on L. Side
S 21° W	3	M^{s} to a p^{t} on S. S. ps^{d} a rock & Creek L. S.
	11½	

---

[1] Now the Little Blue River, in Jackson Co., Missouri. — COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 31).

[2] A phonetic rendering of the French *Charretins écartés* — that is, two creeks named Charretin, whose courses are separated (*écartés*), although they meet at their entrance into the Missouri. There are two such creeks in Clay County, Mo., which answer to the description in our text. For full explanation of the name, see Coues's *L. and C.*, i, p. 31. — ED.

[3] Brackenridge says in 1811 (*Louisiana*, p. 219): "The Missouri is now what the Ohio was once, the *Paradise of hunters*." — ED.

25th June Monday

a thick fog detained us untill 8 oClock, passed a Island, at 3 Miles passed a Coal-Mine, or Bank of stone Coal, on the South Side, this bank appears to Contain great quantity of fine Coal, the river being high, prevented our Seeing that contained in the cliffs of the best quallity, a Small Creek mouths below this bank call'd after the bank *Chabonea* [*Charbon*] Creek the Wind from the N. W. passed a Small Creek on the L. Side at 12 oClock, called *Bennet's* Creek The Praries come within a Short distance of the river on each Side which Contains in addition to Plumbs Raspberries &c. vast quantities of wild apples, great numbr of Deer are seen feeding on the young willows & earbage in the Banks and on the Sand bars in the river, our party on Shore did not join in this evening we camped on an Island Situated on the S. Side, opposit some hills higher than Common, say 160 or 180 feet above the Bottom. The river is Still falling last night it fell 8 Inches

Course & Distance June 25th

S. 49° W.	3	Ms to a pt on S. S.
S 55 W	½	Ml on the S. S. psd a Coal Mine
N. 50° W	3½	Ms to Pt on L. S. psd a Creek L. S.
N. 70° W.	½	Ml on L. S. pass Willow Isd
S. 80° W.	½	Ml on L. S. ditto
S 55° W.	½	Ml on L. S. ditto
S 15° W	½	Ml on L. S. ditto & round Pt
S 2° E	2	Ms to a pt on S. S.
S 48 W	2	Ms to a pt on S. S. psd a Isd
	13	

June 26th Tuesday 1804 —

We Set out early, the river falling a little, the wind from the S. W. Passed the mouth of a Small river on the L. Side above the upper point of a Small Island, called Blue Water River,[1] this river heads in Praries back with the Mine River about 30 yd^s wide Lattitude of a p^t 4 M^s above this river is *38° 32′ – 15″* North, the high lands which is on the North Side does not exceed 80 feet high, at this Place the river appears to be conf^d in a verry narrow channel, and the current Still more so by Counter Current or Whirl on one Side & high bank on the other, passed a Small Is^d in the bend to the L. Side We Killed a large rattle Snake, Sunning himself in the bank, passed a bad Sand bar, where our tow rope broke twice, & with great exertions, we rowed round it and came to & camped, in the Point above the *Kansas* [*Kanzas*] *River* I observed a great number of Parrot queets [Parroquets] this evening, our Party killed Several [7] Deer to day

---

[1] Now Big Blue River. In a footnote, Biddle here says: "A few miles up the Blue Water Creek are quarries of plaster of paris, since worked and brought down to St. Louis." — Ed.

Course & Distance June 26th

S 62° W.	½	M^l on the S. S. Is^d on L. S.
S 80° W.	½	M^l on the S. S. ps^d Blue Water R. L. S.
N 87° W.	1	M^l on the S. S.
N. 85° W.	3	M^s to a p^t on the L. S. Mid^l ab^t
S. 80° W.	½	M^l on L. S.
S. 37° W.	2½	M^{ls} to a p^t on S. S. ps^d Lit. Cr.
S. 58° W	1	M^l on S. S. ps^d a bad place
S. 78° W.	¾	M^l to the up. p^t of Kansas R.

9¾ = 366 & ¾ M^s to mouth of Missourie

June 27th Wednesday —

a fair warm morning, the river rose a little last night, we determine to delay at this Place three or four Days to make observations & recruit the party, Several men out Hunting, onloaded our Perogue, and turned her up to Dry with a view of repairing her after completing a Strong redoubt or brest work from [*one*] river to the other, of logs & Bushes Six feet high, The Countrey about the mouth of this river is verry fine on each Side as well as North of the Missourie the bottom, in the Point is low & overflows for 250 yards. it rises a little above high water mark and continus of that hight of good quallity back to the hills A high Clift, on the upper Side of the Kanses ½ a mile up below the Kanses the hills is about 1½ Miles from the point on the North Side of the

Missourie the Hils or high lands is Several Miles back, we compared the instrumts Took equal altitudes, and the Meridian altitude of the Suns L. L. to day *Latitude 38° 31′ – 13″* *Longitude* [Blank space in MS.] measured the width of the Kansas River by an angle and made it 230 yd^{s} ¼ wide,[1] it is wider above the mouth the Missourie at this place is about 500 yards wide, The Course from the Point down the Mid^{l} of the Missourie is S. 32° E, & turns to the North. up Do: is N 21° W. & do do [*i. e.* turns to the North — Ed.] Do. up the right side of the Kansas is S. 54° E., & the river turns to the left, Several Deer killed to day.

28 June Thursday —

took equal altitudes &c. &c. &c. & varaition of the Compass repaired the Perogue cleaned out the Boat suned our Powder [and] wollen articles examined every thing 8 or 10 hunt^{rs} out to day in different directions, in examining our Private Store of Provisions we found Several articles Spoiled from the *wet* or dampness they had received, a verry warm day, the wind from the South, The river Missourie has raised yesterday last night & to day about 2 foot. this evening it is on a Stand, Capt^{n} Lewis weighed the water of the Two rivers The Missourie 78°. the Kansais 72°. (the weight is)[2]

To Describe the most probable of the various accounts of this great river of the Kansas, would be too lengthy & uncertain to insert here, it heads with the river Del Noird in the black Mountain or ridge which Divides the Waters of the Kansas *Del Nord*, & Callarado & [a word almost illegible; possibly "offshoots." — Ed.] from those of the Missourie (and not well assertain^{d}) This river receves its name from a Nation which dwells at this time on its banks & [has] 2 villages one about 20 leagues & the other 40 Leagues up, those Indians are not verry noumerous at this time, reduced by war with their neighbours, &c, they formerly lived on the South banks of the Missourie 24 Leagues above this river in a open & butifull plain, and were verry noumerous at the time the french first Settled the Illinois, I am told they are a fierce & warlike people, being badly Supplied with fire arms, become easily conquered by the Aiauway & Saukees who are better furnished with those materials of War, This Nation is now out in the Plains hunting the Buffalow [*They consist of about 300 men*] our hunters killed Several Deer and Saw Buffalow, Men imp^d [employed] Dressing Skins & makeing themselves comfortable, the high lands come to the river Kansas on the upper Side at about a mile, full in view, and a butifull place for a fort, good landing-place, the waters of the Kansas is verry disigreeably tasted to me.

---

[1] The Biddle text gives the width of the Kansas River as 340¼ yards. — Ed.

[2] Referring to the specific gravity of the waters — see Biddle, i, p. 18. — Ed.

29th June Friday —

obsv^d the distance of ⊙ & ☾, took Equal & maridional Alt^d and after makeing Some arrangements, and inflicting a little punishment to two men we Set out at ½ past 4 oClock, and proceeded on. (1) passed a large Island on the S. Side, opposit a large Sand bar, the Boat turned, and was within Six Inches of Strikeing the rapidity with which the Boat turned was so great that if her bow had Struck the Snag, She must have either turned over or the bow nocked off, S W wind

Course Distance and refferences June 29th

N. 21. W. 3½ M^s to a p^t on L. S. ps^d p^t Is^d S. S. (1)
N. 18° W. ¾ M^l on the L. S. ps^d H^d of the Is^d
S. 79. W. 3 M^s to a p^t on the S. S.
7¼

[Orderly Book; Clark:] *Camp Mouth of the Kansies June 29th 1804*

Ordered — A Court Martiall will Set this day at 11 oClock, to consist of five members, for the trial of *John Collins* and *Hugh Hall*, Confined on Charges exhibited against them by Sergeant Floyd, agreeable to the articles of War.[1]

Detail for the Court

Serg^t Nat. Pryor pres^d
2 John Colter
3 John Newmon
4 Pat. Gass
1 J. B. Thompson
} Mb^r

John Potts to act as Judge advocate.

The Court Convened agreeable to order and proceeded to the trial of the Prisoners Viz

John Collins Charged "with getting drunk on his post this Morning out of whiskey put under his charge as a Sentinal, and for Suffering *Hugh Hall* to draw whiskey out of the Said Barrel intended for the party."

To this Charge the prisoner plead *not Guilty.*

The Court after mature deliv[b]eration on the evidence adduced &c. are of oppinion that the prisoner is *Guilty* of the Charge exibited against him, and do therefore sentence him to receive *one hundred Lashes on his bear Back.*

Hugh Hall was brought before the Court Charged with takeing whiskey out of a Keg this morning which whiskey was stored on the Bank (and under the Charge of the Guard) Contrary to all order, rule, or regulation."

To this Charge the prisoner "Pleaded Guilty."

The Court find the prisoner Guilty and Sentence him to receive *fifty* Lashes on his bear Back.

The Commanding Officers approve of the Sentence of the Court and orders that the Punishment take place at half past three this evening, at which time the party will Parrade for inspection.

30th *June Satturday* 1804

Set out verry early this morning, a verry large wolf came to the bank and looked at us this morning, passd. the (1) mouth of a Small river 10 Ms. above the *Kansas* called by the french Petite River Platte (or Shoal river) from the number of falls in it, this river is about 60 yards wide at its mouth and runs Parrilel with the Missouries for ten or twelve miles,[1] Some of the party who went up told that the lands on this Small river is good, and on it several falls well calculated for mills, The wind from S. W. came to at 12 oClock & rested three hours, the [day] being hot the men becom verry feeble, Farnts. Thermometer at 3 oClock stood at 96° above 0, emence numbr. of Deer on the banks, Skipping in every derection, the party killed nine Bucks on the river & Bank today, The Countrey on the S. S. between the Shoal River & Missouris is indefferent Subject to overflow, that below and on the L. S. is high & appers well timbered, camped on the L. S. opsd the Lower point of a Isd. Called Diamond Island, Broke our Mast

---

[1] Now Little Platte River; the location of its mouth has changed much since 1804. —COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 35).

Course Distance & reefr. June 30th

N. 20° W.	2	Ms. to pt. L. S. Boat turned
N 30° W.	½	Ml. on L. S. High Land S. S.
S. 64° W.	2½	Ms. to pt. on S. S. psd. R. Plate (1)
West -	1	Ml. on S. S. a Sm. Creek L. S.
N. 60° W	4	Ms. to pt. on L. S.
	10	

July 1st Sunday 1804 —

a Small allarm last night all prepared for action, Set out early this morning passed on the North Side of Dimond Island, a Small Creek mouths opposit, I call *Biscuit* Creek, a large Sand bar in the middle of the river 1½ Ms. above the Isd. covered with Drift wood. river fall a little. the wind from S. W. Came to above this Drift and delayed three hours to refresh the men who were verry much over powered with the heat, Great quantitys of Grapes & raspberries, (2) passed a Small Creek on the L. S. below one large and two small Islands. This Creek and Isds. are called *Remore* (or Tree Frog) a large Pond on the S. S., the main current of Water run'g on the L. S. of the Island, I am told that three years ago the Main Current run on the S. S. of the Island and no appearance of the two Smaller Islands, Camped on the lower point of one of the two large & 2 Small Isds. Called *Isles des Parques* or field Isl'ds[1] a high butifull Prarie on the L. S. one of the french hands Says "that the french kept their cattle & horses on those Islands at the time they had in this quarter a fort & trading establishment.

---

[1] Nearly opposite Leavenworth, Kans. — COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 36).

Course Distance & ref^{s} July 1st

N. 62° W.	1½	M^{s} on the S. Side of the Is^{d}
N. 40° W	¼	M^{l} do do do
N 28° W	¾	M^{l} to p^{t} on L. S. ps^{d} the Is^{d}
N. 45° W	3½	M^{s} to a p^{t} on S. S. ps^{d} Drift
N 32° W	1½	M^{l} to a creek (2) L. S.
N 58 W	2½	M^{s} to p^{t} L. S. ps^{d} the head of Is^{d}
N. 42 W.	1½	M^{s} to a p^{t} on S. S.
N. 27 W.	½	M^{l} to p^{t} of Field Is^{d} prarie L. S.
	12	

paccaun [pecan — Ed.] Trees Seen on the S. S. Deer and turkeys in great quantities on the bank

July 2nd 1804 —

Set out early and proceded on the left of the Islands, two of which are large a high bottom Situated on the L. S. passed the mouth of a Creek on the S. S. called Turquie [*Parques*] Creike, at this place I observed that the river was Crouded with Drift wood, and dangerous to pass as this dead timber Continued only about half an our, I concluded that Some Island of Drift had given way (3) passed a Creek on the L. S. called Turkey Creek, a bad Sand bar on the L. S. we could with dificuelty Stem the Current with our 20 oars & and all the poles we had, passed a large Island on the S. S. Called by the Indians *Wau-car-ba war-cand-da* or the *Bear Medesin* Island,[1] at 12 oClock landed on the Island a [nd — Ed.] put up a mast which detained us four hours. a verry hot day winds from the S. E. George Drewyer informs that the Lands he passed through, yesterday and to day on the S. S. was verry fine, few Springs, We camped after dark on the S. S. above the Island & opposit the 1st old village of the Kanzes. which was Situated in a Valley, between two points of high Land, and imediatly on the river bank, back of the village and on a riseing ground at about one mile The French had a garrison for some time and made use of water out of a

---

[1] Now Kickapoo island, above Fort Leavenworth. — Coues (*L. and C.*, i, p. 37).

Spring running into Turkey Creek.[1] an extensive Prarie, as the Current of the river Sets against the banke and washes it away the landing place for Boats is indefferent. The high lands above the Fire river, approaches nearer east, than below, being from 3 to 6 Miles distant and above Kansas from 3 to 5 Miles distant and the Hills at Some places are from 160 to 180 feet above the bottom

Course and distance & reffers^{ne} July 2^{d}

N. 22° W.	1¼	M^s to a p^t on L. S. in a bend (1)
N. 10° W	2¼	M^s to a p^t of a Lit: Is^d on S. S. pass^d Is^d (2)
N 34° E	1½	M^s to a p^t on L. S. ps^d Turkey Cr. (3)
N 10° W	½	on the L. S. High Ld^s on S. S.
N. 46 W	1¼	M^s on S. S. of an Is^d on S. S. (4)
S. 87 W	½	M^l on S. S. a point ps^d a run
S 81° W	2¼	M^{ls} on S. S. ps^d head of Island
N 82 W	2	M^s on the S. S. ps^d Swift Water
	11½	

1st old village Kansas

July 3rd Tusday 1804—

Set out verry early this morning and proceeded on under a gentle Breeze from the S. passed two Islands (1) one a Small Willow Island on the L. S. the other large Called by the french *Isle de Vache* or *Cow Island*, opposit the head on the S. S. is a large Pond containg Beever, & fowl, a bad Sand bar on the S. S. above the Island, on the L. S. we halted at an old Tradeing house [*deserted*], here we found a verry fat horse, which appears to have been lost a long time, a butifull small run passes back of the Tradeing house near the high land, we came to at a round bend on the L. S. and camped

---

[1] The Biddle text states that Lewis and Clark found some remains of the French fort; this was the post among the Kansas Indians, tributary to Fort Chartres, with a garrison sent from New Orleans. In 1757 it produced one hundred bundles of furs. See Bougainville on the French posts, in *Northern and Western Boundaries of Ontario* (Toronto, 1878). — ED.

Course Distance & refrt. July 3rd.

N. 53° W.	1	Ml. on the S. S.
N. 50° W.	¼	Ml. do. do
N. 18° E	1	Ml. to a pt. on L. S. opsd. 2 Ids. (1)
N 30° W	¾	Ml. to pt. Left of an Isld.
N 10° W.	½	Ml. to pt. L. S.
N 60° W	¼	Ml. to a pt. on the Island
N 78 W	½	Ml. to a pt. L. S. at Hd. of Isd. (2)
S 56° W	2¼	Ms. to a pt. on S. S. of Missouri.
N. 50° W.	1	Ml. on the S. S.
N 45 E	3	Ms. to a pt. on L. S. pass a Bar
N 12 E	½	Ml. on L. S. Camped
	11¼	

July 4th. Wednesday, —

ussered in the day by a discharge of one shot from our Bow piece, proceeded on, passed the Mouth of a (1) Bayeau l[e]ading from a large Lake on the S. S. which has the appearance of being once the bend of the river & reaches parrelel for Several Miles Came to on the L. S. to refresh our selves &. Jos. Fields got bit by a Snake, which was quickly doctered with Bark by Cap Lewis[1] (2) Passed a Creek 12 yds. wide on L. S. comeing out of an extensive Prarie reching within 200 yards of the river, as this Creek has no name, and this being the 4th of July the day of the independance of the U S. call it 4th of July 1804 Creek, we dined (on Corn) Capt. Lewis walked on Shore above this Creek and discovered a high Mound from the top of which he had an extensive View, 3 paths Concentering at the moun Saw great numbers of Goslings to day which Were nearly grown, the before mentioned Lake is Clear and contain great quantities of fish and Gees & Goslings, The great quantity of those fowl in this Lake induced me to Call it the *Gosling* Lake, a Small Creek & several Springs run in to the Lake on the East Side from the hills the land on that Side verry good. (3) We came to and camped in the lower edge of a Plain where the 2d. old

---

[1] A poultice of bark and gunpowder was sufficient to cure the wound. — Biddle (i, p. 21).

Kanzas village formerly Stood, above the mouth of a Creek 30 yd^{s} wide this Creek we call *Creek Independence* as we approached this place the Prarie had a most butifull appearance Hills & Valies intersps^{d} with Coops [Copses] of Timber gave a pleasing deversity to the Senery. the right fork of Creek Independence Meandering thro: the Middle of the Plain a point of high Land near the river givs an ellivated Situation. at this place the Kanzas Indians formerly lived, this Town appears to have cov^{d} a large Space, the Nation must have been noumerous at the time they lived here, the Cause of their moveing to the Kanzas River, I have never heard, nor can I learn; war with their neghbors must have reduced this nation and Compelled them to retire to a Situation in the plains better Calculated for their defence, and one where they may make use of their horses with good effect, in persueing their enemey, we closed the [day] by a Descharge from our bow piece, an extra Gill of whiskey.

Course & Distance. refr^{d} July 4th 1804

N. 70° W.	1	M^{l} on L. S. pass^{d} a Bayo: S. S. (1)
S. 45° W.	3	M^{s} to a p^{t} on S. S. a sm^{l} Is^{d} on L. S.
N. 75° W.	¼	M^{l} on S. S.
N. 40° W.	6	M^{ls} on S. S. ps^{d} a prarie & Creek (2)
N. 12° E.	2¾	M^{s} to p^{t} on L. S. ps^{d} a Sm^{l} Is^{d} L. S.
N. 10° E.	2	M^{s} to p^{t} on S. S. ops^{d} old vilg. (3) ps^{d} Creek L.S.
	15	

July 5th Thursday 1804 —

Set out verry early, proceeded on near the bank where the old village stood for two miles, (swam the hors found a few days ago) passed Some bad Sand bars, The orrigan of this old village is uncertain M. de Bourgmont, a French officer who Comd^{d} a fort near the Town of the Missouris in about the year 1724 and in July of the Same year he visited this Village at that time the nation was noumerous & well disposed towards the french M^{r} Du Pratz must have been badly informed as to the cane oppos^{d} this place we have not Seen one Stalk of reed or cane on the Missouris, he States that the "Indians that accompanied M De Bourgmont crossed to the Canzes Village on floats of Cane"[1]

Those people must have been verry noumerous at that time as M^{r}. De B: was accompanied by 300 Warriers, 500 young people & 300 Dogs of burthen out of this Village

The Cause of those Indians Moveing over to the Kanzis river I have never lernt. We passed Some bad Sand bars, Situated parrelel to each other (1) The Boat turned twice on the quick Sand & once on a raft of Drift, No prouveable damage the Prarie continu on the high land on the L. S. passd a Small Creek (2) on L. S. in the first bend to the L. S. I call Yellow Oaker [Ochre — Ed.]. Creek from a quantity of that Mineral in a bank a little above

The river continus to fall a little. I observe great quantity of Summer & fall Grapes, Berries & Wild roases on the banks. Deer is not so plenty as useal, great Deel of Elk Sign. (Wind from S. E.)

Course Distance & reffer^{s} July 5.

N. 35° E	1	M^{l} on S. S. ops^{d} the pl^{t} of old vilg.
S 56° E	2	M^{s} to L. p^{t} a eddey on L. S.
East	1	M^{l} on L. S. Sev^{l} Sand bars (1)
N 18° W	2	M^{s} to a p^{t} on S. S. ops^{d} a prarie p^{d} (2)
North	1	M^{l} on the S. S.
S. 70° E	3	M^{s} to p^{t} of wil^{l} on L. S.
	10	

July 6th Friday —

We Set out early this morning, wind from the S. W. passed a large Sand bar in the 1st bend to the right. (1) passed a Small Island at the S. point. opposit the 3rd point we passed a Prarie on the S. S. called Reeveys Prarie at this place the river is confined in a verry narrow Channel Crouded by a Sand bar from the L. Point, this Sand bar is verry bad, at the 4th Point from the S. S. is a verry extensive bar, at the Point of which is a Small Willow Island, this is called the *Grand Detour of* [*or*] *Great bend* (*great bend is higher up*)

---

[1] The "Relation du voyage" of Bourgmont, which is cited by Le Page du Pratz in his *Louisiane*, may be found in Margry's *Découv. et établ.*, vi, pp. 398–449. — Ed.

I walked on this Sand bar and found the Sand was light, with collection of Small pebble, & Some Pit Coal I observe that the men Swet more than is common from Some cause, I think the Missouris Water is the principal Cause our hunters Sent in 3 Bucks to day The river Still fall a little

Course Distance & reffers July 6th

N. 58° E	1	Ml on L. S. opsd a Sand bar
North	3	Ms a pt on S. S. an Isd (1)
N. 10° W.	¼	Ml on S. S. of Island
S. 76° E	½	Ml on S. S. psd hd of Isld a Sand bar
S. 60° E	1¾	Ml to a Willow pt on L. S.
N. 70° E	1½	Ms over a Sand bar L. S. op. Prarie (2)
N 50 W	1	Ms on the L. S. pasd a Sand bar
West	3	Ms to a pt on S. S. a Sand & (3) Isd
	12	

July the 7th Satturday 1804—

Set out early passed Some Swift Water, which obliged us to draw up by roapes, a Sand bar at the point; opposit a butifull Prarie on the S. Side calld (1) St Michul, those Praries on the river has verry much the appearence of farms from the river Divided by narrow Strips of woodland, which wood land is Situatd on the runs leading to the river. passed a Bluff of Yellow Clay above the Prarie. Saw a large rat on the bank.[1] Killed a Wolf. at 4 oClock pass a verry narrow part of the river water confd in a bend not more than 200 yards wide at this place the Current runs against the L. Side. No Sand to Confine the Current on the S. S. passed a Small sand Island above, the Small Isldt Situated at the points, in low water forms a part of the Sand bars makeing out from those points Incamped on the S. S. at 7 oClock a violent Ghust of Wind from the N. E with Some rain, which lasted half an hour (G D. informs me that he Saw in a Pond on the S. S. which we passed yesterday, a number of young Swans , one man verry sick, Struck with the Sun, Capt. Lewis bled him & gave Niter which has revived him much

---

[1] The wood-rat (*Neotoma floridana*), unknown to science until thus discovered by Lewis and Clark. Its identification is furnished by Gass, who says that it has hair on its tail. — Coues (*L. and C.*, p. 40, *note* 86).

Course Distance & reffre. July 7th

N. 40° E.	2	M. on the S. pt. over a Sand bar.
N 76° E	3	Ms. to a pt. on the L. S. a Sd. bar
N. 50° E	1¾	Ms. to a prarie on S. S. (1)
N. 30° W	1	Ml. on the L. S. a Bluff on S. S.
N. 76° W	¼	Ml. on the L. S.
S. 66° E	2	Ms. to a pt. on S. S. a Sand bar
N. 74° W	1½	Mls. on the S. S. opsd. a yellow cliff
N. 45° E	⅓	Ml. on the S. S.
N. 70° E	2	Ms. to a pt. on L. S. a Sand bar
	14	

July the 8th Sunday 1804

Set out early passed a Small Creek on the S. S. and two (1) Small Islands on the S. S. five men Sick to day with a violent head ake &c. We made some arrangements as to provisions & Messes, Came to for Dinner at the lower point of a very large Island Situated near the S. S. after a delay of two hours we passed a narrow Channel of 45 to 80 yds wide five miles to the Mouth of (3) *Nadăwă* [now Nodaway] *River*, This river Coms in from the North and is navagable for Perogues Some distance. it is about 70 yards wide a little above the mouth, at the mouth not so wide, the mud of the Gut running out of the Missourie is thrown and Settles in the Mouth half a mile higher up this Channel or gut is the upper point of the Said Island, This Island is Called Nadawa, & is the largest I have Seen in the river, containing 7 or 8000 acres of Land Seldom over flowed we Camped at the head of this Island on the S. S. opposit the head of our Camp is a Small Island near the Middle of the river, river Still falling. our flank party did not join us this evening

Course Distance & Refr. July 8th

N. 28° E	1	Ml on L. pt — a Sand bar
N 10. W	1½	Ms to Low pt of Little Nadawa Isd S. S.
N. 25. W.	3	Ms to a pt on on L. S. passd 2 Isds (1)
N. 56. W.	1½	Ms to L. pt of Big Nadawa Isd (2)
West	¼	Ml on the left of the Island
S. 10° W	¼	Ml to pt on the S. S.
N. 25. W	¼	Ml to pt on the Island
N. 40. W	¼	Ml to a bend on the on the S. S.
N. 70. W	½	Ml to do do do S. S.
S. 70. W	¼	Ml to do do do Island
N. 82. W	½	Ml to do do do do
N. 42. W	½	Ml to do do do S. S.
S. 50. W	½	Ml to do do do Island
N 60. W	¼	Ml to do do do do
N 18. W	¼	Ml to do do do S. S.
N 38. W	½	Ml to do do do S. S.
S 20. W	½	Ml to do do at the Mo. of Nadawa (3)
S 15. W	¼	Ml to do do do Island
S 80. W	¼	Ml to do on S. S. opsd the head of Isd
	12¼	

Detatchment Orders.
[Orderly Book; Lewis:] *Nadawa Island July 8th 1804.*

In order to insure a prudent and regular use of all provisions issued to the crew of the Batteaux in future, as also to provide for the equal distribution of the same among the individuals of the several messes, The Commanding Officers do appoint the following persons to *recieve, cook, and take charge of* the provisions which may from time to time be issued to their respective messes, (viz) John B. Thompson to Sergt Floyd's mess, William Warner to Sergt Ordway's Mess, and John Collins to Sergt Pryor's Mess.

These *Superintendants of Provision*, are held immediately responsible to the commanding Officers for a juducious consumption of the provision which they recieve; they are to cook the same for their several messes in due time, and in such manner as is most wholesome and best calculated to afford the greatest proportion of nutriment; in their mode of cooking they are to exercise their own judgment; they shall allso point out what part, and what proportion of the mess provisions are to be consumed at each stated meal (i. e.) morning, noon and night; nor is any man at any time to take or consume any part of the mess provisions without the privity, knowledge and consent of the Superintendant. The superintendant is also held responsible for all the cooking utensels of his mess. in consideration of the duties imposed by this order on Thompson, Warner, and Collins, they will in future be exempt from guard duty, tho' they will still be held on the royster for that duty, and their regular tour shall be performed by some one of their rispective messes; they are exempted also from pitching the tents of the mess, collecting firewood, and forks poles &c for cooking and drying such fresh meat as may be furnished them; those duties are to be also performed by the other members of the mess.

M. LEWIS
W^m. CLARK

[Clark:] *July 9^th. Monday 1804* —

one man Sent back to the river we passed last night to Blase [*notch*] a tree with a View to notify the party on Shore of our passing Set out and passed the head of the (1) Island which was Situated opposit to our Camp last night a Sand bar at the head (2) ops^d. this Island a Creek or Bayaue coms in from a large Pond on the Starboard Side, as our flanking party saw great numbers of Pike in this Pond, I have laid it down with that name anex'd, at 8 oClock the wind Shifted from the N. E. to S. W. and it commenced raining. (3) at Six Miles passed the mouth of Creek on the L. S. called Monter's [*Montain's*] Creek, about *two* mile above is some Cabins where our Bowman & Several frenchmen Camp^d. two years ago[1] (4) passed an Island on the S. S. in a Bend of the river opposit some Clifts on the L. S. the Wind Shifted to the N W opposit this Island and on the L. Side, (Loup) or *Wolf River* coms in, this river is about 60 yards wide and heads with the waters of the Kansis, and is navagable for Perogues "Some distance up" Camped at a point on the L. S. opposit the head of the Island, our party was incamped on the Opposit Side, their not answering our signals Caused us to Suspect the persons Camped opposit to us was a War party of Soux, we fired the Bow piece to alarm the party on Shore, alled prepared to oppose if attacted

---

[1] Floyd here remarks: "Passed a prarie on the South Side whare several French famileys had setled and made Corn Some Years ago Stayed two years the Indians Came Freckentley to See them and was verry frendley." — ED.

Course Distance & refr^{t} July 9th 1804

N. 60° W	1½	M^{s} to up. p^{t} of Is^{d} ps^{d} a Creek S S (1) (2)
S 20° W	3½	M^{s} to p^{t} S. S. ps^{d} p^{t} & Sand bar S. S.
N 82° W	3½	M^{s} to p^{t} S. S. ps^{d} sand, & a Creek L. S. (3)
N 68° W	5½	M^{s} to p^{t} L. S. pa^{d} Wolf R. L. S. ops^{d} Is^{d} (5)
	14	

July 10th Tuesday 1804 —

Set out early this Morning and cross^{d} the river with a view to See who the party was that Camped on the other Side, we soon discovered them to be our men, proceeded on passed a Prarie on the L. S. at 4 Miles passed a creek L. S. called (1) *Pappie* [*Pape's Creek*] after a man who killed himself at its mouth, this Creek is 15 yds wide (2) Dined on an Isl^{d} called *de Salamin* [*Solomon's Island*]. Delayed 3 hours on this Island to recruit the men opposit on the L. S. is a butifull bottom Plain of about 2000 acres (3) covered with wild rye & Potatoes [*ground apple pomme de terre*],[1] intermix't with the grass, We camped on the S. S. opposit a yellow Clay Clift, Cap^{t} Lewis killed to young Gees or Goslings this evening. The men of the party getting better, but much fatigued. The river on a stand. The bottom is verry extensive on the S. S. and thickly intersperced with Vines.

The High Land approaches near the river on the L. S. and well timbered next to the river, back of those hills the Plains commence.

---

[1] Apparently the plant here referred to was *Psoralea esculenta*, the tubers of which had long been used as food by the Indians and voyageurs of the North-west. — ED.

Course Distance & refrs July 10th

N. 80° W.	3¼	Ms to pt S. S. passd a Sand bar
N 19° E.	2	Ms to pt L. S. psd a Creek (1)
North	¾	Ml to Low pt of an Isld (2)
S. 80° W.	¾	Ml to pt on Left of an Isd opsd Pra (3)
N 50 W.	1¼	Ms to pt on L. S. passed Sd bar
N 83 W.	2	Ms to a pt on S. S. Isd (5)
	10	

July 11th Wednesday 1804—

Set out early passed a Willow Island (1) in a bend on the S. S. back of this Island a Creek coms in called by the Indians *Tar-ki-o* I went on Shore above this Creek and walked up parrelel with the river at about half a mile distant, the bottom I found low & Subject to over flow, Still further out, the under groth & vines wer So thick that I could not get thro: with ease after walking about three or 4 miles I observed a fresh horse track where he had been feeding I turned my course to the river and prosud the track and found him on a Sand beach This horse Probably had been left by Some party of Otteaus hunters who wintered or hunted in this quarter last fall or Wintr I joined the party on a large Sand Island imedeately opposit the mouth of *Ne Ma how* [*Nĕmă-hăw*] River, at which place they had Camped, this Island is Sand about half of it covered with Small Willows of two different kinds, one narrow & the other a Broad Leaf. Several hunters sent out to day on both Sides of the river, *Seven* Deer killed to day, Drewyer killed six of them, made some Luner observations this evening.

Course Distance & refrs July 11th

N. 30° W	3	Ms to the head of a Willow Isd (1) in a bend to S. S.
West	2¾	Ms to Lowr pt of a Sand Isld on the S. S. psd pt S. S. (2)
North	¼	Ml on the N. Side of Isd & Camped.
	6 Miles	

July 12th Thursday 1804—

Concluded to Delay here to day with a view of takeing equal altitudes & makeing observations as well as refreshing our men who are much fatigued. after an early Brackfast I with five men in a Perogue assended the River *Ne-Ma-haw* about three [*2*] Miles to the Mouth of a Small creek on the Lower Side, here I got out of the Perogue, after going to Several Small Mounds in a leavel plain, I assended a hill on the Lower Side, on this hill Several artificial Mounds were raised, from the top of the highest of those Mounds I had an extensive view of the Serounding Plains, which afforded one of the most pleasing prospect I ever beheld, under me a Butifull River of Clear Water of about 80 yards wide Meandering thro: a leavel and extensive meadow, as far as I could See, the prospect much enlivened by the fiew Trees & Srubs which is bordering the bank of the river, and the Creeks & runs falling into it, The bottom land is covered with Grass of about 4½ feet high, and appears as leavel as a smoth surfice, the 2d bottom [*the upper land*] is also covered with Grass and rich weeds & flours, interspersed with copses of the Osage Plumb, on the riseing lands, Small groves of trees are Seen, with a numbers of Grapes and a Wild Cherry resembling the common Wild Cherry, only larger and grows on a small bush on the tops of those hills in every direction, I observed artifical Mounds (or as I may more justly term graves) which to me is a strong evidence [*indication*] of this Country being once thickly Settled. (The Indians of the Missouris Still keep up the Custom of Burrying their dead on high ground) after a ramble of about two miles about I returned to the perogue and decended down the river, gathd Som *grapes* nearly ripe, on a Sandstone Bluff about ¼ of a Mile from its mouth on the Lower Side I observed some Indian Marks, went to the rock which jucted over the water and marked my name & the day of the month & year. This river heads near one of the (see note) villages of the Pania [*Pawnee*] on the River Blue [*Blue River*], a branch of the *Kansas* River. above this river about half a mile the Prarie comes to the *Missouri*, after my return to Camp on the Island completed Som observations. Tri[e]d a man (W. C.) for Sleeping on his Post & inspected the arms amunition &c. of the party found all complete, Took Some Luner Observations. three Deer killed to day.

Lat^{d} 39° - 55′ - 56″ N.

[Orderly Book; Lewis:] *Camp New Island July 12th 1804.*

A Court ma[r]tial consisting of the two commanding officers will convene this day at 1 OCk. P.M. for the trial of such prisoners as may be brought before them; one of the court will act as Judge Advocate.

M. Lewis
W^{m} Clark

[Clark:]

The Commanding officers, Cap^{ts} M. Lewis & W. Clark constituted themselves a Court Martial for the trial of such prisoners as are *Guilty* of *Capatal Crimes,* and under the rules and articles of *War* punishable by DEATH.

Alexander Willard was brought foward Charged with "*Lying down and Sleeping on his post*" *whilst a Sentinal, on the Night* of the 11th Instant" (by John Ordway Sergeant of the Guard)

To this Charge the prisoner pleads *Guilty of Lying Down, and Not Guilty, of Going to Sleep.*

The Court after Duly Considering the evidence aduced, are of oppinion that the *Prisoner* Alex^{dr} Willard is guilty of every part of the Charge exhibited against him. it being a breach of the *rules* and articles of *War* (as well as tending to the probable distruction of the party) *do Sentience* him to receive *One hundred lashes, on his bear back, at four different times in equal proportion.* and Order that the punishment Commence this evening at Sunset, and Continue to be inflicted (by the Guard) every evening untill Completed

W^{m} Clark
M. Lewis

[Clark:] *July 13th Friday 1804 —*

Set out at Sun rise, and pros^d on under a gentle Breeze, at two Miles passed the mouth of a Small river on the S. S. called by the Indians *Tar-ki-o*,[1] a channel running out of the river three miles above (which is now filled up with Sand) runs into this Creek and formed a Island Called *S^t Josephs* Several Sand bars parralel to each other above. In the first bend to the left is Situated a Butifull & extensive plain, cover'd with Grass resembling Timothy except the Seed which resembles *Flax* Seed, this plain also abounds in Grapes of defferent kinds Some nearly ripe, I Killed two Goslings nearly Grown, Several others Killed and cought on Shore, also one old Goose, with pin fethers, she Could not fly. at about 12 Miles pass^d a Island Situated in a bend on the S. S. above this Island is a large Sand bar Covered with willows, The wind from the *South*, Camped on a large Sand Bar makeing out from the L. S^d opposit a high handsom *Prarie*, the *hills* about 4 or 5 Miles on S. S. this plain appeard extensive, the Clouds appear to geather to the N. W. a most agreeable Breeze from the South (I walked on Shore on the S. S. the lands are low Subject to overflow)

Last night at about 10 oClock a Violent Storm of wind from the N. N. E which lasted with Great violence for about one hour, at which time a Shower of rain Succeeded.

Course Distance & Reff^{ts} July 13th

N. 8° E.	1	M^l to p^t on S. S. ps^d S^d Isl^d
N. 28° E	3½	M^s to p^t on L. S. ps^d Riv. & Is^d (1)
S 70° W	3	M^s to p^t on S. S. ops^d a prarie (2)
N. 46° W.	1½	M^l on S. S. ops^d the Prarie & a Hill
N. 30° W.	1½	M^s to a p^t on L. S.
N. 45° W.	4½	M^s to a p^t on L. S. ps^d an Is^d (3)
N. 66° W.	3½	M^s to a p^t on S. S.
N. 8° W.	2	M^s to a p^t on L. S. a Sand Is^d
	20½	Miles

---

[1] The Big Tarkio, according to Biddle; this is also its present name. — ED.

The men on Shore did not join us this after noon. The river nearly on a Stand the high lands on the S. S. has only been seen at a Distance above the Nordaway River, those on the L. S. approaching the river at every bend, on the Side next to the river well timbered, the ops^{d} Side open & the Commencm^{t} of Plains.

July 14th Satturday 1804 —

Some hard Showers of rain this morning prevented our Setting out untill 7 oClock, at *half past Seven*, the atmisp^{r} became Sudenly darkened by a black and dismal looking Cloud, at the time we were in a Situation (not to be bettered,) near the upper point of the Sand Island, on which we lay, and the opposit Shore, the *bank* was falling in and lined with snags as far as we could See down, in this Situation the Storm which pass^{d} over an open Plain from the N. E. Struck the our boat on the Starb^{d} quarter, and would have thrown her up on the Sand Island dashed to pices in an Instant, had not the party leeped out on the Leward Side and kept her off with the assistance of the ancker & Cable, untill the *Storm* was over, the waves washed over her windward Side and she must have filled with water if the *Lockers* which is [had not been — Ed.] covered with *Tarpoling* & threw of the Water & prevented any quantity getting into Bilge of the Boat In this Situation we Continued about 40 Minits. when the Storm Sudenly Seased and the river become Instancetaniously as Smoth as Glass.

The two *perogu*[*e*]*s* dureing this Storm was in a Similar situation with the boat about half a mile above. The wind shifted to the S. E. & we Sailed up passed a Small (1) Isld Situated on the S. S. and Dined & continued two hours, men examine their arms about a Mile above this Island, passed a Small Tradeing fort on the S. S. where, M^{r} Bennet of S^{t} Louis Traded with the Otteaus & Panis two years. I went on Shore to Shoot Some Elk on a Sand bar to the L. S. I fired at one but did not get him, Went out into a large extensive bottom the greater part of which over flows, the part that dose not over flow, is rich and well timbered, Some Small open Praries near the hills, the Boat passed the lower part of a large Island Situated on the S. S. above the Lower point of this Island on the S. S. a (2) large Creek Coms into the river called by the *Maha's* [*Mahar*] Indians *Neesh-nah-ba-to-na* (Neĕsh-năh-bă-to-na) 50 yds. this is a Considerable Creek, nearly as large as the Mine River, and runs parrilel with the Missouri, the Greater part of its course. In those small Praries or Glades I saw wild Timothy, lambs-quarter, Cuckle burs,[1] & rich weed. on the edges Grows Sumr. Grapes, Plum's, & Goose berries. I Joined the boat which had Came to and Camped[2] in a bend opposd. the large Island before mentioned on the L. S. Several men unwell with *Boils*, *Felons*, &c. The river falls a little.

Course Distance & Reffers. July 14th

N. 70°. W.	2	Ms. to a point on S. S. a Sml. Isd. S. S. (1)
N. 22°. W	2	Ms. to a pt. L. S. wind Shift N. W. by N.
N. 30° W.	1	Ml. on the L. S.
N. 50 W	2½	Ms. to Lowr. pt. of an Isd. S. S.
N. 87 W	1½	Ms. to a pt. on S. Side of Isd. psd. a Creek (2)
	9	

July 15th. Sunday —

a heavy Fog this morning prevented our Setting out before 7 oClock, at nine I took two men and walked on the L. S. I crossed three butifull Streems of running water heading in the Praries on those Streem the lands verry fine covered with pea vine & rich weed the high Praries are also good land Covered with Grass entirely void of timber, except what grows on the water, I proceeded on thro those praries Several Miles to the Mouth of a large Creek on the L. S. called (?) [*Little*] *Nema har* this is a Small river, about 100 yds. above the Mouth it is 40 yards wide, at the mouth (as all other Creeks & rivers falling into the Missourie are) much narrower than a little distance up. after continueing at the mouth of this Creek about an hour, I swam across and proceeded on about 3 miles and halted to waite for the boat, which was some distance below. In all this days march thro woods & Praries, I only Saw three Deer & 3 fawns. I had at one part of the Prarie a verry extensive view of all the Countrey around up and down the river a Considerable distance, on the Larbd. Sd. one continued Plain, on the S. S. Some timber on the bank of the river, for a Short distance back of this timber is a bottom Plain of four or five miles back to the hills and under the hills between them & the river this plain appeared to extend 20 or 30 miles, those Hills have but little timber, and the Plain appears to Continue back of them. I saw Great quantities of Grapes, Plums of 2 kinds, Wild Cherries of 2 Kinds, Hazelnuts, and Goosberries.

---

[1] Cockle-burs (*Xanthium strumarium*). "Lamb's-quarter" is *Chenopodium album*, a succulent weed often used as "greens." — COUES (*L. and C.*, p. 46, *note* 103).

[2] We encamped on the north side of this island, a little above Nishnabatona. — BIDDLE (i, p. 26).

We Camped in a point of woods on the Larboard S. opsd. a large Island.

Course Dists. & refn. July 15th 1804

N. 30° W	3½	Ms. to a pt. on a Willow Isd. on the L. S. passed the head of the large Isd. on S. S. (1)
N. 70° W	¼	of a Ml. to L. pt. on Sd. Isd. the boat Passed to the L. S. Hills projects to river
N. 89 W.	¼	of a ml. to a pt. of Sd. Isld. the Hills here leave the river.
N. 88° W.	¼	of a Mile to a pt. on main Shore L. S. opposit a Sand bar. took Medn. altd. ⊙ L. L.
West	1¼	Ms. to a pt. on S. S. opposit to which the hills again touch the river.
N 45°. W.	1½	Ms. to the Mouth of *Ne-ma-har* creek in a bend to L. S. (2) opsd. Low pt. of Sd. bar.
N. 30°. E	2	Ms. to a pt. on L. S. a Deep bend to the right below the pt.
N. 15° E.	¾	Ml. to the lower pt. of a Isd. east of this Isd. is Said to be a Pond.
	9¾	

July 16th. Monday 1804 —

Set out this morning verry early and proceeded on under a gentle breeze from the S passed the upper point of the Island, an extensive Prarie on the L. S. passed a large (1)

Island Called *Fair Sun* Isd. a Small Willow Isld. at the lower point on the L. S., the boat passd. on the L. S. of those Islands Several Small Sand Islands in the Channel, the Boat run on the point of a Snag, (2) passed a place above the Island, L. S. where about 20 acres of the hill has latterly Sliped into the river, above a clift of Sand Stone for about two miles, the resort of burds of Different kinds to reare their young. (5) Passed a Willow Island in a Deep bend to the S. S. opposit the river is about two miles wide, and not verry Deep as the Snags may be Seen across, scattering, passed the Lower point of an Island called by F, *Chauvin* [*Chauve Island*][1] Situated off the L. Point opposit an extensive Prarie on the S. S. This Prarie I call *Ball* [Bald — Ed.] *pated Prarie*, from a range of Ball Hills parrelel to the river & at from 3 to 6 miles distant from it, and extends as far up & Down as I can See. We Camped in a point of Woods on the S. S. above the Lower point of the Island. river falling.

Course Distance & refr. July 16th.

N. 70° W.	½	a Ml. to a pt. on the left of the Isd. opposd.
N. 35. W.	1½	Ms. to a bend L. S. in Prarie opsd. hd. of Isd.
N 30° E	1	Ml. to to the Lowr. pt. of Wil: Isd. off L. pt. (1)
N. 40° W	¼	Ml. to pt. on sad. Island
N. 30° W.	2	Ms. to a pt. S. of a Sm. Isd. on S. S. psd. pt. L. S.
N. 15° E.	1½	Ml. to pt. of Good Sun Isd. psd. W Isd. (2)
N 35° W.	½	Ml. to L. S. Sm: W: Isd. psd. a Sm. W: Isd. (3)
N. 15° W	¾	Ml. on L. S. High Land Ner. Shore
N. 38° W	¾	Ml. to pt. Left of Isd. psd. Sm. W: Isd. L. S.
N. 54° W	¾	Ml. to pt. Sm. W. Isd. on the Sd. of the Isd.
N. 38° W	¾	Ml. to pt. L. S. took Mdn. altd. Lat. 40°: 20′ - 12″.
N. 52° W	½	Ml. to pt. of the Isd. opsd. High Land. .
N. 50° W.	1¼	Ms. to pt. on L. S. above hd. of Isd. (4)
N. 58° W.	2	Ms. to pt. on S. S. psd. Sand Stone Clifts
North.	¼	Ml. on the S. point
N 40° E	6	Ms. to the upr. pt. of a wood in the bend to the S. S. above the Lowr. Point of a Isld. L. S. a prarie above & Som ball Hills at abt. 4 Ms. (I calld. Ball Hill Prarie)
	20¼	

---

[1] The Biddle text says (i, p. 27), "called by the French l'Isle Chance [a misprint for Chauve], or Bald Island." — Ed.

July 17th Tuesday 1804 Bald pated Prarie —

We concluded [to] lay by at this place to day to fix the Lattitude & Longitude of this place (to Correct the cronometer run down Sunday) Several men out by day light hunting, Capt. Lewis concld. to ride out to *Neesh-nah-ba-to-na* Creek which passes under the ball hills near this place and at one place a little above this Camp is within 300 yards of the Missourie on this Creek grows Some few trees of oake Walnut & Mulberry.

I took Meridean altitude of ⊙ L. L. (43° 27″) which made the Lattitude 40° – 27′ – 5″ – 4/10 North. Wind from the South E. Several of the party much inflicted with *tumers* of different kinds, Som of which is verry troublesom, and dificcelt to cure. Capt. Lewis returned in the evening, he Saw Som handsom Countrey, & Says that the aforesaid Creek is rapid muddy and running. This Creek which [*where he saw it*] is at 10 or 12 from its mouth, within 300 yds. of the river [*Missr.*] is at least 25 [*16*] foot Lower than the river.[1] The high Lands from our Camp in this *Bald Pated* Prarie bears N 25° W. up the R.

Took equal altitudes

A. M.	7 h - 10 m - 8 s	P. M.	4 h - 4 m - 38
	" - 15 - 28		" - 6 - 3
	" - 52 - 55		" - 7 - 24

Altitude 69° - 36′ - 00″

Took Suns Azmoth, with Compt. & Sextent & Time

1st. Set

Compt.		altid.		Time (h m s)
N. 85° W.	=	28° . 51′ . 45″.	=	5 . 23 . 10

2d. Set.

N. 84° W.	=	26° - 35′ - 30″	=	5 - 59 . 20

observed the Moon ☾ & Spica ✱ Star West

---

[1] The Biddle text says, "at least six feet below the level of the Missouri." — ED.

S

Made	Time	distance
	8 - 53 - 11	41° - 50′ - 00″
	" - 59 - 0	" - 53 - 15
	9 - 2 - 58	" - 54 - 0
	" - 5 - 49	" - 55 - "
	" - 8 - 2	" - 56 - "
	" - 15 - 24	" - 57 - "
	" - 21 - 10	" - 58 - "
	" - 25 - 18	42 - 0 - 0

The Common Current taken with a Log runs 50 fathem in 40″ — Some places much Swifter, in 30″ and even 20 Seconds of time. five Deer Killed to day

July 18th Wednesday 1804 —

a fair morning the river falling fast. Set out this morning at Sun rise under a Gentle Breeze from the S E. by S passing over the Prarie, at about 3 Miles we passed the head of the Island L. S. called by the French *Chauve* or *Bald pate* opposit the middle of (1) this Island the creek on the S. S. is nearest the river. In high water an Island is formed in the bend above the last (2). Measured the Current and found that in forty one Seconds it run 50 fathom but little timber is to be Seen except in the Low points on Islands & on creeks, the Groth of timber is generally Cotton Mulberry Elm Sycomore &c. &c. passed a Island on the 2d point to the S. S. opposit the water (3) when high passes out in the Plain. oppsed this Island on the L. S. the hills jut to the river (4) this Hill has Sliped from the top which forms a Bluff above & 200 foot above the water, about ¾ of a mile in length & about 200 feet in Depth, has Sliped into the river, it is Composed of Sand Stone intermixed with an indiffert. Iron ore near the bottom or next to the water is a Soft Slate Stone, Some pebble is also intirmixt. We passed a verry bad Sand bar and incamped on the L. S. at the lower point of the Oven Islands & opposit the Prarie, Calld by the french *Four le tourtere* [*Baker's Oven*]. Saw a Dog nearly Starved on the bank, gave him som meet, he would not follow, our hunters killed 2 Deer to day.

Course distance & reffer^{d} July 18th

N. 28° W.	3¾	M^{s} to a Curve in the bank passed a bend of the Is^{d} (& Several Sand bars (1)
S 28° W	3¾	M^{s} to p^{t} on S. S. ps^{d} the head of the Is^{d} on L. S. (one back in bend (2)
S. 32° W.	½	M^{l} on S. p^{t} ps^{d} a Sand bar
S. 88° W	¼	M^{l} on S. S. Wind S. W.
N 55° W	¼	M^{l} on S. S.
N. 48° W	2½	M^{ls} to a p^{t} on L. S. ps^{d} a Sand bar L. S.
N 64° W	2½	M^{s} to a p^{t} on S. S. low banks on L. S. (2) an Is^{d} S. S. (3)
N 50° W	3	M^{s} to a p^{t} on S. S. ops^{d} a red bank on L. S. Some Iron (4)
N. 8° E	1½	M^{ls} to p^{t} on L. S. ops^{d} a Small Isl^{d} in the river one (above (5)
	18	

The Creummoter too Slow 6 minits 51 seconds & 6/10 altitude of the North Star ✱ last night at 10 h - 23 m - 18 s was 81° - 9′ - 15″.

July 19th Thursday 1804 —

Set out early passed between two small Islands, one in the Middle of the river, the other close on the L. S. opposit a prarie S. S. called (1) by the french *Four le tourtre,* The Bakers oven Islands. passed (2) Some high clift 4½ Miles above the Islands on the L. S. of yellow earth passed Several Sand bars, that [*were*] wide and at one place verry Shallow (two Small butifull runs falls into the river near each other at this Clift, a Deer Lick 200 yards up the Lowest of those runs head at no great distance in the plains and pass thro: Scirts [*skirts*] of timber to the river. In my walk on Shore I found Some ore in the bank above those runs which I take to be Iron ore. (3) at this place the Side of the hills has sliped about half way into the river for ¾ of a Mile forming a Clift from the top of the hill above. In the first bend to the right passed a Small Island a Sand bar opposit, worthey of remark as We approach this great River *Platt* the Sand bars much more numerous and the quick or moveing Sands much worst than they were below at the places where Praries approach the river, it is verry wide those places being much easier to wash & under mine than the Wood Land's. (4) passed a Willow

Isd situated near the middle of the river, and a large Sand makeing out from the S. S. a Deep bend to the L. S. we camped at the head of this Island on the Starboard Side of it,[1] Hunters Killed Two Deer. Saw great numbers of young Gees, River falling a little.

Course Distance & refrs July 19th

North	¼	of a Ml to Lowr pt of a Isd L. S. (1)
N 10° W	1¼	Ms to pt on L. S. sand bar psd Isd (1)
N. 45°. W	1	Ml on the L. S. a sand bar on S. S.
N 85° W.	2	Ms to pt on S. S. opsd High land (2)
N 82° W.	¾	Ml to the Mo: of a run in bend L. S. (3)
N 13° W.	2½	Ms to pt L. S. psd sliped bank (3) (a Island on S. S. a run L S.
N 54° W.	3	Ms to a pt on S. S. opsd Some Clifts passd a Wilw Iss in a Deep bend on the L. S. a Sand bar S. S. (4)
	10¾	

July 20th Friday 1804—

a cool morning passed a large Willow Island (1) on the S. S. and the mouth of Creek about 25 yds wide on the L. S. called by the french *l'Eue que* [*L'Eau qui*] *pleure*, or the Water which cry's [*weeping water*], this Creek falls into the river above a Clift of brown Clay opposit the Willow Island, I went out above the mouth of this Creek and walked the greater part of the day thro: Plains interspersed with small Groves of Timber on the branches, and some scattering trees about the heads of the runs, I Killed a verry large yellow Wolf, The Soil of those Praries appears rich but much Parched with the frequent fires. after I returned to the Boat we proceeded around a large Sand bar makeing out from the L. S. opsd a fountain of water comeing out of a hill L. S. and affording water Sufficent to turn a mill. The Praries as far as I was out appeared to be well watered, with small Streems of running water Serjt Pryor & Jo. Fields brought in two Deer this evening. a verry Pleasent Breeze from the N. W all night. river falling a little. It is worthey of observation to mention that our Party has been much healthier on the

---

[1] A little above the present site of Nebraska City, Neb. — Coues (*L. and C.*, i, p. 49).

Voyage than parties of the same number is in any other Situation. Tumers have been troublesom to them all.

Course Distance & refrs July 20th

N 18° E	3	Ms to a pt on L. S. psd a Wil: Isd on S. S. a Creek on L. S. (1)
N. 48° E	2½	Ms to a pt on S. S. of an Isld opsd the upr pt on 2d Isd which is divided from it by a narrow Chanl a Deep bend to S. S.
N. 5° W	3	Ms to a Lbd pt of an Island
North	6	Ms to the pt of an Isd on L. S. of sm.
N 18° W	3½	Ms to a pt on L S. high Land psd the head of an Isd above is a large Sand bar on L. S. (2)
	18	

From this evenings encampment a man may walk to the Pani [*Pawnee*] Village on the S bank of the Platt River in two days, and to the *Otteaus* in one day,[1] all those Indians are Situated on the South bank of the Platt River, as those Indians are now out in the Praries following & Hunting the buffalow, I fear we will not see them.

July 21st Satturday 1804 —

Set out early under a gentle breeze from the S. E. proceeded on verry well, passed (1) a willow Island on the L. S. opposit a bad Sand bar, Some high lands covered with timber L. S. in this hill is limestone and semented rock of shels &c (2) in high water the opposit Side is cut thro: by several Small channels, forming Small Islands, a large Sand bar opposit the Hill, at 7 oClock the wind luled and it Çommns'd raining, arrived at the lower Mouth of the Great River *Platt* at 10 oClock, (about 3 ms above the Hill of wood land) the Same range of High land continus within ¾ of a mile of the Mouth below This Great river being much more rapid than the Missourie forces its Current against the opposit Shore. The Current of this river comes with great velosity roleing its Sands into the Missouri, filling up its Bead & Compelling it to incroach on the S [*North*] Shore. we found great dificuelty in passing around the Sand at the Mouth of this River. Cap^{t} Lewis and Myself with 6 men in a perogue went up this Great river Platt about 2 [*one*] Miles, found the Current verry rapid roleing over Sands, passing through different Channels none of them more than five or Six feet deep, about 900 [*600*] yards Wide at the Mouth, I am told by one of our Party who wintered two winters on this river, that "it is much wider above, and does not rise more than five or six feet" Spreds verry wide [*with many small islands scattered thro' it,*] and from its rapidity & roleing Sands Cannot be navagated with Boats or Perogues. The Indians pass this river in Skin Boats which is flat and will not turn over. The Otteaus a Small nation reside on the South Side 10 Leagues up, the Panies on the Same Side 5 Leagues higher up. about 10 Leagues up this river on the S. Side a Small river Comes into the Platt Called Salt River, "the water So brackish that it Can't be Drank at Some Seasons, above this river & on the North Side a Small river falls into the platt Called *Elk* (*Horn*) *River* this river runs Parralal withe the Missouri. at 3 miles passed a Small river on the L. S. Called *Papillion* or Butterfly C: 18 yd^{s} wide a large Sand bar off the mouth, we proceeded on to get to a good place to Camp and Delay a fiew days, passed around this Sand bar: and Cam^{pd} for the night on the L. S. a verry hard wind from the N. W. I went on Shore S. S. and proceeded up one mile thro: high Bottom land open a great number of wolves about us this evening

---

[1] Gass mentions, as also living on the Platte, "the Loos [French, *Loups*], or Wolf Indians." — Ed.

Course Distance & Ref^{rs} July 21st

N. 22° W.	3½	M^{s} to a p^{t} S. S. opposit a P^{t} of High land on the L. S.
N. 28° W.	6½	M^{s} to a p^{t} on S. S. ps^{d} a Naked p^{t} & Wil^{w} Isl'd (1) on the L. S. & a high p^{t} on L S. (2)
N. 39° W.	3	M^{s} to a p^{t} on S. S. just below the Platt river pass^{d} a p^{t} of High Land cov^{d} with wood L S. a S^{d} bar near the S. S.
N. 8° W	2	M^{s} to a point in the junction of the Platt & Missouri a verry extensive [view — ED.] up the Platt West & Missourie North Passed many Sand bars in the Mouth Platt river
	15	M^{s} to Platt.

July 22nd Sunday 1804—

Set out verry early with a view of Getting Some Situation above in time to take equal altitudes and take observations, as well as one Calculated to make our party Comfortable in a Situation where they Could receve the benefit of a Shade. passed a large Sand bar opposit a Small river on the L. S. at 3 miles above Platt Called Papillion, or Butterfly Creek a Sand bar & a Willow Island opposit a Creek 9 Ms. above the Platt on the S. S. Called *Morqueton* Creek Prarie on both Sides of the river, Came too and formed a Camp on the S. S. above a Small Willow Island, and opposit the first Hill which aproach the river on the L. S. and covered with timber of Oake Walnut Elm &c. &c.

This being a good Situation and much nearer the Otteaus town than the Mouth of the Platt, we Concluded to delay at this place a fiew days and Send for Some of the Chiefs of that nation, to let them know of the Change of Government the wishes of our government to Cultivate friendship with them, the Objects of our journy and to present them with a flag and Some Small presents.

Some of our Provisions in the French Perogue being wet it became necessary to Dry them a fiew days. wind hard from N W. five Deer Killed to day. the river rise a little.

The Course & Distance from the Plate river to Camp N. 15° W. 10 Miles, psd 3 pts. L S. & 2 pts S. S.

CHAPTER II

FROM THE PLATTE TO VERMILION RIVER

Clark's Journal, July 23—August 24, 1804

[Clark:] *Camp White Catfish Nine* [10] *Miles above the Platt River, Monday the 23d of July* 1804 —

A FAIR morning Set a party to look for timber for Ores, two parties to hunt, at 11 oClock Sent off George Drewyer & *Peter Crousett* with some tobacco to invite the Otteaus if at their town and Panies if they saw them, to come and talk with us at our Camp &c. &c. (at this Season the Indians on this river are in the Praries hunting the Buffalow, but from some signs of hunters, near this place & the Plains being on fire near their towns induce a belief that they this nation have returned to get some Green Corn or roasting Ears) raised a flag Staff Sund and Dryed our provisions &c. I commence Coppying a Map of the river below to Send to the P. [President — Ed.] U. S. five Deer Killed to day one man with a tumer on his breast, Prepared our Camp the men put their arms in order Wind hard this afternoon from the N. W.[1]

July 26th Thursday

A M	7h	33m	32s	P. M.	4h	15m	22s
	"	34	55		"	16	51
	"	36	22		"	18	14

altitude given not put down

---

[1] The astronomical observations following, have been transferred to "Scientific Data." — Ed.

White Catfish Camp 10 *M.s above Platt*
24th *of July* 1804 *Tuesday* —

a fair day the wind blows hard from the South, the Breezes which are verry frequent in this part of the Missouri is cool and refreshing. Several hunters out to day, but as the game of all kinds are Scerce only two Deer were brought in. I am much engaged drawing off a map, Capt. Lewis also much engaged in prepareing Papers to Send back by a perogue — which we intended to Send back from the river Platt[1] observations at this place makes the Lattitude 41°. 3′ 19″ North.

This evening Guthrege Cought a *White Catfish,* its eyes Small & tale much like that of a *Dolfin.*

White Catfish Camp 25th *of July Wednesday* —

a fair morning Several hunters out to day, at 2 oClock *Drewyer & Peter* returned from the *Otteau* village, and informs that no Indians were at their *towns,* they saw Some fresh Signs of a Small party But Could not find them. in their rout to the Towns (which is about 18 miles West) they passed thro a open Prarie crossed papillion or Butterfly Creek and a Small butifull river which run into the Plate a little below the Town called *Corne de charf* [*corne de Cerf*] or *Elk Horn river* this river is about 100 yards wide with Clear water & a gravely Channel. wind from the S. E. two Deer killed to day 1 Turkey Several Grous Seen to day.[2]

Catfish which is White Camp —
26th *of July Thursday* 1804 —

the wind Blustering and hard from the South all day which blowed the clouds of Sand in Such a manner that I could not complete my pan [*plan*] in the tent, the Boat roled in Such a manner that I could do nothing in that, & was Compessed [compelled] to go to the woods and combat with the Musquetors, I opened the Tumer of a man on the left breast, which discharged half a point [pint].

---

[1] Coues here remarks (*L. and C.*, i, p. 54): "Nothing was dispatched to Jefferson till Apr. 7, 1805" (that is, from Fort Mandan). — Ed.

[2] Biddle here gives (i, pp. 33, 34) an account of the various Indian tribes of that region — Oto, Pawnee, Arapaho, Kiowa, Comanche, etc. — Ed.

five Beaver Cough[t] near the Camp the flesh of which we made use of. This evening we found verry pleasant. only one Deer killed to day. The countrey back from Camp on the S. S. is a bottom of about five mile wide, one half the distance wood & the bal^{t} plain high & Dry. The opposit Side a high Hill about 170 foot rock foundation Cov^{d} with timber, back & below is a Plain.

White Catfish Camp 10^{ms} above Platt 27th of July Friday, —

a small Shower of rain this morning, at 10 oClock Commence Loading the Boat & perogue, had all the ores completely fixed; Swam over the two remaining horses to the L. S. with the view of the Hunters going on that Side, after getting everry thing complete, we Set Sale under a gentle breeze from the South and proceeded on, passed a Island (form^{d} by a Pond fed by Springs) on the L. S. of high Land covered with timber, in the 2nd bend to the right a large Sand Island in the river a high Prarie on the S. S. as we were Setting out to day one man Killed a Buck & another Cut his Knee verry bad. Camped in a Bend to the L. Side in a coops [*copse*] of Trees, a verry agreeable Breeze from the N. W. this evening. I killed a Deer in the Prarie and found the Musquitors so thick & troublesom that it was disagreeable and painfull to Continue a moment still.

Course & Distance. refr^{d} July the 27th

North	1½	M^{s} to a willow p^{t} on the L. S.
West	2	M^{s} to Sand p^{t} on S. S. ops^{d} a pond L. S.
N. 10° E.	3	M^{s} to p^{t} of W. L. S. ps^{d} a large S^{d} bar in the middle of the river
N. 8° W.	4	M^{s} to a p^{t} on S. S. ops^{d} Some Mounds [Ottos village *old Ayauwaus v.*] on the L. S. ps^{d} Bluff S. S.
N. 54° E.	4½	M^{s} to a p^{t} of wood land in a bend on L. S. ps^{d} a p^{t} S. S.
	15	

I took one man R. Fields and walked on Shore with a view of examoning Som Mounds on the L. S. of the river those

Mounds I found to be of Different hight Shape & Size, Some Composed of sand some earth & Sand, the highest next to the river all of which covered about 200 acres of land, in a circular form, on the Side from the river a low bottom & small Pond. The Otteaus formerly lived here I did not get to the boat untill after night.

July the 28th Satturday 1804—

Set out this morning early, the wind from the N. W. by N. a Dark Smokey Morning Some rain passed at 1 ml. a Bluff on the S. S.[1] the first high land above the Nodaway aproaching the river on that Side, a Island and Creek 15 yds. wide on the S. S. above this Bluff, as this Creek has no name call it Indian Knob Creek our party on Shore Came to the river and informs that they heard fireing to the S. W. below[2] this High Land on the S. S. the Aiauway Indians formerly lived, below this old village about 5 miles passed Some Monds on the L. S. in a bend where the *Otteauze* Indians formerly lived, this Situation I examined, found it well situated for Defence, about 2 or 300 acres of Land Covered with Mounds

The flank came in & informed they heard two Guns to the S. W. the high land approaches in the 1st bend to the left, we camped on the S. S. below the point of an Island, G Drewyer brought in a *Missourie Indian* which he met with hunting in the Prarie This Indian is one of the fiew remaining of that nation, & lives with the Otteauz, his Camp about 4 Miles from the river, he informs that the 'great gangue' [body—BIDDLE] of the Nation were hunting the Buffalow in the Plains. his party was Small Consisting only of about 20 Lodges.[3] [Blank space in MS.] Miles further another Camp where there was a french man, who lived in the nation, this Indian appear'd Spritely, and appeared to make use of the Same pronouncation of the Osarge, Calling a Chief *Inea*

---

[1] A trading post, called Fort Croghan, was afterward built at or near this bluff. — COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 61).

[2] The rest of this paragraph is crossed out by another pen, in the original MS. Biddle says that the Iowas "emigrated from this place to the river Des Moines." — ED.

[3] Floyd here says: "The Reasen this man Gives of His being with So Small a party is that He Has not Got Horses to Go in the Large praries after the Buflows but Stayes about the Town and River to Hunte the Elke to seporte thare fameleys." — ED.

Cours. Distance & reffers. July 28

S. 32° E.	1	Ml on the L. Side to pt of a Sand bar L. S.
N. 10 W.	½	Ml on the L. S. a High Bluff on the Stabd S. above the old village of the Aiaouez, this High land the 1st above *Nordaway* which aproaches the river S. S.
N. 30° W.	½	on the L. Side
N. 77. W.	3	Ms to a pt on the L. S. psd an Isd & Indian Knob Creek S. S.
N. 60 W.	3	Ms to a pt on the S. S. passed the aforesaid Island S. S.
N. 60 W.	¾	on the S. S.
N. 63. E	2	Ms to a point L. S. opsd a Island in the M. river
	10¾	

July 29th Sunday 1804—

Sent a french man *la Liberty* with the Indian to Otteauze Camp to envite the Indians to meet us on the river above. a Dark rainey morning wind from the W. N. W. rained all the last night. Set out at 5 oClock opposit the (1) Island, the bend to the right or S. S. within 20 feet of Indian knob Creek, the water of this Creek is 5 feet higher than that of the River. passed the Isld. we stoped to Dine under Some high Trees near the high land on the L. S. in a fiew minits Cought three verry large *Cat fish* (3) one nearly white, those fish are in great plenty on the Sides of the river and verry fat, a quart of Oile Came out of the surpolous fat of one of those fish (4) above this high land & on the S. S. passed much falling timber apparently the ravages of a Dreddfull harican which had passed oblequely across the river from N. W. to S. E. about twelve months Since, many trees were broken off near the ground the trunks of which were sound and four feet in Diameter, (2) about ¾ of a Ml above the Island on the S. S. a Creek coms in Called Boyers R. this Creek is 25 yards wide, one man in attempting to cross this Creek on a log let his gun fall in, R. Fields Dived & brought it up proceeded on to a Point on the S. S. and Camped.

Course Distance & Refrs July 29th

North	¾	of a Mile on the L. S. an Island on the right of the Course (1)
N. 80° W.	½	Ml to a pt on the L. Side passed Bowyers Creek S. S. (2)
N. 85° W.	2	Ms to a Wood in a bend on the L. S. below a Hill
North	¾	Ml on the S. S. (3)
N. 11° E.	3½	Ms to a tree in the bend S. S. pased a Harican (4)
N. 70 W.	2½	to a point of wood on the S. S. Camped S. S.
	10	

July 30th *Monday* 1804—

Set out this morning early proceeded on to a clear open Prarie on the L. S. on a rise of about 70 feet higher than the bottom which is also a Prarie (both forming Bluffs to the river) of High Grass & Plumb bush Grapes &c. and situated above high water, in a small Grove of timber at the foot of the Riseing Ground between those two preraries, and below the Bluffs of the high Prarie we Came too and formed a Camp,[1] intending to waite the return of the frenchman & Indians. the white horse which we found near the Kanzus river, Died Last night

Course Distance &c. July 30th

S 82° W.	2	Ms to a point of wood on the L. S. above a pt on the L. S. and opsd one on S. S.
West	1¼	Ms to the lower part of a Bluff & High Prarie on L. S. came too.
	3¼	

posted out our guard and sent out 4 men, Captn Lewis & [I] went up the Bank and walked a Short Distance in the high Prarie this Prarie is Covered with Grass of 10 or 12 inches in hight, Soil of good quality & at the Distance of about a mile still further back the Countrey rises about 80 or 90 feet higher, and is one Continued Plain as fur as Can be seen, from the Bluff on the 2d rise imediately above our Camp, the most butifull prospect of the River up & Down and the

---

[1] This camp is quite near Fort Calhoun. — E. E. BLACKMAN (of Nebraska State Historical Society).

Countrey Ops.^{d} prosented it Self which I ever beheld; The River meandering the open and butifull Plains, interspursed with Groves of timber, and each point Covered with Tall timber, Such as Willow Cotton sum Mulberry, Elm, Sucamore Lynn & ash (The Groves contain Hickory, Walnut, coffee nut & Oake in addition) Two ranges of High Land parrelel to each other, and from 4 to 10 Miles Distant, between which the river & its bottoms are Contained. (from 70 to 300 feet high)

Joseph Fields Killed and brought in an Anamale Called by the French *Brarow,*[1] and by the Panies *Cho car tooch* this Anamale Burrows in the Ground and feeds on Flesh, (Prarie Dogs) Bugs & Vigatables " his Shape & Size is like that of a Beaver, his head mouth &c. is like a Dogs with Short Ears, his Tail and Hair like that of a Ground Hog, and longer; and lighter. his Interals like the interals of a *Hog*, his Skin, thick and loose, his *Belly* is White and the Hair Short, a white Streek from his nose to his Sholders. The toe nails of his fore feet is one Inch & ¾ long, & feet large; the nails of his hind feet ¾ of an Inch long, the hind feet Small and toes Crooked, his legs are short and when he moves Just sufficent to raise his body above the Ground He is of the Bear Species. We have his skin stuffed.

Jo. & R. Fields did not return this evening, Several men with verry bad *Boils.* Cat fish is cought in any part of the river Turkeys Geese & a Beaver Killed & Cought every thing in prime order men in high Spirits. a fair Still evening Great no. Musquitors this evening

July 31st Tuesday —

a fair Day three Hunters out, Took Meridian altitude made the Latt.^{d} 41°. 18'. 1" 5/10 N. R. & Jo. Fields returned to Camp they Killed 3 Deer; The Horses Strayed off last night. Drewyer Killed a Buck one inch of fat on the ribs, R. & Jo. Fields returned without any meet haveing been in persuit of the horses. The Indians not yet arrived. Cought a young Beever alive which is already quite tame. Cought a Buffalow fish. The evening verry Cool, the Musqu[i]tors are yet troublesom.

---

[1] Corruption of *blaireau*, French name of the badger (*Taxidea Americana*).— ED.

August the 1st 1804 —

a fair morning Despatched two men after the horses lost yesterday, one man back to the place from which the Messinger was Sent for the *Ottoes* to see if any Indians was or had been there sence our dept^{r} he return'd and informed that no person had been there Sence we left it. The Prarie which is situated below our Camp is above the high water leavel and rich covered with Grass from 5 to 8 feet high interspersed with copse of Hazel, Plumbs, Currents (like those of the U. S.) Rasberries & Grapes of Dif^{t} Kinds. also producing a variety of Plants and flowers not common in the United States, two Kind of honeysuckle one which grows to a kind of a Srub Common about Harrodsburgh in Kentucky the other are not so large or tall and bears a flour in clusters short and of a light Pink colour, the leaves differ from any of the other Kinds in as much as the Lieves are destinct & does not surround the stalk as all the other kind do.

One Elk and three Deer Killed to day also two Beever Cought

The wind rose at 10 oClock from the W. S. W. and blew a steady and agreeable Breeze all Day.

The Musquitors verry troublesom this evening in the bottom.

Took equal altitudes to day and the azmuth with the commencement of the A. M.

Time of alt'd

N. 86° E A.M. 7h . 52m . 55s — P.M. 3h . 50m . 42s
" 7 . 54 . 20 — " 3 . 52 . 3
" 7 . 55 . 47 — " 3 . 53 . 31
The Altitude given 68° – 47′ – 15″

The Indians not yet arrived we fear Something amiss with our messenger or them.

August 2nd Thursday 1804 —

a verry pleasant Breeze from the S. E. The Two men Drewyer & Colter returned with the horses loaded with Elk, those horses they found about 12 miles in a Southerly Derection from Camp.

The Countrey thro which they passed is Similar to what we see from Camp. one Beaver & a foot [*of Beaver caught in trap*] Cought this morning

at Sunset Mr. Fairfong (*Ottoe interpreter resident with them*) and a pt. of Otteau & Missourie Nation Came to Camp, among those Indians 6 were Chiefs, (not the principal Chiefs) Capt. Lewis & myself met those Indians & informed them we were glad to see them, and would speak to them tomorrow, Sent them Some rosted meat, Pork flour & meal, in return they sent us Water *millions*. every man on his Guard & ready for any thing.

Three fat Bucks Killed this evening, the 4 qrs. of one weighed 147lbs.

August 3rd Friday 1804 —

Mad up a Small preasent for those people in perpotion to their Consiquence, also a package with a Meadle to accompany a Speech for the Grand Chief after Brackfast we collected those Indians under an owning of our Main Sail, in presence of our Party paraded & Delivered a long Speech to them expressive of our journey the wishes of our Government, Some advice to them and Directions how they were to conduct themselves. The principal Chief for the Nation being absent, we Sent him the Speech flag Meadel & Some Cloathes. after hering what they had to say Delivered a Medal of Second Grade to one for the Ottos & one for the Missourie and present 4 medals of a third Grade to the inferior chiefs two for each tribe.[1] (Those two parts of nations Ottos & Missouries now residing together is about 250 men the Ottoes composeing 2/3d. and Missouris 1/3 part)

---

[1] The customary mode of recognizing a chief, being to place a medal round his neck, which is considered among his tribe as a proof of his consideration abroad. — BIDDLE (i, p. 38).

The names of the Chiefs made [*we acknowledged*] this day are as follows viz:[1]

	Indian name			English signf^{ts}
1st	*We ár ruge nor*	Ottoe	*call'd*	*Little Thief*
2	Shōn gŏ tōn gŏ	"	"	Big Horse
	We – the – à	Miss:	"	Hospatality
3	Shon Guss càn.	Ottoe		White horse
	Wau pe ùh	M.		
	Āh hŏ ning gă.	M.		
	Baza cou jà.	Ottoe		
	Āh hŏ nē gă	M.		

Those Chiefs all Delivered a Speech, acknowledgeing their approbation to the Speech and promissing two prosue the advice & Derections given them that they wer happy to find that they had fathers which might be depended on &c.

We gave them a Cannister of Powder and a Bottle of Whiskey and delivered a few presents to the whole, after giveing a Br. Cth. [Breech Cloth] some Paint guartering & a Meadell to those we *made* Chiefs, after Capt Lewis's Shooting the air gun a fiew Shots (which astonished those nativs) we Set out and proceeded on five miles on a Direct line passed a point on the S. S. & around a large Sand bar on the L. S. & Camped on the upper point, the Misquitors excessively troublesom this evening. Great appearance of wind and rain to the N. W. we prepare to rec've it, The man *Liberty* whome we Sent for the Ottoes has not Come up he left the Ottoes Town one Day before the Indians. This man has either tired his horse or, lost himself in the Plains Some Indians are to hunt for him.

The Situation of our last Camp *Councile Bluff*[2] or Handsom Prarie, (25 Days from this to *Santafee*) appears to be a verry proper place for a Tradeing establishment & fortification The Soil of the Bluff well adapted for Brick, Great deel of timber above in the two Points — many other advantages of a small nature. and I am told Senteral to Several nations viz. one Days march from the Ottoe Town, one Day & a half from the great Pania village, 2 days from the Mahar Towns, two ¼ Days from the *Loups* village, & convenient to the Countrey thro: which Bands of the Soux [*rove &*] hunt. perhaps no other Situation is as well Calculated for a Tradeing establishment.

---

[1] The diacritical marks over these names were added by other hands. Biddle gives the first name as Weahrushhah. He also states that these envoys asked the American officers to mediate between them and the Omaha, who were at war with them. — Ed.

[2] This is the origin of the name now applied to a city in Iowa opposite Omaha, Nebr.; but Coues thinks (*L. and C.*, i, p. 66) that the place of this council was higher up the river, on what was later the site of Fort Calhoun, in the present Washington Co., Nebr. He also calls attention to the well-known uncertainty and constant shifting of the Missouri's channels, rendering it difficult to identify historic points. — Ed.

The air is pure and helthy so far as we can judge.

Course of Augt. 3rd.

N. 5°. E 5 Ms. to a pt. on L. S. psd. a pt. on the S. S. & a Sand bar L. S.

August 4th. Satturday —

Set out early. (at 7 oClock last night we had a violent wind from the N. W. Some little rain succeeded, the wind lasted with violence for one hour after the wind it was clear sereen and cool all night.) proceeded on passed thro between Snags which was quit across the River the Channel confined within 200 yards one side [*S. S.*] a Sand pt. the other a Bend, the Banks washing away & trees falling in constantly for 1 mile, above this place is the rimains of an old Tradeing establishment L. S. where Petr. Crusett one of our hands stayed two years & traded with the *Mahars* a Short distance above is a Creek (3) the out let of three Ponds, comunicateing with each other, those Ponds or rether Lakes are fed by Springs & Small runs from the hills. (2) a large Sand Island opposit this Creek, Makeing out from the L. Point, from the Camp of last night to this Creek, the river has latterly changed its bed incroaching on the L. Side, on this Sand bar I saw great nos. of wild gees passed a small creek on the L. S. about 3 miles above the last both of those Creek's are out lets from the Small Lake which re[c]ive their water from the Small Streems running from the high land. great many *Pumey* stones on the Shore of various Sises the wind blew hard. *Reed* a man who went back to camp for his knife has not joined us. we camped at a Beaver house on the L. S. one Buck Killed to day.

Course Distance & refs 4th August 1804

S. 80° W.	½	Ms to an old Tradeing House on the L. S. passed a Sd pt from S. S. (1)
N. 25° W.	2¼	Ms to a Willow pt on the L. S. pass a large Sand Isd & Creek on the L. pt (3)
N. 70° W.	1¾	Ms to a willow pt on the S. S. psd a sm: Creek L. S. & many Snags
N. 24° W.	3½	Ms to a willow pt on the L. S. passed a Sand bar from a S. pt
S. 84° E.	3½	Ms to a pt on the L. S. passed a pt on the S. S.
	15	

here the high Land is Some Distance from the river on both Sides, and at this place the High lands are at least 12 or 15 miles a part, the range of high land on the S. S. appear to contain Some timber. that on the L. S. appear to be intirely clear of any thing but what is common in an open Plain, Some Scattering timber or wood is to be Seen in the reveens, and where the Creeks pass into the Hill. the points and wet lands contain tall timber back of the willows which is generally situated back of a large Sand bar from the Points.

5th of August Sunday 1804. —

Set out early great appearance of wind and rain (I have observed that Thunder & lightning is not as common in this Countrey as it is in the atlantic States) Snakes are not plenty, one was killed to day large and resembling the rattle Snake, only something lighter. I walked on Shore this evening S. S. in Pursueing Some turkeys I [s]truck the river twelve miles below within 370 yards, the high water passes thro' this Peninsula, and agreeable to the customary changes of the river, I concld [*should calculate*] that in two years the main current of the river will pass through. In every bend the banks are falling in from the current being thrown against those bends by the Sand points which inlarges and the Soil I believe from unquestionable appearns of the entire Bottom from one hill to the other being the Mud or Ooze of the river at Some former Period mixed with Sand and Clay easily melts and Slips into the River, and the mud mixes with the water & the Sand is washed down and lodges on the points. Great quantities of Grapes on the banks, I observe three different kinds at this time ripe, one of the no. is large & has the flaver of the Purple grape, camped on the S. S. the Musquitors verry troublesom. The man who went back after his knife has not yet come up, we have some reasons to believe he has Deserted.

Course Distance & Refr^{d} August 5th

S. 60° E	1½	M^{s} Cross^{g} a large S^{d} bar to a p^{t} on m^{s} S. S^{d} bet: a willow Is^{d} in S. Bend
N. 20 W.	¾	M^{s} to a p^{t} above a Sa^{d} bar ops^{d} the upper point of the S^{d} Island (Beaver
N. 34 W.	3¼	M^{s} to a p^{t} on the L. S. passed one on the Starboard Side
North	¾	M^{s} to a p^{t} on the right of a Sand Is^{d} makeing from the L. p^{t}
S. 45° W.	3¼	M^{s} to 3 small trees in Prarie & bend to the L. S. pased a Sand p^{t} S. S.
N. 45° W.	4½	M^{s} to a p^{t} on S. S.
North	1¼	M^{s} on the S. S. to the p^{t} of a Sand bar river narrow
N. 70° E	¼	M^{s} on the Sand bar S. S.
S. 30 E	2	M^{s} to the p^{t} of a Sand bar making out from the L. p^{t} ps^{d} a Sand.
S. 30 E	½	M^{l} on the point
N. 45° E	2½	M^{ls} to the lower point of an Island Close to the S. S. behind this Island on the S. S. the *Soldiers* river disimboques itself.
	20½	

6th *August, Monday* 1804 —

At twelve oClock last nigh[t] a violent Storm of wind from the N. W. Some rain, one p^{r} of colours lost in the Storm from the bige Perogue. Set out early and proceeded on passed a large Island on the S. S. back of this Is^{d} Soldiers River Mouths, I am told by one of the men that this river is about the size of Nadawa river *40* yards wide at the mouth. Reed has not yet come up. neither has La Liberty the frenchman whome we Sent to the Indian Camps a fiew miles below the *Council Bluffs*.

Course Distance &c. August 6th

N. 30° E.	1	Ml to a Pt on L. S. opposit the mouth of Soldiers River S. S.
N. 15° E.	3½	Ml to a pt in a bend to the S. S. below a chanl of the river laterly filled up passed a Sand bar. from the L. pt
West	2½	Ml to a willow pt on the L. S. passed a Sand bar makeing out from the from the L. pt
S. 50° W.	3½	Ml to a pt of willows on the S. S. the high land within 3 miles of the river on the L. S.
N. 10 W.	½	Ml on the S. pt a Sand bar in R.
N. 18° E.	3	Ml passing over a Sand bar on the L. S. to a pt on the Same side of the Missourie.
North	1½	Ml to a pt on the S. S.
N. 18 W.	½	Ml on the Sand from the Pt
East	3	Ml to a pt of willows on L. pt passed a place where the snags were thick
N. 16° E.	1½	Ml to a pt on the S. S. and a place where the river formerly run leaving ponds in its old Channels S. S.
	20½	

7th August Tuesday 1804—

last night at 8 oClock a Storm from the N. W. which lasted ¾ of an hour set out late this morning wind from the North. at 1 oClock dispatched George Drewyer, R. Fields, Wm Bratten & Wm Labieche back after the Deserter reed with order if he did not give up Peaceibly to put him to Death &c. to go to the Ottoes Village & enquire for La Liberty and bring him to the Mahar Village also with a Speech on the occasion to the Ottoes & Missouries, and derecting a few of their Chiefs to come to the Mahars, & we would make a peace between them & the Mahars and Souex, a String of Wompom & a Carrot of Tobacco. proceeded on and Camped on the S. S.

Course Dists & remarks Augt 7th 1804.

North	2	Ms to a pt of Willows on the L. S.
N. 25° W.	½	Ml on the L. pt
N. 45° W.	1½	Ml on the L. pt of a Sd bar.
S. 12° E.	2½	Ms do do.
S. 70° E.	½	Ml to the Willows on the S. S.
N. 36° W.	2½	Ms to a pt of Willows on the L. S. a large Sand [bar — Ed.] makein out
N. 73° W.	3	Ms to a pt of Willows on the S. S. I went thro to to the next bend up a Beayoue. S. S. form'g two Isds I call Detachment Isd
N. 83° E.	2½	Ms to a pt of Cotton Wood L. S. Psd Sand bar from L. pt
N. 32 W.	1½	Ms to a Sand pt from the S. pt
N. 12° E.	½	Ml to the Willows on the S. S.
	17	

8th August Wednesday 1804

Set out this morning at the useal time at two miles passed (1) a bend to L. S. choaked up with Snags our boat run on two in turning to pass through, we got through with Safty the wind from N. W. (2) passed the mouth of a River on the S. Side called by the *Soux Indians Ĕa-neăh Wău dĕ pŏn* (or Stone river) the French Call this river. *Petite Rivere de Cuouex* (*riviere des sioux*). it is about 80 yards wide and as (Mr Durion Says whos been on the heads of it and the Countrey abt.) is navagable for Perogues Some Distance runs Parrelel to the Missourie some Distance, then falls down from N. E. thro a roleing Countrey open, the head of this river is 9 miles from the R Demoin [*Desmoines*] at which place the *Demoin* is 80 yd. Wide, this Little Cuouex passes thro a lake called Despree [*D'Esprits*] which is within 5 Leagues of the *Deemoin* the Said Lake is about 20 Leagues in circumfrance and is divided into 2 by two rocks approaching verry near each other, this Lake is of various wedth, containing many Islands. from this Lake to the Maha 4 days march, as [and?] is Said to be near the Dog Plains one principal branch of the Demoin is Called Cat River. The Demoin is Sholey.

Cap Lewis took Med^{n} altitude of the Sun made it 56°– 9′ – 00″ Lat: 41 – 42 – 34 and I took one man and went on Shore the man Killed an Elk I fired 4 times at one & did not kill him, My ball being Small I think was the reason, the Musquitors so bad in the Praries that with the assistance of a bush I could not keep them out of my eyes, the boat turned Several times to day on Sand bars. in my absence the boat passed a Island 2 Miles above the litle Scouix R on the upper point of this Isld Some hundreds of Pelicans were collected, they left 3 fish on the Sand which was very fine, Cap Lewis Killed one, & took his dimentions, I joined the boat and we Camped on the S. S. worthie of remark that Snakes are not plenty in this part of the Missourie.

Course Dist^{e} & reff^{s} 8th Aug^{t}

N. 20° E.	2	M^{s} to the p^{t} of a S^{d} Is^{d} from the S. S.
N. 50 E.	2	M^{s} to a p^{t} of Wil^{s} on the L. S.
East	½	M^{l} on the right of a Sand Island
North	1½	M^{l} to the mouth of Little River desioux Call^{d} by Soux *Ea neab-wau de pon* (Stone River
N. 70° W.	2	M^{ls} to the Lower p^{t} of Pelican Is^{d} (3)
N. 20° W.	1	M^{l} to a right Hand p^{t} of S^{d} Is^{d}
N. 52 W.	7	M^{s} to a P^{t} of high woods in a bend to L. S. haveing pass^{d} the Pelican Is^{d}
	16	

one & a half miles South of Little Riv. de Cuouex took half altitude with Sext^{n}

Time
8 h – 26 m – 59 s
8 – 28 – 29
8 – 30 – 3
} alt^{d} 80° – 14′ – 15″

9th August Thursday 1804 —

The fog being thick detained us untill half pas^{d} 7 oClock at which time we Set out and proceeded on under Gentle Breeze from the S. E. I walked on Shore, Saw an Elk, crossed a Istmust of ¾ of a mile to the river, & returned to the boat Camped on the L. S. above a Beaver Den. Musquitors verry troublesom.

Course Distance & refrs Augt 9th

N. 30° E.	2½	Ms to a Point of a Sand Bar on the L. S.
N. 32. W.	1	Ml to a pt of high wood on L. S.
N. 22. W.	2½	Ms to a pt of high wood on the S. S. a large Sand bar from it
N. 15. W.	2	Ms to a pt of high Land L. S. opsd to which the river laterly cut thro' Saveing 6 Leagues. S. S.
N. 46° W.	1½	Ms to a Willow pt on the S. S.
N. 35. W.	2	Ms to the S. S. the river comeing graduelly arround to the Rigt
N. 60° E	2½	Ms to a Willow pt on the L. S.
N. 44. W.	3½	to a point on S. S.
	17½	

10th August Friday 1804 —

Set out early this morning. Course

N. 60° W.	2	miles about to a Sand makeing out from the Larboard point.
S. 80 W.	½	ml to a Drift log on the Sand this place is called Coupee ar Jacke[1] the river laterly Cut through, Saveing Sevl mls
S. 18° E.	2½	Ms to the S. S.
S. 20 W.	2½	Ms to a burnt Stump in a bend to the L. S. this place I was at yesterday.
West	3½	Ms to 2 Cottonwood trees at the mouth of a run on the L. S. near the high land & below a Bluff.
N 40° W.	1½	to a clift of yellow Sand stone the first high land touching the river above the Council Bluff.
N. 52° W.	1½	Ms to the pt of a Sand bar from the Starboard pt passed the Clift L. S.
N. 79° E.	3	Ms to a pt of Willows on the L. S.
N. 29. E.	½	Ml on the L. Pt
North	1½	Ms to a sand bar from the L. pt
N. 68. W.	¾	Mls on the Sand bar from L. pt
N. 85. W.	2½	Ms to the lower pt of a willow island near the S. point.
	22¼	

---

[1] This is Coupee a Jacques, in Biddle's text. — Ed.

from this Island the high hill which the Late King of the Mahars was buried on is high and bears West 4 miles. we camped on this Island.

Musquitors verry troublesom. much Elk & Beaver Sign

11th *August Satturday* 1804. —

about day light this morning a hard wind from the NW. with Some rain proceeded on arround the right of the Is^{d}

S. 52° W.	½	a Mile on the Sand p^{t}
N. 25 W.	2	M^{ls} to a p^{t} of low Willows from the L. S. pass^{d} the Is^{d} & a Sand bar makeing from the S. point.
N. 72 W.	2¼	M^{s} to a P^{t} on the S. S.

a hard wind accompanied with rain from the S. E. after the rain was over, Cap^{t} Lewis myself & 10 men assended the Hill on the L. S. (under which there was some fine Springs) to the top of a high point where the *Mahars King Black* Bird was burried 4 years ago. [Died of small pox][1] a mound of earth about 12 [feet — BIDDLE] Diameter at the base, & 6 feet high is raised over him turfed, and a pole 8 feet high in the Center on this pole we fixed a white flage bound with red Blue & white, this hill about 300 feet above the water forming a Bluff between that & the water of various hight from 40 to 150 feet in hight, yellow soft Sand stone from the top of this Nole the river may be Seen Meandering for 60 or 70 miles, we Decended & set out N. 24° W. ½ M^{l} passing over a Sand bar on the S. p^{t} along the willows to the river opposit a Small Beyeau on the L. S. which is the Conveyance of the high water from a bend which appears near in a northerly derection, haveing passed a Creek in a Deep bend to the L. S. Called by the *Mahars Wau can di Peeche* (Great Spirrit is bad) on the Creek & Hills near it about 400 of the *Mahars* Died with the Small Pox

---

[1] Brackenridge gives (*Louisiana*, pp. 229, 230) an interesting account of this chief, who gained an unlimited ascendency over the tribes of that region by his possession of some arsenic, by which he threatened death against any one who opposed him. Irving describes (*Astoria*, p. 161) the burial of this chief upon his horse. His skull was carried away by George Catlin in 1832, and is now in the U. S. National Museum (*Smithsonian Report*, 1885, ii, p. 263). — ED.

Took Med^{n} altitude & made the Lat^{d} *42° . 1' . 3" 8/10 N. also the Moons Distance from the Sun*

	Time			Distance		
	H.	M	S	O	M	S
P. M.	1	13.	45	73	6	45
	"	16.	48	73	6	0
	"	18.	39	"	6	0
	"	20.	55	"	7	45
	"	22.	25	"	8	30
	"	24	24	"	9	30
	"	25.	45	"	9	30
	"	27.	43	"	10	45
	"	29.	33	"	11	30
	"	31.	30	"	12	00

S 81° E	2¾	miles to the beginning of a point of willows on the L. Side
N. 84° E.	6	Miles to a high wood above a Prarie on the S. S. opposit a Sand point
N. 22° E.	1¼	to a p^{t} of willows on the L. S.
North	1¾	to a Cotton tree in a bend to the Starboard Side passed a Sand bar on the L. S. & Camped[1]
Miles	17.	

the Musquitoes verry troublesom, Great Nos. of Herrons. this evening.

I have observed a number of places where the River has onced run and now filled, or filling up & growing with willows & Cottonwood.

12th August, Sunday 1804—

Set out early under a gentle Breeze from the South the river wider than useal and Shallow

(1) at 12 oClock we halted to take a meridean alt^{d} of the *Sun* & Sent a man *back* or I may Say across to the Bend of the

---

[1] Near the present Badger Lake, Monona Co., Ia. — COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 73).

river where Cap^{t} Lewis took the Md^{n} altitude yesterday, to Step off the distance, he made it 974 yards across, the Distance arround the bend is 18¾ miles. about 4 miles above this bend on the L. S. is the Commencement of a Bluff which is about 4 miles extinding on the river, of yellow and brown Clay in Some parts in it near the water a Soft Sand Stone is imbeded on the top (which is from 20 to 150 feet above the water, & rises back) is Covered with timber, a fiew red Ceeder is on this Bluff, the wind coms round to the S. E. a *Prarie Wolf* come near the bank and Barked at us this evening, we made an attempt but could not git him, the animale Barkes like a large *ferce* Dog. Beever is verry Plenty on this part of the river. I prepare Some presents for to give the Indians of the *Mahars* Nation. Wiser ap^{t} Cook & Supent^{dt} of the Provisions of Serg^{t} Floyds Squad. We Camped on a Sand Island in a bend to the S. S. Musquitors verry troublesom untill the wind rose. at one or 2 oClock

Course Distance &c. August 12th

N. 45° W.	1½	M^{s} to a p^{t} of willows on the L. S.
S. 42 W.	½	M^{l} to a Sand on the L. point
S. 22. E.	2¼	to a p^{t} makeing out from the Larb^{d} S. passed the Timber L. S.
N. 78. W.	3	M^{s} to a p^{t} of willows on the L. S.
S. 68. W.	2½	M^{s} to a Grove of Cotton Trees in the bend L. S. (1)
N. 49. W.	4½	M^{s} to a p^{t} on the S. Side ops^{d} a Bluff passed a p^{t} at 1 M^{l} on S. S. some at 2½ on L. S.
N. 12° W.	3	M^{s} to a p^{t} on S. S. ops^{d} a Bluff
N. 46. E.	2¾	M^{s} to a Sand Island in the Bend to S. S. (Camped)
	20¼	

August 13th *Monday* 1804—

Set out this morning at Light the useal time and proceeded on under a gentle Breeze from the S. E.

N. 66° W.	2¾	Ms to a pt of Low willows on the S. S. a bar makeing out. passed [to] the Sd
N. 11° W.	5:¼	to a pt of Cotton Wood. in a Bend to the S. S. passed over the pt of a Sand bar from L. S.
S. 44° W.	2½	to a pt on the S. S. opposit to the place Mr Ja: McKey had a tradeing house in 95. & 96. & named it Fort Charles[1]
West	¾	of a mile to the Pt of willow Isd on the S. point
N. 50° W.	1	Ml to a point of high wood below the mouth of a Beayou comunicating with a Pond L. S.
N. 20° E.	2¼	Mls to a pt of Willows on the L. S. passed a Creek at 1½ Mls on which the Mahar village is Situated[2] a Sand bar on S. S. & one on L. S. haveing passed the Willow Isd
Nortn	¼	Ml on the Sand bar L. S.
N. 69 W.	2½	Ms to the upper Point of Some Cottonwood trees in a Bend to the L. S. opposit the lower pt of a large Island Situated on the S. S.
	17¼	

we formed a Camp on a Sand bar on the L. S. & Detached Sergt Ordeway Peter Crusatt, George Shannon. Werner & Carrn. [Carson?—Ed.] to the Mahar Village with a flag & Some Tobacco to envite the Nation to See & talk with us on tomorrow. we took some Luner observation this evening. the air Pleasant.

14th August Tuesday 1804—

a fine morning wind from the S. E. The men Sent to the Mahar Town last evining has not returned we Conclude to send a Spye to Know the Cause of their delay, at about 12 oClock the Party returned and informd us that they Could not find the Indians, nor any fresh Sign, those people have not returned from their Buffalow hunt. Those people haveing no houses no Corn or anything more than the graves of their ansesters to attach them to the old Village, Continue in purseute of the Buffalow longer than others who has greater attachments to their native village. The ravages of the Small Pox (which Swept off [*about 4 years ago*] 400 men & Womin & children in perpopotion) has reduced this nation not exceeding 300 men and left them to the insults of their weaker neighbours, which before was glad to be on friendly turms with them. I am told when this fatal malady was among them they Carried their franzey to verry extroadinary length, not only of burning their Village, but they put their *wives* & children to *Death* with a view of their all going together to some better Countrey. they burry their Dead on the top of high hills and rais Mounds on the top of them. The cause or way those people took the Small Pox is uncertain, the most Probable, from Some other nation by means of a warparty.

---

[1] See *ante*, p. 50.—Ed.

[2] A little south of Dakota City, north of the Omaha Indian Reservation. The party encamped nearly opposite the present Omadi, Neb.—Coues (*L. and C.*, i, p. 74).

August 15th, Wednesday, 1804.[1]
Camp three Miles N. E. of the Mahar Village

I went with ten men to a Creek Damed by the Beavers about half way to the Village, with Some small Willows & Bark we made a Drag and hauled up the Creek, and Cought 318 fish of different kind i. e. Pike, Bass, Salmon, perch, red horse, small cat, and a kind of perch Called Silver fish, on the Ohio. I cought a Srimp prosisely of Shape Size & flavour of those about N. Orleans & the lower part of the Mississippi in this Creek which is only the pass or Streight from [one — Ed.] Beaver Pond to another, is Crouded with large Musstles verry fat, Ducks, Plover of different kinds are on those Ponds as well as on the river. in my absence Capt. Lewis Sent Mr. Durione the Souix interpeter & three men to examine a fire which threw up an emence Smoke from the Praries on the NE. Side of the River and at no great distance from Camp. the Object of this party was to find Some Bands of Seouex which the intptr. thought was near the Smoke and get them to come in. in the evening this Party returned and informed, that the fire arose from Some trees which had been left burning by a small party of Seoux, who had passed [*by that place*] Several Days. the wind Setting from that point, blew the Smoke from that p^t over our Camp. our party all in health and Sperrits. The men Sent to the Ottoes & in pursute of the Deserter Reed has not yet returned or joined our party.

---

[1] With this entry Codex B commences, continuing until Oct. 3, 1804. — Ed.

16th August Thursday 1804.
Fishing Camp 3 M^s N. E. of the Mahars.

a verry cool morning the wind as useal from the NW. Cap. Lewis took 12 men and went to the Pond & Creek between Camp and the old village and Cought upwards of 800 fine fish, 79 Pike, 8 salmon resembling Trout [8 *fish resemb'g Salmon Trout*] 1 Rock, 1 flat Back, 127 Buffalow & red horse 4 Bass & 490 Cats, with many Small Silver fish. (*& Srimp*) I had a Mast made and fixed to the Boat to day, the Party Sent to the ottoes not yet joined us. the wind shifted around to the S. E. everry evening a Breeze rises which blows off the Musquitors & cools the atmispeere.

17th August Friday 1804. —

a fine morning the wind from the S. E. I collected a grass much resembling Wheet in its grouth the grain like Rye, also Some resembling Rye & Barly. a kind of Timothey, the Seed of which branches from the main Stalk & is more like a flax Seed than that of Timothey.

at 6 oClock this evening *Labieche* one of the Party sent to the Ottoes joined, and informed that the Party was behind with one of the Deserters M. B. Reed and the 3 principal Chiefs of the Nations. La Liberty they cought but he decived them and got away. the object of those Chiefs comeing forward is to make a peace with the Mahars thro: us. as the Mahars are not at home this great Object cannot be accomplished at this time. Set the Praries on fire to bring the Mahars & Soues if any were near, this being the useal Signal.

a cool evening two Beaver cought to day.

18th August, Sat'day 1804.—

a fine morning. Wind from the S. E. in the after part of the Day the Party with the Indians arrivd we meet them under a Shade near the Boat and after a Short talk we gave them Provisions to eat & proceeded to the trial of Reed, he confessed that he "Deserted & stold a public Rifle Shot-pouch Powder & Ball" and requested we would be as favourable with him as we Could consistantly with our Oathes—which we were and only Sentenced him to run the Gantlet four times through the Party & that each man with 9 Swichies Should punish him and for him not to be considered in future as one of the Party. The three principal Chiefs petitioned for Pardin for this man after we explained the injurey such men could doe them by false representations, & explan'g the Customs of our Countrey they were all Satisfied with the propriety of the Sentence & was Witness to the punishment. after which we had Some talk with the Chiefs about the orrigan of the war between them & the Mahars &c &c. it Commenced in this way in two of the Misouries Tribes resideing with the Ottoes went to the Mahars to steel horses, the Killed them both which was a cause of revenge on the part of the Missouris & Ottoes, they also brought war on themselves Nearly in the same way with the Pania Loups, and they are greatly in fear of a just revenge from the Panies for takeing their Corn from the Pania Towns in their absence hunting this Summer. Cap L. Birth day the evening was closed with an extra gill of whiskey and a Dance untill 11 oClock.

19th August Sunday 1804.—

a fine morning wind from the S. E. prepared a Small Present for the Chiefs and Warriors present. the main chief Brackfast with us & beged for a Sun glass, those People are all naked, Covered only with Breech Clouts Blankets or Buffalow Roabes, the flesh Side Painted of Different colours and figures. At 10 oClock we assembled the Chiefs and warriors 9 in number under an owning, and Cap. Lewis [we] explaind the Speech Sent to the Nation from the Council Bluffs by Mr Faufon. The 3 Chiefs and all the men or warriors made short Speeches approving the advice & Council their great father had Sent them, and concluded by giving themselves some Credit for their acts.

We then brought out the presents and exchanged the *Big horses* Meadel and gave him one equal to the one Sent to the Little Thief & gave all Some Small articles & 8 Carrots of Tobacco, we gave one Small Meadel to one of the Chiefs and a Sertificate to the others of their good intentions.

Names.	
The Little Thief	Gr^d Chiefs I have mentioned before.
The Big Horse	
Crows Head (or)	*Kar Ka paha* – Missory
Black Cat (or)	*Ne na Sa wa* – do
Iron Eyes (or)	*Sar na no no* – Ottoe
Big Ax[1] (or)	*Nee Swar Unja* – do
Big Blue Eyes –	*Star gea Hun ja* do
Brave Man (or)	*War sar Sha Co*

one of those Indians after receiving his Certificate deliv^d it again to me the *Big blue eyes* the Chief petitioned for the Ctft. again,[2] we would not give the Cert^f., but rebuked them verry roughly for haveing in object goods and not peace with their neighbours. this language they did not like at first, but at length all petitioned for us to give back the Certificate to the Big blue eyes he came forward and made a plausible excuse, I then gave the Certificate [to] the Great Chief to bestow it to the most Worthy, they gave it to him, we then gave them a Dram and broke up the Council, the Chiefs requested we would not leave them this evening we determined to Set out early in the morning we Showed them many Curiosities and the air gun which they were much astonished at. those people beged much for Whiskey. Serjeant Floyd is taken verry bad all at once with a Biliose Chorlick we attempt to relieve him without success as yet, he gets worst and we are much allarmed at his Situation, all [give] attention to him.

---

[1] In Biddle, "Big Ox." — Ed.

[2] The captains carried with them a large number of "Indian commissions," or certificates, on printed blanks measuring 7½ × 12¼ inches, which they would fill out with the chiefs' names. These read as follows:

THOMAS JEFFERSON, PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

From the powers vested in us and by the above authority: To all who shall see these presents, Greeting:

Know ye, that from the special confidence reposed by us in the sincere and unalterable attachment of chief of the Nation to the United States, as also from the abundant proofs given by him of his amicable disposition to cultivate peace, harmony, and good neighbourhood with the said States, and the citizens of the same; we do by the authority vested in us, require and charge, all citizens of the United States, all Indian Nations, in treaty with the same, and all other persons whomsoever, to acknowledge, and treat the said and his in the most friendly manner, declaring him to be the friend and ally of the said States: the government of which will at all times be extended to their protection, so long as they do acknowledge the authority of the same.

Having signed with our hands and affixed our seals
this day of 180

20th *August Monday* 1804. —

Sergeant Floyd much weaker and no better. Made Mr. Faufonn the interpter a fiew presents, and the Indians a Canister of Whiskey We Set out under a gentle breeze from the S. E. and proceeded on verry well. Serjeant Floyd as bad as he can be no pulse & nothing will Stay a moment on his Stomach or bowels. Passed two Islands on the S. S. and at the first Bluff on the S. S. Serj. Floyd Died with a great deal of Composure, before his death he Said to me, "I am going away" I want you to write me a letter." We buried him on the top of the bluff ½ Mile below a Small river to which we Gave his name, he was buried with the Honors of War much lamented, a Seeder post with the (1) Name Sergt. C. Floyd died here 20th of august 1804 was fixed at the head of his grave.[1] This Man at all times gave us proofs of his firmness and Determined resolution to doe Service to his Countrey and honor to himself after paying all the honor to our Decesed brother we camped in the Mouth of floyds River about 30 yards wide, a butifull evening.

---

[1] The journal kept by Sergeant Floyd (which will be published in full in the present work) ends abruptly on August 18. He was buried at a spot which is now in the southern part of Sioux City, Ia. The inroads of the Missouri River having partly washed away Floyd's grave, his remains were reburied (May 28, 1857) in a safer place, some 200 yards back of the original grave; and on Aug. 20, 1895, the spot was marked with a slab. A monumental shaft to his memory was erected May 30, 1901. See *Reports* of Floyd Memorial Association (Sioux City, 1897, 1901). — Ed.

Course Dist: & reff: 20th Augt

N. 56° W.	3	Ms to pt of a Willow Isd S. S.
North	¾	ml on the left of the Island
N. 72. E.	2¼	Ml to the upr pt of the Isd
N. 18. E.	2½	Ms to the lower pt of an Isd on the S. S. passed Sand bars.
North	3½	Ms to Sj. Floyds Bluff on S. S. the 1st above Aiaways Village a fiew miles above Platt R.
	1	To the Mo. of Floyds River on S. S. and camped.
	13	

21st August Tuesday 1804. —

We Set out verry early this morning and proceeded on under a gentle Breeze from the S. E. passed Willow Creek Small on the S. S. below a Bluff of about 170 feet high and one ½ Mls above Floyds River at 1½ Miles higher & above the Bluff passed the *Soues River* S. S. this River is about the Size of Grand river and as Mr Durrien our Soues intptr says "is navagable to the falls 70 or 80 Leagues and above these falls Still further, those falls are 20 feet or there abouts and has two princepal pitches, and heads with the St peters [now Minnesota River—Ed.] passing the head of the Demoin, on the right below the falls a Creek coms in which passes thro Clifts of red rock which the Indians make pipes of,[1] and when the different "nations meet at those quaries all is piece." [*a sort of asylum for all nations, no fightg there*] passed a place in a Prarie on the L. S. where the Mahars had a Village formerly. the Countrey above the Platt R. has a great Similarity. Campd on the L. Side, Clouds appear to rise in the West & threten wind. I found a verry excellent froot resembling the read Current, the Srub on which it grows resembles *Privey* & about the Common hight of a wild plumb.

---

[1] The celebrated "Red Pipestone Quarry," in Pipestone County, S. W. Minnesota; it was first described by George Catlin, who visited it in 1836; the stone (a red quartzite) was named in honor of him, "catlinite." See his *N. Amer. Inds.*, ii, pp. 160, 164–177, 201–206; and *Minn. Geol. Survey Rep.*, 1877, pp. 97–109. The stone is even yet worked, although in crude fashion, by the Sioux Indians. —Ed.

Course Distance & ref^{t} 21st Aug^{t}

S. 82° E.	3	m^{ls} to the Upper part of a Bluff below the Soues river on S. S. passed Willow Creek at 1½ M^{s} S. S.
South	1¼	M^{s} to Lower p^{t} of a Willow Island in the Midle of the River one on S. S. ops^{d}.
S. 48. W.	1¾	m^{ls} to the head of the Isl^{d} passed Several Sand bars dividing the Current, Wind hard
West	2	M^{s} to a high wood on the L. S. pased a large Sand bar from the S. S. *River Wide.*
N. 36. W.	4	M^{ls} to a Beyau in a bend to the L. S. above where the Mahars once had a Village a Sand bar in the Middle & S. S.
N. 18. E.	2	M^{ls} to a p^{t} of Willows on the L. S. wind hard from S. E.
N. 22° W.	¾	M^{ls} on the L. S. ops^{d} to which the Soues River is within 2 miles on the S. S.
S. 50. W.	¼	M^{l} on the L. S.
S. 28. W.	2	M^{ls} to a Willow p^{t} on the S. S,
S. 78 W.	1½	m^{ls} on the Sand bar on S. S.
N. 12. W.	2	M^{ls} to a Willow p^{t} on the L. S. passed a Sand bar.
S. 60. W.	1¾	m^{s} on the Sand bar on the L. Side.
South	2½	miles to Some low Willows on the S. S.
	24¾	

The two men Sent with the horses has not joined us as yet.

22nd August Friday 1804. —

Set out early wind from the South at three miles we landed at a Bluff where the two men Sent with the horses were waiting with two Deer, by examonation this (1) Bluff Contained Alum, Copperas, Cobalt, Pyrites; a Alum Rock Soft & Sand Stone. Capt. Lewis in proveing the quality of those minerals was Near poisoning himself by the fumes & tast of the *Cobalt* which had the appearance of Soft Isonglass. Copperas & alum is verry pisen,[1] Above this Bluff a Small

---

[1] Biddle here says (i, p. 50): "The appearance of these mineral substances enabled us to account for disorders of the stomach with which the party had been affected since they left the river Sioux;" the men had used the water of the Missouri, on which floated a scum proceeding from these rocks. By dipping from below, and avoiding this scum, they obtained pure water, and their maladies soon ceased. — ED.

Creek coms in from the L. S. passing under the Clift for Several Miles, this Creek I Call Roloje a name I learned last night is M[ ]s (2) Seven Miles above is a Clift of Allom Stone of a Dark Brown Col^{r} Containing also incrusted in the crevices & shelves of the rock great qt^{s} of Cobalt, Semented Shels & a red earth. from this the (3) river bends to the East and is within 3 or 4 miles of the River Soues at the place where that river Coms from the high land into the Low Prairie & passes under the foot of those Hills to its Mouth.

Capt. Lewis took a Dost of Salts to work off the effects of the arsenic, we camped on the S. S.[1] Sailed the greater part of this day with a hard wind from the S. E. Great deel of Elk Sign, and great appearance of wind from the N. W.

Course Distance & ref^{r} 22nd Aug^{t}

S. 47°	W.	1¼	M^{ls} on the S. point
West		1¼	M^{ls} to the lower point of a Bluff on the L. S. (1)
N. 18.	W.	2½	M^{ls} to a p^{t} of high wood on the L. S. pass^{d} a Creek (2)
N. 56.	W.	5½	M^{ls} to a Clift on the L. S. ops^{d} a p^{t} pass'd a Sand bar on both sides of the river (3)
N. 54.	E.	2	M^{ls} to a p^{t} of Sand on the L. S. ops^{d} the R. Soues is near the Missourie (4)
N. 48.	W.	6½	M^{ls} to a Tree in the Prarie on the S. S. ps^{d} a pt. of Sand on the S. S. 2 Sand bars in the middle of the river.
		19	

ordered a Vote for a Serjeant to chuse one of three which may be the highest number. the highest numbers are P. Gass had 19 votes, Bratten[2] & Gibson.

---

[1] Near Elk Point, Union Co., S. Dakota. — ED.

[2] For such information as can be obtained about William Bratton, see Wheeler, *On the Trail of Lewis and Clark* (N. Y., 1904), pp. 112–116. Bratton died in 1841; a monument over his grave at Waynetown, Ind., records his share in the Lewis and Clark expedition.

For biography of Sergeant Gass, see J. G. Jacob's *Life and Times of Patrick Gass* (Wellsburg, Va., 1859); Coues's compilation therefrom, in his *Lewis and Clark*, i, pp. xcix–cvi; and a sketch in *History of the Pan-Handle, West Va.* (Wheeling, 1879), pp. 345–349. — ED.

23rd *August Thursday* 1804.—

Set out this morning verry early the two men with the horses did not come up last night I walked on Shore & Killed a fat Buck. J. Fields Sent out to hunt Came to the Boat and informed that he had Killed a Buffalow in the plain a head. Cap. Lewis took 12 Men and had the buffalow brought to the boat in the next bend to the S. S. 2 Elk Swam the river, and was fired at from the boat R. Fields came up with the Horses and brought two Deer one Deer killed from the Boat. Several Prarie Wolves Seen to day Saw Elk Standing on the Sand bar. The Wind blew hard [*west*] and raised the Sands off the bar in Such Clouds that we Could Scercely [*see*] this Sand being fine and verry light Stuck to everry thing it touched, and in the Plain for a half a mile the distance I was out, every Spire of Grass was covered with the Sand or Durt.

We camped on the L. S. above a Sand Island, one Beaver Cought.

Course Distance & refts. Augt. 23rd

West	4	Mls. to a Small run between two Bluffs of Yellow & Blue Earth. [*L. S.*]
North	3¼	Mls. to Some timber in a bend to the S. S. passd. a Willow Island, a Sand Isd opsd psd a pt. of High Land S. S. at ¼ of Ml.
S. 48°. W.	3	Mls. to a pt. of Willows on the S. S. having passd the Sand bar on the L. point.

24th *August Friday* 1804.—

Some rain last night, a Continuation this morning, we Set out at the useal time and proceeded on the Course of last night, to the (1) Commencement of a blue Clay Bluff of 180 or 190 feet high on the L. S. Those Bluffs appear to have been laterly on fire, and at this time is too hot for a man to bear his hand in the earth at any Debth,[1] Great appearance of

---

[1] The heated bluffs here mentioned are ascribed by Coues (*L. and C.*, i, p. 84) to volcanic action; they were called by the French voyageurs *côtes brulées*, or "burnt

Coal, an emence quantity of *Cobalt* or a Cristolised Substance which answers its description is on the face of the Bluff. Great quantities of a kind of berry resembling a current except double the Size and Grows on a bush like a Privey, and the Size of a Damsen deliciously flavoured and makes delitefull Tarts, this froot is now ripe,[1] I took my Servent and a french boy and Walked on Shore, Killed Two Buck Elks and a fawn, and intersepted the Boat, and had all the Meat butchered and in by Sun Set at which time it began to rain and rained hard, Cap. Lewis & My self walk out & got verry wet, a Cloudy rainey night In my absence the Boat Passed a Small (2) River Called by the Indians White Stone River this river is about 30 yards wide and runs thro: a Plain or Prarie in its whole Course In a northerley derection from the Mouth of this Creek in an emence Plain a high Hill is Situated, and appears of a Conic form, and by the different nations of Indians in this quarter is Suppose to be the residence of Deavels. that they are in human form with remarkable large heads, and about 18 Inches high, that they are very watchfull and are arm'd with Sharp arrows with which they Can Kill at a great distance; they are Said to kill all persons who are So hardy as to attempt to approach the hill; they State that tradition informs them that many Indians have Suffered by those little people, and among others three *Mahar* Men fell a sacrefise to their murceless fury not many Years Sence. So Much do the Maha, Soues, Ottoes and other neighbouring nations believe this fable, that no Consideration is Suffecient to induce them to approach the hill.

---

bluffs." Brackenridge, who was at this place in 1811, ascribes this phenomenon to the burning of coal (*Louisiana*, pp. 232, 233). — Ed.

At Ionia, Dixon County, is found the Nebraska "volcano" or "burning hill." Though declining in activity, this hill was once an object of considerable interest, especially after freshets in the Missouri River. Though not visited personally, the smoking or steaming seems to be due to the decomposition of pyrite in the damp shales. It seems that sufficient chemical heat is produced to make the hill-top steam and even to fuse some of the sand and clay. It bears no relation whatever to a volcano. — Erwin H. Barbour, geologist of University of Nebraska.

[1] Buffalo-berry, or beef-suet tree (Fr. *graisse de bœuf*), *Shepherdia argentea*. — Ed.

Course Distance & ref^{r}. 24 Aug^{t}.

S. 48°. W.	2¼	M^{ls}. to the Commencement of a Blue Clay Bluff of 180 or 190 feet high on the L. S.
West	1¾	M^{ls}. under the Bluff pass^{d} two Small runs from the Bluff, those Bluffs have been latterly on fire & is yet verry hot. (1)
North	2	M^{ls}. to a point on L. S.
N. 10° E.	¼	M^{ls}. to an object in the bend on S. S. an extensive Sand bar on the L. S.
N. 45°. W.	1½	M^{ls}. to the lower point of a small Willow Island.
West	1¼	M^{l}. to the upper point of a Sand bar Connected with the Island [*passed the Creek.* (2)]
S. 40. W.	2½	M^{ls}. to a Willow p^{t}. on the S. S.
	11½	

CHAPTER III

FROM THE VERMILION TO TETON RIVER

Clark's Journal, August 25–September 24, 1804
Entries and Orders by Lewis, August 26, 28, and September 16, 17

[Clark:]

25th August Satturday 1804.—

A CLOUDY morning Capt. Lewis & Myself concluded to go and See the Mound which was Viewed with Such turror by all the different Nations in this quarter, we Selected Shields; J. Fields, W. Bratten, Sergt. Ordway, J. Coller, Carr, and Corpl. Worbington & Frasure, also G. Drewyer and droped down to the Mouth of White Stone River, where we left the Perogue with two men and at 200 yards we assended a riseing ground of about Sixty feet, from the top of this High land the Countrey is leavel & open as far as can be Seen, except Some few rises at a great Distance, and the *Mound* which the Indians Call Mountain of *little people or Spirits*, this Mound appears of a conic form & is N. 20°. W. from the mouth of the Creek,[1] we left the river at 8 oClock, at 4 miles we Crossed the Creek 23 yards wide in an extensive Valley and Contin[u]ed on at two miles further our Dog was so Heeted and fatigued we was obliged [to] Send him back to the Creek, at 12 oClock we arrived at the hill Capt. Lewis much fatigued from heat the day it being verry hot & he being in a debilitated State from the Precautions he was obliged to take to prevent the effects of the Cobalt, & Minl Substance which had like to have poisoned him two days ago, his want of water, and Several of the men complaining of Great thirst, determined us to make for the first water which was the Creek in a bend N. E. from the Mound, about 3 miles. after a Delay of about 1 hour & a half to recrut our party we set out on our return down the Creek thro: the bottom of about 1 mile in width, crossed the creek 3 times to the place we first struck it, where we gathered some delisious froot such as Grapes, Plumbs, & Blue Currents after a Delay of an hour we set out on our back trail & arrived at the Perogue at Sun set. We proceeded on to the Place we Camp^{d} last night and Stayed all night.

---

[1] Known locally, and named on some maps, as Spirit Mound. For description of its more recent appearance, see *Amer. Antiquarian*, Sept. 1891, p. 289.—ED.

This Mound is Situated on an elivated plain in a leavel and extensive prarie, bearing N. 20° W. from the Mouth of White Stone Creek *nine* miles, the base of the Mound is a regular parallelagram the long Side of which is about 300 yards in length the Shorter 60 or 70 yards. from the longer Side of the Base it rises from the North & South with a Steep assent to the hight of 65 or 70 feet, leaveing a leavel Plain on the top of 12 feet in width & 90 in length. The North & South part of this Mound is join[ed] by two regular rises, each in Oval forms of half its hight, forming three regular rises from the Plain the assent of each elivated part is as Suden as the principal mound at the narrower sides of its Base.

The reagular form of this hill would in Some measure justify a belief that it owed its orrigin to the hand of man; but as the earth and loos pebbles and other substances of which it was Composed, bore an exact resemblance to the Steep Ground which border on the Creek in its neighbourhood we concluded it was most probably the production of nature.

The only remarkable Charactoristic of this hill admiting it to be a natural production is that it is insulated or Seperated a considerable distance from any other, which is verry unusial in the natural order or disposition of the hills.

The Surrounding Plains is open Void of Timber and leavel to a great extent, hence the wind from whatever quarter it may blow, drives with unusial force over the naked Plains and against this hill; the insects of various kinds are thus involuntaryly driven to the Mound by the force of the wind, or fly to its Leeward Side for Shelter; the Small Birds whoes food they are, Consequently resort in great numbers to this place in

Surch of them; Perticularly the Small brown Martin of which we saw a vast number hovering on the Leward Side of the hill, when we approached it in the act of catching those insects; they were so gentle that they did not quit the place untill we had arriv^d within a fiew feet of them.

One evidence which the Ind^s give for believeing this place to be the residence of Some unusial Sperits is that they frequently discover a large assemblage of Birds about this Mound [this] is in my opinion a Sufficent proof to produce in the Savage Mind a Confident belief of all the properties which they ascribe [to] it.

from the top of this Mound we beheld a most butifull landscape; Numerous herds of buffalow were Seen feeding in various directions; the Plain to North N. W. & N. E. extends without interuption as far as Can be seen.

From the Mound to the Mouth of Stone River is S. 20° E. 9 Miles. to the woods near the mouth of River Jacque is West. to the Highland near the mouth of Soues River is S. 70° E. to the highland opposit side or near the Maha Town is S. 45 E.

Some high lands to be seen from the Mound at a Great distance to the N. E. some nearer to the N. W. No woods except on the Missourie Points.

if all the timber which is on the Stone Creek was on 100 acres it would not be thickly timbered, the Soil of those Plains are delightfull.

Great numbers of Birds are seen in those Plains, Such as black bird, ren, [*wren*] or Prarie burd, a kind of larke about the sise of a Partridge with a Short tail, &c., &c.,

25th Aug^t —

the Boat under the Com^d of Serj^t Pryor proceeded on in our absence, (after jurking the Elk I Killed yesterday) Six Miles and Camped on the Larboard Side R. Fields brought in five Deer, George Shannon Killed an Elk Buck Som rain this evening.

We Set the Praries on fire as a signal for the Soues to Come to the River.

Course Dists & Refrs Augt 25th

S. 72° W.	1	Ml on the pt on S. S. opsd a Bluff of Blue Clay which is on the L. S.
West	½	Ml on the pt S. S. opsd the Bluff.
N. 22° E.	3	Mls to a pt of high Willows on the L. S. opsd a Sand Island passed a Sand bar on the L. S.
N. 40° W.	1	Ml on the L. S. opsd Sand Island
S. 86° W.	½	ml on the L. S. to a pt of Willows the camp
	6	

26th August Sunday 1804.—

(Joined the Boat at 9 oClock A.M.) after jurking the meat Killed yesterday and prepareing the Elk Skins for a Toe Roape, we Set out Leaveing Drewyer & Shannon to hunt the horses which was lost with directions to follow us keeping on the high lands.

proceeded on passed a clift of White and Blue or Dark Earth of 2 miles in extent on the L. S. and camped on a Sand bar opposed the old village Called *Pitite Arc.* a Small Creek falls into the river 15 yds wide below the Village on the Same Side L. S.[1] this Village was built by a Indian Chief of the Maha nation by the name of Petite Arc (or little Bow) displeasd with the Great Chief of that nation (Black Bird) Seperated with 200 men and built a village at this place after his death the two Villages joined, apt Pat. Gass a Sergt vice Floyd Deceased.

Great qts of Grapes, Plumbs of three Kinds, 2 yellow and large one of which is long and a 3rd kind round & red all well flavored, perticularly the yellow sort.

Course Distance & refrs Augt 26th

S. 66° W.	2	Mls to a Sand bar Makeing out from the S. S.
N. 82 W.	7	Mls to a pt of Willows on the S. S. passed an Island on S. S. and large Sand bar on both Sides of the river and Camped opposit the mouth of Arc Creek — the river below wide.
	9	

---

[1] Now Bow Creek, Cedar Co., Nebr. — Ed.

[Orderly Book; Lewis:] *Orders August 26th. 1804.*

The commanding officers have thought proper to appoint Patric Gass, a Sergeant in *the corps of volunteers for North Western Discovery;* he is therefore to be obeyed and respected accordingly.

Sergt. Gass is directed to take charge of the late Sergt. Floyd's mess, and immediately to enter on the discharge of such other duties, as have by their previous orders been prescribed for the government of the Sergeants of this corps.

The Commanding officers have every reason to hope from the previous faithfull services of Sergt. Gass, that this expression of their approbation will be still further confirmed by his vigilent attention in future to his duties as a Sergeant. the Commanding officers are still further confirmed in the high opinion they had previously formed of the capacity, deligence and integrety of Sergt. Gass, from the wish expressed by a large majority of his comrades for his appointment as Sergeant.

MERIWETHER LEWIS,
Capt. 1st. U. S. Regt. Infty.
Wm. CLARK Cpt &c.

[Clark:] *27th August Monday 1804.* —

This morning. the Star calld the morning Star much larger than Common, G. Drewyer came up and informed that he could neither find Shannon nor horses, we Sent Shields & J Fields, back to hunt Shannon & the horses, with derections to keep on the Hills to the Grand Calumet above on River *Kacure* (*quecure*)[1]

We Set Sail under a gentle Breeze from the S. E. at 7 miles passed a *White* Clay Marl or Chalk Bluff under this Bluff [which] is extensive I discovered large Stone much like lime incrusted with a clear substance which I believe to be *Cobalt,* also Ore is embeded in the Dark earth, resembling Slate [but] much Softer. above this Bluff we had the Prarie

---

[1] A corruption of *Rivière qui Court,* the French name of the Niobrara (or Rapid) River. — ED.

Set on fire to let the Soues See that we were on the river, and as a Signal for them to Come to it.

At 2 oClock passed the Mouth of *River Jacque* [*or Yeankton,*][1] one Indian at the mouth of this river Swam to the Perogue, we landed and two others Came to us, those Ind^s informed that a large Camp of Soues, were on R. Jacque near the mouth. We sent Serj^t Pryor & a Frenchman with M^r Durion, the Soues interpeter to the Camp with directions to invite the principal Chiefs to Council with us at a Bluff above Called the Calumet. two of those Indians accompanied them and the third continued in the Boat Showing an inclination to Continuè, this boy is a Mahar, and inform that his nation, were gone to the Parnies [*Panies*] to make a peace with that nation.

We proceeded on about one and a half miles and inCamped on a bar makeing out from the S. S. the wind blew hard from the South. A cool and Pleasent evening, The river has fallen verry slowly and is now low.

Course Dis^t & Refr^e August 27.

N. 73° W.	7	Miles to the upper part of a Calx or Chalk Bluff on the L. S. haveing pass^d a large Sand bar on the L. S. and two on the S. S. also some Small Bars in the R.
North	3	M^{ls} to a tree in a bend to the S. S. pass 2 Sand bars in the river.
West	2½	Ml^s to the Mouth of River Jacque on the S. S. two large Sand bars on the L. S.
S. 80° W.	1½	M^{ls} on the Side of a large Mud bar Makeing out above the River Jacque or Yeankton.
	14	

This river about 85 or 90 yds. Wide and is navagable for Perogues a Great distance, it heads with the S^t Peters, of the Mississippi & the *red River* which runs into Lake Winipeck and Hudsons Bay.

---

[1] The James (or Dakota) River. — Ed.

28th *August Tuesday* 1804. —

Set out under a Stiff Breeze from the South and proceeded on pass^{d} a Willow Island at 2 Miles several Sand bars, the [river] Wide & Shallow at 4 miles passed a Short White Bluff of about 70 or 80 feet high, below this Bluff the Prarie rises gradually from the water back to the Hight of the Bluff which is on the Starboard Side here the Indian who was in the boat returned to the Soues [*Sieoue*] Camp on the R Jacque. Cap^{t} Lewis & my Self much indisposed owing to Some cause for which we cannot account one of the Perogues run a Snag thro her and was near Sinking in the opinions of the Crew. we came too below the *Calumet Bluff* and formed a Camp in a Butifull Plain near the foot of the high land which rises with a gradual assent near this Bluff[1] I observe more timber in the Valeys & on the Points than useal. The Perogue which was injured I had unloaded and the Loading put into the other Perogue which we intended to Send back & changed the Crew after examoning her & finding that She was unfit for service determined to Send her back by the party Some load which was in the Perogue much Injur'd.

The wind blew hard this afternoon from the South. J. Shields & J. Fields who was Sent back to look for Shannon and the Horses joined us and informed that Shannon had the horses ahead and that they Could not overtake him This man not being a first rate Hunter, we deturmined to Send one man in pursute of him with some Provisions.

Course Dis: & Reffr^{s} 28th Aug^{t} 1804.

S. 76. W.	4½	M^{ls} to the lower part of a Bluff of a Brownish red on S. S. pass^{d} Sev^{l} Sand bars.
S. 60° W.	4	M^{l} to the lower part of the Calumet Bluff L. S. passed a p^{t} on east Side and Several Sand bars.
	8½	

---

[1] In Knox Co., Nebr., opposite Lower Buffalo Island. — COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 90). Nearly opposite Yankton, a little below. — E. E. BLACKMAN

[Orderly Book; Lewis:] *Orders, August 28th 1804*

The commanding officers direct that the two messes who form the crews of the perogues shall scelect each one man from their mess for the purpose of cooking, and that these cooks as well as those previously appointed to the messes of the Barge crew, shall in future be exempted from mounting guard, or any detail for that duty; they are therefore no longer to be held on the royaster.

M. Lewis Capt.
1st. U. S. Regt. Infty.
Wm Clark Cpt. &c

[Clark:] *29th August Wednesday 1804.* —

Some rain last night & this morning, Sent on Colter with Provisions in pursute of Shannon, had a Toe roap made of Elk Skin, I am much engaged riteing. at 4 oClock P. M. Sergt. Pryor & Mr. Dorion with 5 Cheifs and about 70 men & boys arrived on the opposit Side we Sent over a Perogue & Mr. Dorrion & his Son who was tradeing with the Indians came over with Serjt. Pryor, and informed us that the Chiefs were there we sent Serjt. Pryor & young Mr. Dorion[1] with Som Tobacco, Corn and a few Kittles for them to Cook in, with directions to inform the Chiefs that we would Speek to them tomorrow.

Those Indians brought with them for their own use 2 Elk & 6 Deer which the young men Killed on the way from their Camp 12 Miles distant.

Serjt. Pryor informs me that when [they] came near the Indian Camp they were met by men with a Buffalow roabe to carry them, Mr. Dorion informed they were not the owners of the Boats & did not wish to be carried" the Scioues Camps are handsom of a Conic form Covered with Buffalow Roabs Painted different colours and all compact & handsomly arranged, Covered all round an open part in the Centre for the fire, with Buffalow roabs, each Lodg has a place for

---

[1] The younger Dorion was afterward slain on the headwaters of the Columbia, while trapping for the unfortunate Astoria expedition. — J. N. Baskett.

Cooking detached, the lodges contain from 10 to 15 persons. a Fat Dog was presented as a mark of their Great respect for the party of which they partook hartily and thought it good and well flavored.

The River Jacque is Deep & is navagable for Perogues a long distance up at the Mouth it is Shallow & narrow but above it is 80 or 90 yards Wide passing thro: rich Praries with but little timber this river passes the Souix River and heads with the St. Peters and a branch of Red river which falls into Lake Winepeck to the North.

30th of August Thursday 1804.

a verry thick fog this morning after Prepareing Some presents for the Cheifs which we intended [to] make by giving Meadels, and finishing a Speech which we intended to give them, we sent Mr. Dorion in a Perogue for the Cheifs and Warriers to a Council under an Oak Tree near where we had a flag flying on a high flagstaff at 12 oClock we met and Cap. L. Delivered the Speach & then made one great Chiff by giving him a Meadel[1] & Some Cloathes, one 2d. Chief & three Third Chiefs in the same way, they recd. those things with the goods and tobacco with pleasure To the Grand Chief we gave a Flag and the parole (*certificate*) & Wampom with a hat & Chiefs. Coat,[2] We Smoked out of the pipe of peace, & the Chiefs retired to a Bourey [*Bowray*] made of bushes by their young men to Divide their presents and Smoke eate and Council Capt. Lewis & My self retired to dinner and consult about other measures. Mr. Daurion is much displeased that we did not invite him to dine with us (which he was Sorry for afterwards). The Souex is a Stout bold looking people, (the young men handsom) & well made, the greater part of them make use of Bows & arrows, Some fiew fusees I observe among them, notwith standing they live by the Bow and arrow, they do not Shoot So Well as the Nothern Indians the Warriers are Verry much deckerated with Paint Porcupine quils & feathers, large leagins and mockersons, all with buffalow roabs of Different Colours. the Squars wore Peticoats & a White Buffalow roabe with the black hare turned back over their necks and Sholders.

---

[1] For excellent description and illustrations of these medals (first-grade), see Wheeler, *On the Trail of Lewis and Clark* (N. Y., 1904), i, pp. 139, 140. Three of the medals distributed by Lewis and Clark have since been found — at the mouth of Wallawalla River, at Fort Clatsop, and at the mouth of Potlatch River, respectively. — Ed.

[2] Described by Biddle as "a richly laced uniform of the United States artillery corps, with a cocked hat and red feather." — Ed.

I will here remark a **SOCIETY**[1] which I had never before this day heard was in any nation of Indians, four of which is at this time present and all who remain of this Band. Those who become Members of this Society must be brave active young men who take a *Vow* never to give back let the danger be what it may, in War Parties they always go forward without screening themselves behind trees or anything else to this Vow they Strictly adhier dureing their Lives. an instance which happened not long sence, on a party in Crossing the R Missourie on the ice, a whole was in the ice imediately in their Course which might easily have been avoided by going around, the foremost man went on and was lost the others wer draged around by the party. in a battle with the Crow[2] [Kite] Indians who inhabit the *Cout Noir*[3] or black Mountain out of 22 of this Society 18 was Killed, the remaining four was draged off by their Party Those men are likely fellows the[y] Set together Camp & Dance together. This Society is in imitation of the Societies of the de Curbo or Crow (*De Corbeau, Kite*) Indians, whom they imitate.

---

[1] The "society" of warriors here described was one of the branches of "the military and social organization which existed among the Blackfeet, Sioux, Cheyenne, Kiowa, and probably all the prairie tribes except the Comanche in the South," according to Mooney (*U. S. Bur. Ethnol. Rep.*, 1892–93, pp. 986–989), who describes it as it existed among the Arapaho. — Ed.

[2] The Crows are a Hidatsa tribe, allied to the Minitaree, and originally located on the Yellowstone River; in later years, they have been gathered on the Crow reservation in Montana. — Ed.

[3] That is, *Côte Noir*. "Our authors use the term 'Black mountains' for any of the elevated country to the west of the Missouri in Northern Nebraska and both Dakotas." — Coues (*L. and C.*, i, p. 171).

31st of August, 1804—

after the Indians got their Brackfast the Chiefs met and arranged themselves in a row with elligent pipes of peace all pointing to our Seets, we Came foward and took our Seets, the Great Cheif *The Shake hand* rose and Spoke to some length aproving what we had said and promissing to pursue the advice.

Mar to ree 2d Cheif (White Crain) [*White Crane*] rose and made a Short Speech and refured to the great Chief *Par nar ne arpar be* (struck by the Pania) 3rd Chief rose and made a short speech *Ar ea we char che* (the half man) 3rd Chief rose & Spoke at some length much to the [same] purpose.[1] *The* other Cheif said but little One of the Warriers Spoke after all was don & promissed to Support the Cheifs, the[y] promisd to go and See their Great father in the Spring with Mr Dorion, and to do all things we had advised them to do. and all concluded by telling the distresses of their nation by not haveing traders, & wished us to take pity on them, the[y] wanted Powder Ball, & a *little Milk* [*rum; milk of great father means spirits.*]

last night the Indians Danced untill late in their Dances we *gave them* [*throw into them as is usual*] Som Knives Tobacco & bells & tape & Binding with which they wer Satisfied.[2]

We gave a Certificate to two Men of War, attendants on the Chief. gave to all the Chiefs a Carrot of Tobacco. had a talk with Mr. Dorion, who agreed to Stay and Collect the Chiefs from as Many Bands of Soux as he coud this fall & bring about a peace between the suoex and their neighbours &c. &c. &c.

After Dinner we gave Mr. Peter Dorion, a Commission to act with a flag and some Cloathes & Provisions & instructions to bring about a peace with the Seioux, Mahars, Panies, Poncaries, [Poncas — Ed.] Ottoes & Missouries, and to employ any trader to take Some of the Cheifs of each or as many of those nations as he Could Perticularly the Seuouex (*down to Wash*^{n}) I took a Vocabulary of the Suoux Language, and the Answer to a fiew quaries such a[s] refured to their Situation, Trade, Number, War, &c. &c. This Nation is Divided into 20 Tribes, possessing Seperate interests. Collectively they are noumerous say from 2 to 3000 men, their interests are so unconnected that Some bands are at war with Nations [with] which other bands are on the most friendly terms. This Great Nation who the French has given the Nickname of Suouex, Call themselves *Dar co tar* [Dakota — Ed.] their language is not peculiarly their own, they Speak a great number of words, which is the Same in every respect with the Maha, Poncarer, Osarge & Kanzas. which clearly proves that those nations at some period not more that a century or two past are of the Same nation. Those *Dar ca ter's* or Suoux inhabit or rove over the Countrey on the Red river of Lake Winipeck, S^t Peters & the West of the Missi[ss]-ippie, above Prarie De Cheen (*Prairie de Chien*) heads of River Demoin, and the Missouri and its waters on the N. Side for a great extent. they are only at peace with 8 nations, & agreeable to their Calculation at War with twenty odd. Their trade coms from the British, except this Band and one on Demoin who trade with the Traders of S^t Louis. The[y] furnish *Beaver*, Martain, Loups, (*Wolfs*) Pekon, (*pichou*) Bear & Deer Skins, and have about 40 Traders among them. The *Dar co tar* or Suouez rove & follow the Buffalow raise no corn or any thing else the woods & praries affording a suff[i]cency, the[y] eat Meat, and Substitute the Ground potato which grow in the Plains for bread.

---

[1] The names of these chiefs are thus given by Biddle: Weucha ("Shake Hand;" called by the French Le Liberateur); Mahtoree ("White Crane"); Pawnawneahpahbe ("Struck by the Pawnee"); and Aweawechache ("Half Man") — explained as probably originating in its owner's modesty, "who on being told of his exploits, would say, 'I am no warrior: I am only half a man.'" These speeches are given by Biddle in more detail. — Ed.

[2] The entry for Aug. 31 to this point is misplaced in the MS.; it is found on pp. 58–60 of Codex A, preceded by this memorandum: "omited to put in the 31st of August in Place." — Ed.

The Names of the Defferent Tribes or bands of the Sceoux, or Dar co tar Nation.

1st *Che cher ree Yankton* (or bois ruley) (*brulé*) new present inhabit the Suouex & Demoin Rivers and the Jacque. (*200 men.*)

2nd *Ho in de borto* (Poles) they live [rove] on the heads of Souex and Jacques Rivers.

3rd. *Me Ma car jo* (Make fence on the river) rove on the Country near the big bend of the Missouries.
4th. *Sou on*, *Te ton* (People of the Prarie) the[y] rove in the Plains N. of the Riv Missourie above this.
5th. *Wau pa coo tar* (Leaf Beds) the[y] live near the Prarie de Chain Near the Missippi.
6th. *Te Car ton* (or Village of Prarie) rove on the waters of the Mississippi above Prarie de Chain.
7th. *Ne Was tar ton* (big Waters Town) rove on the Missippi above the St. Peters River.
8th. *Wau pa tone* (Leaf Nation) live 10 Leagues up St. Peters River.
9th. *Cas Carba* (White Man) live 35 Leagues up St. Peters river.
10th. *Mi ca cu op si ba* (Cut bank) rove on the head of St. Peters.
11th. *Sou on* (———) rove on St. Peters river in the Praries.
12th. *Sou se toons* (———) live 40 Leages up the St. Peters river.

The names of the other bands neither of the Souex's interpters could inform me.[1] in the evening late we gave Mr. Dourion a bottle of whiskey, & he with the Cheifs & his Son Crossed the river and Camped on the Opposit bank. Soon after night a violent wind from the N. W. with rain the rain Continud the greater part of the night. The river a riseing a little.

September 1st. Satturday 1804—

Mr. Dourion lift his Kittle & Sent back for it &c. we Set out under a jentle Breeze from the S. (It rained half the last night) proceeded on pass the Bluffs compsd. of a yellowish red, & Brownish (*&*) White Clay which is a[s] hard as Chalk (*and much resembling it*) this Bluff is 170 or 180 feet high, here the High lands approach near the river on each Side, that on the S. S. not so high as that on the L. S. opposit the Bluffs is Situated a Large Island Covered with timber close under the L. S. above the Is^{d} the high land approach & form a Clift to the river on the S. S. this Clift is Called White Bear Clift one of those animals haveing been kiled in a whole in it.

---

[1] These tribes are enumerated very differently by Biddle, thus (i, pp. 61, 62): (1) Yanktons — 200 warriors; (2) Tetons of the burnt woods — 300 men; (3) Tetons Okandandas — 150 men; (4) Tetons Minnakenozzo — 250 men; (5) Tetons Saone — 300 men; (6) Yanktons of the Plains, or Big Devils — 500 men; (7) Wahpatone — 200 men; (8) Mindawarcarton — 300 men; (9) Wahpatoota, or Leaf Beds — 150 men; (10) Sistasoone — 200 men. Cf. Lewis's "Statistical View of the Indian Nations Inhabiting the Territory of Louisiana," accompanying Jefferson's *Message* to Congress, Feb. 19, 1806 (Washington, 1806); the substance of this "View" will be republished in the appendix to the present work. For modern scientific classification, see Powell's "Indian Linguistic Families," in *U. S. Bur. Ethnol. Rep.*, 1885–86, pp. 111–118. Cf. *Wis. Hist. Collections*, xvi, pp. 193, 194. — Ed.

1st of September Satturday 1804 —

Some hard wind and rain, cloudy all day, the river Wide & hills on each Side near the river, pass^{d} a large (1) Island which appeared to be composed of Sand, Covered with Cotton wood close under the S. S. we landed at the lower point of a large Island on the S. S. Called *bon homme* or *Good Man*, here Cap. Lewis & my self went out a Short distance on the L. S. to See a Beaver house, which was Said to be of Great hite & Situated in a Pond We could not find the house and returned after night Drewyer Killed an Elk, & a Beaver. numbers of Cat fish cought, those fish is so plenty that we catch them at any time and place in the river.

Course Dis^{ts} & refr^{s} 1st Sept.

N. 88 W.	4 M^{ls}	to a high point of on the S. S. haveing pass^{d} an Is^{d} (1) on the L. S. & Several Sand bars.
S. 75°. W.	2 M^{ls}	to the lower p^{t} of a large Island on S. S. passed a p^{t} on the L. S. and a Sand bar.
S. 68°. W.	4 M^{ls}	to a p^{t} on L. S. pass^{d} the upper p^{t} of the Isl^{d} SS. and some land with bows [boughs — Ed.] and evident marks of being made 24 [feet — Ed.] above water.
S. 80. W.	5 M^{ls}	to a tree at the lower p^{t} of Bon homme Island on S. S. haveing ps^{d} a p^{t} on the S. S. a Deep bend of Sand and Willows on L. S.
	16	

2nd September Sunday 1804. —

Set out early and proceeded on passed the Island and Landed on the S. S. above under a Yellow Clay bluff of 110 feet high, the wind blew verry hard ahead from the N. W. with Some rain and verry cold, G. Drewnyer R. Fields, Newman & howard Killed four fine Elk we had the meat all jurked and the Skins Dried to Cover the Perogue, on the Side of the Bluff I observed Bear Grass & Rhue, at Sun Set the wind luled and cleared up Cold, the high land on the L. S. is verry high, & uneaven, that on the S. S. from 80 to 120 foot & is leavel back but fiew Small Streams falling into the river.

Course Distance & reffs 2^{d} Sp^{t}

N. 75° W. 3 M^{ls} to the lower part of an antient fortification (1) in a bend to the L. S. this Course passed over a p^{t} of the Is^{d} & Sand.

N. 45 W. $\frac{1}{4}$ M^{l} on the L. p^{t} pass^{d} the head of the Island at ¾ of a mile ops^{d} a yellow bank S. S.

I went out and made a Survey of the antient Works which is Situated in a level Plain about 3 Miles from the hills which are high.

A Discreption of the Fortification

(1) Commenceing on the river opsi'd the Good Mans Island, first Course from the river is

S. 76° W. 96 yards thence

S. 84. W. 53 yards (at this angle a kind of angle or horn work)

N. 69 W. 300 yards to a high part, passing the gateway Covered by two half Circler works one back of the other lower than the main work the Gate forms a right angle projecting inward.

N. 32 W. 56 yards

N. 20 W. $\underline{73}$ yards. This part of the work appears to have [been] either double, or a covered way. from this Some irregular works appear to have been on mounds between this and the river, with a Deep round whole in the center of a Gorge formed by another angle. This part of the work is from 10 to 15 feet 8 Inches — the Mounds of Various hights the base of the work is from 75 to 105 feet, Steep inward and forming a kind of Glassee [Glacis] outwards.

578

N. 32° W. 96 yards to the Commencement of a Wall from 8 to 10 feet high this Course not on the Wall but thro to the commencement of another detached

N. 81° W. 1830 yards to the river & above where this bank Strikes the river is the remains of a Circular work.

in this Course at 533 yards a Deep Pond of 73 yards Diameter perfectly round is in the Course of the bank which is about 8 feet high, from this Pond the bank lowers gradually. a bank about the same hight runs near the river, and must have joined the main work at a part which is now washed into the river, this is also perfectly Streight and widens from the main work, as the river above has washed in its banks for a great distance I cannot form an Idear How those two long works joined. where they Strike the river above, they are about 1100 yds apart,

[Another Description.[1]]

N° 1 a Wall of the Antient Work Commencing on the bank of the River and running on a direct line S. 76° W. 96 yard, about 75 feet baice and 8 feet high.

2. Wall Continued. and Course S. 84° W. 53 yards from an angle formed by a slopeing decent N° 13. has the appearance of a hornwork of nearly the same hight of the former angle N° 1.

3. the Wall Continued on a Course N. 69° W. for 300 yards in which there is a low part of the wall which is Covered by two Circular and lower Walls one back of the other. 8. 8. which covers the gate way Completely, between those outer Walls 8. 8. there appears to have been a Covered way out of the Main work into the vacancy between those two Walls N° 9. This Wall No. 3 is 8 feet high and about 75 feet Bace.

4. a Wide part of the Wall which is about 12 feet high and 105 feet base on the Course N. 69° W. Continued from the gate way.

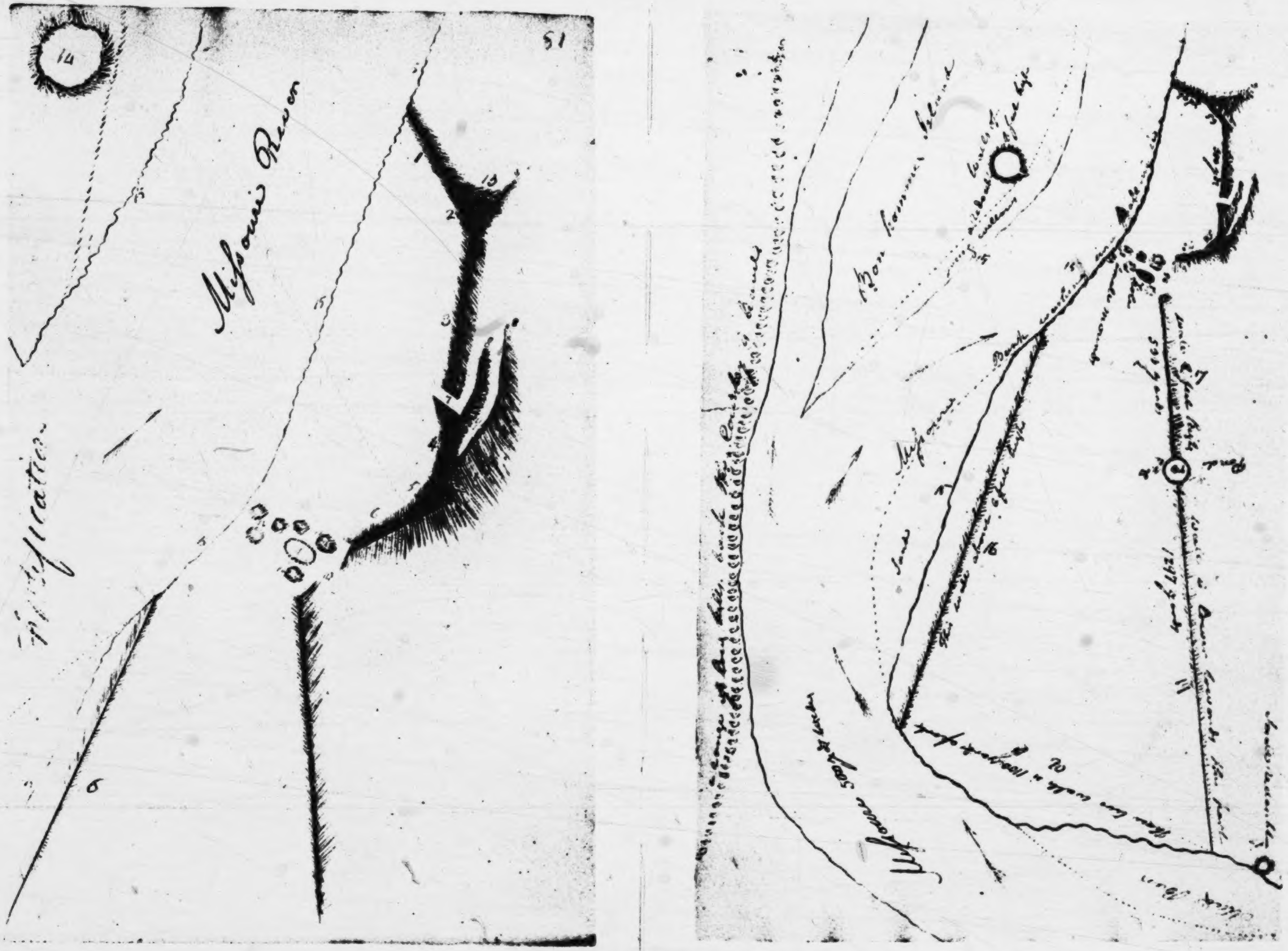
5. The Wall about 15 feet high and about 90 feet bace on a course N. 32° W. for 56 yds.

6. the Wall Continus on a Course N. 20° W. for 73 yards and ends abruptly near a whole near Several Mounds prismiscusly in the Gorge of the Work between this and the river.

10. N. 32° W. 96 yards across a low place much lower than the Common leavel of the plain to the Commencement of a wall of 8 feet high this is an open Space, from whence there is Some appearance of a Covered way to the Water.

---

[1] This matter is found in Codex N, pp. 81–85. — Ed.


51
14
Missouri River
Fortification
Bon homme Island
Missouri
Sand
Missouri

Ancient Fortification on the Missouri River,
sketch plan by Clark.

10. is a large hollow place much lower then the plain
12. 12. Several little Mounds in the gouge
7. the gateway to the Strong work.
14. a redoubt Situated on an Island which is makeing on the Side next to the Main Work, the wall forming this redoubt is 6 feet high
15. 15. The river banks at the waters edge
16. a thick Wall of about 6 feet high passing from the Rivers edge at the gouge of the Work perfectly streight to the bend of the River above and there ends abruptly where the Missouri is under mineing its banks on this Wall maney large Cotton Trees of two & 3 feet diameter, the Bank passes thro' a wood in its whole Course
N° 17. 19. a Streight wall of 1830 yard extending from the Gouge of the strong work on a Course N. 81° W. This wall is 8 feet high to a round pon (N° 18) from then it becoms lower and strikes the Missouri at a place where that river has the ap^{lc}: [appearance] of haveing incroached on its banks for a great distance. this wall passes in it's whole course thro' a leavel plain.
18. a Deep pond of 73 yards diameter in the Wall, perfectly round
20. Thro from the extremity of one Wall to the other 1100 yards.
21. a Small redoubt on the bank of the river.

The Strong part of this work which must be about ⅔ of it's original Size Contains Twenty acres.

The part Contained between the two Walls is about 500 acres, and it is Certain that those Walls have been longer and must have contained a much greater Space

I am informed by our french interpeters that a great number of those antient works are in Defferent parts of the Countrey, on the Plate River, Kansas, Jacque, Osarge, Mine river &c. A Small one is on [an] Island opposit the one I have Discribed, and two of our Party Saw two of those Antient f[o]rtresses on the Petteet *Arc* Creek on the upper Side near the Mouth, each angle of which were 100 yards and about 8 feet high.[1]

---

[1] The opinion now prevails, that these "fortifications" were only natural formations, made by the drifting sands. — Ed.

3rd of September Monday 1804. —

a verry Cold morning wind from N. W. we Set out at Sun rise, & proceeded on to a Bluff below the Mouth of Plumb Creek [*12 yds*] on the S. S. and took an obsevation of the Suns altitude.

This Creek is Small it "abounds with plumbs of a Delicious flavour" the River is Wide and Crowded with Sand bars. it is riseing a little but little timber in this Countrey all that is, is on the river in the Points. we came too on the L. S. in the edge of a Plain an[d] Camped for the night. we Saw Some signs of the two men Shannon & Colter, Shannon appeared to be ahead of Colter. The White banks appear to continue on both sides of the river. Grapes plenty and finely flavered.

Course Dist. & refrs. 3rd Septr.

West	½	Ml. on the L. S. opsd a Bluff
S. 35 W.	3	Mls. to the Upper point of some wood at the foot of the high land on the L. S. in a bend of the river pass a large Sand bar 400 yds. wide on the L. S. and a pt. & Sand bar from the S. S.
West	5½	Mls. to a objt. in a Deep bend to the S. S. passd. a pt. S. S. and a large Sand bar on the L. S.
S. 45. W.	1	Ml. to the Mouth of Plumb Cr. on the S. S. psd. undr. White bank.
South	5	Mls. to a pt. on the S. S. passd. Several Sand bars & two pts. on the L. S.
	15	

4th September Tuesday 1804. —

a verry Cold Wind from the S. S. E. we Set out early and proceeded on [to] the Mouth of a Small Creek in a bend to the L. S. Called White lime, at 1½ Miles higher up passed a large Creek on the L. S. Called *R. au Platte* or *White Paint*[1] between those two Creeks (the latter of which is abt. 30 yds. Wide) we passed under a Bluff of red Ceeder, at 4 Mls. ½ passed the mouth of the River *Que Courre* (*rapid R*) on the L. S. and Came to a Short distance above. this River is 152 yards Wide at the Mouth & 4 feet Deep Throwing out Sands like the Platt, (only Corser) forming bars in its mouth. I went up this river three Miles to a butifull Plain on the upper Side where the Panias once had a Village this River widens above its mouth and is divided by sands and Islands, the Current verry rapid, not navagable for evin Canoes without Great dificuelty owing to its Sands; the colour like that of the Plat is light, the heads of this river is not known [*in the Black Mountns & waters a hilly country of indifferent soil*] it coms into the Missourie from the S. W. by West, and I am told that i[t]s Genl Course Some distance up is parrelel with the Missourie.

---

[1] Now Bazile creek. — ED.

Course Dists & refrs the 4th of Septr

S. 5° W.	1½	Ml to the Mo. of a Creek on the L. S. below a Ceeder Clift.
S. 35°	1½	Mls to the Mo. of White Paint River on the L. S. Passing under a Ceeder Clift.
West	3	Mls to the Upper pt of Wood on the L. S. opsd a Bluff of bluish Clay, a Sd bar L. S.
N. 72° W.	1¼	Mls to a Mound on the L. S. a Bluff on the S. S. several Sand bars in the river
West	¾	Ml. to the Mouth of the river *Que Courre* on the L. S. the hills leave the river on the S. S. river Crouded with Sand bars, & wind hard.
	8	

[At the end of Codex B, written on the inside of the cover, is the following memorandum:]

U S. Due 4° Sepr 1804

	$
John Potts as p[er Duebill	20.5
Thos P. Howard	8.10
Alexander Willard	13.55

☞ *after this I will put the Course Destance & refferences of each day first and remks after.*

Course Dis^{ts} & Ref^{ts} — Sept^{r} 5th

N. 85° W.	2	M^{ls} to a Willow p^{t} on the S. S. a Bluff ops^{d}
N. 35° W.	3	M^{ls} to a high part of a Bluff on the S. S. a large Isl^{d} Called Pania Is^{d} in Middle of the river.
N. 58° W.	3½	to a Creek on the S. S. ps^{d} the Is^{d} at 1 M^{l} a Sand bar makeing from it. Poncarar [Ponca] River opposit on the L. S. 30 y^{ds}
West	3½	M^{ls} to the Lower point of a large Island near the L. Side (1)
N. 70° W.	1¾	M^{ls} to the right Side of the S^{d} Island to the head passed a Willow Is^{d} & a Sand bar
	13¾	

September 5th Wednesday 1804 —

Set out early the wind blew hard from the South, Goats, turkeys Seen today, passed a large Island (1) ops^{d} this Island near the head the Poncarars River Coms into the Missourie from the West this river is about 30 yards wide. dispatched two men to the Poncaries Village Situated in a handsom Plain on the lower Side of this Creek about two miles from the Missourie the Poncarars Nations is Small[1] and at this time out in the praries hunting the Buffalow, one of the men Sent to the Village Killed a Buffalow in the town, the other, a large Buck near it, Some Sign of the two men who is a head. above the Island on the S. S. we passed under a Bluff[2] of Blue earth, under which Several Mineral Springs broke out the water of which had a taste like *Salts*, We Came too on the upper point of a large Island (which I call *No preserves* Island) here we made a Ceeder Mast, our hunters brought in three bucks, and two elks this evening which we had jurked.

One of the hunters Shields, informed that he Saw Several black tailed Deer, near the Poncarer Village

---

[1] The Biddle text states (i, p. 66) that this Ponca tribe, which had once numbered 400 men, was then reduced to about fifty, who had taken refuge with the Omaha. Both tribes had been sedentary, but were driven from their villages by war and pestilence. — Ed.

[2] Now called Chouteau Bluffs. — Ed.

Course Distance and refferrencies. — 6th Sep^t. 1804.

West	1½	M^{ls} to a p^t of Wood on the S. S. opposit a Bluff.
N. 85° W.	7	M^{ls} passed a p^t on the S. S. at 1½ M^{ls} above which is a large Sand bar on L. S. a high Clift of Blue & redish soft rock, Colter joined us.
miles	8½	

Sep^t. 6th Thursday 1804. —

a Storm this morning from the N. W. which lasted a fiew minits, we Set out and proceeded on passed the head of the Is^d which is Seperated from the L. S. by a narrow Channel, a hard wind from the N. W. a Verry Cold day. we camped on the S. S. at the upper point of Some timber, Sometime before Night, no timber, [*being in reach.*]

I saw Several goats[1] on the hills on the S. S. also Buffalow in great numbers.

Course Distance & refferrences. — 7th Sept. 1804.

N. 60° W.	3	M^{ls} to the p^t of a Bluff on the S. S. ops^d a p^t on L. S.
West	2½	Miles to a tree in a bend to the L. S. near the foot of a round mountain resembling a Cupola (1) passed 2 Small Is^{lds} S. S.
	5½	

Sept. 7th Friday —

a verry Cold morning wind S. E. Set out at day light we landed after proceeding 5½ Miles, near the foot of a round Mounting, which I saw yesterday, resembling a dome.[2] Cap. Lewis & Myself walked up to the top which forms a Cone and is about 70 feet higher than the high lands around it, the Base is about 300 foot in decending this Cupola, discovered a Village of Small animals that burrow in the grown (those animals are Called by the french Petite Chien) Killed one and Caught one a live by poreing a great quantity of Water in his hole[3] we attempted to dig to the beds of one of those animals, after diging 6 feet, found by running a pole down that we were not half way to his Lodge, we found 2 frogs in the hole, and Killed a Dark rattle Snake near with a Ground rat (*or prairie dog*) in him, (those rats are numerous) the Village of those animals Cov^{d} about 4 acres of Ground on a gradual decent of a hill and Contains great numbers of holes on the top of which those little animals Set erect make a Whistleing noise and whin allarmed Step into their hole. we por'd into one of the holes 5 barrels of Water without filling it. Those Animals are about the Size of a Small Squ[ir]rel Shorter (*or longer*) & thicker, the head much resembling a Squirel in every respect, except the ears which is Shorter, his tail like a ground squirel which they shake & whistle when allarm^{d} the toe nails long, they have fine fur & the longer hairs is gray,[1] it is Said that a kind of Lizard also a Snake reside with those animals. (*did not find this correct.*) Camped.

---

[1] These "goats" were antelopes (*Antilocapra Americana*). This animal was new to science when discovered by Lewis and Clark in 1804, and was not technically named until 1815. — COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 109).

[2] A conspicuous landmark, now known as "the Tower." — ED.

[3] Gass says (p. 51) regarding this attempt, that "all the party, except the guard, went to it; and took with them all the Kettles and other vessels for holding water; but though they worked at the business till night, they only caught one of them." — ED.

Course Destance & refferrences. — 8th Sept^{r}

N. 35. W.	7	M^{ls} to a p^{t} on L. S. ops^{d} the house of M^{r} Troodo where he wintered in 96 & Seven Called the Pania ho^{s} in a woo[d] to the S. S. (1)
N. 88^{o} W.	10	M^{ls} to a p^{t} of woods S. S. one mile above the commencement of this Course the Low^{r} p^{t} of a Willow Isl^{d} this Isl^{d} is 1¼ M^{ls} in length, in the middle of the R. a Small Sand Is^{d} at its upper extremity.
	17	

8th of September Satturday —

Set out early and proceeded on under a gentle Breeze from the S. E. at 3 M^{ls} passed the house of Troodo where he wintered in 96. Called the Pania house, above is high hills on the S. S. on the S. S. much higher hills than useal appear to the North distant 8 Miles recently burnt. pass 3 Small Islands at about 5 Miles on this Course on the S. S. here Cap. Lewis Killed a Buffalow in the river, and the Men one other Came to on the lower point of an Island in the midlle of the river Called Boat Island[2] and incamped, jurked the meat Killed to day Consisting of 2 buffalow, one large Buck Elk, one Small, 4 Deer 3 Turkeys & a Squirel, I joined the boat at this Camp, the Countrey on the S. S. is pore & broken.

---

[1] The prairie-dog (*Cynomys ludovicianus*), then unknown to scientists; Coues thinks that Clark and Gass were the first to describe it. — ED.

[2] The present Chicot Island; a little above the present Fort Randall. — ED.

Course Distance & referrence. — 9th Sept^{r}

N. 34° W.	3	M^{ls} to a p^{t} on an Island on the L. S. of an Is^{d} passed Sand bars.
N. 40. W.	3	M^{ls} to an upper p^{t} of a Wood in a bend S. S.
N. 83° W.	4¼	M^{ls} to a p^{t} on S. S.
N. 44° W	4	M^{ls} to the upper p^{t} of a Wood L. S.
	14¼	

9th September Sunday 1804 —

Set out at Sunrise and proceeded on passed the head of the Island on which we Camped, passed three Sand & Willow Islands, the Sand bars So noumerous, it is not worth mentioning them, the river Shoal or Shallow wind S. E. Came too and Camped on a Sand bar on the L. S. Capt. Lewis went out to kill a buffalow. I walked on Shore all this evening with a view to Kill a goat or Some Prarie Dogs in the evening after the boat landed, I Derected My Servent York with me to kill a Buffalow near the boat from a Numb^{r} then Scattered in the Plains. I saw at one view near the river at least 500 Buffalow, those animals have been in View all day feeding in the Plains on the L. S. every Copse of timber appear to have Elk or Deer. D. Killed 3 Deer, I Kiled a Buffalow Y. 2, R. Fields one.

Course Distance & Referrence — 10th Sept.

North	5	M^{ls} to a San^{d} Is^{d} und^{r} a Bluff to the S. S. passed Is^{d} on L. S.
N. 65° W.	2	M^{l} to a p^{t} on the L. S. pass^{d} the Is^{d} on the L. S.
N. 80° W.	½	M^{l} on the L. S.
S. 80 W.	3	M^{ls} to Ceder Island in the Middle of the R. found a fish back bone pitrefied also the h^{d} just below the Is^{d} on the top of a hill Situated on the L. S.
N. 70° W.	8½	M^{ls} to the Low^{r} p^{t} of an Is^{d} in a bend to the L. S. pass the h^{d} of Ceeder Island (2) and a large Is^{d} on the S. S. (3) & Many Sand bars. Shallow.
N. 35. W.	1	M^{l} to the Lower p^{t} of a Small Island seperated by a Narrow Channel.
	20	

10th September Monday 1804 —

a cloudy dark morning Set out early, a gentle breeze from the S. E. passed two Small Islands on the L. S. and one on the S. S. all in the first Course at 10½ Miles passed the lower point of an (2) Island Covered with red Ceeder Situated in a bend on the L. S. this Island is about 2 Miles in length (1) below this on a hill on the L. S. we found the back bone of a fish, 45 feet long tapering to the tale, Some teeth &c. those joints were Seperated and all Petrefied. opposit this Island 1½ Miles from the river on the L. S. is a large Salt Spring of remarkable Salt Water. one other high up the hill ½ Ml. not So Salt. we proceeded on under a Stiff Breeze. three Miles above Ceder Island passed a large Island on the S. S. no water on that Side. (3) Several elk Swam to this Island passed a Small Island near the center of the river, of a Mile in length, and Camped on one above Seperated from the other by a Narrow Chanel, those Islands are Called Mud Islands. the hunters killed 3 Buffalow & one Elk to day. The river is falling a little. Great number of Buffalow & Elk on the hill Side feeding deer scerce

Course Distance & reffs. 11th Septr

N. 35°. W.	4½	Mls. to the lower pt. of an Island, passed the Isd. on which we Campd.
N. 70°. W.	2	Mls. to the head of the Island on its L. S.
N. 45°. W.	3	Mls. to a pt. on the L. S. below an Island (1)
N. 50°. W.	2	Mls. to the Upper pt. of an Island on the S. S.; passed one on the L. S. opsd. to which at ¼ of a Mile is a Village of the Barking Squirel L. S.
West	4½	Mls. to a pt. on the L. S. passed an Isd. on the S. S. just above the one mentioned in the last Course.
	16	

Sept. 11th Tuesday 1804 —

A cloudy morning, Set out verry early, the river wide & Shallow the bottom narrow, & the river crouded with Sand bars, passed the Island on which we lay at one mile, Passed three Islands one on the L. S. and 2 on the S. S. opposit the Island on the L. S. I saw a Village of Barking Squirel [prairie-dog — Ed.] 970 yds. long, and 800 yds. Wide Situated on a jentle Slope of a hill, those anamals are noumerous, I killed 4 with a View to have their Skins Stufed.

here the Man who left us with the horses 22 (*16*) days ago *George Shannon He started 26 Augt.*) and has been a head ever since joined us nearly Starved to Death, he had been 12 days without any thing to eate but Grapes & one Rabit, which he Killed by shooting a piece of hard Stick in place of a ball. This Man Supposeing the boat to be a head pushed on as long as he could, when he became weak and feable deturmined to lay by and waite for a tradeing boat, which is expected, Keeping one horse for the last resorse, thus a man had like to have Starved to death in a land of Plenty for the want of Bullitts or Something to kill his meat. we Camped on the L. S. above the mouth of a run a hard rain all the afternoon, & most of the night, with hard wind from the N. W. I walked on Shore the forepart of this day over Some broken Country which Continues about 3 Miles back & then is leavel & rich all Plains, I saw Several foxes & Killed a Elk & 2 Deer & Squirels. the men with me killed an Elk, 2 Deer & a Pelican

Course Distance & reffs. Septr. 12th

N. 45° W.	4	Miles to a point of wood on the L. S. Passed an Island in the Center of the river and several Sand bars (1) on which we found great dificuelty in passing the Water being verry Shallow
	4	

Sept. 12th Wednesday 1804—

A Dark Cloudy Day the wind hard from the N. W. We Passed (1) a Island in the middle of the river at the head of which we found great dificuelty in passing between the Sand bars the Water Swift and Shallow, it took ¾ of the day to make one mile, we Camped on the L. S. opsd. a Village of Barking Prarie Squirels

I walked out in the morn:g and Saw Several Villages of those little animals, also a great number of Grous & 3 Foxes, and observed Slate & Coal Mixed, Some verry high hills on each Side of the river. rain a little all day.

Course Distance and refferences Sepr. 13th.

N. 45° E.	1½	Mls. on the L. S. a Sand bar Makeing out.
N. 30° E.	1	Ml. on the L. Side.
N. 60° W.	1	Ml. on the L. S. to a Clift.
N. 64° W.	2¾	Mls. on the L. S. to the Commencement of a wood passing under a Bluff of Slate & Coal, & a Sand bar opposit.
North	1¾	Mls. to a pt. of high Land on the S. S. passd. Sand bars on both Sides, Shallow
N. 10° W.	4	Mls. to the lower pt. of a timber passing under a Bluff, a Sand & Willow Island on the L. S.
	12	

13th. Sepr. Thursday 1804—

A Dark drizzley Day, G. D. Cought 4 Beaver last night the wind from the NW. Cold Set out early and proceeded on verry well, passed a number of Sand bars, Capt. Lewis Killed a Porcupin on a Cotton tree feeding on the leaves & bowers [boughs — Ed.] of the said tree, the water is verry Shallow (*in places*) being Crowded with Sand bars Camped on the S. Side under a Bluff. the Bluff on the S. S. not so much impregnated with mineral as on the L. S. Muskeetors verry troublesom.

Course Distance and refurences Sept. 14

N. 68° W.	2¾	Mls. to a pt. of high Land on the L. S. passd. a round Island on the S. S.
S. 70° W.	2½	Mls. to a tree in the pt. on the L. S. passed the Mo. of a run on the L. S.
N. 4° W.	2½	Mls. to the mouth of a Small Creek[1] on the bend to the L. S.
N. 10° E.	1¼	Mls. to to the Mouth of a Creek on the L. S. passed a bad Sand bar.
	9	

14th. Sept. Friday 1804.—

Set out early proceeded on Passed several Sand bars the river wide and Shallow. 3 beaver caught last night, Drizeley rain in the forepart of the day, Cloudy and disagreeable. I walked on Shore with a view to find an old Vulcanoe, Said to be in this neighbourhood by M^r. J. McKey of S^t Charles. I walked on Shore the whole day without Seeing any appearance of the Vulcanoe, in my walk I Killed a Buck Goat [antelope — Ed.] of this Countrey, about the hight of the Grown Deer, its body Shorter the Horns which is not very hard and forks ⅔ up one prong Short the other round & Sharp arched, and is imediately above its Eyes the Colour is a light gray with black behind its ears down its neck, and its face white round its neck, its Sides and its rump round its tail which is Short & white: Verry actively made, has only a pair of hoofs to each foot, his brains on the back of his head, his Norstrals large, his eyes like a Sheep he is more like the Antilope or Gazella of **Africa** than any other Species of Goat. Shields killed a *Hare* like the mountain hare of Europe, waighing 6¼ pounds (altho pore) his head narrow, its ears large i, e. 6 Inches long & 3 Inches Wide one half of each White, the other & out part a lead Grey from the toe of the hind foot to toe of the for foot is 2 feet 11 Inches, the hith is 1 foot 1 Inch & ¾, his tail long thick & white.[1]

---

[1] A little above the present site of Brulé City, S. D. — Coues (*L. and C.*, i, p. 116).

The rain Continued the Greater part of the day in My ramble I observed, that all those parts of the hills which was clear of Grass easily disolved and washed into the river and bottoms, and those hils under which the river runs, Sliped into it and disolves and mixes with the water of the river, the bottoms of the river was covered with the water and mud frome the hills about three Inches deep, those bottoms under the hils which is covered with Grass, also receives a great quantity of mud.

Passed 2 Small Creeks on the L. S. and Camped below the third, (the place that Shannon the man who went a head lived on grapes) Som heavy Showers of rain all wet, had the Goat & rabit Stufed rained all night.

---

[1] The northern jackass-rabbit (*Lepus campestris*). — Ed.

Course Distance & refferences 15th. Sep^{t}.

N. 50° E	2	M^{ls}. to the p^{t}. Mouth of White River (1) L. S. passed Sand bars, &^{c}.
N. 26° E	1$\frac{1}{2}$	M^{ls}. to a p^{t}. on the L. S. a Bluff on the S. S.
N. 10° W.	$\frac{1}{2}$	M^{ls}. on the L. S. to the Commencement of a Bluff of black Slate
N. 30° W.	2	M^{ls}. to the lower p^{t}. of an Island Situated near the L Side (2)
North	2	Miles to the Mouth of a Creek on the L. S. a point of high land opposit under which we camped.
	8	

15th. September Satturday 1804—

Set out early passed the mo. of the Creek, and the mouth of White river. (1) Cap. Lewis and my self went up this river a Short distance and crossed, found that this differed verry much from the Plat or que courre, threw out but little Sand, about 300 yards wide, the water confin^{d}. within 150 yards, the current regular & Swift much resembling the Missourie, with Sand bars from the Points, a Sand Island in the mouth, in the point is a butifull Situation for a Town 3 gradual assents, and a much greater quantity of timber about the mouth of this river than useal, we concluded to send Some distance up this river detached Sj^{t}. Gass & R. Fields. We proceeded on passed a Small (2) Island Covered with Ceeders on [it] I saw great Numbers of Rabits & Grapes, this Island is Small & Seperated from a large Sand Is^{d}. at its upper point by a narrow Channel, & is Situated Nearest the L. Side. Camped on the S. S. opposit the mouth of a large Creek on which there is more timber than is useal on Creeks of this Size, this Creek raised 14 feet the last rains. I killed a Buck Elk & Deer, this evening is verry Cold, Great Many Wolves of Diffrent sorts howling about us. the wind is hard from the NW. this evening.

16th Sept

N. 72° E. 1¼ Miles to a pt on the L. S. and came too (1)

16th of September Sunday 1804—

We Set out verry early & proceed'd on 1¼ Miles between Sand bars and Came too on the L. S. (1) deturmined to dry our wet thi[n]gs and liten the boat which we found Could not proceed with the present load [*as fast as we desired owing to Sand bars*] for this purpose we concluded to detain the Perogue we had intended to send back & load her out of the boat & detain the Soldiers untill Spring & Send them from our Winter quarters. We put out those articls which was wet, Chan'd the boat & perogues, examined all the Lockers Bails &c &c &c.

This Camp is Situated in a butifull Plain Serounded with Timber to the extent of ¾ of a mile in which there is great quantities of fine Plumbs The two men detachd up the White river joined us here & informed that the [river] as far as they were up had much the appearance of the Missuorie Som Islands & Sands little Timber, [*Elm*] (much Signs of Beaver, Great many buffalow) & Continud its width, they Saw as well as my self Pine *burs* & Sticks of Birch in the Drift wood up this river, they Saw also Number of Goats, Such as I Killed, also Wolves near the Buffalow. falling [fallow] Deer, & the Barking Squrils Villages. Cap. Lewis went to hunt & See the Countrey near the Kamp he Killed a Buffalow & a Deer

Cloudy all day I partly load the empty Perogue out of the Boat. I killed 2 Deer & the party 4 Deer & a Buffalow this we Kill for the Skins to Cover the Perogues, the meat too pore to eat. Cap. Lewis went on an Island above our Camp, this Island is abt one mile long, with a great perpotion Ceder timber near the middle of it.

I gave out a flannel Shirt to each man, & powder to those who had expended thers.

[Lewis:[1]] *Sunday, September 16th, 1804.*

This morning set out at an early hour, and come too at ½ after 7 A. M. on the Lard. shore 1¼ miles above the mouth of a small creek which we named *Corvus,*[2] in consequence of having kiled a beatiful bird of that genus near it. we concluded to ly by at this place the ballance of this day and the next, in order to dry our baggage which was wet by the heavy showers of rain which had fallen within the last three days, and also to lighten the boat by transfering a part of her lading to the red perogue, which we now determined to take on with us to our winter residence wherever that might be; while some of the men were imployed in the necessary labour others were dressing of skins washing and mending their cloaths &c. Capt. Clark and myself kiled each a buck immediately on landing near our encampment; the deer were very gentle and in great numbers in this bottom which had more timber on it than any part of the river we had seen for many days past, consisting of Cottonwood Elm, some indifferent Ash and a considerable quan[ti]ty of a small species of white oak which [was][3] loaded with acorns of an excellent flavor [having][3] very little of the bitter roughness of the nuts of most species of oak, the leaf of this oak is small pale green and deeply indented, (not copied for Dr. Barton) it seldom rises higher than thirty feet is much branched, the bark is rough and thick and of a light colour; the cup which contains the acorn is fringed on it's edges and imbraces the nut about one half; the acorns were now falling, and we concluded that the number of deer which we saw here had been induced thither by the acorns of which they are remarkably fond. almost every species of wild game is fond of the acorn, the Buffaloe Elk, Deer, bear, turkies, ducks, pigians and even the wolves feed on them; we sent three hunters out who soon added eight deer and two Buffalo to our strock of provisions; the Buffaloe were so pour that we took only the tongues skins and marrow bones; the skins were particularly acceptable as we were in want of a covering for the large perogue to secure the baggage; the clouds during this day and night prevented my making any observations. Sergt. Gass and Reubin Fields whom we had sent out yesterday to explore the White river returnd at four oclock this day and reported that they had followed the meanders of that stream about 12 miles it's general course [is] West, the present or principal channel 150 yards wide; the coulour of the water and rapidity and manner of runing resembled the Missouri precisely; the country broken on the border of the river about a mile, when the level planes commence and extend as far as the eye can reach on either side; as usual no timber appeared except such as from the steep declivities of hills, or their moist situations, were sheltered from the effects of the fire. these extensive planes had been lately birnt and the grass had sprung up and was about three inches high. vast herds of Buffaloe deer Elk and Antilopes were seen feeding in every direction as far as the eye of the observer could reach.

---

[1] This entry, and another which is here inserted after Clark's for next day (Sept. 17), may be found in a fragment designated as Codex Ba. — Ed.

[2] This name became Crow Creek on the maps. — Ed.

[3] These two words in brackets are conjectural readings, the MS. being torn where they occur. — Ed.

White River 17th Sept. Plomb Camp.
Course Distance & refferrence
[Not given. — Ed.]

17th *of September Monday* 1804 —

Dried all our wet articles, this fine Day, Capt. Lewis went out with a View to See the Countrey and its productions, he was out all day he killed a Buffalow and a remarkable *Bird* (*Magpy*) of the *Corvus* Species long tail the upper part of the feathers & also the wings is of a purplish variated Green, the back & a part of the wing feathers are white edged with black, white belly, while from the root of the wings to Center of the back is White, the head nake [neck — Ed.] breast & other parts are black the Beeke like a Crow. abt. the Size of a large Pigion. a butifull thing.

I took equal altitudes and a meridian altitude. Capt. Lewis returned at Dark, Colter Killed a Goat like the one I killed and a curious kind of Deer (*Mule Deer*) of a Dark gray Colr. more so than common, hair long & fine, the ears large & long, a Small reseptical under the eyes; like an Elk, the Taile about the length of Common Deer, round (like a Cow) a tuft of black hair about the end, this Spec[i]es of Deer jumps like a goat or Sheep

8 fallow Deer 5 Common & 3 Buffalow killed to day. Capt. Lewis saw a *hare* & killed a Rattle snake in a village of B.[arking — Ed.] Squarels the wind from S. W. Dryed our provisions, Some of which was much Damaged.

[Lewis:] *Monday September 17th. 1804.*

Having for many days past confined myself to the boat, I determined to devote this day to amuse myself on shore with my gun and view the interior of the country lying between the river and the Corvus Creek. accordingly before sunrise I set out with six of my best hunters, two of whom I dispatched to the lower side of Corvus creek, two with orders to hunt the bottums and woodland on the river, while I retained two others to acompany me in the intermediate country. one quarter of a mile in rear of our camp which was situated in a fine open grove of cotton wood passed a grove of plumb trees loaded with fruit and now ripe, observed but little difference betwen this fruit and that of a similar kind common to the Atlantic States. the trees are smaller and more thickly set. this forrest of plumb trees garnish a plain about 20 feet more elivated than that on which we were encamped; this plain extends back about a mile to the foot of the hills one mile distant and to which it is gradually ascending this plane extends with the same bredth from the creek below to the distance of near three miles above parrallel with the river, and it is intirely occupyed by the burrows of the *barking squiril* hertefore described; this anamal appears here in infinite numbers and the shortness and virdu[r]e of grass gave the plain the appearance throughout it's whole extent of beatifull bowling-green in fine order. it's aspect is S. E. a great number of wolves of the small kind, halks [hawks — Ed.] and some pole-cats were to be seen. I presume that those anamals feed on this squirril. found the country in every direction for about three miles intersected with deep revenes and steep irregular hills of 100 to 200 feet high; at the tops of these hills the country breakes of[f] as usual into a fine leavel plain extending as far as the eye can reach. from this plane I had an extensive view of the river below, and the irregular hills which border the opposite sides of the river and creek. the surrounding country had been birnt about a month before and young grass had now sprung up to hight of 4 Inches presenting the live green of the spring to the West a high range of hills, strech across the country from N. to S. and appeared distant about 20 miles; they are not very extensive as I could plainly observe their rise and termination no rock appeared on them and the sides were covered with virdu[r]e similar to that of the plains this senery already rich pleasing and beatiful was still farther hightened by immence herds of Buffaloe, deer Elk and Antelopes which we saw in every direction feeding on the hills and plains. I do not think I exagerate when I estimate the number of Buffaloe which could be compre[hend]ed at one view to amount to 3000. my object was if possible to kill a female Antelope having already procured a male; I pursued my rout on this plain to the west flanked by my two hunters untill eight in the morning when I made the signal for them to come to me which they did shortly after. we rested our selves about half an hour, and regailed ourselves on half a bisquit each and some jirks of Elk which we had taken the precaution to put in our pouches in the morning before we set out, and drank of the water of a small pool which had collected on this plain from the rains which had fallen some days before. we had now after various windings in pursuit of several herds of antelopes which we had seen on our way made the distance of about eight miles from our camp. we found the Antelope extreemly shye and watchfull insomuch that we had been unable to get a shot at them; when at rest they generally seelect the most elivated point in the neighbourhood, and as they are watchfull and extreemly quick of sight and their sense of smelling very accute it is almost impossible to approach them within gunshot; in short they will frequently discover and flee from you at the distance of three miles. I had this day an opportunity of witnessing the agility and the superior fleetness of this anamal which was to me really astonishing. I had pursued and twice surprised a small herd of seven, in the first instance they did not discover me distinctly and therefore did not run at full speed, tho' they took care before they rested to gain an elivated point where it was impossible to approach them under cover, except in one direction and that happened to be in the direction from which the wind blew towards them; bad as the chance to approch them was, I made the best of my way towards them, freqeuntly peeping over the ridge with which I took care to conceal myself from their view the male, of which there was but one, frequently incircled the summit of the hill on which the females stood in a group, as if to look out for the approach of danger. I got within about 200 paces of them when they smelt me and fled; I gained the top of the eminence on which they stood, as soon as possible from whence I had an extensive view of the country the antilopes which had disappeared in a steep reveene now appeared at the distance of about three miles on the side of a ridge which passed obliquely across me and extended about four miles. so soon had these antelopes gained the distance at which they had again appeared to my view I doubted at ferst that they were the same that I had just surprised, but my doubts soon vanished when I beheld the rapidity of their flight along the ridge before me it appeared reather the rappid flight of birds than the motion of quadrupeds. I think I can safely venture the asscertion that the speed of this anamal is equal if not superior to that of the finest blooded courser. this morning I saw[1]

---

[1] The sentence remains unfinished. At the bottom of the page is a memorandum: "This a part of N°. 2." — Ed.

Course Distance & refferences 18th Sep^{tr}

N. 45. E.	1	M. to the lower p^{t} of an Island (1)
N. 25° E.	2	Miles to a p^{t} on the L. S. passed the Isl^{d} at one mile and some Sand bars making from it, a Creek on the S. S. ops^{d} the upper point.
N. 14° E.	1½	M^{ls} to a p^{t} of Willows on the L. Side.
N. 10. W.	1½	M^{ls} to a point of wood on the L. S.
N. 22. W.	1	Mile to a p^{t} on the L. S. and the upper part of the timber.
	7	

September 18th Tuesday 1804 —

Wind from the N W. we Set out early the Boat much lightened, the wind a head proceed on verry Slowly (1) Passed an Island about the middle of the river at 1 Mile this Island is about a Mile long, and has a great perpotion of red Ceder on it,[1] a Small Creek comes in on the S. S. opposit the head of the Island, proceeded on passed many Sand bars and Camped on the L. S. before night the wind being verry hard & a head all Day. the hunters Killed 10 Deer to day and a Prarie wolf, had it all jurked & Skins Stretch^{d} after Camping.

I walked on Shore Saw Goats, Elk, Buffalow, Black tail Deer, & the Common Deer, I Killed a Prarie Wollf, about the Size of a gray fox bushey tail head & ears like a Wolf, Some fur Burrows in the ground and barks like a Small Dog.

What has been taken heretofore for the Fox was those Wolves, and no Foxes has been Seen; The large Wolves are verry numourous, they are of a light col^{r} large & has long hair with Coarse fur.[2]

Some Goats of a Different Kind wer Seen yesterday great many Porcupin rabits & Barking Squirils in this quarter. Plumbs & grapes.

---

[1] On this island was the old site of Fort Recovery; on the west bank of the river was Fort Cedar (aux Cèdres), a post of the Missouri Fur Company. — COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 122).

[2] The prairie wolf, or coyote (*Canis latrans*), and the great gray Western wolf (*C. lupus occidentalis*); the latter was wont to prowl about buffalo herds. — ED.

Course Distance & refferences Sept. 19th.

N. 50° W.	3	Miles to a pt. of wood on the S. S. opposit is a Bluff on L. S. (1)
North	4	Miles to the Lower pt. of prospect Island opsd. the 3 rivers on the S. S. (2)
N. 30° W.	2½	Miles to the Upper pt. of the Island psd. the 3 rivers. (2)
N. 43° W.	2	Miles on the L. S. passd. a Creek (3)
N. 54° W.	3	Mls. to a pt. on the S. S.
N. 70° W.	5	Mls to a Bluff on the L. S. passed a Creek (4)
West -	3½	Mls. to a timber on the L. S. passed a Creek (5)
N 50° W.	3¼	Mls. to the Upper pt. of an Island at the Commencemt of the Big bend. (6)
	26¼	

19th. of September Wednesday 1804 —

Set out early, a cool morning verry clear the wind from the S. E. a Bluff on the L. S. here commences a Butifull Countrey on both Sides of the Missourie. (2) passed a large Island called Prospect Island opposit this Isd. the 3 rivers Coms in, passing thro a butifull Plain, here I walked on Shore & Killed a fat Cow & Sent her to the boat and proceeded on to the first of the 3 rivers, this river is about 35 yards wide contains a good deel of water, I walked up this river 2 miles & cross, the bottom is high and rich Some timber, I crossed & returned to the mouth, & proceeded up one mile to the 2d. river which is Small 12 yards wide, and on it but little timber, on this Creek the Sioux has frequently Camped, as appears by the Signs. the lands between those two Creeks is a purpendicular bluff of about 80 feet with a butifull Plain & gentle assent back. a Short distance above the 2nd. a 3rd. Creek Comes into the river in 3 places scattering its waters over the large timbered bottom, this Creek is near the Size of the Middle Creek Containing a greater quantity of water, those rivers is the place that all nations who meet are at peace with each other, called the Seoux pass of the 3 rivers.[1]

---

[1] Thus named, "as the Sioux generally cross the Missouri at this place. These streams have the same right of asylum, though in a less degree than Pipestone Creek already mentioned." — BIDDLE (i, p. 76).

The present names of these streams are (in ascending order) Crow, Wolf, and

The boat proceeded on pass^{d} the Island (3) passed a Creek 15 yds. Wide on the L. Side (4) passed a Creek on the L. S. 20 yards wide which I call Elm Creek passing thro' a high Plain (5) passed a Creek on the L. S. 18 y^{ds} above which the boat Came too, I joined them late at night, and Call this Creek Night Creek the wind favourable all Day, I killed a fat buck Elk late and could only get his Skin and a Small part of his flesh to Camp. My Servent Killed a Buck, the Crew in the boat Killed 2 buffalow in the river. The Hunters on Shore Killed 4 Deer with black tails one of which was a Buck with two main Prongs on each Side forked equally, which I never before Seen. I saw Several large gangs of Buffalow 2 large Herds of Elk & goats &c. (6) pass a Small Island on the S. S. opposit to this Island on the L. S. a Creek of about 10 yards wide Coms in passing thro a plain in which great quantites of the Prickley Pear grows, I call this Creek *Prickley Pear Creek,* this Isl^{d} is called the lower Island it is Situated at the Commencement of what is Called & Known by the *Grand de Tortu* [*Detour*] or *Big Bend* of the Missourie.

Course Distance and refferences — 20th Sept. (Big Bend)

From the lower Islands upper p^{t}

North	4	M^{ls} to a p^{t} on the L. S. Passed one on the S. S. above the Island about one & ½ M^{ls}.
N. 10° W.	1½	M^{ls} on the L. Side
N. 22° W.	3	M^{ls} on the L. Side p^{d} a s^{d} b^{r}
N. 60° W	2	M^{ls} on the L. Side.
West	3	M^{ls} on the L. S.
S. 73° W.	3½	M^{ls} on the L. Side
South	4	M^{ls} on the L. S. passed a Small Island on the L. S. a Small run ops^{d} S. S. (1)
S. 74° E.	3½	M^{ls} to a p^{t} of wood on the L. S. Camped (2)
S. 56° E.	3½	M^{ls} to a p^{t} on the S. S. ops^{d} a high hill (3)
S. 28° E.	2	M^{ls} to a Ceder Valey in a bend on the L. S. at this place the gorge is 2000 y^{ds}.
	30	

Campbell creeks. The first named is the location of Crow Creek Indian Agency and Fort Thompson. — Ed.

20th of September, Thursday 1804 —

a fair morning wind from the S. E. detached 2 men to the 1st Creek above the big bend with the horse to hunt and wait our arrival proceeded on passed the lower Island opposit which the Sand bars are very thick & the water Shoal. I walked on Shore with a view of examening this bend crossed at the Narost part which is a high irregular hills of about 180 or 190 feet, this place the gouge of the bend is 1 Mile & a quarter (from river to river or across,) from this high land which is only in the Gouge, the bend is a Butifull Plain thro which I walked, Saw numbers of Buffalow & Goats, I saw a Hare & believe he run into a hole in the Side of a hill, he run up this hill which is Small & has several holes on the Side & I could not see him after, I joined the boat in the evening. passed a Small Island on the L. S. in the N. W. extremity of the bend Called Solitary Island, and Camped late on a Sand Bar near the S. S. R. Fields Killed 1 Deer & 2 Goats one of them a female She Differs from the Mail as to Size being Smaller, with Small Horns, Streght with a Small Prong without any black about the Neck. None of those Goats has any Beard, they are all Keenly made [delicately formed. — BIDDLE], and is butifull.

Course Distance and reffrs. — 21st Sept.

S. 70° W.	4½	Miles to the Upper part of a Ceder bottom on the L. S. passed Several Sand bars on both Sides.
N. 50° W.	2½	Miles to a tree on the S. S. passing over a Willow Island & a Creek on the L. S. (1)
West	4½	Miles to a point of Timber on the L. S. Passed Sand bars the river here is verry Shoal and about a Mile Wide. (2) Passed large hard Stone on the Shore on each Side, a Mock Island on the S. S.
	11½	

21st of September Friday 1804 —

at half past one o'clock this morning the Sand bar on which we Camped began to under mind and give way which allarmed the Serjeant on Guard, the motion of the boat awakened me; I got up & by the light of the moon observed that the Sand had given away both above and below our Camp & was falling in fast. I ordered all hands on as quick as possible & pushed off, we had pushed off but a few minits before the bank under which the Boat & perogus lay give way, which would Certainly have Sunk both Perogues, by the time we made the ops$^{d.}$ Shore our Camp fell in, we made a 2$^{d.}$ Camp for the remainder of the night. & at Daylight proceeded on to the Gouge of this Great bend and Brackfast, we Sent a man to Measure (step off) the Distance across the gouge, he made it 2,000 yd$^{s.}$, The distance arround is 30 M$^{ls.}$ The hills extend thro: the Gouge and is about 200 foot above the water. in the bend as also the opposit Sides both above and below the bend is a butifull inclined Plain, in which there is great numbers of Buffalow, Elk & Goats in view feeding & scipping on those Plains Grouse, Larks & the Prarie bird is Common in those Plains.

We proceeded on passed a (1) Willow Island below the mouth of a Small river called Tylors R about 35 Y$^{ds.}$ wide which Coms in on the L. S. 6 Miles above the Gouge of the bend, at the Mouth of this river the two hunters a head left a Deer & its Skin also the Skin of a White wolf. We observe an emence number of Plover of Different kind collecting and takeing their flight Southerly, also Brants, which appear to move in the Same Direction. The Cat fish is Small and not so plenty as below.

(2) The Shore on each Side is lined with hard rough Gulley Stone of different Sises, which has roled from the hills & out of Small brooks, Ceder is Common here, This day is warm, the wind which is not hard blows from the S. E., we Camped at the lower point of the Mock Island on the S. S. this now Connected with the main land, it has the appearance of once being an Island detached from the main land Covered with tall Cotton Wood. We Saw Some Camps and tracks of the Seaux which appears to be old, three or four weeks ago, one frenchman I fear has got an abscess on his they [thigh — Ed.], he Complains verry much we are makeing every exertion to reliev him

The Praries in this quarter Contains great q$^{ts.}$ of Prickley Pear.

Course Distance & refferences — 22nd

S. 72° W.	5	Miles to a point on the S. S. Passing under a high bluff on the L. Side (1)
West	1	Mile on the S. S. a bottom commencing on the L. S. at the end of this Course
N. 38° W.	4½	Miles to a pt. of timber on the S. S. opposit the Lower pt. of Ceder Island passed two Islands on the L. S. one ½ a Mile & the other 3 Miles long called the 3 Sisters opsd. a large Creek coms in (2)
N. 30° W.	3	Miles to a pt. on S. S. passed Ceeder Island Situated nearest the S. S. a trading house (3)
N. 22° E.	2½	Miles to a timber opposit the Lower (L. S.) pt. of a Small Island called Goat Island. (4)
	16	

22nd of September Satturday 1804 —

a thick fog this morning detained us untill 7 oClock passed a butifull inclined Prarie on both Sides in which we See great numbers of Buffalow feeding. (1) took the Meridean altitude of the Suns Upper Limb 92°. 50′ 00″. [with] the Sextent the Latd. produced from this Obsevation is 44° 11′ 33″ 3/10 North.

(2) passed a Small Island on the L. S. imediately above passed a Island Situated nearest the L. S. abt. 3 Miles long, behind this Isd. on the L. S. a Creek Comes in about 15 yards wide, this Creek and Island are Called the 3 Sisters, a butifull Plain on both Sides of the river.

(3) passed a Island Situated nearest the S. S. imediately above the last Called Ceder Island this Island is about 1½ miles long & nearly as wide Covered with Ceder, on the South Side of this Island Mr. Louiselle a trader from St. Louis built a fort of Ceder[1] & a good house to trade with the Seaux & Wintered last winter; about this fort I observed a number of Indian Camps in a Conecal form. they fed their horses on Cotton limbs as appears. here our hunters us joined haveing

---

[1] Gass (p. 58) thus describes this post: "The space picketed in is about 65 or 70 feet square, with sentry-boxes in two of the angles. The pickets are 13½ feet above ground. In this square he built a house 45½ by 32½ feet, and divided it into four equal parts, one for goods, one to trade in, one to be used as a common hall, and the other for a family-house." — Ed.

killed 2 Deer & a Beaver, they Complain much of the Mineral Substances in the barren hills over which they passed Distroying their mockessons.

(4) we proceeded on and Camp^{d} late on the S. Side below a Small Island in the bend S. S. Called Goat Island, The large Stones which lay on the Sides of the banks in Several places lay some distance in the river, under the water and is dangerous. &c.

I walked out this evening and killed a fine Deer the Musquiters is verry troublesom in the bottoms.

Course Distance & refferencies. — 23rd Sep^{tr}

N. 46° W.	3¾	Miles to the Mouth of a Creek in the bend to the S. S. passed an Isl^{d} on the S. S. (1) & Sands.
S. 46° W.	1¾	Miles to a Coaps of Wood at a Spring in a bend to the L. S.
N. 80° W.	4½	Miles to the lower p^{t} of a large Island (2) passed 2 Willow Islands & Several Bars.
N. 85° W.	5	Miles to a p^{t} on the L. S. pass upper p. of Elk Island at 2½ Miles. Several Sands
West	5	Miles to a p^{t} on the S. S. below a Creek on the L. S. passed a Creek on the S. S. (3)
	20	

23rd of September Sunday 1804 —

Set out under a gentle breeze from the S. E. (1) passed a Small Island Situated in a bend to the L. S. Called Goat Island, a Short distance above the upper point a Creek of 12 yards wide Coms in on the S. S. we observed a great Smoke to the S. W. I walked on Shore & observed Buffalow in great Herds at a distance

(2) passed two Small Willow Islands with large Sand bars makeing out from them, passed (2) Elk Island about 2½ Miles long & ¾ Mile Wide Situated near the L. S. Covered with Cotton Wood the read Currents Called by the french Gres de Beuff.[1] & grapes &c. &c.

---

[1] [Memoranda by Clark on the inside of front cover and fly-leaf of Codex C :] The Mandans call a red berry common to the upper part of the Missouri *ds-sáy.* The red Berry is called by the Rees Nar-nis the engages call the same Berry Grease de Buff — grows in great abundance & makes a Delightfull Tart.

the river is nearly Streight for a great distance wide and Shoal (4) passed a Creek on the S. S. 16 yards wide we Call Reuben Creek,[1] as R. Fields found it. Camped on the S. S. below the mouth of a Creek on the L. S. three Souex boys Came to us Swam the river and informd that the Band of Seauex called the *Tetongues* (*Tetons*) of 80 Lodges were Camped at the next Creek above, & 60 Lodges more a Short distance above, we gave those boys two Carrots of Tobacco to Carry to their Chiefs, with directions to tell them that we would Speek to them tomorrow

Capt Lewis walked on Shore this evening, R. F. Killed a Doe Goat,

Course Distance & reffurence — 24th Septr

N. 80 W.	3	Miles a pt on the S. S.
West	2½	Miles to the S. S. right of a Isld Situated on the L. S. (1)
West	4	Miles to a Point on the S. S. passed the Island on the L. S.
S. 85° W.	4	Miles to the Mouth of a River Called by Evens[2] Little Missourie I call it the Teton river as the Teton Bands of the Soux reside on it (2)
	13	

24th September Monday 1804 —

Set out early a fair day the wind from the E. pass the mouth of Creek on the L. S. Called Creek on high Water, (*High Water*) passed (1) a large Island on the L. S. about 2 Miles & ½ long on which Colter had Camped & Killed 4 Elk, the wind fair from the S. E. we prepared Some Clothes and a fiew Meadels for the Chiefs of the Teton's bands of Seoux which we expect to See to day at the next river, observe a great Deel of Stone on the Sides of the hills on the S. S. we Saw one Hare, to day, prepared all things for

---

[1] Now East Medicine Knoll River (a translation of its Indian name); across the Missouri here was the site of old Fort George. — COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 127).

[2] Probably referring to a map cited by Coues (*L. and C.*, i, p. xxiii), as made by one Evans in 1804, showing the Missouri River to the Mandans. See our atlas volume, for maps which Lewis and Clark both took with them and made upon the Expedition; one of the former was probably a copy of the Evans map. — ED.

Action in Case of necessity, our Perogus went to the Island for the Meet, Soon after the man on Shore run up the bank and reported that the Indians had Stolen the horse We Soon after Met 5 Ind^s and ankered out Som distance & Spoke to them informed them we were friends, & Wished to Continue So but were not afraid of any Indians, Some of their young men had taken the horse Sent by their Great father for their Cheif and we would not Speek to them untill the horse was returned to us again.

passed (2) a Island on the S. S. on which we Saw Several Elk, about 1½ Miles long Called Good humered [*humoured*] Isl^d Came to about 1½ Miles above off the Mouth of a Small river about 70 yards wide Called by Mr. Evens the Little Mississou [*Missouri*] River, The Tribes of the Seauex Called the Teton, is Camped about 2 Miles up on the N. W. Side, and we Shall Call the River after that Nation, *Teton*[1] This river is 70 yards wide at the mouth of Water, and has a considerable Current we anchored off the mouth

the french Perogue Come up early in the day, the other did not Get up untill in the evening Soon after we had Come too. I went & Smoked with the Chiefs who came to See us here all well, we prepare to Speek with the Indians tomorrow at which time we are informed the Indians will be here, the French Man who had for Some time been Sick, began to blead which allarmed him ⅔ of our party Camped on board the remainder with the Guard on Shore.

---

[1] Also known as Bad River. Near its mouth was Fort Pierre (begun in 1831), named for Pierre Chouteau. — Ed.

CHAPTER IV

FROM TETON RIVER TO THE MANDANS

Clark's Journal and Orders, September 25—October 26, 1804
Order by Lewis, October 13

[Clark:] *25th Sept.* —

A FAIR Morning the Wind from the S. E. all well, raised a Flag Staff & made a orning or Shade on a Sand bar in the mouth of Teton River, for the purpose of Speeking with the Indians under, the Boat Crew on board at 70 yards Distance from the bar The 5 Indians which we met last night Continued, about 11 OClock the 1t & 2d Chief Came we gave them Some of our Provisions to eat, they gave us great Quantitis of Meet Some of which was Spoiled we feel much at a loss for the want of an interpeter the one we have can Speek but little.

Met in Council at 12 oClock and after Smokeing, agreeable to the useal Custom, Cap. Lewis proceeded to Deliver a Speech which we [were — Ed.] oblige[d] to Curtail for want of a good interpeter all our party paraded. gave a Medal to the Grand Chief Calld in Indian *Un ton gar Sar bar* in French *Beeffe nure* [Beuffle noir] Black Buffalow. Said to be a good Man, 2[nd] Chief *Torto hon gar* or the *Parti sin* or Partizan *bad* the 3rd is the Beffe De Medison [Beuffe de Medecine] his name is *Tar ton gar Wa ker* 1[st] Considerable Man, *War zing go.* 2[nd] Considerable Man *Second Bear — Mato co que par.*

Envited those Cheifs on board to Show them our boat and such Curiossities as was Strange to them, we gave them ¼ a glass of whiskey which they appeared to be verry fond of, Sucked the bottle after it was out & Soon began to be troublesom, one the 2d Cheif assumeing Drunkness, as a Cloake for his rascally intentions I went with those Cheifs (*in one of the*

Perogues with 5 men — 3 & 2 Ind^s) (which left the boat with great reluctiance) to Shore with a view of reconsileing those men to us, as Soon as I landed the Perogue three of their young Men Seased the Cable of the Perogue, (*in which we had pressents &c*) the Chiefs Sold^r [*each Chief has a soldier*] Huged the mast, and the 2^d Chief was verry insolent both in words & justures (*pretended Drunkenness & staggered up against me*) declareing I should not go on, Stateing he had not receved presents sufficent from us, his justures were of Such a personal nature I felt My self Compeled to Draw my Sword (*and Made a Signal to the boat to prepare for action*) at this Motion Cap^t Lewis ordered all under arms in the boat, those with me also Showed a Disposition to Defend themselves and me, the grand Chief then took hold of the roap & ordered the young Warrers away, I felt My Self warm & Spoke in verry positive terms.

Most of the Warriers appeared to have ther Bows strung and took out their arrows from the quiver. as I (*being surrounded*) was not permited (*by them*) to return, I Sent all the men except 2 Inp^r [Interpreters] to the boat, the perogue Soon returned with about 12 of our determined men ready for any event. this movement caused a no: of the Indians to withdraw at a distance, (*leaving their chiefs & soldiers alone with me*). Their treatment to me was verry rough & I think justified roughness on my part, they all lift my Perogue, and Council^d with themselves the result I could not lern and nearly all went off after remaining in this Situation Some time I offered my hand to the 1. & 2. Chiefs who refus^d to receve it. I turned off & went with my men on board the perogue, I had not pros^d more the [than] 10 paces before the 1st Cheif 3rd & 2 Brave Men Waded in after me. I took them in & went on board [1]

We proceeded on about 1 Mile & anchored out off a Willow Island placed a guard on Shore to protect the Cooks & a guard in the boat, fastened the Perogues to the boat, I call this Island bad humered Island as we were in a bad humer.

---

[1] This paragraph is misplaced in the MS.; it is written on the next page after that containing the first part of this council with the Indians. We have placed it in proper position. — ED.

Course Distance & reffurences — 26th Sep^{t} 1804 bad^{hd} Is^{d}

N. 28° W. 4½ Miles to a p^{t} on the L. S. passing a Small Willow Island at 1½ Miles & Several Sand bars the Water Shallow came too (1)

26th of September Wednesday 1804 —

Set out early proceeded on and Came to by the Wish of the Chiefs for to let their Squars [squaws] & boys see the Boat and Suffer them to treat us well great numbers of men womin & children on the banks viewing us, these people Shew great anxiety, they appear Spritely, Generally ill looking & not well made their legs [*& arms*] Small generally, [*high cheek bones, prominent eyes*] they Grese & Black [*paint*] themselves [*with coal*] when they dress [*the disting^{d} men*] make use of a hawks feathers [*Calumet feather adorned with porcupine quills & fastened to the top of the head & falls backwards*] about their heads. the men [wear] a robe & each a polecats Skin, for to hold ther *Bawe roley* [*Bois roule*] for Smoking,[1] fond of Dress & Show badly armed with fusees, &c. The Squaws are Chearfull fine look'g womin not handsom, High Cheeks Dressed in Skins a Peticoat and roab which foldes back over ther Sholder, with long wool, do all their laborious work & I may Say perfect Slaves to the Men, as all Squars of Nations much at War, or where the Womin are more noumerous than the men.[2] after Comeing too Cap^{t} Lewis & 5 men went on Shore with the Cheifs, who appeared disposed to make up & be friendly, after Captain Lewis had been on Shore about 3 hours I became uneasy for fear of Deception & Sent a Serjeant to See him and know his treatment which he reported was friendly, & they were prepareing for a Dance this evening The[y] made frequent Selicitiations for us to remain one night only and let them Show their good disposition towards us, we deturmined to remain, after the return of Capt. Lewis, I went on Shore on landing I was receved on a elegent painted B.[uffalo] Robe & taken to the Village by 6 Men & was not permited to touch the ground untill I was put down in the grand Concill house on a White dressed Robe. I saw Several Maha Prissners and Spoke to the Chiefs [telling them that — Ed.] it was necessary to give those prisoners up & become good friends with the Mahas if they wished to follow the advice of their great father I was in Several Lodges neetly formed as before mentioned as to the Baureily (*Bois brulé* — Yankton) Tribe. I was met (*on landing from the boat*) by about 10 Well Dressd. young Men who took me up in a roabe Highly adecrated and Set me Down by the Side of their Chief on a Dressed Robe in a large Council House, this house formed a ¾ Circle of Skins Well Dressed and Sown together under this Shelter about 70 Men Set forming a Circle in front of the Cheifs a plac of 6 feet Diameter was Clear and the pipe of peace raised on (*forked*) Sticks (*about 6 or 8 inches from the ground*) under which there was swans down scattered, on each Side of this Circle two Pipes, the (*two*) flags of Spain 2 & the Flag we gave them in front of the Grand Chief a large fire was near in which provisions were Cooking, in the Center about 400lbs. of excellent Buffalo Beef as a present for us. Soon after they Set me Down, the Men went for Capt. Lewis brought him in the same way and placed him also by the Chief in a fiew minits an old man rose & Spoke aproveing what we had done & informing us of their situation requesting us to take pity on them & which was answered. The great Chief then rose with great State [speaking — Ed.] to the Same purpote as far as we Could learn & then with Great Solemnity took up the pipe of Peace & after pointing it to the heavins the 4 quarters of the Globe & the earth, he made Some disertation, (*then made a Speech*) lit it and presented the Stem to us to Smoke, when the Principal Chief Spoke with the Pipe of Peace he took in one hand some of the most Delicate parts of the Dog which was prepared for the fiest & made a Sacrefise to the flag. [this sentence misplaced in MS., but properly placed by us. — Ed.]

---

[1] *Bois roulé*, literally "rolled wood," — better known by its Algonkin name, Kinikinik (Kinnikinnic), — a mixture of tobacco with scrapings or shavings from various woods, especially that of sumac, red osier, and other dogwoods, and bearberry. — Ed.

[2] Biddle describes in much greater detail (i, pp. 84–90) the costumes and mode of life of these Teton Indians. — Ed.

after A Smoke had taken place, & a Short Harange to his people, we were requested to take the Meal (*& then put before us the dog which they had been cooking, & Pemitigon*[1] *& ground potatoe in Several platters Pem*^{n}. *is Buff*^{o} *meat dried or jerked pounded & mixed with grease raw. Dog Sioux think great dish used on festivals eat little of dog—pem*^{n}. *& pot*^{o} *good.*) We Smoked for an hour (*till*) Dark & all was Cleared away a large fire made in the Center, about 10 Musitions playing on tambereens (*made of hoops & Skin stretched*), long Sticks with Deer & Goats Hoofs tied so as to make a gingling noise, and many others of a Similer Kind, those Men began to Sing, & Beet on the Tamboren, the Women Came foward highly Deckerated in their Way, with the Scalps and Tropies of War of their fathers Husbands Brothers or near Connections & proceeded to Dance the War Dance (*Women only dance jump up & down—five or six young men selected accompanied with songs the tamborin making the song extempore words & music every now & then one of the com' come out & repeat some exploit in a sort of song—this taken up by the young men and the women dance to it*) which they done with great Chearfullness untill about 12 oClock when we informed the Cheifs that they were [*must be*] fatigued [*amusing us*] &c. they then retired & we Accomp^{d}. by 4 Cheifs returned to our boat, they Stayed with us all night. Those people have Some brave men which they make use of as Soldiers those men attend to the police of the Village Correct all errors I saw one of them to day whip 2 Squars, who appeared to have fallen out, when he approach^{d}. all about appeared to flee with great turrow [terror]. at night they keep two 3, 4 5 men at different Distances walking around Camp Singing the accurrunces of the night

All the Men on board 100 paces from Shore Wind from the S. E. moderate one man verry sick on board with a Dangerass Abscess on his Hip. All in Spirits this evening.

In this Tribe I saw 25 Squars and Boys taken 13 days ago in a battle with the Mahars in this battle they Destroy^{d} 40 Lodges, Killed 75 Men, & som boys & Children, & took 48

---

[1] Better known as "pemmican." — ED.

Prisoners Womin & boys which they promis both Capt. Lewis and my self Shall be Delivered up to Mr. Durion at the Bous rulie (*Bois brulé*) Tribe,[1] those are a retched and Dejected looking people the Squars appear low & Corse but this is an unfavourable time to judge of them

We gave our Mahar intepr. some fiew articles to give those Squars in his name Such as Alls, needles &c. &c.

I saw & eat Pemitigon the Dog, Groud. potatoe made into a Kind of homney, which I thought but little inferior. I also Saw a Spoon Made of a horn of an Animell of the Sheep Kind (*the mountain ram of Argalia*[2]) the Spoon will hold 2 quarts.

27th of Sept. Thursday 1804—

I rose early after a bad nights Sleep found the Chief[s] all up, and the bank as useal lined with Spectators we gave the 2 great Cheifs a Blanket a peace, or rether they took off agreeable to their Custom the one they lay on and each one Peck of corn. after Brackfast Capt. Lewis & the Cheifs went on Shore, as a verry large part of their nation was comeing in, the Disposition of whome I did not know one of us being sufficent on Shore, I wrote a letter to Mr. P. Durion & prepared a meadel & Some Comsn. (*Certificates*) & Sent to Cap Lewis at 2 oClock Capt. Lewis Returned with 4 Chiefs & a Brave Man (*Consid' Man*) named *War cha pa* or on his Guard when the friends of those people [*the Scioux*] die they run arrows through their flesh above and below their elbows as a testimony of their Greaf.

after Staying about half an hour, I went with them on Shore, Those men left the boat with reluctience, I went first to the 2d. Cheifs Lodge, where a croud came around after Speeking on various Subjects I went to a princpal mans lodge from them to the grand Chiefs lodge, after a fiew minits he invited me to a Lodge within the Circle in which I Stayed with all their principal Men untill the Dance began, which was Similer to the one of last night performed by their women with poles

---

[1] One of the bands of the Teton Sioux. — Ed.

[2] The Rocky Mountain sheep or argal (*Ovis montana.*) — Ed.

(*in their hands*) on which Scalps of their enemies were hung, Some with the Guns Spears & War empliments of (*taken by*) their husbands [*&c.*] in their hands.

Capt. Lewis Came on Shore and we Continued untill we were Sleepy & returned to our boat, the 2nd Chief & one principal Man accompanied us, Those two Indians accompanied me on board in the Small Perogue; Capt. Lewis with a guard Still on Shore the man who Steered not being much acustomed to Steer, passed the bow of the boat & the peroge Came broad Side against the Cable & broke it which obliged me to order in a loud voice all hands up & at their ores, my preemptry order to the men and the bustle of their getting to their ores allarmd. the Cheifs, together with the appearance of the Men on Shore, as the boat turnd. The Cheif hollowaed & allarmed the Camp or Town informing them that the Mahars was about attacking us (*them*). In about 10 minits the bank was lined with men armed the 1st. Cheif at their head, about 200 men appeared and after about ½ hour returned all but about 60 men who continued on the bank all night, the Cheifs Contd. all night with us. This allarm I as well as Capt. Lewis Considered as the Signal of their intentions (which was to Stop our proceeding on our journey and if Possible rob us) we were on our Guard all night, the misfortune of the loss of our Anchor obliged us to Lay under a falling bank much exposd. to the accomplishment of their hostile intentions. P. C. our Bowman who cd. Speek Mahar informed us in the night that the Maha Prisoners informed him we were to be Stoped. we Shew as little Sighns of a Knowledge of their intentions as possible all prepared on board for any thing which might hapen, we kept a Strong guard all night in the boat, no Sleep

28th of September 1804 Friday —

Made many attemps in different ways to find our anchor, but Could not, the Sand had Covered it, from the Misfortune of last night our boat was laying at Shore in a verry unfavourable Situation, after finding that the anchor Could not be found we deturmined to proceed on, with great difficuelty got the Chiefs out of our boat, and when we was about Setting out the Class Called the Soldiers took possession of the Cable the 1st Cheif which was Still on board, & intended to go a Short distance up with us. I told him the men of his nation Set on the Cable, he went out & told Capt. Lewis who was at the bow the men Who Set on the roap was Soldiers, and wanted Tobacco Capt. L. [*said*] would not agree to be forced into any thing, the 2d Chief Demanded a flag & Tobacco which we refusd. to Give Stateing proper reasons to them for it after much Dificuelty — which had nearly reduced us to necessity to hostilites I threw a Carrot of Tobacco to 1st. Chief took the port fire from the gunner. Spoke so as to touch his pride The Chief gave the Tobacco to his Soldiers & he jurked the rope from them and handed it to the bowsman we then Set out under a Breeze from the S. E. about 2 miles up we observed the 3rd Chief on Shore beckining to us we took him on board he informed us the roap was held by the order of the 2d Chief who was a Double Spoken man, Soon after we Saw a man Comeing full Speed, thro: the plains left his horse & proceeded across a Sand bar near the Shore we took him on board & observed that he was the Son of the Chief we had on board we Sent by him a talk to the nation Stateint [stating] the cause of our hoisting the red flag undr. the white, if they were for peace Stay at home & do as we had Directed them, if the[y] were for war or were Deturmined to stop us we were ready to defend our Selves, we halted one houre & ½ on the S. S. & made a Substitute of Stones for a ancher, refreshed our men and proceeded on about 2 Miles higher up & Came to a verry Small Sand bar in the middle of the river & Stayed all night, I am verry unwell for want of Sleep Deturmined to Sleep to night if possible, the Men Cooked & we rested well.

Course Distance & reffs

N. 33 W.	3	Miles to the extmty of a Sand bar on the L. S. passed a Willow Isld on the L. S. at the Comse. of the Course.
S. 80° W.	3	Mls to an object on the bank in a bend to the S. S. at Some woods, opsd. the High land on the L. S. Camped.
	6	

29th of Sep^{tr} Satturday 1804.—

Set out early Some bad Sand bars, proceeded on at 9 oClock we observed the 2^{d} Chief & 2 principal Men one Man & a Squar on Shore, they wished to go up with us as far as the other part of their band, which they Said was on the river a head not far Distant we refused Stateing verry Sufficint reasons and was Plain with them on the Subject, they were not pleased observed that they would walk on Shore to the Place we intended to Camp to night, we observed it was not our wish that they Should for if they did we Could not take them or any other Tetons on board except the one we had now with us who might go on Shore whenever he pleased. they proceeded on, the Chief on board ask^{d} for a twist[1] of Tobacco for those men we gave him ½ of a twist, and Sent one by them for that part of their band which we did not See, & Continued on Saw great numbers of Elk at the mouth of a Small Creek Called No timber C—as no timber appeared to be on it. above the mouth of this Creek (*a Ricara band of*) the Panies had a Village 5 years ago, (*no remains but the mound which surrounded the town.*) The 2^{d} Cheif came on the Sand bar & requested we would put him across the river, I Sent a Perogue & Crossed him & one Man to the S. S. and proceeded on & Came too on a Sand bar on about ½ Mile from the main Shore & put on it 2 Sentinals Continud all night at anchor (we Substitute large Stones for anchors in place of the one we lost all in high Spirits &c.

Course Distance & refference — 29 Sept^{r}

S. 60° W.	2	M^{ls} to a p^{t} on S. S. Passing Several Sand bars.
N. 80° W.	1¼	to a tree on L. S.
N. 16° E.	2½	to a p^{t} on S. S.
N. 8° W.	1¾	to the Mouth of a Creek on the L. S. Where the Panias had a Town.
N. 45° E.	2	M^{ls} to a p^{t} on the L. Side
N. 25° E.	1½	Miles to the Lower p^{t} of a Willow Island[2] in the middle of the river.
	11	

---

[1] The same as the "carrot" mentioned elsewhere. — Ed.

[2] Now Okobojou. — Ed.

Course Distance & refferrence — 30th Sept

N. 30° W.	3	Miles to a tree at the upper pt of some woods on the S. S.
N. 80° W.	1½	Miles on the S. S.
N. 64° W.	3	Mls to a Bush on L. S.
N. 46° W.	1½	Mls on the L. S.
N. 10. W.	3	Mls to a pt on the S. S. passed Several Sand bars & the Camp of a Band of Tetons (1)
North	2	Miles to a tree on the S. S.
N. 24° W.	4	Mls to a pt on the L. S.
N. 50° W.	2½	Mls to the Lower pt of Pania Island[1] situated in the midl of the river (2)
	20½	

30th of Sept Sunday 1804 —

Set out this morning early had not proceeded on far before we discovered an Indn running after us, he came up with us at 7 oClock & requested to come on bord and go up to the *Recorees*[2] we refused to take any of that band on board if he chose to proceed on Shore it was verry Well Soon after I descovered on the hills at a great distance great numbers of Indians which appeared to be makeing to the river above us, we proceeded on under a Double reafed Sail, & some rain at 9 oClock observed a large band of Indians the Same which I had before seen on the hills incamping on the bank the L. S. we Came too on a Sand bar Brackfast & proceeded on & Cast the anchor opposit their Lodge at about 100 yards distant, and informed the Indians which we found to be a part of the Band we had before Seen, that (*we*) took them by the hand and Sent to each Chief a Carrot of tobacco, as we had been treated badly by some of the band below, after Staying 2 days for them, we Could not delay any time, & referred them to Mr. Durion for a full account of us and to here our Talk Sent by him to the Tetons, those were verry selicitious for us to land and eate with them, that they were friendly &c. &c. we appoligised & proceeded on,[1] Sent the Peroge to Shore above with the Tobacco & Deliv^d it to a Sold^r of the Chief with us Several of them ran up the river, the Ch^f on board threw them out a Small twist of Tobacco & told them to go back & open ther ears. they rec[e]ved the Tobacco & returned to their lodges. we saw great numbers of white Guls This day is Cloudy & rainey. refresh the men with a glass of whisky after Brackfast.

---

[1] Now Cheyenne. — Ed.

[2] Otherwise called Ricaree, Ree, or, more correctly, Arikara; Lewis says ("Statistical View," p. 23) that they are "the remains of ten large tribes of Panias (Pawnees);" and estimates that they then (1806) numbered 500 warriors, or 2,000 souls. Cf. Biddle's account of their migrations (i, 104). — Ed.

We Saw about 6 Miles above 2 Indians who Came to the bank and looked at us about ½ an hour & went over the hills to the S. W. we proceeded on under a verry Stiff Breeze from the S. E., the Stern of the boat got fast on a log and the boat turned & was verry near filling before we got her righted, the waves being verry high, The Chief on board was So fritened at the Motion of the boat which in its rocking Caused Several loose articles to fall on the Deck from the lockers, he ran off and hid himself, we landed, he got his gun and informed us he wished to return, that all things were cleare for us to go on, we would not see any more Tetons &c. we repeated to him what had been Said before, and advised him to keep his men away, gave him a blanket a Knife & some Tobacco, Smok^d a pipe & he Set out. We also Set Sale and Came to at a Sand bar, & Camped, a verry Cold evening, all on guard.

Course Distance & reffurence — 1st October

N. 80° W.	3	M^{ls} to the upper p^t of a large Island in the River. (1)[2]
N. 70° W.	2	M^{ls} to the Mouth of Chien or Dog River[3] on the L. S. (2)[2]
N. 16° W.	2½	Miles to a p^t on the S. S. Passed verry bad Sand bars
N. 50° E.	4	Mile to Some Willows on the L. S. passed 2 Creeks on the L. S. the upper Small.
S. 53° E.	4½	M^{ls} to a p^t on the S. S. passing a Bluff on the L. S.
	16	

---

[1] Passed 60 Lodges of Tetons, the remainder of the band. — CLARK (memorandum on p. 225 of Codex C).

[2] In MS., these figures are misplaced. — ED.

[3] Erroneously thus named, from the resemblance of the French word *chien* (dog) to the tribal name Cheyenne. — ED.

Sand bars are So noumerous, that it is impossible to describe them, & think it unnecessary to mention them.

1st of October Monday 1804 —

The wind blew hard all last night from the S. E. verry cold Set out early the wind Still hard, passed a large Island in the middle of the river (1) ops^d the lower point of this Island the Recrerees formerly lived in a large Town on the L. S. (*remains only a mound circular walls 3 or 4 feet high*) above the head of the Island about 2 miles we passed the (2) River Chien (or Dog River) (*Chayenne*) L. S. this river Comes in from the S. W. and is about 400 yards wide, the Current appears gentle, throwing out but little Sands, and appears to throw out but little water the heads of this River is not known (*in the second range of the Côte Noir its course generally about East. So called from the Chayenne Indians who live on the heads of it*) a part of the nation of Dog Indians live some distance up this river, the precise distance I cant learn, above the mouth of this river the Sand bars are thick and the water Shoal the river Still verry wide and falling a little we are obliged to haul the boat over a Sand bar, after makeing Several attempts to pass. the wind So hard we Came too & Stayed 3 hours after it Slackened a little we proceeded on round a bend, the wind in the after part of the Day a head. (2) passed a Creek on the L. S. which we Call the Sentinal, this part of the river has but little timber, the hills not so high, the Sand bars more noumerous, & river more than one mile Wide including the Sand bars. (2) pass a Small Creek above the latter which we Call *lookout C.* Continued on with the wind imediately a head, and Came too on a large Sand bar in the middle of the river, we Saw a man opposit to our Camp on the L. S. which we discov^d to be a Frenchman, a little of[f] (*from Shore among*) the Willows we observed a house, we Call to them to come over, a boy came in a canoe & informed that 2 frenchmen were at the house with good[s] to trade with the Seauex which he expected down from the rickerrees everry day, Sever'l large parties of Seauex Set out from the *rees* for this place to trade with those men.

This M^r *Jon Vallie*[1] informs us that he wintered last winter 300 Leagues up the Chien River under the Black mountains, he informs that this river is verry rapid and dificuelt even for Perogues [*Canoos*] to assend and when riseing the Swels is verry high, one hundred Leagues up it forks one fork Comes from the S. the other at 40 Leagues above the forks enters the black Mountain. The Countrey from the Missourie to the black mountains is much like the Countrey on the Missourie, less timber. & a great perpotion of Ceder.

The black mountains he Says is verry high, and Some parts of it has Snow on it in the Summer great quantities of Pine Grow on the Mountains, a great Noise is heard frequently on those Mountains". No beever on Dog river, on the Mountains great numbers of goat, and a kind of anamale with large circular horns, this animale is nearly the Size of an [*Small*] Elk. [*Argalea*] White bears is also plenty The Chien (*Chayenne*) Ind^s are about 300 Lodges[2] they inhabit this river principally, and Steel horses from the Spanish Settlements, to the S W. this excurtion they make in one month the bottoms & Sides of R Chien is corse gravel. This frenchman gives an account of a white booted turkey an inhabitent of the Cout Noir (*Prairie Cock*)

1st of October Monday 1804 at the Mouth of River Chien or Dog R[3]—

We proceeded now from the mouth of this river 11 miles and camped on a Sand bar in the river opposit to a Tradeing house verry windy & cold. *11 miles above — Chien R*[3] —

---

[1] Evidently meant for Jean Vallé — probably a relative of the François Vallé who was commandant at Ste. Genevieve at the time when that post was delivered by the Spaniards to the United States authorities. — ED.

[2] The Cheyenne tribe is (like the Arapaho) of Algonquian stock. Powell thinks that these savages, having early separated from their kindred at the North, forced their way through hostile tribes, across the Missouri, into the Black Hills country — thus locating between the Siouan and the Shoshonean tribes. See Mooney's account of this tribe, in *U. S. Bur. Ethnol. Rep.*, 1892–93, pp. 1023–1027. — ED.

[3] This paragraph is found on p. 2 of Codex C. — ED.

Course Distance and refferrens. — 2nd of Octr

S. 70° E.	2½	Miles to a wood on the L. Side pass a large Sand bar in the middle & a Willow Isd close under the L. S.
S. 80° E.	1½	Mls on the L. S.
N. 62. E.	2	Miles on the L. S. a Willow bottom opposit on the S. S.
N. 15° E.	4	Miles to the L. Side of an Island Situated near the S. S. & 1 Ml above the lower point of the Sd Island (1)
N. 28° E.	2	Miles to the pt of a Sand bar Makeing from the head of the Island & Camped (2)
	12	

2nd of October Tuesday 1804 —

a Violent wind all night from the S. E. Slackened a little and we proceeded on *Mr Jon Vallie Came* on board and proceeded on 2 Miles with us, a verry Cold morning Some black Clouds flying took a Meridian altitude & made the Lattitude *44° 19' 36"*. North this was taken at the upper part of the gouge of the Lookout bend, the Sentinal heard a Shot over the hills to the L. S. dureing the time we were Dineing on a large Sand bar. the after part of this day is pleasent, at 2 oClock opposit a Wood on the L. S. we observed Some Indians on a hill on the S. S. one Came down to the river opposit to us and fired off his gun, & beckend to us to Come too, we payed no attention to him he followed on Some distance, we Spoke a few words to him, he wished us to go a Shore and to his Camp which was over the hill and Consisted of 20 Lodges,[1] we excused our Selves advised him to go and here our talk of Mr Durion, he enquired for traders we informed him one was in the next bend below. & parted, he returned, & we proceeded on (1) passed a large Island, on the S. S. here we expected the Tetons would attempt to Stop us and under that idear we prepared our selves for action which we expected every moment. opsd this Island on the L. S. a Small Creek Coms in, This Island we call Isd of *Caution*[2] we took in Some wood on a favourable Situation where we Could defend our Men on Shore & (2) Camped on a Sand bar ½ a Mile from the main Shore the Wind changed to the N. W. & rose verry high and Cold which Continud. The Current of the Missourie is less rapid & Contains much less sediment, of the Same Colour.

---

[1] Gass says (p. 68): "He said he belonged to the Jonkta or Babarole band," probably referring to the Yankton. — Ed.

[2] Now Plum Island. — Ed.

2nd of October Tuesday 1804[1] —

Proceeded on as mentioned in Journal No. 2 *twelve* miles camped above a large Island on a Sand bar, verry windy and cold the after part of this day, the mid day verry warm. The Lattitude as taken to day is 44° 19′ 36″ observe great caution this day expecting the Seaux intentions some what hostile towards our progression, The river not so rapid as below the Chien, its width nearly the same. 12 miles

3rd of October Wednesday 1804. — Wind blew hard all night from the N. W. Some rain and verry Cold we Set out at 7 oClock & proceeded on

N. 50° E.	2½	Mls to a pt of Wood on the L. S.
N. 54 E	2	Miles to a tree in a bend S. S.
North	2	Miles to a pt High Land on L. S. wind hard a head Came too & Dined.
N. 22° W.	4½	Miles to the head of good hope Island. 2 Indians Came to the mouth of a Creek on the S. S.
	11	Shields

3rd of October Wednesday 1804[2] —

The N. W. wind blew verry hard all night with Some rain a cold morning, we Set out at 7 oClock and proceeded on at 12 oclock landed on a Bare L. S. examined the Perogus & focatle (*forecastle*) of the (*boat*) to See if the mice had done any damage, Several bags cut by them corn scattered &c Some of our clothes also spoiled by them, and papers &c, &c. at 1 oClock an Indian came to the bank S. S. with a turkey on his back, four others Soon joined him, we attempted several chanels and could not find water to assend, landed on a Sand bar & concluded to Stay all night, & Send out and hunt a chanell, some rain this afternoon. Saw Brant and white gulls flying Southerly in large flocks.

---

[1] This entry is found on p. 2 of Codex C. — Ed.

[2] At this point the journal is continued in Codex C, the last entry therein being dated April 7, 1805. — Ed.

Course Distance & reffurences. 3 rd

N. 50° E	2½	miles to a point of wood on the Larboard Side.
N. 54° E	2	miles to a tree in the bend to the Larboard Side.
North	2	miles to a point of high Land on the Larboard Side.
N. 22° W.	1½	miles on the L. Side under a Bluff.
	8 miles	

4th *of October Thursday* 1804—

the wind blew all night from the NW. some rain, we were obliged to Drop down 3 miles to get the Chanel Suf^t. deep to pass up, Several Indians on the Shore viewing of us called to us to land one of them gave 3 yels & Sciped [*skipped*] a ball before us, we payed no attention to him, proceeded on and came too on the L. S. to brackf't one of those Indians swam across to us beged for Powder, we gave him a piece of Tobacco & Set him over on a Sand bar, and set out,. the wind hard ahead (1) passed a Island in the middle of the river about 3 miles in length, we call Good hope Island, (2) at 4 miles passed a (2) Creek on the L. S. about 12 yards wide Capt. Lewis and 3 men walked on Shore & crossed over to an (3) Island situated on the S. S. of the current & near the center of the river this Isl^d. is about 1½ miles long & nearly ½ as wide, in the Center of this Island was an old village of the rickeries called *La hoo catt* it was circular and walled containing 17 lodges and it appears to have been deserted about five years, the Island contains but little timber. we camped on the Sand bar makeing from this Island, the day verry cool.

Course Distance & reffurences, 4th Oct^r

N. 18° W.	8½	miles to a p^t on the S. S. passed an Island Goodhope in the middle of the river (1)
N. 12° E.	1½	miles on the S. S. passed a creek on the L. S. (2)
N. 45° E.	2	miles on the S. p^t passed an Island on which there was a Village (3) of Ricreries in the year 1797. La hoo-catt
	12	

5th of October, Friday 1804 —

Frost this morning, we Set out early and proceeded on (1) passed a Small Creek on the L. S. at 7 oClock heard some yels proceeded on Saw 3 Indians of the Teton band, they called to us to come on Shore, beged Some Tobacco, we answd. them as useal and proceeded on, passed (2) a Creek on the S. S. at 3 mls. above the mouth we saw one white Brant in a gang of about 30, the others all as dark as usial, a Discription of this kind of Gees or Brant shall be given here after Saw a gang of Goats Swiming across the river out of which we killed four they were not fatt. in the evening passed a Small (3) Island Situated close to the L. Side, at the head of this Isd. a large Creek coms in on the L. S. saw white Brants, we call this Creek white Brant Creek. I walked on the Isd. found it Covered with wild Rye, I Shot a Buck, Saw a large gang of Goat on the hills opposit, one Buck killed, also a Prarie wolf this evening. The high Land not so high as below, river about the Same width, the Sand bars as noumerous, the earth Black and many of the Bluffs have the Appearance of being on fire. We came too and camped on a mud bar makeing from the S. S. the evening is calm and pleasent, refreshed the men with a glass of whiskey.

Course Distance & reffurences. — 5th October

N. 63° E.	1½	under Some high land on the S. S.
East.	3	miles to a point of Timber on the L. S. passed a creek on the L. S. (1) high land on the S. S.
N. 80 E	1½	mls. to a Tree in the bend to the S. S.
N. 36° W.	2	mls. to a pt of high land on the L. S. passd a creek on the S. S. (2)
N. 50° W.	3	miles to a Point to the S. S.
N. 17° W.	3	mls. to a tree on the S. S. passd a Small Island close on the L. S. above the Sd. Island a Creek comes in on the L. S.
N. 16° E.	6	mls. to a pt. on the L. Side opposit a Willow Island Situated near the S. Shore
	20	

6th October Satturday 1804. —

a cool morning wind from the North Set out early passed a willow Island (1) Situated near the S. Shore at the upper point of Som timber on the S. S. many large round Stones near the middle of the river, those Stones appear to have been washed from the hills (2) passed a Village of about 80 neet Lodges covered with earth and picketed around, those loges are Spicious [spacious — Ed.] of an Octagon form as close together as they can possibly be placed and appear to have been inhabited last Spring, from the Canoes of Skins Mats buckits &c. found in the lodges, we are of oppinion they were the recrereis We found Squashes of 3 Different Kinds growing in the Village, one of our men Killed an Elk close by this Village, I saw 2 wolves in persute of another which appeared to be wounded and nearly tired, we proceeded on found the river Shole we made Several attempts to find the main Channel between the Sand bars, and was obliged at length to Drag the boat over to Save a league which we must return to get into the deepest Channel, we have been obgd to hunt a Chanl for Some time past the river being devided in many places in a great number of Chanels, Saw Gees, Swan, Brants, & Ducks of Different Kinds on the Sand bars to day, Capt Lewis walked on Shore Saw great numbers of Prarie hens, I observe but fiew Gulls or Pleover in this part of the river, The *Corvos* or Magpye is verry Common in this quarter. We camped on a large Sand bar off the mouth of Beaver or Otter Creek, on the S.S. this creek is about 22 yards wide at the mouth and contains a greater perpotion of Water than common for creeks of its Sise[1]

Course Distance and Reffurences — 6th Octr

N. 4° E	8	miles to a point of woodland on the L. S. passed a willow Isd S. S.
N. 8° W.	1	Ml on the L. Side
N. 32 W.	3	Mls to a point on the S. S. passed an old Village of the Rickorrees at the Comst of this Course (2)
N. 40° W.	2½	Miles the Mouth of Beaver (otter Creek) on the S. S. a large Sand bar opposit
	14½	

---

[1] Now Swan Creek, in Walworth Co. — Coues (*L. and C.*, i, p. 155).

7th of October Sunday 1804—

a Cloudy morning, Some little rain frost last night, we Set out early proceeded on 2 miles to the mouth of a (1) River on the L.S. and brackfast this river when full is 90 yards wide the water is at this time Confined within 20 yards, the Current appears jentle, this river throws out but little Sand. at the mouth of this river we Saw the Tracks of white bear which was verry large, I walked up this river a mile. below the (2) mouth of this river is the remains of a Rickorree *Village* or Wintering Camp fortified in a circular form of about 60 Lodges, built in the Same form of those passed yesterday This Camp appears to have been inhabited last winter, many of their willow and Straw mats, Baskets & Buffalow Skin Canoes remain intire within the Camp, the Ricaries call this river *Sur-war-kar-na* or Park.[1] [*R ?*]

Course Distance & Reffurences — 7th October

N. 42° W.	2	Miles to the Mouth of a River Caled *Sur war car na* in a bend to the L. S. (1) a village at Mo: (2)
N. 30° E.	3½	M^{ls} to a Clump of bushes in a bend to the S. S. passing for ¾ mile on the L. S.
N. 30° W.	2	miles to a pt of high land on the L. Side, passed a willow Island (3)
N. 35° W.	7	on the L. Side passed a Sand bar on the S. S. (4)
N. 10° W.	1	mile on the L. S. to a pt.
N. 80° W.	3	miles to the left Side of an Island (5) in the mid river
N. 45° W.	1	Mile to the head of the Willows at the head of the S. Grouse Isl^{d}
West	2½	miles to a point on the main S. S. a large Sand bar from the upper point of the Island high land on both Sides opposit this Island.
	22	

from this river (*which heads in the 1st black mountains*) we proceeded on under a gentle Breeze from the S.W. at 10 oClock we Saw 2 Indians on the S.S. they asked for something to eat, & informed us they were part of the *Beiffs De Medesons* (*Beuffles de Medecines*) Lodge on their way to the

---

[1] Now Owl, or Moreau, River. — ED.

Rickerrees passed (3) a Willow Island in a bend to the S.S. (4) at 5 Miles pass^{d} a willow Island on the S.S. Wind hard from the South in the evening I walked on an (5) Island nearly the middle of the river Called Grous Island, (*the walls of a village on this island*) one of the men killed a Shee Brarow,[1] another man Killed a Black tail Deer, the largest Doe I ever Saw, (Black under her breast) this Island is nearly 1 ¼ m^{ls} Squar no timber high and Covered with grass wild rye and contains Great Numbers of Grouse, we proceeded on a Short distance above the Island and Camped on the S.S. a fine evening.

8th of October Monday 1804. —

a cool morning Set out early the wind from the N.W. proceeded on, passed the mouth of a Small Creek on the L.S. about 2½ miles above Grouse Island, (3) passed a Willow Island which divides the Current equilly. (2) passed the mouth of a River called by the Ricares *We tar hoo*[2] on the L.S. this river is 120 yards wide, the water of which at this time is Confined within 20 yards, dischargeing but a Small quantity, throwing out mud with Small propotion of Sand, great quantities of the red Berries, ressembling Currents, are on the river in every bend. *77°. 33′. 00″* Lattitude from the obsevation of to day at the mouth of this river (*heads in the Black mount'n*) is 45°. 39′. 5″ North. proceeded on passed a (3) Small river of 25 yards wide Called (4) Rear par or Beaver Dam R: this river [*Ma ro pa*][3] is entirely chocked up with mud, with a Streem of 1 Inch Diamiter passing through, descharging no Sand, at 1 (5) mile passed the lower pint of an Island close on the L.S. 2 of our men discovered the ricckerree village, about the Center of the Island on the L. Side on the main Shore. this Island is about 3 miles long, Seperated from the L.S. by a Channel of about 60 yards wide verry Deep, The Isl^{d} is covered with fields, where those People raise their Corn Tobacco Beens &c. &c. Great numbers of those people came on the Island to See us pass, we passed above the head of the Island & Capt. Lewis with 2 interpeters & 2 men went to the Village I formed a Camp of the french & the guard on Shore, with one Sentinal on board of the boat at anchor, a pleasent evening all things arranged both for Peace or War, This Village (6) is Situated about the center of a large Island near the L. Side & near the foot of Some high bald uneaven hills, Several french men Came up with Capt. Lewis in a Perogue, one of which is a Mr. Gravellin[1] a man well versed in the language of this nation and gave us some information relitive to the Countrey nat[i]on &c.

---

[1] Corrupt form of *blaireau* (the badger). — Ed.

[2] Now Grand River; an Indian agency of the same name at its mouth. — Ed.

[3] Known as Rampart Creek, and Oak Creek. — Ed.

Courses Distance and reffurences. — 8th. Octr

N. 70°. W	2	Miles to a tree in the bend to the L. Side, passed a small Creek L. S. (1)
N. 10°. W.	1	miles to the pt. on the S. S.
N. 15.° E.	2½	to the mo: of a River [*We ter hoo 120 yds wide*] in the bend to the L. S. (2) passing over a willow Island (3)
N. 40°. E.	1	mile on the L. Side
N. 30° E	1	mile on the L. S. to the Mouth of a Small river [*Ma-ro-pa*] (4)
N. 15°. E	1	mile to the lower pt. of an Isd. (5)
N.orth	3½	Miles to a pt. on the S. S. passd the head of the Isd and the 1st. rickorries Village (6) oppsd a Creek we Call after the 1st. Chief Ka kaw iss assa Creek. L. S.
	12	

[Orderly Book; Clark:] *Orders October the 8th 1804.*

Robert Frazer being regularly inlisted and haveing become one of the *Corps* of *Vollenteers* for *North-Western Discovery*, he is therefore to be viewed & respected accordingly; and will be anexed to Sergeant Gass's mess.

Wm. CLARK Cpt. &c.
MERIWETHER LEWIS
Capt. 1st. U.S. Regt. Infty

---

[1] Joseph Gravelines, a trader residing among the Arikara tribe, in company with Antoine Tabeau (Tabo), who is mentioned below. — ED.

[Clark:] *River Maropa 9th of October 1804. Tuesday* —

a windey rainey night, and cold, So much So we Could not speek with the Indians to day the three great Chiefs and many others Came to see us to day, we gave them some tobacco and informed them we would Speek on tomorrow, the day continued Cold & windey some rain Sorry Canoos of Skins passed down from the 2 Villages a Short distance above, and many Came to view us all day, much astonished at my black Servent, who did not lose the opportunity of [displaying — Ed.] his powers Strength &c. &c. this nation never Saw a black man before.[1]

Several hunters Came in with loades of meat, I observed Several Canoos made of a Single Buffalow Skin with 3 thre squars Cross the river to day in waves as high as I ever Saw them on this river, quite uncomposed I have a Slite Plursie this evening verry cold &c. &c.[2]

1st Chiefs name *Ka kawissassa* (lighting Crow)
2d do do *Pocasse* (or Hay)
3rd do do *piaheto* (or Eagles feather)

10th of October Wednesday 1804.

a fine morning wind from the S.E. at about 11 oClock the wind Shifted, to the N. W. we prepare all things ready to Speak to the Indians, Mr Tabo & Mr Gravolin came to brackfast with us the Cheefs &c. came from the lower Town, but none from the 2 upper Towns, which is the largest, we Continue to delay & waite for them at 12 oClock Despatchd Gravelin to envite them to come down, we have every reason to believe that a gellousy exists between the Villages for fear of our makeing the 1st Cheif from the lower Village, at one oClock the Cheifs all assembled & after Some little Cerremony the council Commenced, we informd them what we had told the others before i. e. Ottoes & Seaux. made 3 Cheif 1 for each Village; gave them presents. after the Council was over we Shot the air guns which astonished them much, the[y] then Departed and we rested Secure all night, Those Indians wer much astonished at my Servent, they never Saw a black man before, all flocked around him & examind him from top to toe, he Carried on the joke and made himself more turribal than we wished him to doe. Those Indians are not fond of Spirts Licquer. of any kind [1]

---

[1] By way of amusement he told them that he had once been a wild animal, and caught and tamed by his master; and to convince them showed them feats of strength which added to his looks made him more terrible than we wished him to be. — Biddle (i, p. 101).

In a rare pamphlet entitled *Adventures of Zenas Leonard* (Clearfield, Pa., 1839) — for information regarding which see Chittenden's *Amer. Fur Trade*, i, p. 397 — is an account of a negro residing (1832–34) in the Crow village at the junction of Bighorn and Stinking rivers, who apparently was Clark's servant York. He told Leonard that he first went to that country with Lewis and Clark, with whom he returned to Missouri; that he afterward accompanied a trader up the Missouri, and had remained with the Indians ever since (about ten or twelve years). He had, when Leonard saw him, four Indian wives, and possessed much reputation and influence among the Crows, from whom he secured the return of some horses which they had stolen from Leonard's party. — Walter B. Douglas (St. Louis).

[2] Wind blew hard this morning drove the boat from her anker, to shore. — Clark (memorandum on p. 224 of Codex C).

11th October Thursday 1804—

a fine morning the wind from the S.E. at 11 oClock we met the Grand Cheif in Councel and he made a Short Speech thanking us for what we had given him & his nation promisseing to attend to the Council we had given him & informed us the road was open & no one dare Shut it, & we might Departe at pleasure, at 1 oClock we Set out for the upper Villages 3 miles destant, the Grand Cheif & nephew on board, proceeded on at 1 mile took in the 2d Cheif & Came too off the first [*second*] Village Seperated from the 3rd by a Creek after arrangeing all matters we walked up with the 2d Cheif to his Village, and Set talking on Various Subjects untill late we also visited the upper or 3rd Village each of which gave us Something to eate in their way, and a fiew bushels of Corn Beens &c. &c. after being treated by everry civility by those people who are both pore & Durtey we returned to our boat at about 10 oClk. P M. informing them before we Departed that we would Speek to them tomorrow at there Seperate Villages, Those people gave us to eate bread made of Corn & Beens, also Corn & Beans boild. a large Been (*of*) which they rob the mice of the Prarie (*who collect & discover it*) which is rich & verry nurrishing also [*S*]quashes &c. all Tranquillity.

---

[1] Much pleased, the french Chief lost his presents by his Skin Canoe oversetting, shot the air gun, the men traded some fiew articles for Robes had the Corn mill set up & shewed the Indn its opperation after Speaking to them &c.—CLARK (*ut supra*).

Course Distance & Reffurence 12th [11t-?] Octr.

N. 45. E	2	Miles to the mouth of a Creek between the 2 upper Villages of the Rickeres L. S. (1)
S. 75° E	1½	Miles the point on the L. S. passed the Village (2)
N. 45° E.	2	Mls. to a point of wood on the L. S.
N. 20° W.	2½	miles to a pt. on the S. S.
N. 8 W.	1½	Miles to a point on L. S. passed a Sand bar.
	9½	

12th October Friday 1804 —

I rose early after brackfast we joined the Indians who were waiting on the bank for us to come out and go and councel, we accordingly joined them and went to the house of the 2nd Cheif *Lassel* where there was many Cheif and Warriers & [they made us a present of — BIDDLE] about 7 bushels of Corn, a pr. of Leagins, a twist of their Tobacco, & Seeds of 2 Kind of Tobacco[1] we Set Some time before the Councill Commenced this man Spoke at Some length declareing his dispotion to believe and prosue our Councils, his intention of going to Visit his great father acknowledged the Satisfaction in receiveing the presents &c. rais'g a Doubt as to the Safty in passing the Nations below particularly the Souex. requested us to take a Chief of their nation and make a good peace with Mandins & nations above. after answering those parts of the 2d Cheifs Speech which required it, which appeared to give general Satisfaction we went to the Village of the 3rd Chief and as usial Some Serimony took place before he Could Speek to us on the Great Subject. This Chief Spoke verry much in the [same] Stile on nearly the Same Subjects of the other Chief who Set by his Side, more Sincear & pleasently, he presented us with about 10 bushels of Corn[1] Some beens & [s]quashes all of which we acksepted with much pleasure, after we had ans^d his Speech & give them Some account of the Magnitude & power of our Countrey which pleased and astonished them verry much we returned to our boat, the Chiefs accompanied us on board, we gave them Some Sugar a little Salt and a Sun Glass, & Set 2 on Shore & the third proceeded on with us to the Mandens by name [blank space in MS.] at 2 oClock we Set out the inhabitents of the two Villages Viewing us from the banks, we proceeded on about 9½ miles and Camped on the S.S. at Some woods passed, the evening Clear & pleasent Cool.

---

[1] Their tobacco is different from any I had before seen; it answers for smoking, but not for chewing. — GASS (p. 73).

The Nation of the Rickerries (*Rickaras*) is about 600 men (M^r. Taboe says, I think 500 men) (*M^r. Tabat is right*) able to bear arms a Great perpotion of them have fusees they appear to be peacefull, their men tall and perpotiend,[2] womin Small and industerous, raise great quantities of Corn Beens Simnins[3] &c. also Tobacco for the men to Smoke they collect all the wood and do the drugery as Common amongst Savages.

This nation is (*two villages are*) made up of 10 (*nine*) Different Tribes of the Pania (*Panies*), who had formerly been Seperate, but by Commotion and war with their neighbours have Come reduced and compelled to come together for protection, The curruption of the language of those different Tribes has So reduced the language that the Different Villages do not understan all the words of the others. Those people are Durtey, Kind, pore, & extravigent. pursessing national pride, not beggarley recive what is given with great pleasure, Live in warm houses, large and built in an oxigon [octagon] form forming a cone at top which is left open for the smoke to pass, those houses are Generally 30 or 40 foot Diamiter, Cov^{d} with earth on poles willows & grass to prevent the earths passing thro'.[1] Those people express an inclination to be at peace with all nations. The Seaux who trade the goods which they get of the Britush Traders for their Corn,[2] and [have] great influence over the Rickeres, poison their minds and keep them in perpetial dread.

---

[1] Recive Some Corn from the 2^d & 3^rd Chf. about 20 bushels. — CLARK (memorandum on p. 224 of Codex C).

[2] Gass says of the Arikara (pp. 73, 74) that "they are the best-looking, most cleanly, most friendly and industrious Indians I have ever seen on the voyage." — ED.

[3] A form of "simlin" or "simnel," a name used in the Southern States for summer squashes. — ED.

I saw Some of the Chien (*Chyenne*) or Dog Indians, also a man of a nation under the *Court Nue*, This nation is at war with the Crow Indians & have 3 children prisoners.

a curious custom with the Souix as well as the rickeres is to give handsom squars to those whome they wish to Show some acknowledgements to. The Seauex we got clare of without taking their squars, they followed us with Squars two days. The Rickores we put off dureing the time we were at the Towns but 2 [*handsom young*] Squars were Sent by a man to follow us, they came up this evening, and pursisted in their civilities.[3]

Dress of the men of this nation is Simply a p^{r} mockerson, Leagin, flap in front & a Buffalow roabe, with ther hair arms & ears Deckorated.

The womin, wore Mockersons leagins fringed and a Shirt of Goat Skins, Some with Sleaves this garment is longe & Genl^{y} white & fringed, tied at the waste[,] with a roabe, in Summer without hair.

---

[1] Cf. the more detailed descriptions of these huts given by Biddle (i, p. 106), Gass (p. 72), and Brackenridge (*Louisiana*, p. 248). — ED.

[2] The English traders not only traffic with the Indians about the shining [Rocky] mountains, but they have extended it to the Mandans on the Missouri, and to several other tribes both above and below them. The Spaniards also from Santa Fé occasionally traffic with the Indians about the waters of the Kansas, as likewise with those on the river Platte. — STODDARD (*Louisiana*, pp. 453, 454).

[3] Brackenridge says (*Louisiana*, p. 247): "It is part of their hospitality, to offer the guest their wife, sister, or maid servant, according to the estimation in which the guest is held, and to refuse, is considered as treating the host with contempt." This was a custom widely prevalent among Indian tribes, especially those of the Far West. Biddle says (i, p. 105) that Arikara regarded such intercourse with strangers as disgraceful, when occurring without the husband's or brother's consent. — ED.

[Memorandum made by Clark on the inside front cover of Codex C:]

Names of the nations who come to the Ricares to trafick and bring Horses & robes

○ 1 -	*Kun.na-nar-Wesh*	— (Gens des vach)[1]	Blue beeds.
○ 2	*Noo-tar-wau*	—	Hill Climbers
✱ 3	*Au-ner-hoo*	— the people who pen	Buffaloes to cetch them
✱ 4	*To-che-wah-coo*	—	Fox Indians
✱ 5	*To-pah-cass*	—	white hair's
○ 6	*Cat-tar-kah*	—	Paducar.
✱ 7	*Ki-e-wah*	—	Tideing Indians
+ 8	*Too-war-sar*	—	Skin pricks
9	*Shār ha (chien)*	— The village on the other side	
10	*We hee skeu (chien)*	— The villagers on this side	

Those nations all live on the praries from S W by S to West of the Ricarees all speek different languages and are numerous, all follow the Buffalow and winter near the mountains.

13th of October Satturday 1804 —

one man J. Newmon confined for mutinous expression Set out early proceeded on, pass^{d} a camp of Seauex on the S.S. those people only viewed us & did not Speak one word. The visiters of last evening all except one returned which is the Brother of the Chief we have on board passed (1) a Creek 13 yds on the S.S. at 18 m^{l} above the Town heading in some Ponds a Short Dist^{c} to the N.E. we call Stone Idol C. (well to observe here that the Yankton or R Jacque heads at about 2 Days March of this place Easterly, the R. de Seaux one Day further, the Chien (*Chayenne the Chay' formerly there*) a branch of R. Rouche (*Rouge*) Still beyend, and the River S^{t} *Peters* 4 Days march from this place on the Same Derection (Informt^{n} of the Rickores). Passed a large willow (2) & Sand Islands above the mouth of the last Creek. at 21 Miles above the Village passed a (3) Creek about 15 yards wide on the L.S. we call after 2d Chief Pocasse (or Hay). nearly opposit this Creek a fiew miles from the river on the S.S. 2 Stones resembling humane persons & one resembling a Dog is Situated in the open Prarie, to those Stones the Rickores pay Great reverance make offerings (*votive Dress &c.*) whenever they pass (Informtn of the Chief & Intepeter) those People have a curious Tredition of those Stones, one was a man in Love, one a Girl whose parents would not let [them] marry (*The man as is customary went off to mourn, the female followed.*), the Dog went to morn with them all turned to Stone gradually, commenceing at the feet. Those people fed on grapes untill they turned, & the woman has a bunch of grapes yet in her hand, on the river near the place those are Said to be Situated, we obsd a greater quantity of fine grapes than I ever Saw at one place.

---

[1] A French nickname, meaning "cow-people" — that is, Buffalo tribe. The Indian name here given — written by Biddle (i, p. 34) Kaninaviesch — is only an Chippewa appellation of that tribe, now known as the Arapaho, one of the westernmost Algonquian tribes (see Mooney's sketch of this people, in *U. S. Bur. Ethnol. Rep.*, 1892–93, pp. 953–957). Lewis, however, in his "Statistical View" (p. 18) applies the name Ar-râh'-pâ-hoo' to a branch of the Pawnee. — Ed.

The river above the Island on which the Lower Reckores Village is Situated is narrow and contd a great[er] propotion of Timber than below, the bottoms on both Sides is covered with timber the up lands naked the current jentle and Sand bars confined to the points Generally.

We proceeded on under a fine Breeze from the S.E. and camped late at the upper part of Some wood on the Starboard Side. Cold & Some rain this evening. we Sent out hunters killed one Deer.

we Tried the Prisoner Newmon last night by 9 of his Peers they did "Centence him 75 Lashes & Disbanded [from] the party."

Course distance & reffurence — 13th Octr

N. 60° W.	3	Miles to a pt on the S. S.
N. 40. W.	2	Miles to a pt of timber on L. S.
N. 10. W.	2	Miles to the pt on the L. S.
N. 53 W.	1½	Mls to a pt on the S. S.
North	2	Mls to a pt on the L. S. opsit the mouth of a Creek on the S. S. (1)
N. 70° W.	4½	Miles to a pt on the S. S. passing a Island (2) and opsd a Creek L. S. (3)
N. 18° E	3	Mls to the upper point of Some wood on the S. S. and camped.
	18	

[Orderly Book; Clark:] *Orders 13th of October 1804*

A Court Martial to Consist of nine members will set to day at 12 oClock for the trial of John Newmon now under Confinement. Capt. Clark will attend to the forms & rules of a president without giveing his opinion.

Detail for the Court Martial

Sergt. John Ordaway
Sergeant Pat: Gass
Jo: Shields
H: Hall
Jo. Collins
Wm Werner
Wm Bratten
Geo: Shannon
Silas Goodrich

MERIWETHER LEWIS Capt.
1st. U'S. Regt. Infty
Wm. CLARK Capt
or E. N W D [Engineer North Western Discovery. — ED.]

[Lewis:]

In conformity to the above order the Court martial convened this day for the trial of John Newman, charged with "having uttered repeated expressions of a highly criminal and "mutinous nature; the same having a tendency not only to "distroy every principle of military discipline, but also to "alienate the affections of the individuals composing this "detatchment to their officers, and disaffect them to the ser- "vice for which they have been so sacredly and solemnly "engaged." The Prisonar plead *not guil[t]y* to the charge exhibited against him. The court after having duly considered the evidence aduced, as well as the defence of the said prisonor, are unanimously of opinion that the prisonor John Newman is guilty of every part of the charge exhibited against him, and do sentence him agreeably to the rules and articles of war, to receive seventy five lashes on his bear back, and to be henceforth discarded from the permanent party engaged for North Western discovery; two thirds of the Court concurring in the sum and nature of the punishment awarded. the commanding officers approve and confirm the sentence of the court, and direct the punishment take place tomorrow between the hours of one and two P.M. The commanding officers further direct that John Newman in future be attatched to the mess and crew of the red Perogue as a labouring hand on board the same, and that he be deprived of his arms and accoutrements, and not be permited the honor of mounting guard untill further orders; the commanding officers further direct that in lue of the guard duty from which Newman has been exempted by virtue of this order, that he shall be exposed to such drudgeries as they may think proper to direct from time to time with a view to the general relief of the detatchment.

[Clark:] *14th of October Sunday 1804.* —

Some rain last night all wet & cold, we Set [out] early the rain contind all Day, at [blank in MS.] miles we passed a (1) Creek on the L.S. 15 yards wide this Creek we call after the 3rd Chief *Piaheto* (or Eagles feather) at 1 oClock we halted on a Sand bar & after Dinner executed the Sentence of the Court Martial so far a[s] giveing the Corporal punishment, & proceeded on a fiew Miles, the wind a head from N.E. Camped in a Cove of the bank on the S.S.[1] imediately opposit our Camp on the L.S. I observe an antient fortification the Walls of which appear to be 8 or 10 feet high, (*most of it washed in*) the evening wet and disagreeable, the river Something wider more timber on the banks.

The punishment of this day allarmd the Indian Chief verry much, he cried aloud (or effected to cry) I explained the Cause of the punishment and the necessity (*of it*) which he (*also*) thought examples were also necessary, & he himself had made them by Death, his nation never whiped even their Children, from their burth.

---

[1] In North Dakota, close to 46°, at a creek now called Thunder-hawk. Piaheto is now Blackfoot Creek. — Coues (*L. and C.*, i, p. 168).

Courses & Distance & reffurences. — 14th

S. 70 W.	1	M^{ls} to a p^{t} on the L.S. the Same course continud 2 M^{l} to a bend L.S.
N. 63° E.	2	M^{ls} to the p^{t} on the S.S. pass^{d} a Creek on the L.S. (1)
N. 30° W.	1½	M^{l} to a large Tree on the L.S.
N. 40° E.	1½	M^{ls} to some trees on the S.S.
N 60° W.	3	M^{ls} to a p^{t} on the L.S. Passing
N. 70° W.	3	Miles to a point on the S.S. passed an antient fortification on the L.S.
	12	

15th of October Monday 1804—

rained all last night, we Set out early and proceeded on at 3 miles passed an Ind^{n} Camp (*of hunters Ricaras*) on the S.S. we halted above and about 30 of the Indians came over in their canoos of Skins, we eate with them, they give us meat, in return we gave fish hooks & some beeds, about a mile higher we came too on the L.S. at the camp of the Recores (*ricaras*) of about 8 Lodges, we also eate and they gave Some meat, we proceeded on Saw numbers of Indians on both Sides passing a Creek, Saw many curious hills, high and much the resemblance of a house with a hiped (*like ours*) roof, at 12 oClock it cleared away and the evening was pleasent, wind from the N.E. at Sunset we arrived at a Camp of Recares of 10 Lodges on the S.S. we came too and camped near them Cap^{t} Lewis and my self went with the Chief who accompanis us, to the Huts of Several of the men all of whome Smoked & gave us something to eate also Some meat to take away, those people were kind and appeared to be much pls^{d} at the attentioned paid them.

Those people are much pleased with my black Servent. Their womin verry fond of carressing our men &c.

Course Distance & Reffurences — 15th Oct

West	2½	Miles to a Creek on the L.S. passing over a Sand bar makeing from the S. pt
North	4	Miles to a point of wood on the L. S. passing over a sand point on the S.S.
N. 34° W.	3½	Miles to a point of wood on the S. S. passing old Village of the *Shăr há* or Chien Indians on the L.S. below a Creek on the same Side. passed a Camp of Ricares on S.S.
	10	

16th of October Tuesday 1804—

Some rain this morning, 2 young squars verry anxious to accompany us, we Set out with our Chief on board by name *Ar ke tar na shar* or Chief of the Town, a little above our camp on the L.S. passed a circular work, where the, *Shăr há* or Chien, or Dog Indians formerly lived a short distance above passed a Creek which we call Chien Creek (*Chayenne or Shar ha* (*Mr Hayley says Not Chien*), above is a willow Island Situated near (1) the L. Side a large Sand bar above & on both Sides (2) passed a Creek above the Island on the L.S. call *So-harch* (or Girls) Creek, at 2 miles higher up (3) passed a Creek on L.S. call *Charpart*[1] (or womins) Creek, passed (5) an Island Situated in a bend to the S.S. this Isd is about 1½ Miles long, covered with timber Such as Cotton wood, opsd the lower point a creek coms in on [sentence incomplete — Ed.] the S.S. called by the Indians *Kee tooch Sar kar nar* [Keetooshsahawna — Biddle] (or place of Beaver) above the Island a small river coms in about 35 yards wide called *War ra con ne*[2] or (Elk Shed their horns). The Island is called Carp Island by Ivens [Evans] Wind hard from the N.W. Saw great numbers of Goats on the Shore S.S. proceeded on Capt Lewis & the Indian Chief walked on Shore, soon after I discovered great numbers of Goats in the river, and Indians on the Shore on each Side, as I approached or got nearer I discovered boys in the water Killing the goats with Sticks and halling them to Shore, Those on the banks Shot them with arrows and as they approach^{d} the Shore would turn them back of this Gangue of Goats I counted 58 of which they had killed on the Shore, one of our hunters out with Cap Lewis killed three Goats, we passed the Camp on the S.S. and proceeded ½ mile and camped on the L.S. many Indians came to the boat to See, Some came across late at night, as they approach they hollowed and Sung, after Staying a short time 2 went for Some meat, and returned in a Short time with fresh & Dried Buffalow, also goat, those Indians Stayed all night, they Sung and was verry merry the greater part of the night.

---

[1] These names are spelled by Biddle, Sohawch and Chapawt; he says that they are Arikara words. — Ed.

[2] The present name is Big Beaver Creek; at its mouth is the town of Emmonsburg, N. D. — Ed.

Course Distance & reffurences — 16th Oct

North	4	Miles to a p^{t} on the S.S. Passed a Willow Island L. S. (1) a Creek (2) above the Is^{d} & one at 2 miles further (3)
N. 10° E.	6.	Miles to the upper point of Some Timber on the L. S. ops^{d} the mouth of a Creek on the S. S. (4) passed a Isl^{d} on the S.S. (5) ops^{d} the Lower p^{t} of which comes in a Creek (5)
North	½	Mile on the L. Side
N. 30° W.	1	M^{l} on the L. point High L^{d}
N. 38° W.	3	Miles to a point on the S.S.
	14½	

Course Distance & reffurence. — 17th Oct.

N. 10° E.	1½	Miles to a p^{t} on the L.S.
North	½	m^{l} on the L.S.
N. 10° W.	½	M^{l} on the L.S.
N. 33° W.	3½	M^{ls} to the Commencement of Some woods on the S.S.
	6	

☞ note from the *Ricares* to the River Jacque near N.E. is about 40 m^{ls} to the Chien a fork of R Rogue[1] 20 (*further*) passing the Souix River near the Chien this from information of M^{r} Graveline who passed through this Countrey.

---

[1] Meaning Rouge — that is, Red River (of the North). — Ed.

17th of October Wednesday 1804. —

Set out early a fine morning the wind from the N.W. after brackfast I walked on Shore with the Indian Chief & Interpeters, Saw Buffalow, Elk and Great numbers of Goats in large gangues (I am told by Mr G. that those animals winter in the Black Mountains *to feed on timber &c.*) and this is about the Season they cross from the East of the Missouries to go to that Mountain, they return in the Spring and pass the Missouries in great numbers (*to the plains*). This Chief tells me of a number of their Treditions about Turtles, Snakes, &c. and the power of a perticeler rock or Cove on the next river which informs of every thing none of those I think worth while mentioning. The wind So hard a head the [boat] could could not move after 10 oClock. Capt Louis took the altitude of the Sun Latd *46° . 23′ . 57″* I killed 3 Deer, and the hunters with me killed 3 also, the Indian Shot one but could not get it, I scaffeled[1] up the Deer & returned & met the boat after night on the L.S. about 6 miles above the place we camped last night. one of the men saw a number of Snakes, Capt Lewis Saw a large Beaver house S.S. I cought a whipprwill Small & not common.[2] the leaves are falling fast. the river wide and full of Sand bars. Great numbers of verry large Stone on the Sides of the hills & some rock of a brownish Colour in the Ld Bend below this.

Great numbers of Goats are flocking down to the S. Side of the river, on their way to the Black mountains where they winter Those animals return in the Spring in the Same way & scatter in different directions.

18th of October Thursday 1804 —

Set out early proceeded on at 6 mls passed the mouth of (1) la [*Le*] Boulet (or Cannon Ball River) about 140 yards wide on the L.S. this river heads in the *Court Noi* or Black

---

[1] That is, scaffolded, to be above the reach of wolves. — Ed.

[2] Nuttall's whippoorwill (*Phalænoptilus Nuttalli*). — Ed.

Mountains (a fine Day) above the mouth of the river Great numbers of Stone perfectly round with fine Grit are in the Bluff and on the Shore, the river takes its name from those Stones which resemble Cannon Balls. The water of this river is confined within 40 yards. We met 2 frenchmen in a perogue Decending from hunting, & complained of the Mandans robing them of 4 Traps their furs & Several other articles. Those men were in the imploy of our Ricaree interpeter Mr. Gravelin the[y] turned & followered us.

Saw Great numbers of Goats on the S.S. comeing to the river our hunters Killed 4 of them Some run back and others crossed & proceded on their journey to the *Court Nou* at (3) passed a Small River called *Che wah* or fish river[1] on the S.S. this river is about 28 yards wide and heads to the N.E. passed a small creek on the L.S. 1 mile above the last, and camped on a Sand bar on the L.S. opposit to us we Saw a Gangue of Buffalow bulls which we did not think worth while to kill. our hunters killed 4 Coats [Goats] 6 Deer 4 Elk & a pelican & informs that they Saw in one gang: 248 Elk, (I walked on Shore in the evening with a view to see Some of those remarkable places mentioned by evins [Evans — Ed.], none of which I could find). The Countrey in this Quarter is Generally leavel & fine Some high Short hills, and some ragid ranges of Hills at a Distance

Course Distance & Refferences — 18th Oct

N. 50°. W.	3	Miles to the mouth of a River (1) *cannon ball* L. S.
N. 20°. W.	2	Miles to a point of wood land on the S. S. passing a Bluff in which theres round stone (2)
North	2½	miles to a point of wood land on the L. S.
N. 15°. W.	½	Mile on the L. S. opsd. a Creek on the S. S. (3)
N. 10°. E.	2½	miles to a point on the S. S. passing a small Creek on L. S.
N. 20°. E.	3	miles to a point of woods on the L. S. passing over a Sand bar
	13	

---

[1] Now Long Lake Creek: this day's encampment was near Fort Rice. — Ed.

☞ The recaree Indians inform us that they find no black tail Deer as high up as this place, those we find are of the fallow Deer kind

☞ The *recarees* are not fond of Spiritous liquers, nor do they apper to be fond of Receiveing any or thankfull for it. [*they say we are no friends or we would not give them what makes them fools*].

19th *October Friday* 1804. —

a fine morning wind from the S.E. we Set out early under a gentle Breeze and proceeded on verry well, more timber than common on the banks on this part of the river. passed a large Pond on the S.S. I walked out on the Hills & observed Great numbers of Buffalow feeding on both Sides of the river I counted 52 Gangues of Buffalow & 3 of Elk at one View, all the runs which come from the high hills which is Generally about one or 2 miles from the water is brackish and near the Hills (the Salts are) and the Sides of the Hills & edges of the Streems, [*the mineral salts appear*] I saw Some remarkable round hills forming a cone at top one about 90 foot one 60 & several others Smaller, the Indian Chief say that the Callemet bird[1] live in the holes of those hills, the holes form by the water washing [away] this Some parts in its passage Down from the top — near one of those noles [Knolls], on a point of a hill 90 feet above the lower plane I observed the remains of an old village, (*high, strong, watchtower &c.*) which had been fortified, the Indian Chief with us tels me, a party of Mandins lived there, [*Here first saw ruins of Mandan nation*] we proceeded on & camped on the S. S. opposit the upper of those conocal hills. our hunters killed 4 Elk 6 Deer & a pelican, I saw Swans in a Pond & killed a fat Deer in my walk, Saw about 10 wolves. This day is pleasent

---

[1] The golden eagle (*Aquila chrysaëtos*) — thus named because its tail-feathers are used to decorate the calumet-pipes of the Indians, who attach great value to these ornaments. — Ed.

Course Distance & reffurence — 19th Oct.

N. 60° W.	2½	Mls. to a pt. on the S.S. Passed a Creek on the S.S.
N. 40° W.	2	Mls. to Some wood in a bend on the L.S.
N. 10° E.	1½	mile to the point on the L.S.
N. 20° W.	2	miles to a tree in the bend S.S.
N. 83° W.	3	miles to the point on the S.S.
N. 44° W.	1	mile to a Willow point on the L.S. pd. a Lake S.S.
N. 30° W.	2	miles to a tree in the bend to the S.S.
N. 80° W.	3½	miles to a point on the S.S. (2) opposit a round nole on the L.S. a Deep bend to the L.S. & pond.
	17½	

Courses Distance & Reffers. — 20th October

N. 30° W	2	Miles to Some timber in a bend to the S.S. at a Creek (1)
N. 10° W.	1	mile on the S.S.
N. 54° W.	3	miles to a pt. on the L.S. Isd. passing over a Sand bar S. S.
N.	2	miles to some high trees in a bend on the S.S. passing the lowr. pt. Isd. (2)
N. 70° W.	2	Miles to a pt. on the S.S. passing the upper pt. of the Island on the L.S.
N. 50° W	2	Mls. to the upper part of a Bluff in which there (3) is Stone Cole on the L.S. passing the 1st. old Mandin Village on the L.S. (4)
	12	

20th of October Satturday 1804 —

Set out early this morning and proceeded on the wind from the S.E. after brackfast I walked out on the L. Side to See those remarkable places pointed out by Evins, I saw an old remains of a village (*covering 6 or 8 acres*) on the Side of a hill which the Chief with Too né tels me that nation lived in 2 [*a number*] villages 1 on each Side of the river and the Troublesom Seaux caused them to move about 40 miles higher up where they remained a fiew years & moved to the place they now live, (2) passed a small Creek on the S.S. (3) and one on the L. S. passed (4) a Island covered with willows laying in the middle of the river no current on the L.S. Camped on the L.S. above a Bluff containing coal (5) of an inferior quallity, this bank is imediately above the old Village of the Mandans. The Countrey is fine, the high hills at a Distance with gradual assents, *I kild 3 Deer* The Timber confined to the bottoms as useal which is much larger than below. Great numbers of Buffalow Elk & Deer, Goats. our hunters killed 10 Deer & a Goat to day and wounded a white Bear,[1] I saw several fresh tracks of those animals which is 3 times as large as a mans track. The wind hard all Day from the N.E. & East, great numbers of buffalow Swimming the river I observe near all large gangues of Buffalow wolves and when the buffalow move those animals follow, and feed on those that are killed by accident or those that are too pore or fat to keep up with the gangue.

21st October Sunday 1804 —

a verry Cold night wind hard from the N.E. Some rain in the night which frosed as it fell at Day light it began to *Snow* and continued all the fore part of the Day passed just above our camp (1) a Small river on the L. S. called by the Indians Chiss-che-tar [Chisshetaw — Biddle] this river is about 38 yards wide containing a good Deel of water[2] Some distance up this River is Situated a Stone which the Indians have great faith in & say they See painted on the Stone, all the Calemetes & good fortune to hapin the nation & parties who visit it. a tree [*an oak*] which Stands [*alone*] near this place [*about 2 miles off*] in the open prarie which has withstood the fire they pay Great respect to make Holes and tie Strings thro [*the skins of their*] their necks and around this tree to make them brave [*Capt. Clarke saw this tree*] (all this is the information of *Too ne* [*is a whipperwill*] the Cheif of the Ricares who accompanied us to the Mandins, at 2 Miles (2) passed the 2nd Village of the Mandins which was in existance at the same time with the 1st this Village is at the foot of a hill on the S.S. in a butifull & extensive plain, (*nearly opposite is another*

---

[1] Pierre Cruzat shot a white bear left his gun, &c. — Clark (memorandum on p. 223 of Codex C).

[2] Now known as Heart River; just above are the towns of Bismarck and Mandan, N. D., joined by the N. P. Railway bridge. Just below the river are the ruins of Fort Abraham Lincoln, Custer's post in 1876. The encampment of Lewis and Clark on October 20, 1804, was a little above the site of the fort. — O. D. Wheeler.

village in a bottom the other side of Missouri) at this time covered with Buffalow. a cloudy afternoon, I killed a fine Buffalow, we camped on the L. S. (*below an old Mandan village having passed another up a Creek 3 miles below on Sd. S.* verry cold Ground covered with Snow. one orter [otter] killd.

Course Distance & reffers.—21st Oct.

S. 80° E.	2	miles to the place the Mandans had a village formerly at the foot of a riseing part of the plain. (1) on the S. S. passed a river
N. 16° W.	1½	miles to a grove on the S. S.
N. 40° W.	3½	Miles to a pt. on the S. S. river wide and sand bars a large willow Island
	7	

22nd October Monday 1804—

last night at 1 oClock I was violently and Suddenly attacked with the Rhumetism in the neck which was So violent I could not move Capt. [Lewis] applied a hot Stone raped in flannel, which gave me some temporey ease. We Set out early, the morning Cold at 7 oClock we came too at a camp of Teton Seaux on the L. S. those people 12 in number were nackd.[1] and had the appearance of war, we have every reason to believe that they are going or have been to Steel Horses from the Mandins, they tell two Stories, we gave them nothing after takeing brackfast proceeded on. my Neck is yet verry painfull at times Spasms. (*Passed old Ma[n]dan village near which we lay, another at 4 miles, one at 8 miles at mouth of large creek 4 miles further all on Larboard side.*) (*The mounds, 9 in number along river within 20 miles the fallen down earth of the houses, some teeth and bones of men & animals mixed in these villages, human skulls are scattered in these villages*)

Camped on the L. Side, passed an Island Situated on the L. Side at the head of which we pass a bad place & Mandans village S. S. (*2 miles above*). The hunters killed a buffalow bull, they Say out of about 300 buffalow which they Saw, they did not, see one Cow. Great Deel of Beaver Sign. Several Cought every night.

---

[1] 14 Sioux came to us on the L. S. with their guns cocked, believe them to be a war party they were naked except their Leagins. — CLARK (memorandum on p. 223 of Codex C).

Of these savages: "Notwithstanding the coldness of the weather, they had not an article of clothing except their breech-clouts." — GASS (p. 79).

Course Distance & Reffurences — 22d Oct

N. 50° W	3	Miles to a pt on the S. S.
N. 34° W.	3	Miles to the lower point on an Island on the L. S.
N. 34° W.	3	Miles to a pt on the S. S. passed a bad riffle or bar
North	1	Mile to a point on the L. S. a Deep bend to the S. S.
N. 24° W	2	miles to a point on the S. Side.
	12	

23rd of October Tuesday 1804 —

a cloudy morning Some Snow Set out early, pass five Lodges which was Diserted, the fires yet burning we Suppose those were the Indians who robed the 2 french Trappers a fiew days ago those 2 men are now with us going up with a view to get their property from the Indians thro. us. cold & cloudy camped on the L. S. of the river[1]

(*Saw at 12 miles passed old village on S. S. of Maharha* Indns, a band of Minnetarréas who now live between Mand' & Minnetarres*) (* *Ah na ha wa's* [Ahwahaways — BIDDLE] *see note 10 May 1805*)

Course Distance & reffurences

N. 45° E	2	Miles to a Tree in the bend S. S.
N. 18° W.	1½	Mls to High land on S. S.
N. 65° W.	3	Mls to a tree in the bend L. S.
N. 33° W.	2½	Mls to a pt. on the L. S.
N. 18° W.	1	mile on the L. S.
N. 45° W.	3	Miles to a point on the S. S. passing as common many Sand bars
	13	

Course Distance & reffurences — 24th Oct.

N. 20° W.	1	Mile to a pt on the S. S.
N. 10° W.	2	Miles to a pt on the L. S. at this place the river has laterly Cut thro forming a large Island to the S. S. (1)
N. 35° W.	2	Miles to an object on the S. S.
N. 64° W.	2	Miles to a point of high land on which the Mandins formerly lived (2)
	7	

---

[1] Near Sanger, N. D., a short distance south of Deer Creek. — ED.

24th October Wednesday 1804—

Set out early a cloudy day Some little Snow in the morning I am Something better of the Rhumitism in my neck. a butifull Countrey on both Sides of the river. the bottoms covd. with wood, we have Seen no game on the river to day — a prof of the Indians hunting in the neighbourhood (1) passed a Island on the S. S. made by the river Cutting through a point, by which the river is Shortened Several miles. on this Isld. we Saw one of the Grand Chiefs of the Mandins, with five Lodges hunting, this Chief met the Chief of the *Ricares* who accompanied us with great Cordiallity & serimony Smoked the pipe & Capt. Lewis with the Interpeter went with the Chiefs to his Lodges at 1 mile distant, after his return we admited the Grand Chief & his brother for a few minits on our boat. proceeded on a Short distance and camped on the S. S. below the old village of the Mandins & *ricares*.[1] Soon after our land'g 4 mandins came from a camp above, the Ricares Chief went with them to their Camp,

Course Distance & Reffurences — 25th of October.

N. 80° W.	3	Miles to a pt. on the L. Side	passed an old Village (1)
West	1	Mile on the L. Side	
S. 80° W.	1	Mile on the L. Side	
S. 60. W.	2	Miles to a pt. on the L. Side	
S. 30° W.	2	Miles to a Tree on the Larboard Side	
S. 33° W.	2	Miles to a point on the Starboard Side opposit a high hill	
	11		

25th of October Thursday 1804.—

a cold morning. Set out early under a gentle Breeze from the S. E. by E. proceeded on, passed (1) the 3rd old Village of the Mandans which has been Desd. for many years, This village was situated on an eminance of about 40 foot above the water on the L. S. back for Several miles is a butifull Plain (2) at a Short distance above this old Village on a Continuation of the same eminance was Situated the Ricares Village (*two ola villages of ricaras one on top of high hill the 2d below in the bottom.*) which has been avacuated only Six (*five*) years, (*about 3 or 4*

---

[1] Near Washburn, N. D. — Ed.

miles above Ricaras villages are 3 old villages of Mandans near together here they lived when the R's came for protection — afterwards moved where they now live.) above this Village a large and extensive bottom for Several miles in which the Squars raised ther Corn, but little timber near the Villages, on the S. S. below is a point of excellent timber, and in the point Several miles above is fine timber, Several parties of Mandins rode to the river on the S. S. to view us indeed they are continuelly in Sight Satisfying their Curiossities as to our apperance &c. We are told that the Seaux has latterly fallen in with & Stole the horses of the *Big bellies*,[1] on their way home they fell in with the Ossiniboin who killed them and took the horses. a frenchman has latterly been killed by the Indians on the Track to the tradeing establishment on the Ossinebine R. in the North of this place (or British fort) This frenchman has lived many years with the Mandins. we were frequently called on to land & talk to parties of the Mandins on the Shore; wind Shifted to the S. W at about 11 oClock and blew hard untill 3 oClk. clouded up river full of Sand bars & we are at a great loss to find the channel of the river, frequently run on the Sand bars which Delais us much passed a verry bad riffle of rocks in the evening by takeing the L. S. of a sand bar[2] and camped on a Sand point on the S. S. opposit a high hill on the L. S. Several Indians came to see us this evening, amongst others the Sun of the late Great Chief of the Mandins (*mourning for his father*), this man has his two little fingers off; on inquireing the cause, was told it was customary for this nation to Show their greaf by some testimony of pain, and that it was not uncommon for them to take off 2 Smaller fingers of the hand (*at the* 2^d *joints*) and some times more with other marks of Savage effection

---

[1] A common but somewhat erroneous translation of Gros Ventres, the French appellation of a tribe who form a division of the Arapaho people. The name Gros Ventres is also applied, as here, to the Siouan Minitaree (more correctly known as Hidatsa). See Mooney's Sketch of the Arapaho, *U. S. Bur. Ethnol. Rep.*, 1892–93, pp. 954, 955. The Assiniboin are a division of the Siouan family; most of them dwell in British territory. — ED.

[2] All obliged to get out and haul the boat over. — CLARK (memorandum on p. 223 of Codex C).

The wind blew verry hard this evening from the S.W. verry cold R. Fields with the Rhumitism in his neck, P. Crusat with the Same complaint in his Legs — the party other wise is well, as to my self I feel but slight Simptoms of that disorder at this time,

26th of October Friday 1804 —

Set out early wind from the S. W. proceeded on saw numbers of the Mandins on Shore, we set the Ricare Chief on Shore, and we proceeded on to the Camp of two of their Grand Chiefs where we delayed a fiew minits, with the Chiefs and proceeded on takeing two of their Chiefs on board & Some of the heavy articles of his house hold, Such as earthen pots & Corn, proceeded on, at this Camp Saw a (*Mr.*) Mc Cracken Englishmon from the N.W. (*Hudson Bay*) Company[1] this man Came nine Days ago to trade for *horses* & *Buffalow* robes, — one other man came with him. the Indians continued on the banks all day. but little wood on this part of the river, many Sand bars and bad places, water much devided between them

We came too and camped on the L. S. about ½ a mile below the 1st Mandin Town on the L. S.[2] soon after our arrival many men womin & children flocked down to See us, Capt. Lewis walked to the village with the principal Chiefs and our interpters, my Rhumatic complaint increasing I could not go. if I was well only one would have left the Boat & party untill we niew the Disposition of the Inds. I Smoked with the Chiefs who came after. Those people apd. much pleased with the Corn Mill which we were obliged to use, & was fixed in the boat.

---

[1] Early explorations by French and English navigators and traders led to the establishment (May 2, 1670) of the Hudson's Bay Company, with headquarters in London, who long held a monopoly of the fur trade in the great Northwest. In 1783–84 some of the leading Montreal merchants organized a rival association, known as the North West Company; but after a long and fierce competition for supremacy in the fur trade, the Hudson's Bay Company finally absorbed its rival (March 26, 1821). Hugh McCracken was an Irish "free trader," usually employed by the North West Company, who had accompanied David Thompson and Alexander Henry in their journeys through the Upper Missouri region. — Ed.

[2] Not far from Stanton, N. D. — Ed.

Course Distance & reff^{rs} — 26th Oct.

N. 45° W.	1	M^{l} to a tree in the bend to the Larboard Side
N. 70° W.	1	M^{l} to a p^{t} on the S. S.
S. 26. W.	2	M^{ls} to a Camp of Mandans wood in the bend L. S.
West.	1	M^{ls} to a tree in bend L. S. passed a Small Creek
N. 27° W.	3	M^{ls} to the p^{t} Fort Mandan stands on Passing a Bluff
	8	of indf^{t} Coal L. S.
N. 55° W.	1	M^{l} to a p^{t} on the L. S.
S. 60° W.	2-	M^{ls} to the 1st Village of the Mandins Situated on the L.
	11	Side in an open Plain.

CHAPTER V

AMONG THE MANDANS

Clark's Journal, October 17—December 27, 1804

[Clark:] 27th of October Saturday 1804, Mandans. —

WE Set out arly came too at the Village on the L.S. this village is situated on an eminance of about 50 feet above the Water in a handsom plain it containes [blank space in MS.] houses[1] in a kind of Picket work, the houses are round and verry large containing several families, as also their horses which is tied on one Side of the enterance, a Description of those houses will be given hereafter, I walked up & Smoked a pipe with the Chiefs of the Village they were anxious that I would stay and eat with them, my indisposition provented my eating which displeased them, untill a full explenation took place, I returned to the boat and Sent 2 Carrots of Tobacco for them to smoke, and proceeded on, passed the 2d Village and camped opsd the Village of the *Weter soon*[2] [or *Ah wah har ways*] which is Situated on an eminance in a plain on the L.S. this Village is Small and Contains but fiew inhabitents.[3] above this Village also above the Knife river on the Same Side of the Missouri the Big bellies Towns are Situated a further Description will be given hereafter as also of the Town of Mandans on this side of the river i. e. S. Side.

---

[1] This village contains 40 or 50 lodges, built in the manner of those of the Rickarees. — GASS (p. 83).

[2] A division of the Hidatsa, called by the French Gens de Soulier. They were kindred to the Minitaree but maintained a separate tribal organization until about 1836. See Washington Matthews's *Ethnography and Philology of the Hidatsa Indians* (Washington, 1877); McGee's account of this tribe in *U. S. Bur. Ethnol. Rep.*, 1893-94, pp. 197, 198. — ED.

[3] These Indians have better complexions than most other Indians, and some of the children have fair hair. . . . These people do not bury their dead, but place the body on a scaffold, wrapped in a buffaloe robe, where it lies exposed. — GASS (p. 83).

a fine warm Day we met with a frenchman by the name of *Jessomme*[1] which we imploy as an interpeter. This man has a wife & Children in the village. Great numbers on both Sides flocked down to the bank to view us as we passed. Capt Lewis with the Interpetr walked down to the village below our camp After delaying one hour he returned and informed me the Indians had returned to their village &c. &c., we Sent three twists [*carrots*] of Tobacco[2] by three young men, to the three villages above enviting them to come Down & Council with us tomorrow. many Indians came to view us Some stayed all night in the Camp of our party. We procured some information of Mr Jessomme of the Chiefs of the Different Nations

Course Distance 27th

West	2	Miles to a bend on the L. S. passing a Cole Bank
N. 10° W.	2	miles to a Wood on the S. S. passd the 2 village on S. S.
	4	

Sunday. 28th of October 1804 —

a windey Day, fair and clear many of the *Grosvantres* (or Big Bellies) and Watersones Came to See us and hear the Council the wind being So violently hard from the S.W. provented our going into Council, (indeed the Chiefs of the Mandans from the lower village Could not Cross, we made up the presents and entertained Several of the Curious Chiefs whome, wished to see the Boat which was verry curious to them viewing it as great medison, (*whatever is mysterious or unintelligible is called great medicine*) as they also Viewed my black Servent The Black Cat Grand Chief of the Mandans, Capt Lewis & myself with an Interpeter walked up the river about 1½ miles our views were to examine the Situation & Timber for a fort, we found the Situation good but the Timber scerce, or at least Small timber such as would (*not*) answer us, We cunsulted the Grand Chief in respect to the other Chiefs of the Different Villages he gave the names of 12. George Drewyer cought 2 Beaver above our Camp last night, we had Several presents from the woman of Corn boil'd homney, Soft Corn &c. &c. I prosent a jar (*earththern jar glazed*) to the Chiefs wife who receved it with much pleasure. our men verry chearfull this evening. We Sent the Chiefs of the Gross Vantres to Smoke a a pipe with the Grand Chef of the Mandans in his Village, & told them we would Speek tomorrow.

---

[1] René Jessaume was originally a "free trader" (one to whom certain quantities of goods would be advanced by a trading company), and had spent many years among the Mandan. — Ed.

[2] An article indispenceable in those cases. — Clark (memorandum on p. 223 of Codex C).

29th October Monday 1804. —

a fair fine morning after Brackfast we were visited by the old Cheaf of the *Big bellies* or [blank space in MS.] this man was old and had transfired his power to his Sun, who was then out at War against the Snake Indians who inhabit the Rockey Mountains.[1] at 10 oClock the S.W. wind rose verry high, we Collected the Chiefs and Commenced a Councel ounder a orning, and our Sales Stretched around to keep out as much wind as possible, we delivered a long Speech the Substance of which [was] Similer to what we had Delivered to the nations below. the old Chief of the Grosvanters was verry restless before the Speech was half ended observed that he Could not wait long that his Camp was exposed to the hostile Indians, &c. &c. he was rebuked by one of the Chiefs for his uneasiness at Such a time as the present, we at the end of the Speech mentioned the *Recare* who accompanied us to make a firm Peace, they all Smoked with him (I gave this Cheaf a Dollar of the American Coin as a Meadel with which he was much pleased) In Councel we prosented him with a certificate of his sin[c]errity and good Conduct &c. We also Spoke about the fur which was taken from 2 frenchmen by a Mandan, and inform^d of our intentions of Sending back the french hands. after the Council we gave the presents with much serimoney, and put the Meadels on the Chiefs we intended to make viz. one for each Town to whome we gave coats hats & flags, one Grand Chief to each nation to whome we gave meadels with the presidents likeness in Council we requested them to give us an answer tomorrow or as Soon as possible to Some Points which required their Deliberation. after the Council was over we Shot the air gun which appeared to astonish the nativs much, the greater part then retired Soon after.

---

[1] The Shoshoni, commonly called Snake Indians; the principal tribes of the Shoshonean family. They originally occupied the region now included in southern Montana and Idaho and western Wyoming; but were later forced across the Rocky Mountains by hostile prairie tribes. — ED.

The *Recare* Cheaf *Ar-ke-tar-na-shar* came to me this evening and tells me that he wishes to return to his Village & nation, I put him off Saying tomorrow we would have an answer to our talk to the Satisfaction & send by him a String of Wompom informing what had passed here. a Iron or Steel Corn Mill which we gave to the Mandins,[1] was verry thankfully receved. The Prarie was Set on fire (or cought by accident) by a young man of the Mandins, the fire went with such velocity that it burnt to death a man & woman, who Could not get to any place of Safty, one man a woman & Child much burnt and Several narrowly escaped the flame. a boy half white was saved unhurt in the midst of the flaim, Those ignerent people say this boy was Saved by the Great Medison Speret because he was white. The couse of his being Saved was a Green buffalow Skin was thrown over him by his mother who perhaps had more fore Sight for the pertection of her Son, and [l]ess for herself than those who escaped the flame, the Fire ‸did not burn under the Skin leaveing the grass round the boy. This fire passed our Camp last [night] about 8 oClock P.M. it went with great rapitidity and looked Tremendious

---

[1] I saw [1806] the remains of an excellent large corn mill, which the foolish fellows had demolished to barb their arrows; the largest piece of it, which they could not break or work up into any weapon, was fixed to a wooden handle, and used to pound marrow-bones to make grease. — HENRY (*Journal*, Coues ed., i, p. 329).

The following Chiefs were made in Council to day

Ma-too-ton-ha or Lower Village of the Mandans

1st Chief *Sha-ha-ka*— or *Big White*[1]
2 do *Ka-goh-ha-mi.* or *Little Raven*

Roop-tar-hee or Second Village of the Mandans.

1st and Grand Chief, Pose-cop-sa-he. or *black cat*
2nd Chief Car-gar-no-mok-she raven man Cheaf

Mah-har-ha 3rd Village

1st Cheaf Ta-tuck-co-pin-re-ha white Buffalow robe unfolded

Me-ne-tar-re Me-te-har-tan

1st Cheif — *Omp-se-ha-ra.* Black Mockerson
2 do. *Oh-harh* or *Little fox*

We Sent the presents intended for the Grand Chief of the *Mi-ne-tar-re* or Big Belley, and the presents flag and Wompom by the old Chief and those intended for the Chief of the Lower Village by a young Chief.

The following Chiefs were recommended in addition to those viz. —

1st Village

Oh-hee-nar Big Man a *Chien (a Chayenne prisoner adopted by them)*
Sho-ta-har-ro-ra[2] [or Coal — BIDDLE]

2d Village

Taw-nuh-e-o Bel-lar-sara
Ar-rat-tana-mock-she — Wolf man Chief

3rd Village

Min-nis-sur-ra-ree — Neighing horse
Lo-Cong-gar-ti-har — old woman at a distance

---

[1] Brackenridge, who saw this chief in 1811, thus describes him (*Louisiana*, p. 261): "She-he-ke is a fat man, not much distinguished as a warrior, and extremely talkative, a fault much despised amongst the Indians." — ED.

[2] Biddle does not include this chief in his list. — ED.

4th. Village

Mar-noh-tah. the big Steeler out at war (*who was then out at war & was killed afd.*)
Mar-se-rus-se — tale of Callumet bird
Ea pa no pa — Two taled Calumet bird young Chief
War ke ras sa The red Shield young Chief of Big belley — big town

5th. Village

Shà-hakó ho pin nee — Little Wolfs Medison
Ar-rat-toé-no-mook-ge — man wolf Chief (*at war*)
Cal-tar-co ta — cherry (grows (*growing*) on a bush) old Chief and father to the above mentd. chief
Mau-pah'-pir-re-cos-sa too — This chief is near this hunting and a verry considerable man[1]

To the 1st. Chiefs we gave a Medal with the Impn. of the President of the U. S.

To the 2d. Chiefs a Medel of weaveing & Domestic animals.

To the 3rd. Chiefs a Medel with the impression of a man Sowing Wheat.

30th. October Tuesday 1804 —

Two chiefs came to have Some talk one the princapal of the lower Village the other the one who thought himself the principal man, & requested to hear Some of the Speech that was Delivered yesterday they were gratified, and we put the medal on the neck of the Big white to whome we had Sent Clothes yesterday & a flag, those men did not return from hunting in time to join the Councell, they were well pleased (2d. of those is a Chien) I took 8 men in a Small perogue and went up the river as fur as the 1st Island about 7 miles to see if a Situation could be got on it for our Winter quarters, found the wood on the Isd. as also on the pt. above so Distant from the water that, I did not think that we could get a good wintering ground there, and as all the white men here informed us that wood was scerce, as well as game above, we Deturmined to drop down a fiew miles near wood and game

---

[1] Biddle does not include this chief in his list. — Ed.

Course to the Island

N. 12° W.	3	Ml. to a Bluff 30 feet high above the point of wood. S.S.
N. 20° W	2	Mls. to a tree under the bank about 20 feet high S. S. butifull plain
N. 30° W.	1½	Mls. to a pt. of the Same Bluff 30 feet high under which there was coal S. S.
N. 45° W.	1½	Mls. to the Lower point of an Island Current on the L. S. this Isd. abt. 1 mile long.
	7	

on my return found maney Ind. at our Camp, gave the party a dram, they Danced as is verry Comn. in the evening which pleased the Savages much. Wind S. E.

31st of October Wednesday 1804—

a fine morning, the Chief of the Mandans Sent a 2d Chief to invite us to his Lodge to receive Som corn & here what he had to say I walked down, and with great ceremoney was Seeted on a roabe by the Side of the Chief, he threw a handsom Roabe over me and after smokeing the pipe with Several old men around, the Chief spoke

Said he believed what we had told them, and that peace would be general, which not only gave him Satisfaction but all his people, they now could hunt without fear, & ther womin could work in the fields without looking everry moment for the enemey, and put off their mockersons at night, (*sign of peace undress*) as to the *Ri*[*c*]*ares* we will Show you that we wish peace with all, and do not make War on any without cause, that Chief— pointing to the 2d and Some brave men will accompy. the ricare Chief now with you to his village & nation, to Smoke with that people, when you came up the Indians in the neighbouring Villages, as well as those out hunting when they heard of you had great expectations of receving presents those hunting imediately on hearing returned to the Village and all was Disapointed, and Some Dissatisfied, as to himself he was not much So but his village was. he would go and see his great father &c. &c.

he had put before me 2 of the Steel traps which was robed from the french a Short time ago, [and] about 12 bushels of

Corn which was brought and put before me by the womin of the Village after the Chief finish^d & Smoked in great cerrimony, I answered the Speech which Satisfied them verry much, and returned to the boat. met the princapal Chief of the 3^d Village and the Little Crow both of which I invited into the Cabin and Smoked & talked with for about one hour. Soon after those Chiefs left us, the Grand Chief of the Mandans came Dressed in the Clothes we had given with his 2 small Suns, and requested to See the men Dance which they verry readily gratified him in, the wind blew hard all the after part of the day from the N. E. and continud all night to blow hard from that point, in the morning it Shifted NW. Capt Lewis wrote to the N. W. Companys agent on the Orsiniboine River (*fort &c. there about 150 miles hence*) ab^t 9 Days march North of this place

1st of November. Thursday 1804 —

the Wind hard from the NW. M^r M^c Crackin a Trader Set out at 7 oClock to the Fort on the Ossiniboin by him Send a letter, (inclosing a Copy of the British Ministers protection) to the principal agent of the Company.[1] at about 10 oClock the Chiefs of the Lower Village came and after a Short time informed us they wished they would us to [*i. e.*, that we would — Ed.] call at their Village & take Some corn, [They said] that they would make peace with the *Ricares* they never made war against them but after the *Rees* killed their Chiefs they killed them like the birds, and were tired (*of killing them*) and would Send a Chief and Some brave men to the Ricares to Smoke with that people. in the evening we Set out and fell down to the lower Village where Cap^t Lewis got out and continud at the village untill after night I proceeded on & landed on the S. S. at the upper point of the 1st Timber on the Starboard Side after landing & continuing all night droped down to a proper place to build Capt. Lewis Came down after night, and informed me he intended to return the next morning by the perticular request of the Chiefs.

---

[1] Coues reprints (i, pp. 187, 188) this letter, which he found in Biddle's literary magazine, *The Portfolio* (Philadelphia), vol. vii (1812), pp. 448, 449. The agent's name was Charles Chaboillez, representing the North West Company; Lewis and Clark wrote to him explaining the nature of their mission, and enclosing a copy of the passport granted them by Mr. Edward Thornton, of the British legation at Washington. — Ed.

We passed the Villages on our Decent in View of Great numbers of the inhabitents

2nd November Friday 1804 —

This Morning at Daylight I went down the river with 4 men to look for a proper place to winter proceeded down the river three miles & found a place well Supld. with wood, & returned, Capt. Lewis went to the Village to here what they had to Say & I fell down, and formed a Camp, near where a Small Camp of Indians were hunting cut down the Trees around our Camp, in the evening Capt. Lewis returned with a present of 11 bushels of Corn, our ricaree Chief Set out accompanied by one Chief (*of Mandans*) and Several Brave men (*of Minitarees and Mandans*), he called for Some small article which we had given (*promised*) but as I could not understand him he could not get [it] (*afd he did get it*) the wind from the S. E. a fine day maney Indians to view us to day

3rd of November Satterday 1804 —

a fine morning wind hard from the *West* we commence building our Cabins,[1] Send down in a perogue 6 men to hunt engaged one man (*a Canadian Frenchman who had been with the Chayenne Indn. on the Côte noir & last summer descended thence the Little Missouri — he was of our permanent.*)[2] Set the french who intend to return to build a perogue, many Indians pass to hunt, Mr. Jessomme (*Jesseaume*) with his Squar & children come down to live, as Interpter, we receved (*hired*) a hors for our Service, in the evening the *Ka goh ha me* or little ravin came & brought us on his Squar (*who carried it on* of Meal &c. they Delayed all night we gave his Squar [*an her back*) about 60 Wt. of Dried Buffalow meat a roabe, & Pot

---

[1] A description of the manner in which the huts and fort were built is given by Gass (pp. 85, 86). — Ed.

[2] This was Baptiste Le Page, enlisted to take the place of John Newman, discharged. — Ed.

---

ax &] a fiew Small articles & himself a piece of Tobacco, the men were indulged with a Dram, this evening two Beaver Cought this morning, and one Trap Lost
(*The Frenchmen 9 engaged thus far now returning — but 2 or 3 volunteered to remain with us the winter which they did, & in the Spring left us.*)

4th November Sunday 1804 —

a fine morning we continud to cut Down trees and raise our houses, a Mr. Chaubonie (*Chaboneau*), interpeter for the Gross Ventre nation Came to See us, and informed that the came Down with Several Indians from a hunting expidition up the river, to here [*hear*] what we had told the Indians in Council this man wished to hire as an interpiter, the wind rose this evening from the East & clouded up. Great numbers of Indians pass hunting and Some on the Return

5 *November Monday* 1804 —

I rose verry early and commenced raising the 2 range of Huts[1] the timber large and heavy all to carry on on Hand Sticks, cotton wood & Elm Som ash Small, our Situation Sandy, great numbers of Indians pass to and from hunting a camp of Mandans, A fiew miles below us Cought within two days 100 Goats, by Driveing them in a Strong pen, derected by a Bush fence widening from the pen &c. &c. the Greater part of this day Cloudy, wind moderate from the N. W. I have the Rhumitism verry bad, Cap Lewis writeing all Day we are told by our interpeter that 4 Ossiniboins Indians, have arrived at the Camps of the Gross Venters, & 50 Lodges are Comeing.[2]

---

[1] Fort Mandan, the wintering-place of the expedition, was located on the left bank of the Missouri, seven or eight miles below the mouth of Knife River; it was nearly opposite the site of the later Fort Clark. The latter post, "one of the most important on the river," was on the right bank; Chittenden says (*Amer. Fur Trade*, p. 957) that its area was 132 × 147 feet. On its site a fortified trading post was built in 1822; the later structure, which was named Fort Clark, was erected in 1831, as a post of the American Fur Company. See description and history of this locality, in Prince Maximilian's *Voyage* (Paris, 1841), ii, pp. 331–344.

[2] Drew Mr. Gravelens instructions & discharged 2 french hands. — CLARK (memorandum on p. 222 of Codex C).

6th November Tuesday 1804 Fort Mandan —

last night late we wer awoke by the Sergeant of the Guard to See a Nothern light, which was light, (*but*) not red, and appeared to Darken and Some times nearly obscured, and open, (*divided about 20 degrees above horizon — various shapes — considerable space*) many times appeared in light Streeks, and at other times a great Space light & containing floating collomns which appeared to approach each other & retreat leaveing the lighter space at no time of the Same appearance

This Morning I rose a[t] Day light the Clouds to the North appeared black at 8 oClock the [wind] began to blow hard from the N. W. and Cold, and Continued all Day Mr. Jo Gravelin our ricare interpeter Paul *premor*, *Laguness*, [Lajeunesse] & 2 french Boys, who Came with us, Set out in a Small perogue, on their return to the recare nation & the Illinois, Mr. Gravelin has instructions to take on the recares in the Spring &c. Continue to build the huts, out of Cotton Timber, &c. this being the only timber we have,

7th November Wednesday 1804 —

a termperate day we continued to building our hut, cloudy and foggey all day

8th Nov. Thursday 1804 —

a cloudy morning Jussome our (*Mandan*) inturpeter went to the Village, on his return he informed us that three English men had arrived from the Hudson Bay Company, and would be here tomorrow, we contd to build our huts, many Indians come to See us and bring their horses to Grass near us.

9th Nov. Friday 1804 —

a verry hard frost this morning we continue to build our Cabens, under many Disadvantages, Day cloudy wind from the NW. Several Indians pass with flying news (*reports*), we got a white weasel, (Taile excepted which was black at the end) of an Indian Capt. Lewis walked to the hill abt. ¾ of a mile. we are Situated in a point of the Missouri North Side in a Cotton wood Timber, this Timber is tall and heavy containing an imence quantity of water Britle (brittle) & Soft fine food for Horses to winter (as is Said by the Indians) The Mandans Graze their horses in the Day on Grass, and at night give them a Stick (*an arm full*) of Cotton wood (*boughs*) to eate, Horses Dogs & people all pass the night in the Same Lodge or round House, Cov^{d} with earth with a fire in the middle[1] great number of wild gees pass to the South, flew verry high.

10th November Satturday 1804 —

rose early continued to build our fort numbers of Indians came to See us a Chief Half Pania came & brought a Side of a Buffalow, in return We Gave Some fiew small things to himself & wife & Son, he crossed the river in the Buffalow Skin Canoo & and, the Squar took the Boat (*on her back*) and proceeded on to the Town 3 miles the Day raw and cold wind from the NW., the Gees Continue to pass in gangues as also brant to the South, Some Ducks also pass

11th November Sunday 1804. Fort Mandan

a cold Day continued at work at the Fort Two men cut themselves with an ax, The large Ducks pass to the South an Indian gave me several roles of parched meat two Squars of the Rock mountains, purchased from the Indians by a frenchmen (*Chaboneau*) came down The Mandans out hunting the Buffalow

12th November Monday 1804 —

a verry Cold night early this morning the Big White princapal Chief of the lower Village of the Mandans came Down, he pack^{d} about 100^{lb} of fine meet on his squar for us, we made Some Small presents to the Squar, & child gave a Small ax [with] which She was much pleased 3 men Sick with the

---

[1] These earth lodges of the Mandan differentiated them from the other Indians of the plains, and are described by all early travellers. See Maximilian, Prince of Weid's *Voyage in the Interior of North America* (London, 1843); Catlin's *North American Indians* (London, 1841); and Washington Matthews's "Earth Lodge in Art," in *American Anthropologist*, 1901, pp. 1–12. This lodge is the prototype of the settler's sod-house, but is seldom used now by the Mandan. For their present condition see Wheeler's *Wonderland*, 1903, pp. 19–36. — ED.

[blank in MS.], Several, Wind Changeable verry cold evening, freesing all day some ice on the edges of the river.

Swans passing to the South, the Hunters we Sent down the river to hunt has not returned

" The interpeter says that the Mandan nation as they (old men) Say came out of a Small lake (*subterraneous Village & a lake*) where they had Gardins, maney years ago they lived in Several Villages on the Missourie low down,[1] the Small pox destroyed the greater part of the nation and reduced them to one large village and Some Small ones, all the nations before this maladey was affrd. (*afraid*) of them, after they were reduced the Seaux and other Indians waged war, and killed a great maney, and they moved up the Missourie, those Indians Still continued to wage war, and they moved Still higher, until got in the Countrey of the Panias, whith this Ntn. they lived in friendship maney years, inhabiting the Same neighbourhood untill that people waged war, they moved up near the *Watersoons* & *Winataras* where they now live in peace with those nations, the Mandans Speake a language peculial to themselves verry much [blank in MS.] they can rase about 350 men the Winataries about 80 (*the Wittassoons or Maharha 80*) and the Big bellies (*or Minitarees*) about 600 or 650 men. the Mandans and Seaux have the Same word for water. The *Big bellies* or *Winetaries* & ravin (*Wattassoon as also the Crow or Raven*) Indians Speake nearly the Same language and the presumption is they were origionally the Same nation The Ravin Indians " have 400 Lodges & about 1200 men, & follow the Buffalow, or hunt for their Subsistance in the plains & on the Court Noi & Rock Mountains, & are at war with the Siaux [and] Snake Indians

The Big bellies & Watersoons are at war with the Snake Indians & Seauex and were at war with the *Ricares* untill we made peace a fiew days passd. The Mandans are at war with all who make war [*on them, at present with the Seauex*] only, and wish to be at peace with all nations, Seldom the ogressors

---

[1] See Maximilian's detailed account of the Mandan myths of the creation, their tribal origin, and their migrations, with their religious beliefs, superstitions, and customs, in his *Voyage*, ii, pp. 369-484. — Ed.

13th Nov. Tuesday 1804 —

The Ice began to run in the river ½ past 10 oClock P.M. we rose early & onloaded the boat before brackfast except, the Cabin, & stored away in a Store house at 10 oClock A.M. the Black Cat the Mandin Chief and *Lagree* (*Fr. name*) *Che Chank* a Chief & 7 men of note visited us at Fort Mandan, I gave him a twist of Tobacco to Smoke with his people & a Gold Cord, with a view to know him again, This nation consists (*This chief was one of 3 bands of Ass*^{ns} *who rove between the Missouri & Ass*^{n} *river. The 3 consist*) of about 600 men, hunt in the Plains & winter and trade on the Ossiniboin River, (*here describe all Ass*^{ns}) they are the Decendants of the Seaux and Speake their language, they come to the nations in this quarter to trade or (make preasents) for horses[1] the Method of this Kind of Trafick by addoption Shall be explained hereafter etc., Snow'd all day, the Ice ran thick and air Cold.

14th of November Wednesday 1804. Fort Mandan —

a cloudy morning, ice runing verry thick, river rose ½ Inch last night Some snow falling, only two Indians visit us to day owing to a Dance at the Village last night in Concluding a serimoney of adoption,[1] and interchange of property, between the Ossinboins, Christinoes (*Knistenaux*)[2] and the nations of this neighbourhood. we Sent one man by land on horseback to know the reason of the Delay of our hunters, this evening 2 frenchmen who were *traping* below Came up with 20 beaver. we are compelled to use our Pork which we doe Spearingly for fear of some falur in precureing a Sufficiency from the woods.

---

[1] La Vérendrye, who visited the Mandan in 1738, thus speaks of their relations with their northern neighbors: "The Assiliboille [Assiniboin], although numerous, and strong and robust men, are not brave; they are in great fear of the Sioux, whom they regard as braver. The Mantannes [Mandan] know their weakness, and profit by [it] on occasion. . . . Public notice was given throughout the village, warning every one to be ready to march on the second day after, the 30th of the month; this made some further delay among the Mantannes, who knew well how to profit thereby in trading their grain, tobacco, peltries, and painted feathers, which they know the Assiliboille highly value. The latter had brought, and were now giving in exchange, muskets, axes, kettles, powder, bullets, knives, and bodkins. The Mantannes are far more crafty in trade, and in all other relations, than are the Assiliboille, who are constantly duped by them. . . . The Assiliboille had purchased everything which their means permitted, such as painted buffalo-robes; skins of deer and antelope well dressed, and ornamented with fur; bunches of painted feathers; peltries; wrought garters, headdresses, and girdles. These people [the Mandan] dress leather better than do any other tribes, and do very fine work on furs and feathers, which the Assiliboille are not capable of doing. They are cunning traders, despoiling the Assiliboille of all that they may possess." — See his "Journal," in *Canad. Archives Rep.*, 1889, p. 14. — Ed.

our Interpeter informs that 70 Lodges one of 3 bands of Assinniboins & Some Crestinoes, are at the Mandan Village. The Crestinoes are ab$^{t.}$ 300 (*240*) men Speak the Chipaway Language, the[y] live near Fort De prari (*on Assiniboin & Assaskashawan* [Saskatchewan — Ed.] *they are bands of the Chippeways*)

15th of November Thursday 1804 —

a cloudy morning, the ice run much thicker than yesterday. at 10 oClock G Drewyer[3] & the frenchman we Dispatched yesterday came up from the Hunters, who is incamped about 30 miles below. after about one hour we Dispatched a man with orders to the hunters to proceed on without Delay thro the floating ice, we sent by the man Tin, to put on the parts of the Perogue exposed to the ice & a toe roape. The wind Changeable all hands work at their huts untill 1 oClock at night. Swans passing to the South — but fiew fowls (water) to be Seen not one Indian came to our fort to day

---

[1] The ceremony of adoption into a tribe or family is one which has always prevailed among the North American aborigines, and is extended to any persons (red or white) to whom they wish to show special friendship or honor. See Henry's description of the ceremony (*Journal*, i, pp. 388–390). — Ed.

[2] The savages now known as Cree, the appellation of various nomadic tribes who range the region north of Lake Superior and west toward the Assiniboin River; they are of Algonquian stock. — Ed.

[3] George Drouillard (Drewyer) was son of Pierre Drouillard, an interpreter for the British at Detroit in the latter part of the eighteenth century. The father is said to have rescued Simon Kenton from death at the stake (about 1779). George was slain (May, 1810) in a fight with the Blackfeet. — Ed.

16th November Friday 1804—

a verry white frost all the trees all covered with ice, cloudy, all the men move into the huts which is not finishd. Several Indians come to camp to day, The *Ossiniboins* is at the Big bellie Camp, some trouble like to take place between them from the loss of horses &c. as is Said by an old Indian who visited us with 4 Buffalow robes & corn to trade for a Pistol which we did not let him have, men imployd untill late in dobing[1] their huts, Some horses Sent down to Stay in the woods near the fort, to prevent the Ossniboins Steeling them.

17th November Satturday 1804—

a fine morning, last night was Cold, the ice thicker than yesterday, Several Indians visit us, one Chief Stayed all day we are much engaged about our huts.

18th Nov. Sunday 1804—

a cold morning Some wind the Black Cat, Chief of the Mandans came to see us, he made great inquiries respecting our fashions, he also Stated the Situation of their nation, he mentioned that a Council had been held the day before and it was thought advisable to put up with the resent insults of the Ossiniboins & Christinoes untill they were convinced that what had been told them by us [was true — Ed.], Mr. Evins had deceived them & we might also, he promised to return & furnish them with guns & amunition, we advised them to remain at peace & that they might depend upon Getting Supplies through the Channel of the Missourie, but it required time to put the trade in opperation. The Ossiniboins &c. have the trade of those nations in their power and treat them badly, as the Soux does the *Ricarees*,[2] and they cannot resent, for fear of loseing their trade.

---

[1] That is, "daubing" with clay. — Ed.

[2] Biddle adds: "By their vicinity to the British [at Hudson Bay] they get all the supplies, which they withhold or give at pleasure to the remoter Indians." — Ed.

19th Nov. Monday —

a Cold day the ice continue to run our Perogue of Hunters arrive with 32 Deer, 12 Elk & a Buffalow, all of this meat we had hung up in a Smoke house, a timeley supply. Several Indians here all day. the wind blew hard from the N.W. by W. our men move into their huts, Several little Indian aneckds [anecdotes] told me to day

20th November Tuesday 1804 —

Cap Lewis & my Self move into our hut,[1] a verry hard wind from the W. all the after part of the day a temperate day Several Indians came Down to Eat fresh meat, three Chiefs from the 2d Mandan Village Stay all Day, they are verry Curious in examining our works. Those Chiefs informs us that the Souex settled on the Missourie above Dog (*Chayenne*) River, threten to attacked them this winter, and have treated 2 Ricares who carried the pipe of peace to them verry roughly, whiped & took their horses from them &c. &c. & is much displeased with the Ricares for makeing a peace with the Mandans &c. &c. through us, we gave them a Sattisfactory answer. &c. &c.

21st Nov. Wednesday —

a fine Day despatched a perogue and collected stone for our Chimneys, Some wind from the S.W. arrange our different articles. Maney Indians visit us to day, G D hurd his hand verry bad all the party in high Spirits. The river Clear of ice, & riseing a little.[2]

---

[1] Biddle here describes (i, pp. 128, 129) the fort, much as Gass does. — ED.

[2] At this point Biddle describes (i, pp. 129–132) the location, history, and mutual relations of the tribes about Fort Mandan. There are five villages, "the residence of three distinct nations: the Mandans, the Ahnahaways, and the Minnetarees." The Mandan may number about 350 warriors. The Ahnahaway ("people whose village is on a hill") live at the mouth of Knife River, in a village called Mahaha; "they are called by the French, Soulier Noir or Shoe Indians, by the Mandans Wattasoons; and their whole force is about fifty men." Half a mile above Mahaha on the Knife River is a village of the Minitaree surnamed Metaharta ("of the willows"), numbering 150 warriors; and farther up that stream is another, of the Minitaree proper, who have 450 men. "These Minnetarees are part of the great

22nd of November Thursday 1804 —

a fine morning Dispatched a perogue and 5 men under the Derection of Sergeant Pryor to the 2nd Village for 100 bushels of Corn in ears which Mr. Jessomme, let us have [*did not get more than 30 bushels*]. I was allarmed about 10 oClock by the Sentinal, who informed that an Indian was about to kill his wife in the interpeters fire about 60 yards below the works, I went down and Spoke to the fellow about the rash act which he was like to commit and forbid any act of the kind near the fort. Some misunderstanding took place between this man & his fife [wife] about 8 days ago, and she came to this place, & continued with the Squars of the interpeters, (*he might lawfully have killed her for running away*) 2 days ago She returned to the vill'ge. in the evening of the Same day She came to the interpeters fire appearently much beat, & Stabed in 3 places. We Derected that no man of this party have any intercourse with this woman under the penalty of Punishment. he the Husband observed that one of our Serjeants Slept with his wife & if he wanted her he would give her to him, We derected the Serjeant (Odway) to give the man Some articles, at which time I told the Indian that I believed not one man of the party had touched his wife except the one he had given the use of her for a nite, in his own bed, no man of the party Should touch his squar, or the wife of any Indian, nor did I believe they touch a woman if they knew her to be the wife of another man, and advised him to take his squar home and live hapily together in future, at this time the Grand Chief of the nation arrived, & lectured him, and they both went off apparently dis (*dissatisfied*)

---

nation called Fall Indians, who occupy the intermediate country between the Missouri and the Saskaskawan. The name of Grosventres, or Bigbellies, is given to these Minnetarees, as well as to all the Fall Indians." Mooney says (*U. S. Bur. Ethnol. Rep.*, 1892–93, p. 955) that Grosventres signifies "belly-people" (i. e., grasping and selfish, "spongers"); that the Arapaho division of that name are the "Gros Ventres of the Prairie"; while the Hidatsa or Minitaree with whom Lewis and Clark wintered, are sometimes called "Gros Ventres of the Missouri." See McGee's interpretation of the term Grosventres (*ut supra*, 1893–94, p. 197). Valuable information regarding all these tribes is given by Washington Matthews, in his *Ethnography and Philology of the Hidatsa Indians*. — Ed.

The Grand Chief continued (*with us*) all day, a warm Day fair afternoon many Indian aneckdotes our Chief & his family stay all night.

23rd —

a fair warm Day, wind from the S.E. Send after Stone several men with bad colds, one man Shields with the Rhumitism the river on a Stand haveing rose 4 inches in all.

24th *of November Satturday* 1804 —

a warm Day Several men with bad colds we continued to cover our Huts with hewed Punchins,[1] finishd a Cord to draw our boat out on the bank, this is made of 9 strans of Elk Skin, the wind from the S.E.

25th *of Nov. Sunday* 1804 —

a fine day warm & pleasent Capt Lewis 2 Interpeters & 6 men Set out to see the Indians in the different Towns & camps in this neighbourhood, we Continu to cover & dob our huts, two Chiefs came to See me to day one named Wau-ke-res-sa-ra, a Big belley, and the first of that Nation who has Visited us Since we have been here, I gave him a handkerchef Paint & a lace band, and the other Some fiew articles, and paid a perticular attention which pleased them verry much, the inturpeters being all with Capt. Lewis I could not talk to them. We Compleated our huts. Several men with bad Colds, river falls 1½ inch

[Memorandum on p. 221 of this Codex:] Capt. Lewis with Chabono & Jessomme set out to visit the Indian hunting camps, Spent the evening with the black mockerson, the principal Chief of the little village of Big billies.

26th *of Nov.* 1804 *Monday Fort Mandan* —

a little before day light the wind shifted to the N.W. and blew hard and the air keen & cold all day, Cloudy and much the appearance of Snow; but little work done to day it being cold &c.

---

[1] The "puncheons" used in pioneer architecture were simply logs hewn on one side, so as to form a tolerably level surface for floor or ceiling. — ED.

[Memorandum, p. 220:] Visited the upper camps of the big bellies and returned to the lower Camp & passed a second night.

27th of November Tuesday 1804 —

a cloudy morning after a verry cold night, the River crouded with floating ice Wind from the NW. finished Dobing Capt. Lewis returned from the Villages with two Chiefs *Mar-noh-toh & Man-ness-sur ree* & a considerate [considerable] man with the party who accompanied him, The Menetaries, (or Big bellies) were allarmed at the tales told them by the Mandans viz: that we intended to join the *Seaux* to Cut off them in the Course of the Winter, many Circumstances Combin'd to give force to those reports i. e. the movements of the interpeters & their families to the *Fort*, the strength of our work &c. &c. all those reports was contredicted by Capt. Lewis with a conviction on the minds of the Indians of the falsity of those reports. the Indians in all the towns & Camps treated Capt. Lewis & the party with Great respect, except one of the principal Chiefs *Mar-par-pa-parra-pas-a-too* or (Horned Weasel) who did not chuse to be Seen by the Capt. & left word that he was not at home &c. Seven Traders arrived from the fort on the Ossinoboin from the NW. Company one of which Lafrance took upon himself to speak unfavourably of our intentions &c. the principal Mr. *La Rock* (& Mr. Mc. Kensey) was informed of the Conduct of their interpeter & the Consequences if they did not put a Stop to unfavourable & ill founded assursions &c. &c.[1]

---

[1] The names of these traders were: François Antoine Larocque (in charge of this trading expedition), Charles McKenzie, Baptiste Lafrance, and four voyageurs. The journals of both Larocque and McKenzie have been published by L. R. Masson, in his *Bourgeois de la Compagnie du Nord-Ouest* (Quebec, 1889), i, pp. 299–393; they mention their relations with Lewis and Clark, near whom they remained during that winter. Larocque describes the objects and policy of the Americans, and says: "During the time I was there a very grand plan was schemed, but its being realized is more than I can tell, although the Captains say they are well assured it will. . . . The fort is made so strong as to be almost cannon-ball proof. . . . They have a very expert smith who is always employed making different things, and working for the Indians, who are grown very fond of them, although they disliked them at first." But McKenzie says: "The Indians accepted of clothing, but, notwithstanding, they could not be reconciled to like these 'strangers,' as they called them." — Ed.

The two Chiefs much pleased with ther treatment & the Cherefullness of the party, who Danced to amuse them &c. &c.

The river fall 2 Inches verry Cold and began to Snow at 8 oClock PM and continued all night. Some miss understanding with Jussomme[1] & his woman at Day the Snow seased

28th Nov. *Wednesday* 1804—

a cold morning wind from the N.W. river full of floating ice, began to Snow at 7 oClock *a m* and continued all day. at 8 oClock the *Poss-coss-so-he* or Black Cat Grand Chief of the Mandans Came to See us, after Showing those Chiefs many thing[s] which was Curiossities to them, and Giveing a fiew presents of Curious Handkerchiefs arm ban[d]s & paint with a twist of Tobacco they departed at 1 oClock much pleased, at parting we had Some little talk on the Subject of the British Trader M. Le rock Giveing meadels & Flags, and told those Chiefs to impress it on the minds of their nations that those simbiles were not to be receved by any from them, without they wished [to] incur the displeasure of their Great American Father. a verry disagreeable day no work done to day river fall 1 Inch to day

29th *November Thursday* 1804—

A verry cold windey day wind from the N.W. by W. Some snow last night the detph of the Snow is various in the wood about 13 inches, The river Closed at the Village above and fell last night two feet, Mr. *La Rock* and one of his men Came to visit us, we informed him what we had herd of his intentions of makeing Chiefs &c. and forbid him to give Meadels or flags to the Indians, he Denied haveing any Such intention, we agreed that one of our interpeters Should

---

[1] Alexander Henry thus characterizes Jusseaume (*Journal*, Coues ed., N. Y., 1897, i, p. 401): "that old sneaking cheat, whose character is more despicable than the worst among the natives." — Ed.

Speak for him on Conditions he did not say any thing more than what tended to trade alone. he gave fair promises &c.[1]

Sergeant Pryor in takeing down the mast put his Sholder out of Place, we made four trials before we replaced it a cold afternoon wind as useal N W. river begin to rise a little.

30th of November Friday 1804 —

This morning at 8 oClock an Indian called from the other Side and informed that he had Something of Consequence to Communicate, we Sent a perogue for him & he informed us as follows. Viz: "five men of the Mandan nation out hunting in a S.W. derection about Eight Leagues, was Suprised by a large party of *Seeoux* & Panies, one man was Killed and two wounded with arrows & 9 Horses taken, 4 of the We ter soon nation was missing, and they expected to be attacked by the Souex &c. &c. we thought it well to Show a Disposition to ade and assist them against their enemies, perticularly those who Came in oppersition to our Councels; and I Deturmined to go to the town with Some men, and if the Seeoux were comeing to attact the Nation to Collect the worriers from each Village and meet them, those Ideas were also those of Capt Lewis, I crossed the river in about an hour after the arrival of the Indian express with 23 men including the interpeters and flankd the Town & came up on the back part. The Indians not expecting to receive Such Strong aide in So Short a time was much supprised, and a littled allarmed at the formadable appearence of my party. The principal Chiefs met me Some Distance from the town (say 200 yards) and invited me in to town. I ord[ered] my pty into difr lodges

---

[1] Larocque gives the same account (Masson's *Bourg. Nord-Ouest*, i, p. 304), and adds: "As I had neither flags nor medals, I ran no risk of disobeying those orders, of which I assured them." The interpreter lent to the British was Charboneau. McKenzie thus describes (*ut supra*, p. 336) the method of Lewis and Clark's communications with the Indians: "A mulatto, who spoke bad French and worse English, served as interpreter to the Captains, so that a single word to be understood by the party required to pass from the Natives to the woman [Sacajawea, Indian wife of Charboneau, who could not speak English], from the woman to the husband, from the husband to the mulatto, from the mulatto to the captains." — Ed.

&c. I explained to the nation the cause of my comeing in this formadable manner to their Town, was to assist and Chastise the enemies of our Dutifull Children, I requested the Grand Cheif to repeat the Circumstancies as they hapined, which he did as was mentioned by the *express* in the morning. I then informed them that if they would assemble their warrers and those of the Different Towns, I would [go] to meet the Army of *Souex* &c. chastise them for takeing the blood of our dutifull Children &c. after a conversation of a fiew minits amongst themselves, one Chief. the Big Man (Cien) (*a Chayenne*). Said they now Saw that what we hade told them was the trooth, when we expected the enemies of their Nation was Comeing to attact them, or had Spilt their blood [we] were ready to protect them, and kill those who would not listen to our Good talk. his people had listened to what we had told them and cearlessly went out to hunt in Small parties believing themselves to be Safe from the other nations, and have been killed by the *Panies* & Seauex, "I knew Said he that the Panies were liers, and told the old Chief who Came with you (to Confirm a piece with us) that his people were *liers* and bad men and that we killed them like the Buffalow, when we pleased, we had made peace several times and you Nation have always commenced the war, we do not want to kill you, and will not Suffer you to kill us or Steal our horses, we will make peace with you as our two fathers have derected, and they Shall See that we will not be the Ogressors, but we fear the Ricares will not be at peace long. "My father those are the words I spoke to the Ricare in your presents. you See they have not opened their ears to your good Councels but have Spuilt our blood." two Ricaries whom we sent home this day for fear of our peoples killing them in their greaf, informed us when they came here Several days ago, that two Towns of the *Ricares* were makeing their Mockersons, and that we had best take care of our horses &c." a numbers "of Seauex were in their Towns, and they believed not well disposed towards us. four of the *Wetersoons* are now absent they were to have been back in 16 days, they have been out 24 we fear they have fallen. My father the Snow is deep and it is cold our horses Cannot travel thro the plains, those people who have Spilt our blood have gone back? if you will go with us in the Spring after the Snow goes off we will raise the warriers of all the Towns & Nations around about us, and go with you."

I told this nation that we should be always willing and ready to defend them from the insults of any nation who would dare to Come to doe them injury dureing the time we would remain in their neighbourhood, and requst.^{d} that they would inform us of any party who may at any time be discovered by their Patroles or Scouts; I was sorry that the snow in the Plains had fallen so Deep Sence the Murder of the young Chief by the Sieoux as prevented their horses from traveling. I wished to meet those Seeoux & all others who will not open their ears, but make war on our dutifull Children, and let you see that the Wariers of your Great father will chastize the enimies of his dutifull Children the Mandans, Wetersoons & Winetarees, who have open.^{d} their ears to his advice. you say that the Panies or Ricares were with the *Seeaux*, some bad men may have been with the *Seeaux* you know there is bad men in all nations, do not get mad with the recarees untill we know if those bad men are Counternanc.^{d} by their nation, and we are convs^{d} those people do not intend to follow our Councils. You know that the Seeaux have great influence over the ricarees, and perhaps have led Some of them astray you know that the Ricarees, are Dependant on the Seeaux for their guns, powder, & Ball, and it was policy in them to keep on as good tirms as possible with the Seaux untill they had Some other means of getting those articles &c. &c. You know yourselves that you are compelled to put up with little insults from the *Christinoes & Ossinaboins* (or Stone Ind.^{s}) because if you go to war with those people, they will provent the traders in the North from bringing you Guns, Powder & Ball and by that means distress you verry much, but whin you will have certain Supplies from your Great American father of all those articles you will not Suffer any nation to insult you &c. after about two hours conversation on various Subjects all of which tended towards their

Situation &c. I informed them I should return to the fort, the Chief said they all thanked me verry much for the fatherly protection which I shewed towards them, that the village had been crying all the night and day for the death of the brave young man, who fell but now they would wipe away their tears, and rejoice in their fathers protection, and cry no more.

I then Paraded & Crossed the river on the ice and Came down on the N. Side, the Snow So Deep, it was verry fatigueing arived at the fort after night, gave a little Taffee[1] (*dram to my party*), a cold night the river rise to its former hite. The Chief frequently thanked me for comeing to protect them — and the whole village appeared thankfull for that measure

1st of December Satturday 1804 —

Wind from the NW. all hands ingaged in gitting pickets &c. at 10 oClock the half brother of the man who was killed came & inform^d us that after my departure last night *Six Chiens* so called by the french or *Shar ha* Indians had arrived with a pipe and said that their nation was at one days march and intended to come & trade &c. three Panies had also arrived from the nation, (*their nation was then within 3 days march & were coming on to trade with us Three Pawnees accomp^d these Chayennes The mandans call all ricaras Pawnees don't use the name of ric^s. but the ric^s call themselves Rics*) The Mandans apprehended danger from the *Shar has* as they were at peace with the Seaux; and wished to Kill them and the Ricaries (or panies) but the Chiefs informed the nation it was our wish that they Should not be hurt, and forbid their being killed &c." We gave a little Tobacco &c. & this man Departed well satisfied with our Councils and advice to him.

in the evening a M^r G Henderson [arrived — ED.] in the imploy of the *hudsons bay* Company sent to trade with the *Gros ventre*, or *Big bellies* so called by the french traders

---

[1] A corruption of "tafia," defined as "an inferior kind of rum, distilled from sugar refuse or from coarse molasses." Coues (*L. and C.*, p. 215) asserts that this is "a Malay word which we get from the French by way of the West Indies. We call this liquor Jamaica." — ED.

2nd of December Sunday 1804 —

The latter part of last night was verry warm and continued to thaw untill [blank in MS.] oClock when the wind Shifted to the North at 11 oClock the Chiefs of the Lower Village of the Mandans [came] with many of theire young men and 4 of the *Shar-ha's* who had come to Smoke with the pipe of Peace with the Mandans, we explained to them our intentions our views and advised them to be at peace, Gave them a flag for theire nation, Some Tobacco with a Speech to Dilever to their nation on theire return, also Sent by them a letter to Mr. Tabbo & Gravoline, at the Ricares Village, to interseed in proventing Hostilities, and if they Could not effect those measures to Send & inform us of what was going on, Stateing to the Indians the part we intend to take if the Rickores & Seauex did not follow our Derections and be at peace with the nations which we had addopted. we made Some fiew Small presents to those *Shar-ha's* and also Some to the Mandans & at 3 oClock they all Departed well pleased, haveing Seen many Curesostties, which we Showed them. river rise one inch

3rd December Monday 1804 —

a fine morning the after part of the day cold & windey the wind from the NW. the Father of the Mandan who was killed came and made us a present of Some Dried Simnins (*Pumpkins*) & a little pimecon, (*pemitigon*) we made him Some small preasents for which he was much pleased

4th of December Tuesday 1804 —

a cloudy raw Day wind from the N.W. the Black cat and two young Chiefs Visit us and as usial Stay all Day the river rise one inch fini[s]h the main *bastion*, our interpet. (*Jessaume*) we discover to be assumeing and discontent'd.[1]

---

[1] Biddle here makes a brief statement of the religious belief and origin-myth of the Mandan; cf. therewith Catlin's *Illust. N. Amer. Inds.* (London, 1866), i, pp. 156, 157, 177–183, and Maximilian's *Voyage*, ii, pp. 418–436. — Ed.

5th December Wednesday — 1804

a cold raw morning wind from the S.E. Some Snow, two of the NW. Company Came to See us, to let us Know they intended to Set out for the establishment on the ossinniboin River in two Days, & their party would Consist of 5 men, Several Indians also visited us one brought Pumpkins or Simnins as a preasent. a little Snow fell in the evening at which time the wind Shifted round to N.E.

6th of December Thursday 1804 Fort Mandan —

The wind blew violently hard from the N.N.W. with Some Snow the air Keen and cold. The Thermometer at 8 oClock A.M. Stood at 10 dgr above 0. at 9 oClock a man & his squar Came down with Some meat for the interpeter his dress was a par mockersons of Buffalow Skin & Pr Legins of Goat Skin & a Buffalow robe, 14 ring of Brass on his fingers, this Metel (*ornament*) the Mandans ar verry fond off. cold after noon river rise 1½ Inch to day.

[Memorandum, p. 220:] Capt Clark Set out with a hunting party Killed 8 Buffalow & returned next day

7th of December Friday 1804 —

a verry cold day wind from the NW. the Big White Grand Chief of the 1st Village, came and informed us that a large Drove of Buffalow was near and his people was wating for us to join them in a chase Capt Lewis took 15 men & went out joined the Indians, who were at the time he got up, Killing the Buffalow on Horseback with arrows which they done with great dexterity,[1] his party killed 10 Buffalow, *five* of which we got to the fort by the assistance of a horse in addition to what the men Packed on their backs. one cow was killed on the ice after drawing her out of a vacancey in the ice in which She had fallen, and Butchered her at the fort. those we did not get in was taken by the indians under a Custom which is established amongst them i e. any person seeing a buffalow lying without an arrow Sticking in him, or some purticular mark takes possession, many times (as I am told) a hunter who kills maney Buffalow in a chase only Gets a part of one, all meat which is left out all night falls to the *Wolves* which are in great numbers, always in [the neighborhood of — Ed.] the Buffalows. the river Closed opposit the fort last night 1½ inches thick, The Thermometer Stood this Morning at 1 d. below 0. three men frost bit badly to day.

---

[1] Biddle gives (i, p. 140) a more detailed account of the Indians' buffalo hunt. Gass says (p. 89) that Lewis took eleven men with him, who killed 11 buffalo, while the Indians killed 30 or 40. — Ed.

8th. December Satturday 1804 —

a verry Cold morning, the Thermometer Stood at 12$^{d.}$ below 0 which is 42$^{d.}$ below the freesing point, wind from the NW. I with 15 men turned out (*Indians joined us on horseback shot with arrows rode along side of buffaloe*) and killed 8 buffalow & one Deer, one Cow and calf was brought in, two Cows which I killed at 7 miles Ds$^{t.}$ I left 2 men to Skin & keep off the Wolves, and brought in one Cow & a calf, in the evening on my return to the fort Saw great numbers of Buffalow Comeing into the Bottom on both Sides of the river this day being Cold Several men returned a little *frost bit*, one of [the] men with his feet badly frost bit my Servents feet also *frosted* & his P——s a little, I felt a little fatigued haveing run after the Buffalow all day in Snow many Places 18 inches Deep, generally 6 or 8, two men hurt their hips verry much in Slipping down. The Indians kill great numbers of Buffalow to day. 2 reflectings Suns to day.

9th December Sunday 1804 —

The Thermometer Stood this morning at 7° above 0, wind from the E. Cap$^{t.}$ Lewis took 18 men & 4 horses (*3 hired 1 bought*) and went out [to] Send in the meet killed yesterday and kill more, the Sun Shown to day Clear, both interpeters went to the Villages to day at 12 oClock two Cheifs came loaded with meat, one with a dog & Slay also loaded with meat, Cap$^{t.}$ Lewis Sent 4 Hors's loaded with meat, he continued at the hunting Camp near which the[y] killed 9 buffalow.

10th *Monday Dec.* 1804 *Fort Mandan*—

a verry Cold Day The Thermometer to day at 10 & 11 Degrees. below 0.[1] Capt Lewis returned, to day at 12 oClock leaveing 6 Men at the Camp to prepare the meat for to pack 4 Horse loads came in, Capt Lewis had a Cold Disagreeable night last in the Snow on a Cold point with one Small Blankett, the Buffalow crossed the river below in imence herds without brakeing in. only 2 buffalow killed to day one of which was too pore to Skin, The men which was frost bit is getting better. the [river] rise 1½ inch wind North.

11th *December Tuesday* 1804—

a verry Cold morning Wind from the north The Thermometer at 4 oClock A M. at 21°. [*sunrise at 21°. see list*] below 0 which is 53°. below the freesing point and getting colder, the Sun Shows and reflects two imigies, the ice floating in the atmospear being So thick that the appearance is like a fog Despurceing.

Sent out three horses for meat & with Derections for all the hunters to return to the fort as Soon as possible at 1 oClock the horses returned loaded, at night all the hunters returned, Several a little *frosted,* The Black Cat Chief of the Mandans paid us a Visit to day, continue Cold all day river at a Stand.

12th *December Wednesday* 1804—

a Clear Cold morning Wind from the *north* the Thermometer at Sun rise Stood at 38° below 0., moderated untill 6 oClock at which time it began to get Colder. I line my Gloves and have a Cap made of the Skin of the *Louservia*[2] (Lynx) (or wild Cat of the North) the fur near 3 inches long, a Indian of the *Shoe*[3] (*Maharha or Mocassin*) Nation Came with the half of a *Cabra ko kâ* or Antilope which he killed near the Fort. Great numbers of those animals are near our fort (*so that they do not all return to rock mountain Goat*) but the weather is So Cold that we do not think it prudent to turn out to hunt in Such Cold weather, or at least untill our Const. are prepared to under go this Climate. I measure the river from bank to bank on the ice and make it 500 yards

---

[1] An experiment was made with proof spirits, which in fifteen minutes froze into hard ice. — GASS (p. 90).

[2] A corruption of the French *loup-cervier,* the common name of the Canada lynx (*Lynx canadensis*). — ED.

[3] Merely an Anglicized form of the French appellation *Gens de Soulier,* applied to the Ahnahaway (see p. 208, *note* 2, *ante*). — ED.

13th *December Thursday* 1804 —

The last night was verry Clear & the frost which fell covered the ice old Snow & those parts which was naked 1/6 of an inch, The Thermometer Stands this morning at 20°. below 0, a fine day. find it imposible to make an Observation with an artefícial Horrison. Joseph Fields kill a Cow and Calf to day, one mile from the Fort. River fall.

14th *December Friday* 1804 —

a fine Morning. wind from the S. E. the Murckerey Stood at 0 this morning I went with a party of men down the river 18 miles[1] to hunt Buffalow, Saw two Bulls too pore to kill, the Cows and large gangues haveing left the River, we only killed two Deer & Camped all night with Some expectation of Seeing the Buffalow in the morning, a verry Cold night, Snowed.

15th *of December* 1804 *Satturday* —

a Cold Clear morning, Saw no buffalow, I concluded to return to the fort & hunt on each Side of the river on our return which we did without Success. the Snow fell 1½ inches deep last night. Wind North. on my return to the fort found Several Chiefs there.

16th *December Sunday* 1804 —

a clear Cold morning, the Thermt. at Sun rise Stood at 22°. below 0, a verry singaler appearance of the Moon last night, as She appeared thro: the frosty atmispear. *Mr. Henny* from the Establishment on River Ossinniboin, with a letter from,

---

[1] "On the ice with Slays," according to a memorandum on p. 220 of this Codex. — ED.

Mr. Charles Chaboillez one of the Co arrived in 6 Days,[1] Mr. C. in his letter expressed a great anxiety to Serve us in any thing in his power.[2]

*a root Discribed by Mr. Henny for the Cure of a Mad Dog [blank in MS.—Ed.]

Mr. LeRock a clerk, of the NW. Company and Mr. George Bunch a Clerk of the Hudsons beey Compy accompanied Mr Henry from the village.

17th December Monday 1804—

a verry Cold morning the Thmt. Stood a[t] 45° below 0. We found Mr. Henny a Verry intelligent Man from whome we obtained Some Scetches of the Countrey between the Mississippi & Missouri, and Some Sketches from him, which he had obtained from the Indins. to the *West* of this place also the names and charecktors of the Seeaux &c. about 8 oClock P M. the thermometer fell to 74° below the freesing pointe. the Indian Chiefs Sent word that Buffalow was in our Neighbourhood, and if we would join them, in the morning they would go and kill them.

18th December Tuesday 1804—

The Themometer the Same as last night Mrs. Haney & La Rocke left us for the Grossventre Camp, Sent out 7 men to hunt for the Buffalow they found the weather too cold & returned, Several Indians Came, who had Set out with a View to Kill buffalow, The river rise a little I imploy my Self makeing a Small Map of Connextion &c. Sent Jessomme to the Main Chief of the mandans to know the Cause of his detaining or takeing a horse of *Chabonoe* our big belly interpeter, which we found was thro: the rascallity of one Lafrance a trader from the NW. Company, who told this Chief that Chabonat ow^{d} him a horse to go and take him he done So agreeable to an indian Custom. he gave up the horse

---

[1] This post, according to Coues (Henry's *Journal*, i, p. 298) was called Fort Montagne à la Bosse, situated on the Assiniboin about 50 miles above Mouse River. The messenger's name appears in the L. and C. MSS. as Henny, Henry and Haney. His real name was Hugh Henney, a trader for the Hudson's Bay Company. Larocque mentions his arrival (Masson's *Bourg. Nord-Ouest*, i, p. 307). Mrs. E. E. Dye cites to the Editor from a MS. journal of a Hudson's Bay Company trader (1812–16) the additional fact that he was head of the Pembina and Red River (of the North) district as late as 1812, when he was superseded by Peter Fidler, with whose earlier exploration Lewis and Clark were acquainted. —Ed.

[2] The object of the visits we received from the N. W. Company, was to ascertain our motives for visiting that country, and to gain information with respect to the change of government. —Gass (p. 92).

19th *December Wednesday* 1804 —

The Wind from the S.W. the weather moderated a little, I engage my Self in Connecting the countrey from information. river rise a little[1]

20th *December Thursday* 1804 —

The wind from the NW a moderate day, the Thermometer 37°. (24°) above 0, which givs an oppertunity of putting up our pickets next the river, nothing remarkable took place to Day river fall a little

21st *December Friday* 1804 —

a fine Day warm and wind from the NW by W, the Indian whome I stoped from Commiting Murder on his wife, 'thro jellosy of one of our interpeters, Came & brought his two wives and Shewed great anxiety to make up with the man with whome his joulussey Sprung. a Womon brought a Child with an abcess on the lower part of the back, and offered as much Corn as she Could Carry for some Medison, Cap^{t} Lewis administered &c.

22nd *December Satturday* 1804 —

worm. a number of Squars & men Dressed in Squars Clothes[2] Came with Corn to Sell to the men for little things, We precured two horns of the animale the french Call the rock Mountain Sheep those horns are not of the largest kind The Mandans Indians Call this Sheep *Ar-Sar-ta* it is about the Size of a large Deer, or Small Elk, its Horns Come out and wind around the head like the horn of a Ram and the tecture (*texture*) not unlike it much larger and thicker, perticelarly that part with which they but[t] or outer part which is [blank in MS.] inchs thick, the length of those horns, which we have is [blank in MS.]

---

[1] Biddle here describes a game played by the Mandan with flat rings and sticks on a level surface. — ED.

[2] Reference is here made to a singular class of men who have been found by travellers and explorers among most of the Southern and Western tribes; they are commonly called "berdashes" (a corruption of Fr. *bardache*). They assumed feminine garb and occupations, for the entire span of life, and were regarded with the utmost contempt by their tribesmen. For accounts of this strange custom, see Lafitau's *Mœurs des sauvages*, i, pp. 52, 53; Long's Expedition, i, p. 129; Carr's *Mounds of Miss. Valley*, p. 33; Catlin's *N. Amer. Indians*, ii, pp. 214, 215; Henry's *Journal*, i, pp. 53, 163–165; and *Jes. Relations*, lix, p. 129. — ED.

23rd December Sunday 1804 —

a fine Day great numbers of indians of all discriptions Came to the fort many of them bringing Corn to trade, the *little Crow*, load^{d} his wife & Sun with Corn for us, Cap. Lewis gave him a few presents as also his wife, She made a kittle of boiled Cimnins, beens, Corn & Choke Cheries with the Stones, which was palitable This Desh is Considered, as a treat among those people, the Chiefs of the Mandans are fond of stayin' & Sleeping in the fort

24th December Monday 1804 —

Several Chiefs and numbers of Men Womin and Children at the fort to Day, Some for trade, the most as lookers on, we gave a fellet of Sheep Skin (which we brought for Spunging) to 3 Chiefs one to each of 2 inches wide, [on] which they lay Great value (priseing those felets equal to a fine horse), a fine Day we finished the pickengen (*picketing*) around our works.

25th December Christmass Tuesday —

I was awakened before Day by a discharge of 3 platoons from the Party and the french, the men merrily Disposed, I give them all a little Taffia and permited 3 Cannon fired, at raising Our flag, Some Men Went out to hunt & the others to Danceing and Continued untill 9 oClock P.M. when the frolick ended &c.[1]

---

[1] Biddle says: "We had told the Indians not to visit us, as it was one of our great medicine days." Gass says: "Flour, dried apples, pepper, and other articles were distributed in the different messes to enable them to celebrate Christmas in a proper and social manner." Three rations of brandy were served during the day, which was mainly spent in dancing; no women were present save Charboneau's three wives, who were only spectators. — Ed.

26th Dec. Wednesday 1804—

a temperate day no Indians to day or yesterday. A man from the NW. Company Came Down from the Gross Ventres to get one of our interpeters to assist them in trade This man informed that the Party of Gross Ventres who persued the Assiniboins that Stold their horses, had all returned in their useal way by Small parties, the last of the party bringing 8 horses which they Stole from a Camp of Assiniboins which they found on Mouse River.

27th December 1804 Thursday—

a little fine Snow weather Something Colder than yesterday Several Indians here to Day, much Suprised at the Bellos (*Bellows*)[1] & method of makeing Sundery articles of Iron Wind hard from the NW.[2]

---

[1] Which they considered as a very great medicine.—Biddle (*L. and C.*, i, p. 145).

[2] Here follows, in Biddle, a sketch of the Siouan tribes, mainly the same information which we have thus far obtained from the MS. text.—Ed.

CHAPTER VI

AMONG THE MANDANS

Clark's Journal, December 28, 1804—February 2, 1805; February 13—March 21, 1805
Entries by Lewis, February 3–13 and March 16

[Clark:] *28th of December Friday 1804*—

BLEW verry hard last night, the frost fell like a Shower of Snow, nothing remarkable to day, the Snow Drifting from one bottom to another and from the leavel plains into the hollows &c.

29th December Satturday 1804—

The frost fell last night nearly a ¼ of an inch Deep and Continud to fall untill the Sun was of Some hite, the Mercury Stood this Morning at 9° below 0 which is not considered Cold, as the Changes take place gradually without long intermisions a number of Indians here

30th December Sunday 1804—

Cold the Termt. at 20° below 0 a number of Indians here to day they are much Supprised at the Bellows one Deer Killed

31st of December Monday 1804 Fort Mandan—

a fine Day Some wind last night which Mixed the Snow and Sand in the bead of the river, which has the appearance of hillocks of Sand on the ice, which is also Covered with Sand & Snow, the frost which falls in the night, Continues on the earth & old Snow &c. &c. a number of indians here every Day our blakSmith Mending their axes hoes &c. &c. for which the Squars bring Corn for payment.[1]

---

[1] Biddle here adds: "In their general conduct during these visits they are honest, but will occasionally pilfer any small article." Mackenzie says (Masson's *Bourg.*

Fort Mandan on the NE bank of the Missouries 1600 Miles up Tuesday January the 1st 1805. —

The Day was ushered in by the Descharge of two Cannon, we Suffered 16 men with their Musick to visit the 1st Village for the purpose of Danceing, by as they Said the perticular request of the Chiefs of that Village, about 11 oClock I with an inturpeter & two men walked up to the Village, (my views were to alay Some little Miss understanding which had taken place thro jelloucy and mortification as to our treatment towards them I found them much pleased at the Danceing of our men,[1] I ordered my black Servent to Dance which amused the Croud Verry much, and Somewhat astonished them, that So large a man should be active &c. &c. I went into the lodges of all the men of note. except two, whome I heard had made Some expressions not favourable towards us, in Compareing us with the traders from the north, — those Chiefs observed (*to us that*) what they Sayed was in just (*in jest*) & laftur. just as I was about to return, the 2d Chief a(*nd*) the Black man, also a Chief returnd from a Mission on which they had been Sent to meet a large party (150) of *Gross Ventres*[2] who were on their way down from their Camps 10 Miles above to revenge on the *Shoe* tribe an injury which they had received by a Shoe man Steeling a *Gross Ventres Girl*, those Chiefs gave the pipe [and] turned the party back, after Delivering up the Girl, which the Shoe Chief had taken and given to them for that purpose." I returned in the evening,

---

Nord-Ouest, i, p. 330), of the Indian opinion regarding Lewis and Clark: "The Indians admired the air gun, as it could discharge forty shots out of one load, but they dreaded the magic of the owners. 'Had I these white warriors in the upper plains,' said the *Gros Ventres* chief, 'my young men on horseback would soon do for them, as they would do for so many wolves, for,' continued he, 'there are only two sensible men among them, the worker of iron and the mender of guns.'" — Ed.

[1] "Particularly with the movements of one of the Frenchmen who danced on his head" (Biddle). Coues here asserts (i, p. 219) that Clark explained to Biddle that the Frenchman danced on his hands, head downward. — Ed.

[2] Biddle here adds "or wandering Minnetarees," an epithet often used by Lewis and Clark to designate an Arapaho band, who are still known as "Gros Ventres of the Prairie," in distinction from the "Gros Ventres of the Missouri," the term commonly applied to the Minitaree (now settled at Fort Berthold, N. D.). See p. 225, *note*, *ante*. — Ed.

at night the party except 6 returned, with 3 robes, an[d] 13 Strings of Corn which the indians had given them, The Day was worm, Themt^{r} 34° above 0, Some fiew Drops of rain about Sunset, at Dark it began to Snow, and Snowed the greater part of the night, (the temp^{tr} for Snow is about 0) The Black Cat with his family visited us to day and brought a little meet

2nd of January Wednesdey 1805 —

a Snowey morning, a party of Men go to Dance at the 2nd Village to Dance, Cap^{t} Lewis & the interpt^{r} Visit the 2d Village, and return in the evening, Some Snow to Day Verry cold in the evening[1]

3rd of January Thursday 1805 —

Some Snow to day, 8 men go to hunt the buffalow, killed a hare & wolf Several Indians visit us to day & a Gross Ventre came after his wife, who had been much abused, & came here for Protection.

4th of January Friday 1805 Fort Mandan —

a worm Snowey Morning, the Thermt^{r} at 28° above 0, Cloudy, Sent out 3 Men to hunt down the river, Several Indians Came to day, the little Crow, who has proved friendly Came, we gave him a handkerchf & 2 files, in the evening the weather became cold and windey, wind from the NW. I am Verry unwell the after part of the Daye

5th of January Satturday 1805 —

a cold day Some Snow, Several Indians visit us with their axes to get them mended, I imploy my Self Drawing a Connection of the Countrey[2] from what information I have rec[e]ved. a Buffalow Dance (or Medeson) (*Medecine*) for 3 nights passed in the 1st Village, a curious Custom the old men arrange themselves in a circle & after Smoke[ing] a pipe which is handed them by a young man, Dress[ed] up for the purpose, the young men who have their wives back of the Circle go [each] to one of the old men with a whining tone and request the old man to take his wife (who presents [herself] necked except a robe) and—(or Sleep with her) the Girl then takes the Old Man (who verry often can scarcely walk) and leades him to a convenient place for the business, after which they return to the lodge; if the old man (or a white man) returns to the lodge without gratifying the Man & his wife, he offers her again and again; it is often the Case that after the 2d time without Kissing the Husband throws a new robe over the old man &c. and begs him not to dispise him & his wife (We Sent a man to this Medisan Dance last night, they gave him 4 Girls) all this is to cause the buffalow to Come near So that they may Kill them [1]

---

[1] This day I discovered how the Indians keep their horses during the winter. In the day-time they are permitted to run out and gather what they can; and at night are brought into the lodges, with the natives themselves, and fed upon cottonwood branches; and in this way are kept in tolerable case. — GASS (p. 96).

[2] This map was sent to President Jefferson, April 7, 1805, and preserved in the archives of the War Department. As drafted by Nicholas King, 1806, it is cited herein as "Lewis's map of 1806." — COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 221).

An atlas volume contains this and others of Clark's maps.

6th of January Sunday 1805—

a Cold day but fiew indians to day I am ingaved [engaged] as yesterday

7th of January Monday 1805—

a verry cold Clear Day. The Themt. Stood at 22° below 0 Wind NW., the river fell 1 inch Several indians returned from hunting, one of them the Big White Chief of the Lower Mandan Village, Dined with us, and gave me a Scetch of the Countrey as far as the high Mountains, & on the South Side of the River Rejone,[2] he Says that the river rejone recvees (*receives*) 6 Small rivers on the S. Side, & that the Countrey is verry hilley and the greater part Covered with timber Great numbers of *beaver* &c. the 3 men returned from hunting, they killd., 4 Deer & 2 Wolves, Saw Buffalow a long ways off. I continue to Draw a connected plott from the information of Traders, Indians & my own observation & ideas. from the best information, the Great falls is about (*800*) miles nearly West,[1]

---

[1] This ceremony is described much more fully by Biddle (i, pp. 150, 151), and by Prince Maximilian (*Voyage*, ii, pp. 453, 454, and iii, pp. 56–60).—Ed.

[2] An imperfect phonetic rendering of the French name Roche-Jaune, meaning "Yellowstone," still applied to the river here described.—Ed.

8th of January Tuesday 1805 —

a cold Day but fiew indians at the fort to day wind from the N.W. one man at the Village[2]

9th of January Wednesday 1805

a Cold Day Themometer at 21° below 0, great numbers of indians go to kill *Cows,*[3] (*C^t Clark acc^d them with 3 or 4 men killed a number of cows near the fort.*) the little Crow Brackf^t with us, Several Indians Call at the Fort nearly frosed, one man reported that he had Sent his Son a Small boy to the fort about 3 oClock, & was much distressed at not finding him here, the after part of this day verry Cold, and wind keen

10th of January Thursday 1805

last night was excessively Cold the Murkery this morning Stood at 40° below 0 which is 72° below the freesing point, we had one man out last night, who returned about 8 oClock this morning. The Indians of the lower Villege turned out to hunt for a man & a boy who had not returnd from the hunt of yesterday, and borrow'd a Slay to bring them in expecting to find them frosed to death[4] about 10 oClock the boy about

---

[1] Larocque says (Masson's *Bourgeois*, pp. 310, 311) that Lewis and Clark found all the longitudes estimated by David Thompson to be inaccurate. He gives interesting details as to the territorial claims of the United States, saying: "They include in their territory as far north as River *Qui appelle*, for, as it was impossible for a line drawn west from the west end of *Lac des Bois* to strike the Mississippi, they make it run till it strikes its tributary waters, that is, the north branches of the Missouri and from thence to the Pacific." — Ed.

[2] Biddle here describes another licentious ceremony, called "the medicine-dance." — Ed.

[3] The buffaloes were usually called by the French hunters "wild cows" or "wild cattle," a term often adopted by the English. — Ed.

[4] In Biddle's account are found some additional details, especially interesting as showing a humane and generous nature in these Indians: "The boy had been a prisoner and adopted from charity, yet the distress of the father proved that he felt for him the tenderest affection. The man was a person of no distinction, yet the whole village was full of anxiety for his safety." — Ed.

13 years of age Came to the fort with his feet frosed and had layed out last night without fire with only a Buffalow Robe to Cover him, the Dress which he wore was a pr. of Cabra (*antelope*) Legins, which is verry thin and mockersons we had his feet put in cold water and they are Comeing too. Soon after the arrival of the Boy, a Man Came in who had also Stayed out without fire, and verry thinly Clothed, this man was not the least injured. Customs & the habits of those people has anured [them] to bare more Cold than I thought it possible for man to endure. Sent out 3 men to hunt Elk below about 7 miles

11th January Friday 1805

Verry Cold, Send out 3 men to join 3 now below & hunt, *Pose-cop se ha* or Black Cat. came to See us and Stay all night *Sho ta har ro ra* or Coal also stay^d all night, the inturpiter oldst wife Sick, Some of our Men go to See a War Medeson made at the Village on the opposit Side of the river, this is a [blank in MS.]

12th of January Satturday 1805

a verry Cold Day three of our hunters J & R *Fields* withe 2 Elk on a Slay Sent one more hunter out.

13th of January Sunday 1805

a Cold Clear Day (great number of Indians move Down the River to hunt) those people Kill a Number of Buffalow near their Villages and Save a great perpotion of the Meat, theer Custom of makeing this article of life General (*see note*) (*common*) leaves them more than half of their time without meat[1] Their Corn & Beans &c they keep for the Summer, and as a reserve in Case of an attack from the Soues, [of] which they are always in dread, and Sildom go far to hunt except in large parties, about ½ the Mandans nation passed this to day to hunt on the river below, they will Stay out some Days, Mr. Chabonee (our inturpeter) and one man that accompanied him to Some loges of the Menatarrees near the Turtle Hill[1] returned, both frosed in their faces. Chaboneu informs that the Clerk of the Hudson Bay Co. with the *Me ne tar res* has been Speaking Some fiew express^ns unfavourable towards us, and that it is Said the NW Co: intends building a fort at the *Mene tar rês.* he Saw the grand Chief of the *Big bellies* who Spoke Slightly of the Americans, Saying if we would give our great flag to him he would Come to See us.

---

[1] Referring to the custom of dividing their game equally among all the families of the tribe, whether or not these have sent out men to the hunt, and to their improvidence and carelessness (see Biddle, i, pp. 153, 159). — Ed.

14th of January 1805 Monday

This morning early a number of indians men women children Dogs &c. &c. passed down on the ice to joine those that passed yesterday, we Sent Serg^t Pryor and five men with those indians to hunt (Several men with the Venereal cought from the Mandan women) one of our hunters Sent out Several days [ago] arived & informs that one Man (Whitehouse) is frost bit and Can't walk home.

15th January Tuesday 1805 Fort Mandan

between 12 & 3 oClock this Morning we had a total eclips of the Moon, a part of the observations necessary for our purpose in this eclips we got which is

at 12 h–57 m–54 s Total Darkness of the Moon
at –1 –44 –00 End of total Darkness of The moon
at *2 –39 –10* End of the eclips.

This morning not so Cold as yesterday Wind from the S.E. wind choped around to the N.W. Still temperate four Considerate [considerable — Ed.] men of the Menetarre Came to See us We Smoked in the pipe, many Mand^s present also, we Showed (*attentions*) to those men who had been impressed with an unfavourable oppinion of us (*which satisfied them*).

---

[1] On the Little Missouri River. — Ed.

16th January Wednesday 1805

about thirty Mandans came to the fort to day, 6 chiefs. those Me-ne-ta-rees told them they were liars, had told them if they Came to the fort the whites men would kill them, they had been with them all night, Smoked in the pipe and have been treated well and the whites had danced for them, observeing the Mandans were bad and ought to hide themselves. one of the 1st War Chiefs of the big bell[i]es nation Came to see us to day with one man and his Squar to wate on him (*requested that she might be used for the night*) (*his wife handsome*) We Shot the Air gun, and gave two Shots with the Cannon which pleased them verry much, the little Crow 2d Chf of the lower Village Came & brought us Corn &c. 4 men of ours who had been hunting returned one frost'd

This War Chief gave us a Chart in his Way of the Missourie, he informed us of his intentions of going to War in the Spring against the Snake Indians we advised him to look back at the number of Nations who had been distroyed by War, and reflect upon what he was about to do, observing if he wished the hapiness of his nation, he would be at peace with all, by that by being at peace and haveing plenty of goods amongst them & a free intercourse with those defenceless nations, they would get on easy tirms a greater Number of horses, and that Nation would increas, if he went to War against those Defenceless people, he would displease his great father, and he would not receive that pertection & care from him as other nations who listened to his word. This Chief who is a young man 26 yr old replied that if his going to war against the Snake indians would be displeasing to us he would not go, he had horses enough.

We observed that what we had said was the words of his great father, and what we had Spoken to all the Nations which we Saw on our passage up, they all promis to open their *ears*, and we do not know as yet if any of them has Shut them (we are doubtfull of the Soues) if they do not attend to what we have told them their great father will open their ears. This Chief Said that he would advise all his nation to stay at home untill we Saw the Snake Indians & Knew if they would be friendly, he himself would attend to what we had told him.

17th January Thursday 1805

a verry Windey morning hard from the North Thermomiter at 0, Several Indians here to day

18th January Friday 1805

a fine worm morning, Mr. La Rock a[nd] McKinzey Came down to See us with them Several of the Grosse Ventres.

19th January Satturday 1805.

a fine Day Messrs. Le rock & McKinzey returned home, Sent three horses down to our hunting Camp for the meet they had killed, Jussomes Squar, left him and went to the Village

20th —

a Cold fair day Several Indians at the fort to day a Missunderstanding took place between the two interpeters on account of their squars, one of the Squars of Shabowner Squars being Sick, I ordered my Servent to give her Some froot Stewed and tee at dift times which was the cause of the missundstd.[1]

21st Monday January 1805

a number of Indians here to day a fine day nothing remarkable one ban [man] verry bad with the pox.

22nd January 1805 Tuesday

a find warm Day attempted to Cut the Boat & perogues out of the Ice, found water at about 8 inches under the 1st. Ice, the next thickness about 3 feet

23rd January 1805 Wednesday

A Cold Day Snow fell 4 Inches deep, the accurancies (*accurrencies*) of this day is as is common

---

[1] I went up with one of the men to the villages. They treated us friendly and gave us victuals. After we were done eating they presented a bowlful to a buffaloe head, saying, "*eat that.*" Their superstitious credulity is so great, that they believe by using the head well, the living buffaloe will come, and that they will get a supply of meat. — Gass (pp. 98, 99).

24th January Thursday 1805

a fine day, our inturpeters appear to understand each other better than a fiew days past. Sent out Several hunters, they returned without killing any thing, Cut Coal wood.[1]

25th of January 1805 Friday

we are informed of the arrival of a Band of assniboins at the Villages with the Grand Chief of those Tribes Call[ed] the (Fee de petite veau) (*Fils de Petit veau*) to trade, one of our interpeters & one man Set out to the Big Belley Camp opposit the Island, men employ'd in Cutting the Boat out of the ice, and Collecting Coal wood.

26th of January Satturday 1805

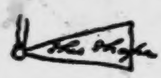
a verry fine worm Day Several Indians Dine with us and are much Pleased. one man taken violently Bad with the Plurisie, Bleed & apply those remedies Common to that disorder.

27th of January Sunday 1805

a fine day, attempt to Cut our Boat and Canoos out of the Ice, a deficuelt Task I fear as we find water between the Ice, I bleed the man with the Plurisy to day & Swet him, Capt. Lewis took off the Toes of one foot of the Boy who got frost bit Some time ago, Shabonoe our interpeter returned, & informed that the Assiniboins had returned to their Camps, & brought 3 horses of Mr. Larock's to Stay here for fear of their being Stolen by the Assiniboins who are great rogues.[2] cut off the boy['s] toes.

28th January Monday 1805

attempt to Cut through the ice to get our Boat and Canoo out without Suckcess, Several Indians here wishing to get War hatchets Made the man Sick yesterday is getting well Mr. Jessome our interpiter was taken verry unwell this evening worm day



---

[1] Wood to make charcoal. — BIDDLE (i, p. 156).

[2] Larocque says that he sent his horses to the fort in accordance with Captain Clark's offer to care for them with his own animals. — ED.

29th January Tuesday 1805

Gave Jassome a Dost of Salts We Send & Collect Stones and put them on a large log heap to heet them with a view of worming water in the Boat and by that means, Sepperate her from the Ice, our attempt appears to be defeated by the Stones all breaking & flying to peaces in the fire, a fine worm Day, we are now burning a large Coal pit, to mend the indians hatchets, & make them war axes, the only means by which we precure Corn from them.

30th January Wednesday 1805

a fine morning. clouded up at 9 oClock, Mr. La Rocke paid us a Visit, & we gave him an answer respecting the request he made when last here of accompanying us on our Journey &c. (*refused*)

31st January Thursday 1805

Snowed last night, wind high from the NW. Sawed off the boys toes Sent 5 men down the river to hunt with 2 horses, our interpeter something better, George Drewyer taken with the Pleurisy last evening Bled & gave him Some Sage tea, this morning he is much better. Cold disagreeable Day

1st of February Friday 1805

a cold windey Day our hunters returnd. haveing killed only one Deer, a War Chief of the *Me ne tar ras* came with some Corn requested to have a War hatchet made, & requested to be allowed to go to War against the Soues & Recarres who had Killed a *mandan* Some time past. We refused, and gave reassons, which he verry readily assented to, and promised to open his ears to all We Said this Man is young and named (*Seeing Snake*)-*Mar-book, She-ah-O-ke-ah.* this mans Woman Set out & he prosued her, in the evening

2nd of February Satturday 1805

a fine Day, one Deer killed our interpeter Still unwell, one of the wives of the Big belley interpetr Sick. Mr. *Larocke* leave us to day (this man is a Clerk to the NW. Company, & verry anxious to accompany us)

[Lewis:] *3rd of February Sunday* 1805.[1]

a fine day; the blacksmith again commences his opperations. we were visited by but few of the natives today. the situation of our boat and perogues is now allarming, they are firmly inclosed in the Ice and almost covered with snow — the ice which incloses them lyes in several stratas of unequal thicknesses which are seperated by streams of water. this [is] peculiarly unfortunate because so soon as we cut through the first strata of ice the water rushes up and rises as high as the upper surface of the ice and thus creates such a debth of water as renders it impracticable to cut away the lower strata which appears firmly attatched to, and confining the bottom of the vessels. the instruments we have hitherto used has been the ax only, with which, we have made several attempts that proved unsuccessfull from the cause above mentioned. we then determined to attempt freeing them from the ice by means of boiling water which we purposed heating in the vessels by means of hot stones, but this expedient proved also fruitless, as every species of stone which we could procure in the neighbourhood partook so much of the calcarious genus that they burst into small particles on being exposed to the heat of the fire. we now determined as the dernier resort to prepare a parsel of Iron spikes and attatch them to the end of small poles of convenient length and endeavour by means of them to free the vessels from the ice. we have already prepared a large rope of Elk-skin and a windless by means of which we have no doubt of being able to draw the boat on the bank provided we can free [it] from the ice.

4th February, Monday 1805.

This morning fair tho' could the thermometer stood at 18° below Naught, wind from N.W. Capt Clark set out with a hunting party consisting of sixteen of our command

---

[1] From this point to the 13th of February, the journal is written by Lewis, during Clark's absence on a hunting expedition (Feb. 4–12). This is the only hiatus in Clark's regular journalizing, throughout the entire expedition; but under date of February 13th, pp. 259-261, *post*, after his return, he gives a brief summary of the events of each day during his trip, so that his record is practically complete. — Ed.

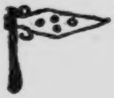
and two frenchmen who together with two others, have established a small hut and resided this winter within the vicinity of Fort Mandane under our protection. visited by many of the natives today. our stock of meat which we had procured in the Months of November & December is now nearly exhausted; a supply of this articles is at this moment peculiarly interesting as well for our immediate consumption, as that we may have time before the approach of the warm season to prepare the meat for our voyage in the spring of the year. Capt. Clark therefore determined to continue his rout down the river even as far as the River bullet[1] unless he should find a plenty of game nearer. the men transported their baggage on a couple of small wooden Slays drawn by themselves, and took with them 3 pack horses which we had agreed should be returned with a load of meat to fort mandane as soon as they could procure it. no buffaloe have made their appearance in our neighbourhood for some weeks (*time shorter*); and I am informed that our Indian neighbours suffer extreemly at this moment for the article of *flesh.* Shields killed two deer this evening, both very lean — one a large buck, he had shed his horns.

5th February Tuesday 1805. —

Pleasent morning wind from N.W. fair; visited by many of the natives who brought a considerable quanty of corn in payment for the work which the blacksmith had done for them they are pecu[l]arly attatched to a *battle ax* formed in a very inconvenient manner in my opinion. it is fabricated of iron only, the blade is extreemly thin, from 7 to nine inches in length and from 4¾, to 6 Inches on it's edge, from whence the sides proceed nearly in a straight line to the eye where it's width is generally not more than an inch. the eye is round & about one inch in diameter, the handle seldom more than fourteen inches in length, the whole weighing about one pound the great length of the blade of this ax, added to the small size of the handle renders a stroke uncertain and easily avoided, while the shortness of the handel must render a blow much less forceable if even well directed, and still more inconvenient as they uniformly use this instrument in action on horseback. The oalder fassion is still more inconvenient, it is somewhat in the form of the blade of an Espantoon[1] but is attatchd. to a helve of the dementions before discribed the blade is sometimes by way of ornament purforated with two three or more small circular holes the following is the general figure it is from 12 to 15 inces in length

---

[1] The Cannon-ball River, which empties into the Missouri near Fort Rice, N. D. The expedition had reached the mouth of this stream on Oct. 18. — Ed.



6th February Wednesday 1805.

Fair morning Wind from N.W. had a sley prepared against the return of the horses which Capt Clark had promised to send back as soon as he should be able to procure a load of meat. visited by many of the natives among others the Big white, the Coal, big-man, hairy horn and the black man, I smoked with them, after which they retired, a deportment not common, for they usually pester us with their good company the ballance of the day after once being introduced to our apartment. Shields killed three antelopes this evening. the blacksmiths take a considerable quantity of corn today in payment for their labour. the blacksmith's have proved a happy reso[r]ce to us in our present situation as I believe it would have been difficult to have devised any other method to have procured corn from the natives. the Indians are extravegantly fond of sheet iron of which they form arrow-points and manufacter into instruments for scraping and dressing their buffaloe robes. I permited the blacksmith to dispose of a part of a sheet iron callaboos (*camboose*,[2] *stove*) which had been nearly birnt out on our passage up the river, and for each piece about four inches square he obtained from seven to eight gallons of corn from the natives who appeared extreemly pleased with the exchange

---

[1] A rare and practically obsolete form of *spontoon*, a word itself now little used. The implement meant is the half-pike, a sort of halberd formerly used by certain officers of the British army. — COUES (*L. and C.*, i, p. 230).

[2] This is an unusual form of *caboose*, from the Dutch mariners' name of the cook's galley. — ED.

7th *February Thursday* 1805.

This morning was fair Thermometer at 18° above naught much warmer than it has been for some days; wind S.E. continue to be visited by the natives. The Sergt of the guard reported that the Indian women (wives to our interpreters) were in the habit of unbaring the fort gate at any time of night and admitting their Indian visitors, I therefore directed a lock to be put to the gate and ordered that no Indian but those attatched to the garrison should be permitted to remain all night within the fort or admitted during the period which the gate had been previously ordered to be kept shut, which was from sunset untill sunrise.

8th *February Friday* 1805.

This morning was fair wind S.E. the weather still warm and pleasent. visited by the *black-Cat* the principal chief of the Roop-tar-he, or upper mandane village. this man possesses more integrety, firmness, inteligence and perspicuety of mind than any indian I have met with in this quarter, and I think with a little management he may be made a usefull agent in furthering the views of our government. The black Cat presented me with a bow and apologized for not having completed the shield he had promised alledging that the weather had been too could to permit his making it, I gave him som small shot 6 fishing-hooks and 2 yards of ribbon his squaw also presented me with 2 pair of mockersons for which in return I gave a small lookingglass and a couple of nedles. the chief dined with me and left me in the evening. he informed me that his people suffered very much for the article of meat, and that he had not himself tasted any for several days.

9th *February Saturday* 1805.

The morning fair and pleasent, wind from S.E. visited by Mr McKinzey one of the N.W. Company's clerks. this evening a man by the name of Howard whom I had given permission to go [to] the Mandane vilage returned after the gate was shut and reather than call to the guard to have it opened scaled the works an indian who was looking on shortly after followed his example. I convinced the Indian of the impropryety of his conduct, and explained to him the risk he had run of being severely treated, the fellow appeared much allarmed, I gave him a small piece of tobacco and sent him away Howard I had comitted to the care of the guard with a determineation to have him tryed by a Court-martial for this offence. this man is an old soldier which still hightens this offince.

10th February Sunday 1805.

This Morning was Cloudy after a slight Snow which fell in the course of the night the wind blue very hard from N.W. altho' the thermometer stood at 18°. above naught the violence of the wind caused a degree of could that was much more unpleasent than that of yesterday when thermometer stood at 10°. only above the same point. Mr. McKinzey left me this morning. Charbono returned with one of the Frenchmen, and informed me that he had left the three Horses and two men with the meat which Capt. Clark had sent at some distance below on the river he told me that the horses were heavy loaded and that not being shod it was impossible for horses to travel on the ice. I determined to send down some men with two small slays for the meat and accordingly I gave orders that they should set out early the next morning. two men were also sent to conduct the horses by way of the plain.

11th February Monday 1805.

The party that were ordered last evening set out early this morning, the weather was fair and could wind N.W. about five Oclock this evening one of the wives of Charbono was delivered of a fine boy.[1] it is worthy of remark that this was the first child which this woman had boarn, and as is common in such cases her labour was tedious and the pain violent; Mr. Jessome informed me that he had freequently admininstered a small portion of the rattle of the rattle-snake, which he assured me had never failed to produce the desired effect, that of hastening the birth of the child; having the rattle of a snake by me I gave it to him and he administered two rings of it to the woman broken in small pieces with the fingers and added to a small quantity of water. Whether this medicine was truly the cause or not I shall not undertake to determine, but I was informed that she had not taken it more than ten minutes before she brought forth perhaps this remedy may be worthy of future experiments, but I must confess that I want faith as to it's efficacy.

---

[1] This was Sacajawea, the Shoshone captive purchased by Charboneau, who had two other wives among the Mandan. Sacajawea was the only woman taken upon the Expedition.— Ed.

12th *February Tuesday* 1805.

The morning was fair tho' could, thermometer at 14°. below naught wind S.E. ordered the Blacksmith to shoe the horses and some others to prepare some gears in order to send them down with three slays to join the hunting party and transport the meat which they may have procured to this place the men whom I had sent for the meat left by Charbono did not return untill 4 OClock this evening. Drewyer arrived with the horses about the same time, the horses appeared much fatieged I directed some meal brands [bran] given them moisened with a little water but to my astonishment found that they would not eat it but prefered the bark of the cotton wood which forms the principall article of food usually given them by their Indian masters in the winter season; for this purpose they cause the tree to be felled by their women and the horses feed on the boughs and bark of their tender branches. the Indians in our neighbourhood are freequently pilfered of their horses by the Recares, Souixs and Assinniboins and therefore make it an invariable rule to put their horses in their lodges at night. in this situation the only food of the horse consists of a few sticks of the cottonwood from the size of a man's finger to that of his arm. the Indians are invariably severe riders, and frequently have occasion for many days together through the whole course of the day to employ their horses in pursueing the Buffaloe or transporting meat to their vilages during which time they are seldom suffered to tast food; at night the Horse returned to his stall where his food is what seems to me a scanty allowance of wood. under these circumstances it would seem that their horses could not long exist or at least could not retain their flesh and strength, but the contrary is the fact, this valuable anamall under all those disadvantages is seldom seen meager or unfit for service. A little after dark this evening Capt. Clark arrived with the hunting party since they set out they have killed forty Deer. three buffaloe bulls, & sixteen Elk, most of them were so meager that they were unfit for uce, particularly the Buffaloe and male Elk the wolves also which are here extreemly numerous helped themselves to a considerable proportion of the hunt. if an anamal is killed and lyes only one night exposed to the wolves it is almost invariably devoured by them.

13th February Wednesday 1805.

The morning cloudy thermometer 2° below naught wind from S.E. visited by the Black-Cat gave him a *battle ax* with which he appeared much gratifyed.

[Clark:]

I[1] returned last Night from a hunting party much fatigued, haveing walked 30 miles on the ice and through Points of wood land in which the Snow was nearly Knee Deep

The 1st day [Feb 4] I left the fort proceeded on the ice to *new Mandan* Island, 22 miles & camped, killed nothing, & nothing to eat,

The 2d day — the morning verry Cold & Windey. I broke thro the ice and got my feet and legs wet, Sent out 4 hunters thro' a point to kill a Deer & cook it by the time the party should get up, those hunters killed a Deer & 2 Buffalow Bulls the Buffalow too Meagur to eat, we eate the Deer & proceeded on to an old Indian Lodge, Sent out the hunters & they brought in three lean Deer, which we made use of for food, walking on uneaven *ice* has blistered the bottoms of my feat, and walking is painfull to me.

---

[1] Clark here resumes the record, and the remainder of the journal in Codex C is (with the exception of one entry) in his handwriting. — Ed.

3rd day — cold morning the after part of the Day worm, Camped on a Sand point near the mouth of a Creek on the SW. Side We Call hunting Creek, I turned out with the hunters I killed 2 Deer the hunters killed an Elk, Buffalow Bull, & 5 Deer. all Meager

4th Day — hunted the two bottoms near the Camp Killed 9 Elk, 18 Deer, brought to camp all the meat fit to eate, & had the bones taken out. every man ingaged either in hunting or Collecting & packing the meat to Camp

5th Day — Despatched one of the party our interpeter & 2 french men with the 3 horses loaded with the best of the meat to the fort 44 miles Distant, the remaining meat I had packed on the 2 Slays & drawn down to the next point about 3 miles below, at this place I had all the meat collected which was killed yesterday & had escaped the Wolves, Ravin & Magpie; (which are verry noumerous about this place) and put into a close pen made of logs to secure it from the wolves & birds & proceeded on to a large bottom nearly opposit the Chisscheter (heart) River, in this bottom we found but little game, Great No. of Wolves, on the hills Saw Several parsels of Buffalow. Camped. I killed a Buck

6th Day — The Buffalow Seen last night provd to be Bulls. lean & unfit for to make use of as food, the Distance from Camp being nearly 60 miles and the packing of meat that distance attended with much dificuelty Deturmined me to return and hunt the points above, we Set out on our return and halted at an old Indian lodge 40 miles below Fort Mandan, Killed 3 Elk, & 2 Deer.

7th Day — a cold Day wind blew hard from the N.W. J. Fields got one of his ears frosed deturmined to lay by and hunt to day Killed an Elk & 6 deer, all that was fit for use [of] this meat I had Boned and put into a Close pen made of logs.

8th Day — the air keen halted at the old Camp we stayed in on the 2d night after we left the Fort, expecting to meat the horses at this Place, killed 3 Deer, Several men being nearly out of Mockersons, & the horses not returning deturmined me to return to the Fort on tomorrow.

9th day. — Set out early, Saw great numbers of *Grouse* feeding on the young Willows, on the Sand bars, one man I sent in persute of a gangue of Elk Killed three near the old Ricara Village, and joined at the fort, Sent him back to secure the meat, one man with him. The ice on the Parts of the river which was verry rough, as I went down, was Smoothe on my return, This is owing to the rise and fall of the water, which takes place every day or two, and Caused by partial thaws, and obstructions in the passage of the water thro the Ice, which frequently attaches itself to the bottom, the water when riseing forses its way thro the cracks & air holes above the old ice, & in one night becomes a Smothe Surface of ice 4 to 6 Inchs thick, the River falls & the ice Sink in places with the water and attaches itself to the bottom, and when it again rises to its former hite, frequently leavs a Valley of Several feet to Supply with water to bring it on a leavel Surfice. The water of the Missouri at this time is Clear with little tingue.

I saw Several old Villages near the Chisscheter River on enquirey found they were Mandan Villages destroyed by the Sous & Small Pox, they [were] noumerous and lived in 6 (*9*) Villages near that place.

14th of February Thursday 1805.

The Snow fell 3 inches Deep last Night, a fine morning, Despatched George Drewyer & 3 men, with two Slays drawn by 3 horses for the Meat left below.

15th of February Friday 1805

at 10 oClock P M. last night the men that [were] despatched yesterday for the Meat, returned and informed us that as they were on their march down at the distance of about 24 miles below the Fort (G. Drewyer Frasure, S Gutterage, & Newmon[1] with a broken Gun). about 105 Indians which they took to be *Soues* rushed on them and cut their horses from the Slays, *two* of which they carried off in great hast, the 3rd horse was given up to the party by the intersetion of an Indian who assumd

---

[1] These men were George Drouillard, Robert Frazier, Silas Goodrich, and John Newman. — Ed.

Some authority on the occasion, probably more thro fear of himself or Some of the Indians being killed by our men who were not disposed to be Robed of all they had tamely, they also forced 2 of the mens knives & a tamahauk, the man obliged them to return the tamahawk [, but] the knives they ran off with

We dispatched two men to inform the Mandans, and if any of them chose to pursue those robers, to come down in the morning, and join Capt Lewis who intended to Set out with a party of men Verry early, by 12 oClock the Chief of the 2nd Village Big White came down, and Soon after one other Chief and Several men. The Chief observed that all the young men of the 2 Villages were out hunting, and but verry fiew guns were left, Capt. Lewis Set out at Sunrise with 24 men, to meet those *Soues* &c. Several Indians accompanied him Some with Bows & arrows Some with Spears & Battle axes, 2 with fuzees (*fusils*).[1] the morning fine The Thermometer Stood at 16° below 0, *Nought*, visited by 2 of the *Big Bellies* this evening, one Chief of the Mandans returned from Capt Lewises Party nearly blind, this Complaint is as I am informd. Common at this Season of the year and caused by the reflection of the Sun on the ice & Snow, it is cured by "jentilley swetting the part affected, by throwing Snow on a hot Stone."

a Verry Cold part of the night one man Killed a verry large Red Fox to day.

16th of February Satturday 1805

a fine morning, visited by but fiew Indians to day, at Dusk two of the Indians who wint down with Capt. Lewis returned, Soon after two others and one man (Howard) with his feet frosted, and informed that the Indt. who Commited the roberry of the 2 horses was So far a head that they could not be overtaken, they left a number of pars of Mockersons which, the Mandans knew to be Soues Mockersons, This war party camped verry near the last Camp I made when on my hunting party, where they left Some Corn, as a deception, with a view to induce a belief that they were Ricarras.

---

[1] Flint-lock muskets. — Ed.

Capt Lewis & party proceeded on down the meat I left at my last Camp was taken.

17th of February Sunday 1805

this morning worm & a little Cloudy, the Coal & his Son visited me to day with a about 30lb of dri[e]d Buffalow meat, & Some Tallow Mr. Mc Kinsey one of the NW. Compys Clerks visited me (one of the ho[r]ses the Sous robed a fiew Days past. belonged to this man) The after part of the day fair.

18th of February Monday 1805

a cloudy morning Some Snow, Several Indians here to day Mr. Mc Kinsey leave me, the after part of the day fine I am much engaged makeing a descriptive List of the Rivers from Information[1] our Store of Meat is out to day.

19th of February Tuesday 1805

a fine Day visited by Several of the Mandans to day, our Smiths are much engaged mending and makeing Axes for the Indians for which we get Corn

20th February Wednesday 1805

a Butifull Day, visited by the Little raven verry early this mornning I am informed of the Death of an old man whome I saw in the Mandan Village this man, informed me that he "was 120 winters old, he requested his grand Children to Dress him after Death & Set him on a Stone on a hill with his face towards his old Village or Down the river, that he might go Streight to his brother at their old village under ground"[2] I observed Several Mandans verry old chiefly men[3]

---

[1] See "Scientific Data: Summary Statement of Rivers" — Clark's draft; especially the information collected during winter of 1804–05 of streams above Fort Mandan flowing into the Missouri. — Ed.

[2] Referring to the myth of their tribal origin, as having come from an underground region. For a minute account of this belief, written from the recital made by a prominent Mandan, see Prince Maximilian's *Voyage*, ii, pp. 431-436. — Ed.

[3] Whose robust exercises fortify the body, while the laborious occupations of the women shorten their existence. — Biddle (i, p. 163).

21st February Thursday 1805

a Delightfull Day put out our Clothes to Sun. Visited by the big White & Big Man they informed me that Several men of their nation was gone to Consult their Medison Stone about 3 day march to the South West to know what was to be the result of the ensuing year. They have great confidence in this stone, and say that it informs them of every thing which is to happen, & visit it everry Spring & Sometimes in the Summer. "They haveing arrived at the Stone give it smoke and proceed to the Wood at Some distance to Sleep the next morning return to the Stone, and find marks white & raised on the stone representing the peece or War which they are to meet with, and other changes, which they are to meet" This Stone has a leavel Surface of about 20 feet in Surcumfrance, thick and porus," and no doubt has Some mineral quallites effected by the Sun.[1]

The Big Bellies have a Stone to which they ascribe nearly the Same Virtues

Capt Lewis returned with 2 Slays loaded with meat, after finding that he could not overtake the Soues War party, (who had in their way distroyed all the meat at one Deposit which I had made & Burnt the Lodges) deturmined to proceed on to the lower Deposit which he found had not been observed by the Soues he hunted two day Killed 36 Deer & 14 Elk, Several of them so meager, that they were unfit for use, the meet which he killed and that in the lower Deposit amounting to about 3000lb. was brought up on two Slays one Drawn by 16 men had about 2400lb. on it

22nd of February Friday 1805.

a Cloudy morning, about 12 oClock it began to rain, and Continud for a fiew minite, and turned to Snow, and Continud Snowing for about one hour, and Cleared away fair The two hunters left below arrived, they killed two Elk, and hung them up out of reach of the Wolves. The Coal a Ricara who is a considarable Chief of the Mandans Visited us to day, and maney others of the three nations in our neighbourhood.

---

[1] See descriptions of this "medicine stone," and of the ceremonies with which the Indians invoked the spirit supposed to dwell there, in Long's *Expedition*, i, pp. 273, 274; and Maximilian's *Voyage*, ii, pp. 459, 460. Both the Mandan and Minitaree were accustomed to consult these oracles; Matthews says of the latter (*Ethnog. Hidatsa*, p. 51): "The Hidatsa now seldom refer to it, and I do not think they ever visit it." — ED.

23rd *of February 1805 Satturday*

All hands employed in Cutting the Perogues Loose from the ice, which was nearly even with their top; we found great dificuelty in effecting this work owing to the Different devisions of Ice & water. after Cutting as much as we Could with axes, we had all the Iron we Could get, & some axes put on long poles and picked through the ice, under the first water, which was not more the [than] 6 or 8 inches Deep, we disengaged one Perogue, and nearly disengaged the 2nd in Course of this day which has been worm & pleasent vis'ed by a No of Indians, Jessomme & familey went to the *Shoe* Indians Villag to day

The father of the Boy whose feet were frosed near this place, and nearly Cured by us, took him home in a Slay.

24th *February Sunday 1805*

The Day fine, we Commenced very early to day the Cutting loose the boat which was more dificuelt than the Perogus with great exertions and with the assistance of Great prises we lousened her, and turned the Second perogue upon the ice, ready to Draw out, in lousening the boat from the ice Some of the Corking drew out which Caused her to Leake for a fiew minits untill we Descovered the Leake & Stoped it. Jessomme our interpeter & familey returned from the Villages Several Indians visit us to day

25th *of February Monday 1805*

We fixed a Windlass and Drew up the two Perogues on the upper bank, and attempted the Boat, but the Roap, which we hade made of Elk skins proved too weak & broke Several times. night Comeing on obliged us to leave her in a Situation but little advanced. We were visited by the Black mockerson Chief of the little Village of the Big Bellies, the Chief of the Shoe Indˢ and a number of others those Chiefs gave us Some meat which they packed on their wives, and one requested a ax to be made for his Sun, Mʳ (Root) Bunch, one of the under traders for the hudsons Bay Company. one of the Big Bellies asked leave for himself & his two wives to Stay all night, which was granted, also two Boys Stayed all night, one the Sun of the Black Cat.

The Day has been exceedingly pleasent

26ᵗʰ February Tuesday 1805

a fine Day Commenced verry early in makeing preparations for drawing up the Boat on the bank, at Sunset by Repeated exertions the whole day, we accomplished this troublesom task, just as we were fixed for hauling the Boat, the ice gave way near us for about 100 ydˢ in length. a number of Indians here to day to See the Boat rise on the Bank.

27ᵗʰ of February Wednesday 1805

a find day, preparing the Tools to make perogues all day. a fiew Indians Visit us to day, one the largest Indian I ever Saw, & as large a man as ever I saw, I commence a Map of the Countrey on the Missouries & its water &c. &c. —

28ᵗʰ of February Thursday 1805

a fine morning two men of the NW Compʸ arrive with letters and Sackacomah,[1] also a Root and top of a plant, presented by Mʳ Haney, for the Cure of Mad Dogs Snakes &c. and to be found & used as follows viz: "this root is found on the high lands and asent of hills, the way of useing it is to scarify the part when bitten to chu or pound an inch or more if the root is Small, and applying it to the bitten part renewing it twice a

---

[1] Probably a corrupt form of *sacacommis*, a name applied to the bear-berry (*Arctostaphylos*), of which the Indians eat the berry, and often use the bark in preparing the smoking-mixture called *kinnikinick*. — Ed.

Day. the bitten person is not to chaw nor Swallow any of the Root for it might have contrary effect."[1]

Sent out 16 men to make four Perogus those men returned in the evening and informed that they found trees they thought would answer.

Mr. Gravelin two frenchmen & two Inds. arrive from the Ricara Nation with Letters from Mr. Anty Tabeaux, informing us of the peeceable dispositions of that nation towards the Mandans & Me ne ta rees & their avowed intentions of pursueing our councils & advice, they express a wish to visit the Mandans, & [to] know if it will be agreeable to them to admit the Recaras to Settle near them and join them against their Common Enemey the *Soues* We mentioned this to the mandans, who observed they had always wished to be at peace and good neighbours with the *Ricaras*, and it is also the Sentiments of all the Big bellies, & Shoe nations

Mr. Gravelen informs that the *Sisetoons* and the 3 upper bands of the *Tetons*, with the Yanktons of the North intend to come to war in a Short time against the nations in this quarter, & will kill everry white man they See. Mr. T. also informs that Mr. Cameron[2] of St Peters has put arms into the hands of the Soues to revenge the death of 3 of his men killed by the Chipaways latterley, and that the Band of tetons which we Saw is desposed to doe as we have advised them, thro the influence of their Chief the Black Buffalow.

Mr. Gravelen further informs that the Party which Robed us of the 2 horses laterly were all Sieoux 106 in number, they Called at the Recaras on their return, the Recares being despleased at their Conduct would not give them any thing to eate, that being the greatest insult they Could peaceably offer them, and upbraded them.

---

[1] Cf. Marquette's account of a similar remedy (*Jes. Relations*, lix, p. 101) and note thereon (p. 308). Coues mentions (*L. and C.*, i, pp. 238, 239), several plants which have in frontier tradition the reputation of curing snake-bites; but he adds, "Everybody knows the plant, except the botanists." Although unable to identify it, he thinks that there is some basis of fact for so universal a belief. See fuller description of this plant, *post*, in "Scientific Data: Botany." — ED.

[2] Murdoch Cameron, a trader whose headquarters were on St. Peter's (now Minnesota) River; he was accused of selling liquor to the Indians. He became wealthy in the Indian trade, and died in 1811. See Coues's *Exped. Pike*, i, p. 66. — ED.

March 1st Friday 1805

a fine Day I am ingaged in Copying a Map,[1] men building perogus, makeing Ropes, Burning Coal, Hanging up meat & makeing battle axes for Corn

2nd of March 1805 Satturday —

a fine Day the river brake up in places all engaged about Something Mr. *LaRocque* a Clerk of the NW Company visit us, he has latterley returned from the Establishments on the Assinniboin River, with Merchindize to tarade with Indians. Mr. L informs us the N.W. & XY[2] Companies have joined, & the head of the N.W, Co. is Dead Mr. Mc Tavish of Montreal, visited by the Coal & Several Indians.

3rd of March Sunday 1805

a fine Day Wind from the NW, a large flock of Ducks pass up the River visited by the black Cat, Chief of the Mandans 2d. Chief and a Big Belley, they Stayed but a Short time we informed those Chiefs of the news rec[e]ved from the Recaras, all hands employd.

4th. March Monday 1805 Fort Mandan

a cloudy morning wind from the NW the after part of the day Clear, visited by the Black Cat & Big white, who brought a Small present of meat, an Engage of the NW Co: Came for a horse, and requested in the name of the woman of the principal of his Department some Silk of three Colours, which we furnished. The Assinniboins who visited the Mandans a fiew days ago, returned and attempted to take horses of the Minetarees & were fired on by them.

---

[1] The several maps made by Clark during the expedition will be found either in the various text volumes of this series, or in the accompanying atlas. — Ed.

[2] Regarding the North West Company, see p. 206, *note* 1, ante. The X Y Company (also known as New Northwest Company) was formed in 1795, by Montreal merchants who seceded from the North West Company, mainly on account of the arbitrary acts of its chief, Simon McTavish; his death (July, 1804) led to the union of the two companies, on the 5th of November following. See Bryce's *Hist. H. B. Co.* pp. 147–153. The agreement of Nov. 5 is given by Masson (*Bourg. N.-O.*, ii, pp. 482–499). — Ed.

5th March Tuesday 1805

A fine Day, Thermometer at 40° above 0. Several Indians Visit us to day one frenchman Cross to join a Indian, the two to pass through by Land to the Ricaras with a Letter to Mr Tabbow

6th of March Wednesday 1805

a cloudy morning & Smokey all Day from the burning of the plains, which was set on fire by the *Minetarries* for an early crop of Grass, as an enducement for the Buffalow to feed on, the horses which was Stolen Some time ago by the Assinniboins from the *Menetarries* were returned yesterday. Visited by *Oh-harh* or the Little fox 2d Chief of the lower Village of the Me ne tar rees. one man *Shannon* Cut his foot with the ads [adze] in working at the perogue, George & Gravelene go to the Village, the river rise a little to day.

7th of March Thursday 1805

a little cloudy and windey, NE. the *Coal* Visited us with a Sick child, to whome I gave Some of rushes[1] pills. Shabounar returned this evening from the Gross Ventres & informed that all the nation had returned from the hunting—he (our Menetarre interpeter) had received a present from Mr Chaboillez of the N.W. Company of the following articles 3 Brace[2] of Cloth 1 Brace of Scarlet a par Corduroy overalls 1 Vests 1 Brace Blu Cloth, 1 Brace red or Scorlet with 3 bars, 200 balls & Powder, 2 brac[e]s Tobacco, 3 Knives.

8th of March Friday 1805

a fair Morning cold and windey, wind from the East, visited by the Greesey head & a Ricara to day, those men gave Some account of the Indians near the rockey Mountains

a young Indian (*Minetarre*) same nation & different village,

---

[1] Probably referring to Dr. Benjamin Rush, of Philadelphia, one of the most noted physicians of his day (1745-1813). — Ed.

[2] A phonetic rendering of "brasse," a French measure commonly used in Canada, and equivalent to 5.318 English feet. Scarlet cloth was especially valued by the Indians. — Ed.

Stole the Doughter of the Black man (*Mandan*), he went to his village took his horse & returned & took away his doughter[1]

9th of March Satturday 1805

a Cloudy Cold and windey morning wind from the North. I walked up to See the Party that is makeing Perogues, about 5 miles above this, the wind hard and Cold on my way up I met the (*The Borgne*) Main Chief of the Ma ne tar res, with four Indians on their way to see us, (*see note of 9 March after 10th Mar 1805*), I requested him to proceed on to the fort, where he would find Capt Lewis I should be there myself in corse of a fiew hours, Sent the interpiter back with him and proceeded on myself to the Canoes found them nearly fin[i]shed, the timber verry bad (*Qu x*), after visiting all the perogues where I found a number of Indians, I wind [went] to the upper mandan Village & Smoked a pipe (the greatest mark of friendship and attention) with the Chief and returned. on my return found the Manetarree Chief about Setting out on his return to his Village, having recived of Captain M. Lewis a *Medel* Gorget arman[d]s, a *Flag* Shirt, scarlet &c. &c. &c. for which he was much pleased, those things were given in place of Sundery articles Sent to him which he Sais he did not receive, 2 guns were fired for this Great man.[2]

10th of March Sunday 1805.

a cold winday Day, we are visited by the Black Mockersons, Chief of the 2d Minetarre Village and the Chief of the Shoeman Village (*Shoe or Mocassin Tr:*) or Mah hâ ha V. (*Wattassoans*) those Chiefs Stayed all day and the latter all night, and gave us man[y] Strang[e] accounts of his nation &c.

---

[1] More clearly worded by Biddle (i, p. 169), thus: "The father went to the village and found his daughter, whom he brought home, and took with him a horse belonging to the offender" — this last by way of reprisal, according to Indian custom, which is practically law among them. — ED.

[2] This chief had lost an eye, hence his nickname of Le Borgne ("the one-eyed"). Biddle inserts several curious incidents illustrating the character of this chief, who was unusually ferocious and unscrupulous. See Brackenridge, *Journal of a Voyage up the River Missouri* (Baltimore, 1816), p. 261, for an account of Le Borgne. — ED.

this Little tribe or band of Me ne tar rees (call themselves Ah-nah-hâ-way or people whose Village is on the Hill. (*Insert this Ahnahaway is the nation Mahhaha the village*) this little nation formerley lived about 30 miles below this, but beeing oppressed by the Assinniboins & Sous were Compelled to move near (5 miles) the Menetarees, where, the Assinniboins killed the most of them, those remaining built a village verry near to the Menetarries at the mouth of Knife R where they now live, and Can raise about 50 men, they are intermixed with the Mandans & Menatarries. the Mandans formerly lived in 6 (*nine*) large Villages at and above the mouth of *Chis-cheter* or Heart River four (*Six*) Villages on the West Side (*of the Missouri*) & two (*three*) on the East one of those Villages on the East Side of the Missouri & the larges[t] was entirely Cut off by the Seaux & the greater part of the other and the Small Pox reduced the others.

11th *of March Monday* 1805

A Cloudy Cold windey day, Some Snow in the latter part of the day, we deturmin to have two other Perogus made for to transport our Provisions &c.

We have every reason to believe that our *Menetarre* interpeter (whome we intended to take with his wife, as an interpeter through his wife to the Snake Indians of which nation She is) has been Corrupted by the [blank in MS] Company &c. Some explenation has taken place which Clearly proves to us the fact, we give him to night to reflect and deturmin whether or not he intends to go with us under the regulations Stated.

12th "

a fine day Some Snow last night our Interpeter Shabonah, deturmins on not proceeding with us as an interpeter under the terms mentioned yesterday, he will not agree to work let our Situation be what it may nor Stand a guard, and if miffed with any man he wishes to return when he pleases, also have the disposal of as much provisions as he Chuses to Carry in admissable and we Suffer him to be off the engagement which was only virbal Wind NW

13th of March Wednesday 1805

a fine day visited by Mr. Mc Kinzey one of the Clerks of the NW. Companey, the river riseing a little. Maney Indt. here to day all anxiety for war axes the Smiths have not an hour of Idle time to Spear wind SW.

14th March Thursday 1805. —

a fine day Set all hands to Shelling Corn &c. Mr. Mc Kinsey leave us to day Many Indians as usial. wind west river Still riseing.

15th of March Friday 1805 —

a fine day I put out all the goods, & Parch[ed] meal Clothing &c to Sun, a number of Indians here to day they make maney remarks respecting our goods &c. Set Some men about Hulling Corn &c.

16th of March Satturday 1805 —

a cloudy day wind from the S,E. one Indian much displeased with white-house for Strikeing his hand when eating, with a Spoon for behaving badly. Mr. Garrow show's us the way the recaras made their large Beeds.

[Lewis:][1]

Mr. Garrow a Frenchman who has lived many years with the Ricares & Mandans shewed us the process used by those Indians to make beads. the discovery of this art these nations are said to have derived from the Snake Indians who have been taken prisoners by the Ricaras. the art is kept a secret by the Indians among themselves and is yet known to but few of them. the Prosess is as follows. — Take glass of as many different colours as you think proper, then pound it as fine as possible, puting each colour in a seperate vessel. wash the pounded Glass in severtal waters throwing off the water at each washing, continue this opperation as long as the pounded glass stains or colours the water which is poured off and the residuum is then prepared for uce. you then provide an earthen pot of convenient size say of three gallons which will stand the fire; a platter also of the same material sufficiently small to be admitted in the mouth of the pot or jar. the pot has a nitch in it's edge through which to watch the beads when in blast. You then provide some well seasoned clay with a proportion of sand sufficient to prevent it's becoming very hard when exposed to the heat. this clay must be tempered with water untill it is about the consistency of common doe. of this clay you then prepare, a sufficient number of little sticks of the size you wish the hole through the bead, which you do by roling the clay on the palm of the hand with your finger. this done put those sticks of clay on the platter and expose them to a red heat for a few minutes when you take them off and suffer them to cool. the pot is also heated to cles [cleanse] it perfectly of any filth it may contain. small balls of clay are also mad[e] of about an ounce weight which serve each as a pedestal for a bead. these while soft ar destributed over the face of the platter at su[c]h distance from each other as to prevent the beads from touching. some little wooden paddles are now provided from three to four inches in length sharpened or brought to a point at the extremity of the handle. with this paddle you place in the palm of the hand as much of the wet pounded glass as is necessary to make the bead of the size you wish it. it is then arranged with the paddle in an oblong from [form], laying one of those little stick of clay crosswise over it; the pounded glass by means of the paddle is then roped in cilindrical form arround the stick of clay and gently roled by motion of the hand backwards an forwards untill you get it as regular and smooth as you conveniently can. if you wish to introduce any other colour you now purforate the surface of the bead with the pointed end of your little paddle and fill up the cavity with other pounded glass of the colour you wish forming the whole as regular as you can. a hole is now made in the center of the little pedestals of clay with the handle of your shovel sufficiently large to admit the end of the stick of clay arround which the bead is formed. the beads are then arranged perpendicularly on their pedestals and little distance above them supported by the little sticks of clay to which they are attatched in the manner before mentioned. thus arranged the platter is deposited on burning coals or hot embers and the pot reversed with the apparture in its edge turned towards covers the whole. dry wood pretty much doated (*doughted*)[1] is then plased arron [around] the pot in sush manner as compleatly to cover it [It] is then set on fire and the opperator must shortly after begin to watch his beads through the apparture of the pot le[s]t they should be distroyed by being over heated. he suffers the beads to acquire a deepred heat from which when it passes in a small degree to a pailer or whitish red, or he discovers that the beads begin to become pointed at their upper extremities he removes the fire from about the pot and suffers the whole to cool gradually. the pot is then removed and the beads taken out. the clay which fills the hollow of the beads is picked out with an awl or nedle. the bead is then fit for uce. The Indians are extreemly fond of the large beads formed by this process. they use them as pendants to their years, or hair and sometimes wear them about their necks.[2]

---

[1] This entry, written by Lewis under date of March 16, is in the MS. inserted after the entry for March 21. — Ed.

[Clark:] *17th of March Sunday —*

a windey Day attempted to air our goods &c. Mr Chabonah Sent a frenchman of our party [to say] that he was Sorry for the foolish part he had acted and if we pleased he would accompany us agreeabley to the terms we had perposed and doe every thing we wished him to doe &c. &c. he had requested me Some thro our French inturpeter two days ago to excuse his Simplicity and take him into the cirvice, after he had taken his things across the River we called him in and Spoke to him on the Subject, he agreed to our tirms and we agreed that he might go on with us &c. &c. but fiew Indians here to day, the river riseing a little and Severall places open.

---

[1] A variant of "doted," which *Century Dictionary* regards as an English provincialism; it means "decayed," or "rotted." Coues states that he had heard this word in North Carolina, applied to trees dead at the top, also to lumber prepared from unsound trees. — Ed.

[2] Catlin also mentions this manufacture of glass beads by the Mandans, and their exclusive possession of the art (*N. Amer. Inds.*, ii, p. 261). But Matthews says that the Arikara women also have it; he thinks that these peoples made "glazed earthen ornaments before the whites came among them" (*Hidatsa*, pp. 22, 23). — Ed.

18th *of March* 1805 —

a Cold Cloudy Day wind from the N. I pack up all the Merchendize into 8 packs equally divided So as to have Something of every thing in each Canoe & perogue I am informed of a Party of Christanoes & Assinniboins being killed by the Sioux, 50 in Number near the Establishments on the Assinniboin R. a fiew days ago (the effect of Mr Cammerons revenge on the Chipaways for killing 3 of his men) Mr Tousent Chabono [Toussaint Charboneau], Enlisted as Interpreter this evening, I am not well to day,

19th *of March* 1805 —

Cold windey Day Cloudy Some little Snow last night visited to Day by the *big white* & Little Crow, also a man & his wife with a Sick Child, I administer for the child We are told that two parties are gone to war from the Big bellies and one other party going to war Shortly.

20th *March Wednesday* 1805.

I with all the men which could be Speared from the Fort went to Canoes, there I found a number of Indians, the men carried 4 to the River about 1½ miles thro' the Bottom, I visited the Chief of the Mandans in the Course of the Day and Smoked a pipe with himself and Several old men. Cloudy wind hard from N.

21st March Thursday 1805—

a Cloudy Day Some Snow, the men Carried the remaining Canoes to the River, and all except 3 left to take care & complete the Canoes returned to the *fort* with their baggage, on my return to day to the Fort I came on the points of the high hills, Saw an emence quantity of Pumice Stone on the Sides & foot of the hills and emence beds of Pumice Stone near the Tops of the[m], with evident marks of the Hills haveing once been on fire, I Collected Some [of] the different [sorts] i. e. Stone Pumice Stone & a hard earth, and put them into a furnace, the hard earth melted and glazed the others two and the hard Clay became a pumice Stone Glazed. I collected Some plants &c.

CHAPTER VII

FROM FORT MANDAN TO THE YELLOWSTONE

Clark's Journal, March 22—April 27, 1805
Lewis's Journal, April 7-27

[Clark:]

23 (22 mistake) of March Friday 1805

A CLOUDY Day visited by Mr. La[ro]ck, Mr. McKinsey[1] & the 2d Chief of the Big bellies, the white wolf and many other Minataries, we Gave a Medal Some Clothes and wampom to the 2[nd] Chief and Delivered a Speach, which they all appeared well pleased with in the evening the men Danced Mr. Jessomme displeased.

24th (23) of March Satturday 1805 —

after Brackfast Mr. La Rocke and Mr. McKinsey and the Cheifs & men of the Minetarras leave us. Soon after we were Visited by a Brother of the Burnia (*of the Borgne, or one eyed chief of the Menitarees*) who gave us a Vocabulary of his Language.[2] the Coal & many other Mandans also visit us to day a find Day in the fore part in the evening a little rain & the first this winter.

---

[1] Mr. La Rocque and I . . . became intimate with the gentlemen of the American expedition, who on all occasions seemed happy to see us, and always treated us with civility and kindness. It is true, Captain Lewis could not make himself agreeable to us. He could speak fluently and learnedly on all subjects, but his inveterate disposition against the British stained, at least in our eyes, all his eloquence. Captain Clarke was equally well informed, but his conversation was always pleasant, for he seemed to dislike giving offence unnecessarily. — MACKENZIE (Masson's *Bourg. N.-O.*, i, p. 336).

[2] As the Indians could not well comprehend the intention of recording their words, they concluded that the Americans had a wicked design upon their country. — MACKENZIE (*ut supra*, p. 337).

25th. (24th) *of March Sunday* 1805. —

a Cloudy morning wind from the NE the after part of the Day fair, Several Indians visit us to day, prepareing to Set out on our journey, Saw Swans & Wild Gees flying N.E. this evening.

26th (25th) *of March Monday* 1805 —

a fine Day wind S.W. but fiew Ind: Visit us to day the Ice haveing broken up in Several places, The ice began to brake away this evening and was near destroying our Canoes as they were dec[e]nding to the fort, river rose only 9 Inches to day prepareing to Depart.

27th. (*26*) *of March Tuesday* 1805 —

The river choked up with ice opposit to us and broke away in the evening raised only ½ Inch all employed prepareing to Set out.

28th. (*27*) *of March Friday* (*Wednesday*) 1805 —

a windey Blustering Day Wind S W ice running the [ice] Blocked up in view for the Space of 4 hours and gave way leaveing great quantity of *ice* on the Shallow Sand bars. had all the Canoes corked [calked] pitched & tined in and on the cracks and windshake which is universially in the Cotton wood.

29th. (*28*) *of March Satturday* (*Thursday*) 1805 —

The ice has stoped running owing to Som obstickle above, repare the Boat & Perogues, and prepareing to Set out but few Indians visit us to day they are now attending on the river bank to Catch the floating Buffalow

30th. (*29*) *of March Sunday* (*Friday*) 1805 —

The obstickle broke away above & the ice came down in great quantities the river rose 13 inches the last 24 hours I observed extrodanary dexterity of the Indians in jumping from one cake of ice to another, for the purpose of Catching the buffalow as they float down[1] many of the cakes of ice which they pass over are not two feet square. The Plains are on fire in View of the fort on both Sides of the River, it is Said to be common for the Indians to burn the Plains near their Villages every Spring for the benefit of their hors[e]s, (*Qu*) and to induce the Buffalow to come near to them.

31st. (30th) Saturday. of March Monday (Saturday) (Sunday) 1805 —

(*Ser. Ordway now here*) Cloudy Day Sever[al] Gangs of Gees and Ducks pass up the river. but a Small portion of *ice* floating down to day, but fiew Inds. Visit us to day all the party in high Sperits they pass but fiew nights without amuseing themselves danceing possessing perfect harmony and good understanding towards each other, Generally helthy except Venerials Complaints which is verry Common amongst the natives (*Qu.*) and the men Catch it from them

April the 1st Tuesday (Monday) 1805 —

The fore part of to day haile rain with Thunder & lightning, the rain continued by intimitions all day, it is worthey of remark that this is the 1st rain which has fallen Sence we have been here or Sence the 15 of October last, except a fiew drops at two or three defferent times. had the Boat Perogues & Canoes all put into the Water.

April the 2nd Friday (Tuesday) 1805 —

a cloudy day, rained all the last night we are prepareing to Set out all thing nearly ready. The 2d. Chief of the 2d. Mandan Village took a miff at our not attending to him perticularly after being here about ten days and moved back to his village.

The Mandans Killed twenty one elk yesterday 15 miles below this, they were So Meager that they [were] Scercely fit for use.

---

[1] Biddle describes the manner in which the Indians capture buffaloes which, trying to cross the river, have become isolated on ice-floes. Mackenzie (*ut supra*, p. 337) states that the Indians on the Missouri also search eagerly for the carcasses of buffaloes and other drowned animals that float down the river in the spring season; these, although rotten and of intolerable stench, "are preferred by the Natives to any other kind of food. . . . So fond are the Mandanes of putrid meat that they bury animals whole in the winter for the consumption of the spring." — ED.

April the 3^{rd} *Thursday (Wednesday)* 1805 —

a white frost this morning, Some ice on the edge of the water, a fine day Pack up and prepare to load

observed equal altitudes of the ⊙ with Sextant and artificial horizen

A.M.	7 H.	- 51 m	- 15.s.	P.M.	5 h.	- 1 m.	- 22 s.
“	“	- 52	- 52.5		5	- 3	- 3
	“	- 54	- 30		“	- 5	- 41

altitude produc'd from this observation is 36° - 31″ - 15″. *Chronomiter* too fast 32 minits

observed Time and Distance of ⊙^{s} & ☽^{s} nearest limbs with the Sextant and Chronomiter — Sun west.

	Time			*Distance*		
PM.	5 H.	- 15 M.	- 50 S.	43°	- 27′	- 15″
“		- 18	- 24	“	- 30	- 0
“		- 20	- 5	“	- 30	- 30
“		- 31	- 29	“	- 34	- 0
“		- 36	- 47	“	- 36	- 30
“		- 39	- 7	“	- 37	- 15
“		- 40	- 55	“	- 37	- 30

M^{rs} La Rocke & M^{c}Kinsey Clerk to the N W. Comp^{y} Visit us. M^{r} M^{c}Kinzey wishes to Get pay for his horse lost in our Service this Winter and one of which our men were robed this winter by the Tetons, we Shall pay this man for his horse. we are all day engaged packing up Sundery articles to be sent to the President of the U.S.[1]

Box N^{o} 1, contains the following articles i. e.

In package N^{o} 3 & 4 Male & female antelope, with their Skelitons.

---

[1] Some of the articles were long on exhibition at Monticello. Others passed to Peale's museum in Philadelphia, and there some of the specimens are still to be found. See note by Witmer Stone, on "Zoology of the Lewis and Clark Expedition," in "Scientific Data: Zoology," Vol. vi of the present work. — Ed.

Nº 7 & 9 the horns of two mule or Black tailed deer. a Mandan bow an[d] quiver of arrows — with some Recara's tobacco seed.

Nº 11 a Martin Skin, Containing the tail of a Mule Deer, a weasel and three Squirels from the Rockey mountains.

Nº 12, The bones & Skeleton of a Small burrowing wolf of the Praries the Skin being lost by accedent.

Nº 99. The Skeliton of the white and Grey *hare*.

Box Nº 2, Contains 4 Buffalow *Robes*, and a ear of Mandan Corn.

The large Trunk Contains a male & female *Braro* or burrowing dog of the Praire and the female's *Skeliton*.

a carrote of Ricaras *Tobacco*

a red fox Skin Containing a *Magpie*

Nº 14 Minitarras Buffalow robe Containing Some articles of Indian dress.

Nº 15 a mandan *robe* containing two burrowing Squirels, a white *weasel* and the Skin of a Loucirvia. also

13 red fox Skins.

1 white Hare Skin &c.

4 horns of the mountain ram

1 Robe representing a battle between the Sioux & Ricaras against the Minetares and Mandans.

In Box Nº 3.

No.s 1 & 2 the Skins of the Male & female Antelope with their Skeletons. & the Skin of a Yellow *Bear* which I obtained from the *Sieoux*

Nº 4. Box. Specimens of plants numbered from 1. to 67.

Specimens of Plants numbered from 1 to 60.

1 Earthen pot Such as the Mandans manufacture and use for culinary purposes.[1]

1 Tin box containing insects mice &c.

a Specimine of the fur of the antilope.

a Specimon of a plant, and a parcel of its roots higly prized by the natives as an efficatious remidy in cases of the bite of the rattle Snake or Mad Dog.

---

[1] Catlin says (*N. Amer. Inds.*, pp. 260, 261) that specimens of the pottery taken from the burial mounds in Ohio "were to be seen in great numbers in the use of the Mandans; and scarcely a day in the summer, when the visitor to their village would not see the women at work with their hands and fingers, moulding them from black clay, into vases, cups, pitchers, and pots, and baking them in their little kilns in the sides of the hill, or under the bank of the river." — Ed.

In a large Trunk[1]

Skins of a male and female Braro, or burrowing Dog of the Prarie, with the Skeleton of the female.

1 Skin of the red fox Containing a Magpie

2 Cased Skins of the white hare.

1 Minitarra Buffalow robe Containing Some articles of Indian Dress.

1 Mandan Buffalow robe Containing a dressed Lousirva Skin, and 2 cased Skins of the Burrowing Squirel of the Praries.

13 red fox Skins

4 Horns of the Mountain Ram, or *big horn*.

1 Buffalow robe painted by a mandan man representing a battle fought 8 years Since by the Sioux & Recaras against the mandans, me ni tarras & Ah wah har ways. (Mandans &c. on horseback

Cage N°. 6.

Contains a liveing burrowing Squirel of the praries

Cage N°. 7.

Contains 4 liveing Magpies

Cage N°. 9.

Containing a liveing hen of the Prairie

a large par of Elks horns containing [*contained*, i. e., held together — Ed.] by the frontal bone.

April the 4th. 1805 Wednesday (Thursday) —

a blustering windey Day the Clerks of the N W Co. leave us, we are arrangeing all things to Set out. &c.

April the 5th. 1805 Thursday (Friday) —

we have our 2 perogues & Six Canoes loaded with our Stores & provisions, principally provisions. the wind verry high from the NW. a number of Mandans Visit us to day[2]

---

[1] Repetition of the contents of "the large trunk," mentioned above. — Ed.

[2] Gass here mentions the prevalence of licentiousness among the Indians on the Missouri. — Ed.

April the 6th. Friday (Satturday) 1805 —

a fine day visited by a number of Mandans, we are informed of the arrival of the whole of the *recarra* nation on the other Side of the river near their old village, we Sent an interpreter to see with orders to return imediately and let us know if their Chiefs ment to go down to See their great father.

[**Lewis:**] *Fort Mandan April 7th. 1805.*[1]

Having on this day at 4. P.M. completed every arrangement necessary for our departure, we dismissed the barge and crew with orders to return without loss of time to St. Louis, a small canoe with two French hunters accompanyed the barge; these men had assended the missouri with us the last year as engages.[2] The barge crew consisted of six soldiers and two [blank space in MS.] Frenchmen; two Frenchmen and a Ricara Indian also take their passage in her as far as the Ricara Vilages, at which place we expect Mr. Tiebeau [Tabeau] to embark with his peltry who in that case will make an addition of two, perhaps four men to the crew of the barge. We gave Richard Warfington, a discharged Corpl., the charge of the Barge and crew, and confided to his care likewise our dispatches to the government, letters to our private friends, and a number of articles to the President the United States.[3] One of the Frenchmen by the Name of (*Joseph*) Gravline an honest discrete man and an excellent boat-man is imployed to conduct the barge as a pilot; we have therefore every hope that the barge and with her our dispatches will arrive safe at St. Louis. Mr. Gravlin who speaks the Ricara language extreemly well, has been imployed to conduct a few of the Recara Chiefs to the seat of government who have promised us to decend in the barge to St: Liwis with that view.

---

[1] At this point begins Codex D, which is entirely in Lewis's handwriting, and continues the journal of the expedition until May 23, 1805. — Ed.

[2] These were François Rivet and Philippe Degie, whom the explorers met on their return journey Aug. 21, 1806. Mrs. E. E. Dye writes to us that they afterwards went to Oregon and settled in Champoeg, and were locally celebrated as being men who had been with Lewis and Clark. — Ed.

[3] Coues (*L. and C.*, i, pp. 253–260) gives in his notes on this entry all the information he could gather regarding the personnel of the party which left Fort Mandan to continue the transcontinental explorations; he also cites a letter by Lewis, which explains how Corporal Warfington came to be retained on the muster-roll after his term of service had expired. He was the only one of the party returning to St. Louis whom Lewis could entrust with his despatches to the government, and his commander praises his fidelity. — Ed.

At same moment that the Barge departed from Fort Mandan, Capt. Clark emba[r]ked with our party and proceeded up the River. as I had used no exercise for several weeks, I determined to walk on shore as far as our encampment of this evening; accordingly I continued my walk on the N. side of the River about six miles, to the upper Village of the Mandans, and called on the Black Cat or Pose-cop′-se-ha′, the great chief of the Mandans; he was not at home; I rested myself a [few] minutes, and finding that the party had not arrived I returned about 2 miles and joined them at their encampment on the N. side of the river opposite the lower Mandan village. Our part[y] now consisted of the following Individuals. Sergts. John Ordway, Nathaniel Prior, & Patric Gass; Privates, William Bratton, John Colter, Reubin, and Joseph Fields, John Shields, George Gibson, George Shannon, John Potts, John Collins, Joseph Whitehouse, Richard Windsor, Alexander Willard, Hugh Hall, Silas Goodrich, Robert Frazier, Peter Crouzatt, John Baptiest la Page, Francis Labiech, Hue Mc.Neal, William Warner, Thomas P. Howard, Peter Wiser, and John B. Thompson. *Interpreters*, George Drewyer and Tauasant Charbono also a Black man by the name of York, servant to Capt. Clark, an Indian Woman wife to Charbono with a young child, and a Mandan man who had promised us to accompany us as far as the Snake Indians with a view to bring about a good understanding and friendly intercourse between that nation and his own, the Minetares and Ahwahharways.

Our vessels consisted of six small canoes, and two large perogues. This little fleet altho' not quite so rispectable as those of Columbus or Capt. Cook, were still viewed by us with as much pleasure as those deservedly famed adventurers ever beheld theirs; and I dare say with quite as much anxiety for their safety and preservation. we were now about to penetrate a country at least two thousand miles in width, on which the foot of civilized man had never trodden; the good or evil it had in store for us was for experiment yet to determine, and these little vessells contained every article by which we were to expect to subsist or defend ourselves. however, as the state of mind in which we are, generally gives the colouring to events, when the immagination is suffered to wander into futurity, the picture which now presented itself to me was a most pleasing one. enterta[in]ing as I do, the most confident hope of succeeding in a voyage which had formed a da[r]ling project of mine for the last ten years, I could but esteem this moment of my departure as among the most happy of my life. The party are in excellent health and sperits, zealously attached to the enterprise, and anxious to proceed; not a whisper of murmur or discontent to be heard among them, but all act in unison, and with the most perfict harmony. I took an early supper this evening and went to bed. Capt. Clark myself the two Interpretters and the woman and child sleep in a tent of dressed skins. this tent is in the Indian stile, formed of a number of dressed Buffaloe skins sewed together with sinues.[1] it is cut in such manner that when foalded double it forms the quarter of a circle, and is left open at one side here it may be attatched or loosened at pleasure (*Qu*) by strings which are sewed to its sides for the purpose. to erect this tent, a parsel of ten or twelve poles are provided, fore or five of which are attatched together at one end, they are then elivated and their lower extremities are spread in a circular manner to a width proportionate to the demention of the lodge; in the same position orther poles are leant against those, and the leather is then thrown over them forming a conic figure.

[Clark:] *7th of April Satturday* [*Sunday*] 1805[2] —

a windey day, The Interpreter we Sent to the Villages returned with Chief of the Ricara's & 3 men of that nation, this Chief informed us that he was Sent by his nation to know the despositions of the nations in this neighbourhood in respect to the recara's Settleing near them, that he had not yet made those arrangements, he request that we would speek to the Assinniboin, & Crow Ind^s in their favour, that they wished to follow our directions and be at peace with all, he viewed all nations in this quarter well disposed except the Sioux. The wish of those recaras appears to be a junction with the Mandans & Minetarras in a Defensive war with the Sioux who rob them of every Spece [species] of property in Such a manner that they cannot live near them any longer. I told this Chief we were glad to See him, and we viewed his nation as the Dutifull Children of a Great father who would extend his protection to all those who would open their ears to his good advice, we had already Spoken to the Assinniboins, and should Speeke to the Crow Indians if we should see them &c. as to the Sioux their Great father would not let them have any more good Guns &c. would take care to prosu Such measurs as would provent those Sioux from Murd[er]ing and taking the property from his dutyfull red Children &c. we gave him a certificate of his good Conduct & a Small Medal, a Carrot of Tobacco and a String of Wompom. he requested that one of his men who was lame might decend in the boat to their nation and returned to the Mandans well Satisfied. The name of this Chief of War is *Kah-kah, We-to* — Raven brave. This Cheif delivered us a letter from M^r Taboe. informing us of the wish of the Grand Chiefs of the Recarras to visit their Great father and requesting the privolage of put'g on board the boat 3000^{lb} of Skins &c. & adding 4 hands and himself to the party. this preposeal we Shall agree to, as that addition will make the party in the boat 15 Strong and more able to defend themselves from the Seoux &c.[1]

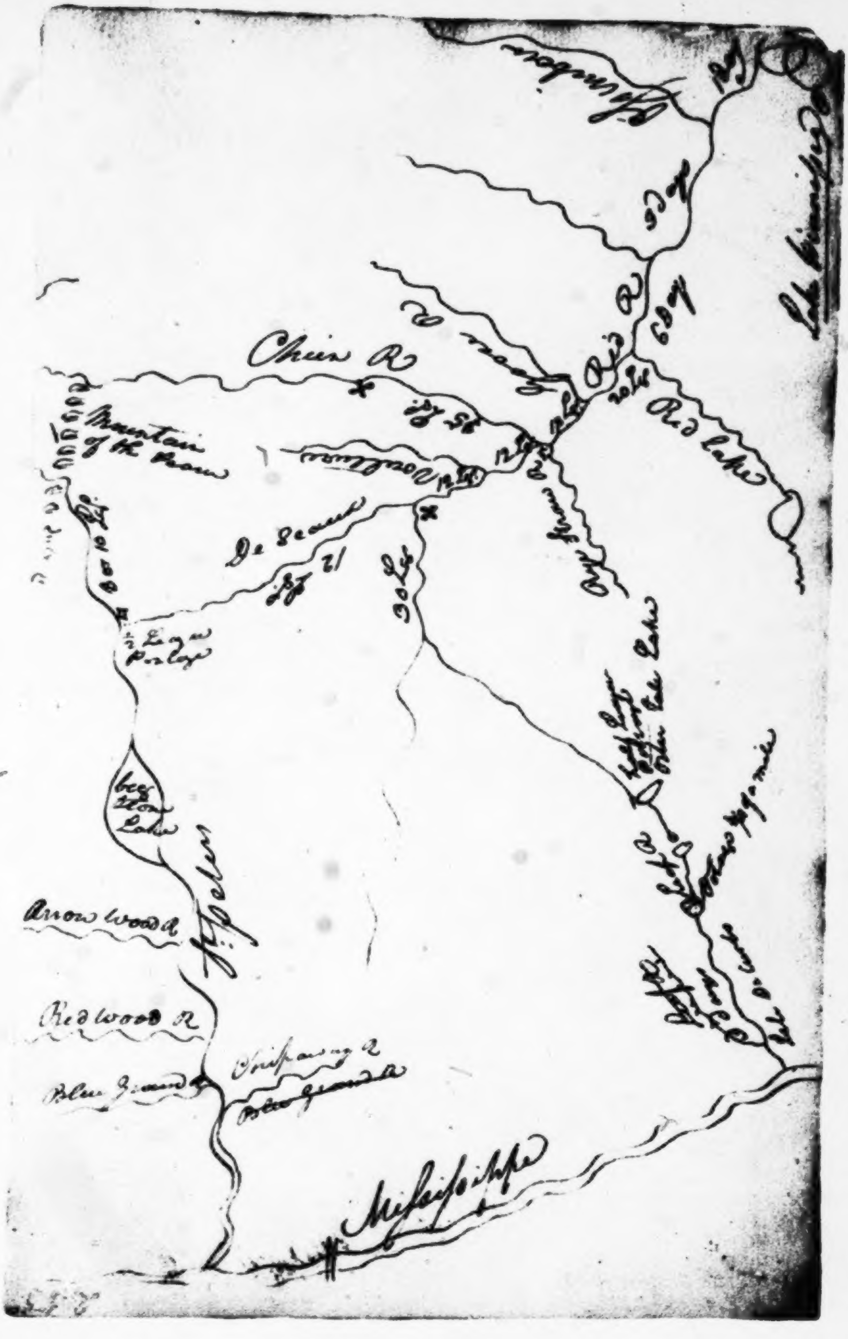
---

[1] Catlin enumerates (*N. Amer. Inds.*, i, p. 262) the many uses made by the Indians of the buffalo in their domestic economy — for food, clothing, implements, weapons, etc. — ED.

[2] We obtain Clark's journal from April 7–July 3, 1805 (except where otherwise noted) from Clark-Voorhis note-book No. 1; save that the first Clark entry of April 7 is from Codex C of the Philadelphia collection. — ED.

---

[1] Here ends the daily record kept by Clark, as contained in Codex C. The rest of the codex is occupied with matter outside of that record, which will be found in "Scientific Data." Towards the close of the codex is Clark's sketch map of the Red and St. Peter's Rivers, herewith reproduced. — ED.


Lake Winnipeg
Chein R
Roseau R
Red lake
Mountain of the Prarie
De Seaux
30 Ls
25 Ls
½ League Portage
Big Stone Lake
Otter Tail Lake
St. Peters
Arrow wood R
Redwood R
Blue Earth R
Chippeway R
Blue Earth R
Mississippi

Red and St. Peter's Rivers,
sketch plan by Clark.

[Clark:] *Fort Mandan Aprilth 7th 1805*

Sunday, at 4 oClock PM, the Boat, in which was 6 Soldiers 2 frenchmen & an Indian, all under the command of a corporal who had the charge of dispatches, &c.—and a canoe with 2 french men, Set out down the river for S^{t} Louis. at the same time we Sout out on our voyage up the river in 2 perogues and 6 canoes, and proceded on to the 1st villag. of Mandans & camped on the S.S. our party consisting of Serg^{t} Nathaniel Pryor Sg^{t} John Ordway. Sg^{t} Pat: Gass, William Bratten, John Colter Joseph & Reuben Fields. John Shields George Gibson George Shannon, John Potts, John Collins, Jos: Whitehouse, Richard Windser, Alexander Willard, Hugh Hall, Silas Gutrich, Robert Frazure, Peter Crouzat, John Baptiest la page, Francis Labich, Hugh M^{c} Neal, William Warner, Thomas P. Howard, Peter Wiser, J. B. Thompson and my servent york, George Drew yer who acts as a hunter & interpreter, Shabonah and his *Indian Squar* to act as an Interpreter & interpretress for the snake Indians—one Mandan & Shabonahs infant. *Sah-kab-gar we â*

[Lewis:] *April 8th.*

Set out early this morning, the wind blew hard against us, from the N.W. we therefore traveled very slowly. I walked on shore, and visited the *black Cat*, took leave of him after smoking a pipe as is their custom, and then proceeded on slowly by land about four miles where I wated the arrival of the party, at 12 Oclock they came up and informed me that one of the small canoes was behind in distress. Cap^{t}. Clark returned fou[n]d she had filled with water and all her loading wet. we lost half a bag of bisquit, and about thirty pounds of powder by this accedent; the powder we regard as a serious loss, but we spread it to dry immediately and hope we shall still be enabled to restore the greater part of it. this was the only powder we had which was not perfectly secure from geting wet. we took dinner at this place, and then proceed on to oure encampment, which was on the N. side opposite to a high bluff.[1] the Mandan man came up after we had encamped and brought with him a woman who was extremly solicitous to accompany one of the men of our party, this however we positively refused to permit.

---

[1] Near the present Hancock, N. D.—ED.

Courses distances and references for Ap^{l}. 8th.

From the upper point on an island (being the point to which Capt. Clark took his last course when he assended the river in surch of a place for winter quarters 1st November last) to a point of wood land Star'd side, passing a high bluff on the Lar'd. *N40°. W. 3½.*

[Clark:] *8th of April Monday 1805*

Set out very early wind hard a head from the N.W. proceeded on passed all the villages the inhabitants of which flocked down in great numbers to view us, I took my leave of the great Chief of the Mandans who gave me a par of excellent mockersons, one canoe filed with water every thing in her got wet ⅔ of a barrel of powder lost by this accident.

From the upper part of an island just below Marparperycopatoo's camp to a point of wood land on the Sta^{d} side passing a high bluff on the La^{d} containing many horizontal narrow stratas of Carbonate wood, some of which are sixty feet above the su[r]face of the water } N. 40° W. 3½

Camped on the S.S. ops^{d} a high bluff. an Indian Joined us, also an Indian woman with a view to accompany us, the woman was Sent back the man being acquainted with the countrey we allowed him to accompanie us

[Lewis:] *Tuesday April 9th*

Set out as early as it was possible to see this morning and proceed about five miles where we halted and took beakfas the Indian man who had promised us to accompany us as far as the Snake Indians, now informed us of his intention to relinquish the journey, and accordingly returned to his village. we saw a great number of brant passing up the river, some of them were white, except the large feathers in the first and second joint of the wing which are black. there is no other difference between them and the common gray brant but that of their colour — their note and habits are the same, and they are freequently seen to associate together. I have not yet positively determined whether they are the same, or a different species. Capt Clark walked on shore to-day[1] and informed me on his return, that passing through the prarie he had seen an anamal that precisely resembled the burrowing squrril, accept in point of size, it being only about one third as large as the squirrel, and that it also burrows. I have observed in many parts of the plains and praries, the work of an anamal of which I could never obtain a view. their work resembles that of the salamander common to the sand hills of the States of South Carolina and Georgia, and like that anamal also it never appears above the ground. the little hillocks which are thrown up by these anamals have much the appearance of ten or twelve pounds of loose earth poared out of a vessel on the surface of the plain. in the state they leave them you can discover no whole through which they throw out this earth; but by removing the loose earth gently you may discover that the soil has been broken in a circle manner for about an inch and a half in diameter; where it appears looser than the adjacent surface, and is certainly the place through which the earth has been thrown out, tho' the operation is performed without leaving any visible aperture. the Bluffs of the river which we passed today were upwards of a hundred feet high, formed of a mixture of yellow clay and sand — many horizontal stratas of carbonated wood, having every appearance of pitcoal at a distance; were seen in the the face of these bluffs. these stratas are of unequal thicknesses from 1 to 5 feet, and appear at different elivations above the water some of them as much as eighty feet.[2] the hills of the river are very broken, and many of them have the apearance of having been on fire at some former period. considerable quantities of pumice stone and lava appear in many parts of these hills where they are broken and washed Down by the rain and melting snow. when we halted for dinner the squaw busied herself in serching for the wild artichokes which the mice[1] collect and deposit in large hoards. this operation she performed by penetrating the earth with a sharp stick about some small collections of drift wood. her labour soon proved successful, and she procured a good quantity of these roots. the flavor of this root resembles that of the Jerusalem Artichoke, and the stalk of the weed which produces it is also similar, tho' both the root and stalk are much smaller than the Jerusalem Artichoke. the root is white and of an ovate form, from one to three inches in length and usually about the size of a man's finger. one stalk produces from two to four, and somitimes six of these roots.

---

[1] That Lewis occupied himself with writing his journal is evidenced by the entry in his weather diary for this date (Codex Fe, p. 4): "The perogue is so unsteady that I can scarcely write." — Ed.

[2] The so-called "coal" near Fort Mandan was lignite, extensive beds of which exist in that region. — Ed.

at the distance of 6 miles passed a large wintering or hunting camp of the Minetares on the Star^{d} side. these lodges about thirty in number are built of earth and timber in their usual stile. 2¼ miles higher we passed the entrance of Miry Creek, which discharges itself on the Star^{d} side. this creek is but small,— takes it's rise in some small lakes near the Mouse river and passes in it's course to the Missouri, through beatifull, level, and fertile plains, intirely destitute of timber. Three miles above the mouth of this creek we passed a hunting camp of Minetares who had prepared a park and were wating the return of the Antelope; which usually pass the Missouri at this season of the year from the Black hills on the South side, to the open plains on the north side of the river; in like manner the Antelope repasses the Missouri from N. to South in the latter end of Autumn, and winter in the black hills, where there is considerable bodies of woodland. we proceed on 11½ miles further and encamped on the N. *side* in a most beatifull high extensive open bottom.[2]

---

[1] Probably gophers; Coues thinks that the burrowing animal just described by Lewis is the pouched rat or pocket-gopher (either *Geomys* or *Thomomys*). — Ed.

[2] Not far above the present Fort Stevenson. — Ed.

The courses and distances of this day are as follow

		miles
N. 20° W.	to a Star^d point opposte to a bluff	1
N.	to a Star^d point d° d° d°	½
N. 80. E.	to a sand point on Lar^d side	1½
N.	to a Lar^d point	½
N. 18. W.	to a handsome elivated plain on Lar^d S^d	1
N. 22. E.	to a point of willows on Lar^d side opposit to a wintering camp of the Minetares	1½
N. 20. W.	to the mouth of Miry creek Star^d side, passing a small run and a hill called snake den	2¼
W.	to a point on Lar^d side	1
S. 75 W.	to a point on Star^d opposite to a camp of Minetares, and lower po.^{t} of a high bluff	4
N. 65. W.	to the upper point point of woo[d]land on St.^{d} s.^{d}	3
S. 45. W.	to a point of timber on the Lar.^{d} side	2
S. 30. W.	to a sand point on the Star.^{d} side	1¼
S. 78. W.	to a point of woodland on the Lar^d side	4
		23½

[Clark:]

9.th of April Tuesday 1805.—

Set out this morning verry early under a gentle breeze from the S.E. at Brackfast the Indian deturmined to return to his nation. I saw a Musquetor to day great numbers of Brant flying up the river, the Maple, & Elm has buded & cotton and arrow wood beginning to bud. I saw in the prarie an animal resembling the Prarie dog or Barking Squirel & burrow in the same way, this animal was about ⅓ as large as the barking Squirel. But fiew resident birds or water fowls which I have Seen as yet at 6 miles passed an old hunting camp of Menitarres on the S. S. 2½ miles higher passed the mouth of Miry Creek on the S.S. passed a hunting camp of Menetarees on the S.S. waiting the return of the Antilope, Saw Great numbers of Gees feedin in the Praries on the young grass, I saw flowers in the praries to day, juniper grows on the Sides of the hills, & runs on the ground all the hills have more or Less indefferent coal in stratas at different hites from the waters edge to 80 feet. those stratias from 1 inch to 5 feet thick we camp.^{d} on the S.S. above some rocks makeing out in the river in a butifull ellivated plain.

Course distance & refferences for the 9th

N. 20° W.	1	mile on the S. pt opsd a Bluff
N - - -	½	a mile on the S. pt do.
N. 80° E	1½	miles to a sand pt on the L.S.
N. ——	½	a mile to the L. pt
N. 18° W.	1	mile to a handsom elivated plain on L.S.
N. 22° E	1½	miles to a pt of willows on the L.S. opposit a Wintering camp of the Minitarrees.
N. 20° W.	2¼	miles to the mouth of Miry Creek, pass'd a hill call[ed] Snake house & a small run S.S.
West	1	mile to a pt on the Larboard side
S. 75° W.	4	miles to a pt on the S. S. opsd a Bluff and a camp of Miniterras.
N. 65° W.	3	miles to the upper part of the timber S.S.
S. 45° W.	2	miles to a pt of timber on the L.S.
S. 30. W.	1¼	miles to a Sand pt on the S.S.
S. 78° W.	4	miles to a pt of wood on the L.S.
	23½	

[Lewis:] *Wednesday April 10th 1805.*

Set out at an early hour this morning, at the distance of three miles passed some Minetares who had assembled themselves on the Lard [larboard] shore to take a view of our little fleet. Capt Clark walked on shore to-day, for several hours, when he returned he informed me that he had seen a gang of Antelopes in the plains but was unable to get a shoot at them, he also saw some geese and swan. the geese are now feeding in considerable numbers on the young grass which has sprung up in the bottom praries. the Musquetoes were very troublesome to us to-day. The country on both sides of the missouri from the tops of the river hills, is one continued level fertile plain as far as the eye can reach, in which there is not even a solitary tree or shrub to be seen, except such as from their moist situations or the steep declivities of hills are sheltered from the ravages of the fire. at the distance of 12 miles from our encampment of last night we arrived at the lower point of a bluff on the Lard side; about 1½ miles down this bluff from this point, the bluff is now on fire and throws out considerable quantities of smoke which has a strong sulphurious smell. the appearance of the coal in the blufs continues as yesterday.[1] at 1. P.M. we overtook three french hunters who had set out a few days before us with a view of traping beaver; they had taken 12 since they left Fort Mandan. these people avail themselves of the protection which our numbers will enable us to give them against the Assinniboins who sometimes hunt on the Missouri; and intend ascending with us as far as the mouth of the Yellow stone river and continue there hunt up that river. this is the first essay of a beaver hunter of any discription on this river. the beaver these people have already taken is by far the best I have ever seen. the river bottoms we have passed to-day are wider and possess more timber than usual. the courant of the Missouri is but moderate, at least not greater than that of the Ohio in high tide; it's banks are falling in but little; the navigation is therefore comparitively with it's lower portion easy and safe. we encamped this evening on a willow point, Star^d side just above a remarkable bend in the river to the S.W. which we called the little bason.[2]

Cou[r]ses and distances of this day.

		miles.
S. 45. W.	to a point of timbered land on the S^{td} Si^d	3
W.	to a point of timbered land on the Lar^d s^d	3
S. 72. W.	to a tree in a bend on the Star^d side	2
S. 32. W.	to a point of woods on the Star^d side	4
W.	on the Star^d point	½
N. 40. W.	on the Star^d point	½
N. 50. E.	to a point on the Lar^d side, opposite to a low bluff	2
S. 52. W.	to a point on the Star^d side opposite to a bluf, above which a small creek falls in.	3½
		18½

---

[1] This region "is the fringe of the well-known *mauvaises terres* ['Bad Lands'] to the south, through the heart of which the Little Missouri flows. . . . The country is underlaid with vast beds of lignite coal, which has burned out over wide areas. . . . Coal veins form lines plainly distinguishable in the hills bordering the river, and . . . some of these veins are [even now] burning, and emit sulphurous odors." — OLIN D. WHEELER.

[2] Not far from the site of Fort Berthold, built by the American Fur Company in 1845. The name was transferred (1862) to another post, built in the Indian village. Both structures were finally destroyed by fire — the former in 1862, the latter in 1874. — ED.

[Clark:] *10th of April Wednesday* 1805

Set out verry early. the morning cool and no wind proceeded on passed a camp of Ind^s on the L.S. this day proved to be verry worm, the Misquetors troublesom. I saw Several antilope on the S.S. also gees & swan, we over took 3 french men Trappers The countrey to day as usial except that the points of Timber is larger than below, the coal continue to day, one man saw a hill on fire at no great distance from the river, we camped on the S.S. just above a remarkable bend in the river to the S W, which We call the little *bason*.

Course Distance & refferences the 10th

S. 45° W.	3	miles to a p^t of timbered land on the S.S.
West	3	miles to a p^t of timbered land on the L.S.
S 72° W.	2	miles to a tree in an elevated plain in the bend to the S. S.
S. 32° W.	4	miles to a p^t of wood on the S.S.
West	½	a mile on the S. point.
N. 40° W.	½	a mile on the S. point.
N. 50° E	2	miles to a p^t on the L.S. ops^d a low bluff.
S 52° W	3½	miles to a p^t on the S.S. ops^d a bluff above which a small creek falls in
	18½	

[Lewis:] *Thursday April 11th.*

Set out at an early hour; I proceeded with the party and Capt. Clark with George Drewyer walked on shore in order to procure some fresh meat if possible. we proceeded on abot five miles, and halted for breakfast, when Capt. Clark and Drewyer joined us; the latter had killed, and brought with him a deer, which was at this moment excep[t]able, as we had had no fresh meat for several days. the country from fort Mandan to this place is so constantly hunted by the Minetaries that there is but little game. we halted at two P.M. and made a comfortable dinner on a venison stake and beavers tales with the bisquit which got wet on the 8th ins^t. by the accident of the canoe filling with water before mentioned. the powder which got wet by the same accedent, and which we had spread to dry on the baggage of the large perogue, was now examined and put up; it appears to be almost restored, and our loss is therefore not so great as we had at first apprehended. the country much the same as yesterday. on the sides of the hills and even the banks of the rivers and sandbars, there is a white substance t[h]at appears in considerable quantities on the surface of the earth, which tastes like a mixture of common salt and glauber salts. many of the springs which flow from the base of the river hills are so strongly impregnated with this substance that the water is extreemly unpleasant to the taste and has a purgative effect.[1] saw some large white cranes pass up the river — these are the largest bird of that genus common to the country through which the Missouri and Mississippi pass. they are perfectly white except the large feathers of the two first joints of the wing which are black. we encamped this evening on the Star^d shore just above the point of woodland which formed to extremity of the last course of this day. there is a high bluff opposite to us, under which we saw some Indians, but the river is here so wide that we could not speake to them; suppose them to be a hunting party of Minetares. we killed two gees to-day.

The courses and distances of this day

		miles
S. 85. W.	to the upper point of a bluff on Lar^d S^d	3
N. 38. W.	to a point on the Lar^d shore, oppo^t a bluff	2
S. 30. W.	to the upper part of a timbered bottom on the Lar^d side. a large sand bar making out from the Star^d side 1½ miles wide	2
N. 52. W.	to a red knob in a bend to the Sta^d side near the upper part of a timbered bottom	5
S. 70. W.	to a point of timbered land on the Star^d Sd.	6
W.	on the Star^d point	1
		19

---

[1] The famous "alkali" of the West, often rendering the water undrinkable, and covering great areas like snow. It consists largely or mainly of sulphate of soda. — ED.

[Clark:] *11th of April Thursday 1805.*

Set out verry early I walked on Shore, saw fresh bear tracks, one deer & 2 beaver killed this morning in the after part of the day killed two gees, saw great numbers of Gees Brant & Mallard Some White Cranes Swan & guls, the plains begin to have a green appearance, the hills on either side are from 5 to 7 miles asunder and in maney places have been burnt, appearing at a distance of a redish brown choler, containing Pumice Stone & *lava*, some of which rolin down to the base of those hills. In many of those hills forming bluffs to the river we prosieve Several Stratums of bituminious substance which resembles *coal*; thoug[h] Some of the pieces appear to be excellent coal, it resists the fire for some[time], and consumes without emiting much flaim.

The plains are high and rich some of them are sandy containing small pebbles, and on some of the hill Sides large Stones are to be seen. In the evening late we observed a party of *Menetarras* on the L.S. with horses and dogs loaded going down, those are a part of the Minitarras who camped a little above this with the Ossinniboins at the mouth of the little Missouri all the latter part of the winter. we camped on the S.S. below a falling in bank. the river raise a little.

Course distance &c. the 11th

S. 85° W.	2	miles to the upper part of a Bluff in a bend to the Larboard Side.
N. 38° W.	3	miles to a point on the L.S. opsd. a bluff.
S. 30° W.	2	miles to the upper part of a timbered bottom on the L.S. a large sand bar makeing out from the S.S. 1½ mils.
N 52° W.	5	miles to a red knob in a bend to the S.S. near the upper part of wood bottom.
S. 70° W.	6	miles to a timbered point on the S.S.
West	1	mile on the S. point.
	19	

[Lewis:] *Friday April the 12th 1805.*

Set out at an early hour. our peroge and the Canoes passed over to the Lard side, in order to avoid a bank which was rappidly falling in on the Stard. the red perogue contrary to my expectation or wish passed under this bank by means of her toe line; where I expected to have seen her carried under every instant. I did not discover that she was about to make this attempt untill it was too late for the men to re-embark, and retreating is more dangerous than proceeding in such cases; they therefore continued their passage up this bank, and much to my satisfaction arrived safe above it. this cost me some moments of uneasiness, her cargo was of much importance to us in our present advanced situation. We proceeded on six miles and came too on the lower side of the entrance of the little Missouri on the Lard shore in a fine plain where we determined to spend the day for the purpose of celestial observation. we sent out 10 hunters to procure some fresh meat. at this place made the following observations.

Point of Observation N^o 1.

Observed ☉'s Magnetic Azimuth with Circumfer^{tr}	S. 88° E.
Time by Chronometer A.M.	8^h. 20^m. 25^s.
Altitude by Sextant	52°. 20'. 45''.
☉'s Magnetic Azimuth by Circumferenter .	S. 87°. E.
Time by Chronometer	8°. 25'. 22''.
Altitude by Sextant	53°. 55'. 30''.

Observed equal altitudes of the ☉ with Sextant.

A.M.	8^h. 30^m. 11^s.	P.M.	the P.M. observation
	". 31. 52. 5		was lost in consequence
	". 33. 31.		of the Clouds.

Alt^d by Sextant at the time of observation .	55°. 28'. 45''.
Observed Meridian altitude of the ☉' U. L. with Octant by the back observation .	81°. 25'. 15''.
Latitude deduced from this observation	[blank space in MS.]

Remarks.

The artifi^l Horizon recommended by M^r A. Ellicott, in which water forms the reflecting surface, is used in all observations which requirs the the uce of an Artificial horizon, except when expressly mentioned to the contrary.

The altitude of any object in the fore observation as here entered is that deduced immediately from the graduated limb of the instrument, and is of course the double altitudes of the object observed.

The altitudes of objects observed by the back observation, with Octant as here entered, is that shewn by the graduated limb of the Instrument at the time of observation, and is the compliment of 180°. of the double altitude of the object observed.

Error of Sextant — Subtractive	°.	8′.	45″.
Error of Octant fore observation —	2°	′.	″.x
Error of d° in back observation add$^{\text{tve}}$.	2°	40′.	-.x

The night proved so cloudy that I could make no further observations.

George Drewyer shot a Beaver this morning, which we found swiming in the river a small distance below the entrance of the little Missouri. the beaver being seen in the day, is a proof that they have been but little hunted, as they always keep themselves closly concealed during the day where they are so. found a great quantity of small onions in the plain where we encamped; had some of them collected and cooked, found them agreeable. the bulb grows single, is of an oval form, white, and about the size of a small bullet; the leaf resem[bles] that of the shive, and the hunters returned this ev[en]ing with one deer only. the country about the mouth of this river had been recently hunted by the Minetares, and the little game which they had not killed and frightened away, was so extreemly shy that the hunters could not get in shoot of them.

The little Missouri disembogues on the S. side of the Missouri 1693 miles from the confluence of the latter with the Mississippi, it is 134 yards wide at it's mouth, and sets in with a bould current but it's greatest debth is not more than 2½ feet. it's navigation is extreemly difficult, owing to it's rapidity, shoals and sand bars it may however be navigated with small canoes a considerable distance. this river passes through the Nothern extremity of the black hills where it is very narrow and rapid and it's banks high an[d] perpendicular. it takes it's rise in a broken country West of the Black hills with the waters of the yellow stone river, and a considerable distance S.W. of the point at which it passes the black hills. the country through which it passes is generally broken and the highlands possess but little timber. there is some timber in it's bottom lands, which consists of Cottonwood red Elm, with a small proportion of small Ash and box alder. the under brush is willow, red wood, (sometimes called red or swamp willow[1]) the red burry, and Choke cherry the country is extreamly broken about the mouth of this river, and as far up on both sides, as we could observe it from the tops of some elivated hills, which stand betwen these two rivers, about 3 miles from their junction. the soil appears fertile and deep, it consists generally of a dark rich loam intermixed with a small proportion of fine sand. this river in it's course passes near the N.W. side of the turtle mountain, which is said to be no more than 4 or 5 leagues distant from it's entrance in a straight direction, a little to the S. of West. this mountain and the knife river have therefore been laid down too far S.W. the colour of the water, the bed of the river, and it's appearance in every respect, resembles the Missouri; I am therefore induced to believe that the texture of the soil of the country in which it takes it's rise, and that through which it passes, is similar to the country through which the Missouri passes after leaving the woody country, or such as we are now in. on the side of a hill not distant from our camp I found some of the dwarf cedar of which I preserved a specimen (See N.° 2.) this plant spreads it's limbs alonge the surface of the earth, where they are sometimes covered, and always put forth a number of roots on the under side, while on the upper there are a great number of small shoots which with their leaves seldom rise higher than 6 or eight inches. they grow so close as perfectly to conceal the ea[r]th. it is an evergreen; the leaf is much more delicate than the common Cedar, and it's taste and smell the same. I have often thought that this plant would make very handsome edgings to the borders and walks of a garden; it is quite as handsom as box, and would be much more easily propegated. the appearance of the glauber salts and Carbonated wood still continue.

Cou[r]se and distance of this day was.

N. 80° W. to the entrance of the little Missouri — $4\overset{m}{}\frac{1}{2}$

---

[1] This is not a willow, but a cornel (*Cornus stolonifera*); its bark is used in the preparation of kinnikinick. — Ed.

[Clark:] *12th April Friday 1805*

a fine morning Set out verry early. the murcury stood 56° above 0. proceeded on to the mouth of the Little Missouri river and formed a camp in a butifull elivated plain on the lower side for the purpose of takeing Some observations to fix the Latitude & Longitude of this river. this river falls in on the L. Side and is 134 yards wide and 2 feet 6 Inches deep at the mouth, it takes its rise in the N W extremity of the black mountains, and [runs] through a broken countrey in its whole course washing the N W base of the Turtle Mountain which is Situated about 6 Leagues S W of its mouth, one of our men Baptiest who came down this river in a canoe informs me that it is not navagable, he was 45 days descending.

One of out men Shot a beaver swimming below the mouth of this river.

I walked out on the lower Side of this river and found the countrey hilley the soil composed of black mole & a small perportion of sand containing great quantity of Small peable some limestone, black flint, & sand Stone

I killed a Hare changeing its colour some parts retaining its long white fur & other parts assumeing the short grey, I saw the Magpie in pars, flocks of Grouse. the old field lark & crows, & observed the leaf of the wild chery half grown, many flowers are to be seen in the plains, remains of Minetarra & Ossinneboin hunting camps are to be seen on each side of the two Missouris

The wind blew verry hard from the S. all the after part of the day, at 3 oClock PM. it became violent & blowey accompanied with thunder and a little rain. We examined our canoes &c found Several men which had already commenced cutting our bags of corn & parched meal, the water of the little Missouri is of the same texture colour & quallity of that of the Big Missouri the after part of the day so cloudy that we lost the evening observation.

Course & Distance of the 12th

N. 80° W. 4½ miles to the mouth of the Little Missouri River on the S.S.

[Lewis:] *Saturday April 13th*

Being disappointed in my observations of yesterday for Longitude, I was unwilling to remain at the entrance of the river another day for that purpose, and therefore determined to set out early this morning; which we did accordingly; the wind was in our favour after 9 A.M. and continued favourable untill three 3. P. M. we therefore hoisted both the sails in the White Perogue, consisting of a small squar sail, and spritsail, which carried her at a pretty good gate, untill about 2 in the afternoon when a suddon squall of wind struck us and turned the perogue so much on the side as to allarm Sharbono who was steering at the time, in this state of alarm he threw the perogue with her side to the wind, when the spritsail gibing was as near overseting the perogue as it was possible to have missed. the wind however abating for an instant I ordered Drewyer to the helm and the sails to be taken in, which was instant[ly] executed and the perogue being steered before the wind was agin plased in a state of security. this accedent was very near costing us dearly. beleiving this vessell to be the most steady and safe, we had embarked on board of it our instruments, Papers, medicine and the most valuable part of the merchandize which we had still in reserve as presents for the Indians. we had also embarked on board ourselves, with three men who could not swim and the squaw with the young child, all of whom, had the perogue overset, would most probably have perished, as the waves were high, and the perogue upwards of 200 yards from the nearest shore; however we fortunately escaped and pursued our journey under the square sail, which shortly after the accident I directed to be again hoisted. our party caught three beaver last evening; and the French hunters 7. as there was much appearance of beaver just above the entrance of the little Missouri these hunters concluded to remain some days, we therefore left them without the expectation of seeing them again. just above the entrance of the little Missouri the great Missouri is upwards of a mile in width, tho' immediately at the entrance of the former it is not more than 200 yards wide and so shallow that the canoes passed it with seting poles. at the distance of nine miles passed the mouth of a creek on the Star^{d} side which we called onion creek from the quantity of wild onions which grow in the plains on it's borders. Capt. Clark who was on shore informed me that this creek was 16 yards wide a mile & a half above it's entrance, discharges more water than creeks of it's size usually do in this open country, and that there was not a stick of timber of any discription to be seen on it's borders, or the level plain country through which it passes. at the distance of 10 Miles further we passed the mouth of a large creek, discharging itself in the center of a deep bend. of this creek and the neighbouring country, Capt. Clark who was on shore gave me the following discription. "This creek I took to be a small river from it's size, and the quantity of water which it discharged; I ascended it 1½ miles, and found it the discharge of a pond or small lake, which had the appearance of having formerly been the bed of the Missouri. several small streams discharge themselves into this lake. the country on both sides consists of beautifull level and elivated plains; asscending as they recede from the Missouri; there were a great number of Swan and gees in this lake and near it's borders I saw the remains of 43, temperary Indian lodges, which I presume were those of the Assinniboins who are now in the neighbourhood of the British establishments on the Assinniboin river". This lake and it's discharge we call *goos* Egg from the circumstance of Capt. Clark shooting a goose while on her nest in the top of a lofty cotton wood tree, from which we afterwards took one egg. the wild gees frequently build their nests in this manner, at least we have already found several in trees, nor have we as yet seen any on the ground, or sand bars where I had supposed from previous information that they most commonly deposited their eggs. saw some Buffaloe and Elk at a distance to-day but killed none of them. we found a number of carcases of the Buffaloe lying along shore, which had been drowned by falling through the ice in winter and lodged on shore by the high water when the river broke up about the first of this month. we saw also many tracks of the white bear of enormous size, along the river shore and about the carcases of the Buffaloe, on which I presume they feed. we have not as yet seen one of these anamals, tho' their tracks are so abundant and recent. the men as well as ourselves are anxious to meet with some of these bear. the Indians give a very formidable account of the streng[t]h and ferocity of this anamal, which they never dare to attack but in parties of six eight or ten persons; and are even then frequently defeated with the loss of one or more of their party. the savages attack this anamal with their bows and arrows and the indifferent guns with which the traders furnish them, with these they shoot with such uncertainty and at so short a distance, that (*unless shot thro' head or heart wound not mortal*) they frequently mis their aim & fall a sacrefice to the bear. two Minetaries were killed during the last winter in an attack on a white bear. this anamall is said more frequently to attack a man on meeting with him, than to flee from him. When the Indians are about to go in quest of the white bear, previous to their departure, they paint themselves and perform all those supersticious rights commonly observed when they are about to make war uppon a neighbouring nation. O[b]served more bald eagles on this part of the Missouri than we have previously seen. saw the small hawk, frequently called the sparrow hawk, which is common to most parts of the U. States. great quantities of gees are seen feeding in the praries. saw a large flock of white brant or gees with black wings pass up the river; there were a number of gray brant with them; from their flight I presume they proceed much further still to the N.W. we have never been enabled yet to shoot one of these birds, and cannot therefore determine whether the gray brant found with the white, are their brude of the last year or whether they are the same with the grey brant common to the Mississippi and lower part of the Missouri. we killed 2 antelopes to-day which we found swiming from the S. to the N. side of the river; they were very poor. We encamped this evening on the Star^d shore in a beautifull plain, elivated about 30 feet above the river.

The courses and distances of this day are as follow.

		miles.
N. 18° W.	to a point of wood on the L. side, point on the Lar^{d}. at 1½ miles	7½
N. 10. W.	to the upper point of a Low bluff on the Sta^{d}. pass a creek on Star^{d}. side.	5
N. 45. W.	to a point of Woodland on Lar^{d}. side	4.
N. 28. W.	to a point of Woodland Star^{d}. side	3.
S. 35. W.	to a point of Woodland on St^{d}. side, passed a creek on Star^{d}. side - near the commencement of this course also, two points on the Lar^{d} side, the one at a mile, and the other ½ a mile further, also a large sand bar in the river above the entrance of the creek	4.
		23½

Note our encampment was one mile short of the extremity of the last course. —

[Clark:] *13th of April Satturday* 1805

Set out this morning at 6oClock, the Missouri above the mouth of Little Missouri widens to nearly a mile containing a number of Sand bars this width &c. of the River continues Generally as high as the Rochejhone River. Cought 3 beaver this morning, at 9 miles passed the mouth of a Creek on the S.S. on the banks of which there is an imense quantity of wild onions or garlick, I was up this Creek ½ a m[ile] and could not See one Stick of timber of any kind on its borders, this creek is 16 yds wide ½ a mile up it and discharges more water than is common for Creeks of its Size. at about 10 miles higher we pass a creek about 30 yards wide in a deep bend to the N W. This creek I took to be a Small river from its size & the quantity of water which it discharged, I assended it 1½ miles and found it the discharge of a pond or Small Lake which has appearance of haveing been once the bead of the river. Some small streams discharge themselves into this Lake. the countery on both sides is butifull elevated plains assending in Some parts to a great distance near the aforesaid Lake (what we call Goose egg L from a circumstance of my shooting a goose on her neast on some sticks in the top of a high cotton wood tree in which there was one egg) We saw 8 buffalow at a distance which were verry wild, I saw near the Lake the remains of 43 lodges, which has latterly been abandoned I suppose them to have been Ossinniboins and now near the british establishments on the Ossinniboin River tradeing. we camped on the S.S. in a butifull Plain. I observe more bald Eagles on this part of the Missouri than usial also a small Hawk Killed 2 Antelopes in the river to day.

Course distance &c. the 13th of April 1805

N. 18° W	7½	miles to a point of wood on the L.S. passed a point on the L.S. at 1½ miles
N. 10° W.	5	miles to the upper point of a low bluff on the S.S. passed a creek on the S.S. (1)
N. 45° W.	4	miles to a point of woodland on L.S.
N. 28° W.	3	miles to a point of woodland on S.S. the river makeing a Deep bend to the N.W.
S 35° W.	4	miles to a point of wood on the S. S. passed a creek (2) on the S.S. near the commencement of this course, also two points on the L.S one at a mile & the other ½ a mile further, also a large sand bar in the middle of the river above the mouth of the creek
	23½	

emence numbers of Geese to be seen pared &c. a Gange of brant pass one half of the gange white with black wings or the large feathers of the 1st & 2d joint the remd. of the com[mo]n col[o]r. a voice much like that of a goos & finer &c.

[Lewis:]

Sunday April 14th 1805.

One of the hunters saw an Otter last evening and shot at it, but missed it. a dog came to us this morning, which we supposed to have been lost by the Indians who were recently encamped near the lake that we passed yesterday. the mineral appearances of salts, coal and sulphur, together with birnt hills & pumice stone still continue. while we remained at the entrance of the little Missouri, we saw several pieces of pumice stone floating down that stream, a considerable quant[it]y of which had lodged against a point of drift wood a little above it's entrance. Capt. Clark walked on shore this morning, and on his return informed me that he had passed through the timbered bottoms on the N. side of the river, and had extended his walk several miles back on the hills; in the bottom lands he had met with several uninhabited Indian lodges built with the boughs of the Elm, and in the plains he met with the remains of two large encampments of a recent date, which from the appearance of some hoops of small kegs, seen near them we concluded that they must have been the camps of the Assinniboins, as no other nation who visit this part of the missouri ever indulge themselves with spirituous liquor. of this article the Assinniboins are pationately fond, and we are informed that it, forms their principal inducement to furnish the British establishments on the Assinniboin river with the dryed and pounded meat and grease which they do. they also supply those establishments with a small quantity of fur, consisting principally of the large and small wolves and the small fox[1] skins. these they barter for small kegs of rum which they generally transport to their camps at a distance from the establishments, where they revel with their friends and relations as long as they possess the means of intoxication, their women and children are equally indulged on those occations and are all seen drunk together. so far is a state of intoxication from being a cause of reproach among them, that with the men, it is a matter of exultation that their skill and industry as hunters has enabled them to get drunk frequently. in their customs, habits and dispositions these people very much resemble the Siouxs from whom they have descended. The principal inducement with the British fur companies, for continuing their establishments on the Assinniboin river, is the Buffaloe meat and grease they procure from the Assinniboins, and Christanoes, by means of which, they are enabled to supply provision to their engages on their return from rainy Lake to the English river and the Athabaskey country where they winter; without such resource those voyagers would frequently be straitened for provision, as the country through which they pass is but scantily supplyed with game, and the rappidity with which they are compelled to travel in order to reach their winter stations, would leave them but little leasure to surch for food while on their voyage.

---

[1] The kit fox (*Vulpes velox*). — Ed.

The Assinniboins have so recently left this neighbourhood, that the game is scarce and very shy. the river continues wide, and not more rapid than the Ohio in an averge state of it's current. the bottoms are wide and low, the moister parts containing some timber; the upland is extreemly broken, chonsisting of high gaulded nobs as far as the eye can reach on ether side, and entirely destitute of timber. on these hills many aromatic herbs are seen; resembling in taste, smel and appearance, the sage, hysop, wormwood, southernwood,[1] and two other herbs which are strangers to me; the one resembling the camphor in taste and smell, rising to the hight of 2 or 3 feet; the other about the same size, has a long, narrow, smo[o]th, soft leaf of an agreeable smel and flavor; of this last the A[n]telope is very fond; they feed on it, and perfume the hair of their foreheads and necks with it by rubing against it. the dwarf cedar and juniper is also found in great abundance on the sides of these hills. where the land is level, it is uniformly fertile consisting of a dark loam intermixed with a proportion of fine sand. it is generally covered with a short grass resembling very much the blue grass. the miniral appearances still continue; considerable quantities of bitumenous water, about the colour of strong lye trickles down the sides of the hills; this water partakes of the taste of glauber salts and slightly of allumn. while the party halted to take dinner today Capt. Clark killed a buffaloe bull; it was meagre, and we therefore took the marrow bones and a small proportion of the meat only. near the place we dined, on the Lard. side, there was a large village of burrowing squirrels. I have remarked that these anamals generally celect a South Easterly exposure for their residence, tho' they are sometimes found in the level plains. passed an Island, above which two small creeks fall in on Lar^{d}. side; the upper creek largest, which we called Sharbono's Creek, after our interpreter who encamped several weeks on it with a hunting party of Indians. this was the highest point to which any whiteman had ever ascended, except two Frenchmen (*one of whom Lapage was now with us. See at Mandan*) who having lost their way had straggled a few miles further, tho' to what place precisely I could not learn.[1] I walked on shore above this creek and killed an Elk, which was so poor that it was unfit for uce; I therefore left it, and joined the party at their encampment on the Star^{d}. shore a little after dark. on my arrival Capt. Clark informed me that he had seen two white bear pass over the hills shortly after I fired, and that they appeared to run nearly from the place where I shot. the lar^{d}. shore on which I walked was very broken, and the hills in many places had the appearance of having sliped down in masses of several acres of land in surface. we saw many gees feeding on the tender grass in the praries and several of their nests in the trees; we have not in a single instance found the nest of this bird on or near the ground. we saw a number of Magpies their nests and eggs. their nests are built in trees and composed of small sticks leaves and grass, open at top, and much in the stile of the large blackbird comm to the U.'States. the egg is of a bluish brown colour, freckled with redish brown spots. one of the party killed a large hooting owl; I observed no difference between this bird and those of the same family common to the U.'States, except that this appeared to be more booted and more thickly clad with feathers.

---

[1] Probably the common sage-brush (*Artemisia tridentata*), which Lewis is comparing to all these garden herbs which he names. The identity of the two other plants is not plain. — Ed.

---

[1] Lewis and Clark here distinctly state that they have now passed beyond the highest point on the Missouri heretofore explored by white men. Chaboneau had been as far as the creek named for him (probably Indian Creek of to-day), and Lepage, another recruit from the Mandan towns, had, with one other Frenchman, gone a few miles farther; but beyond that they were entering virgin territory. This is important, for it shows that the quest for furs had not yet been pushed appreciably west of the Mandan villages by the British fur companies. — O. D. WHEELER.

The courses and distances of the 14th April.

		Miles
S. 45. W.	to the mouth of a small creek at the upper part of a timbered bottom	2½
W. -	to a point of Woodland on the Lar^{d} side	3½
N. 85. W.	to a point on the Star^{d} opposite to a bluff	2
N. 80. W.	to a point on Star^{d} opposite to a bluff on La^{d}	1¾
W.	to the lower point of an Island which from the circumstance of our arriving at it on sunday – we called Sunday Island. the river washes the base of the hills on both sides of this Island	1
N. 70. W.	to a point of woodland on the Star^{d} Side the Island and it's sandbar occupy ½ the distance of this course pass two small creeks on the Lar^{d} Side, the upper one the largest, called Sharbono's creek.	3¼
	Miles	14

Point of Observation N^{o} 2.

On the Star^{d} shore ¼ of a mile above the extremity of the third course of this day observed Meridian Alt^{d} ⊙^{s} L. L. with Octant by the back Ob^{s} 81° 34′ ″— –

Latitude deduced from this Observat^{n}.

Point of Observation N^{o} 3.

At our encampment of this evening on the S^{d} S^{ld} observed time and distance of ☽'s Western limb from Regulus, with Sextant. * West.—

	Time. —			Distance. —				Time. —			Distance. —		
	h	m	s	°	′	″		h	m	s	°	′	″
P.M.	10.	47.	2 —	72.	20.	30.	P.M.	11.	2.	2.—	72.	25.	45.
	“.	51.	10.—	“.	21.	-		“.	4.	27.—	“.	27.	15.
	“.	53.	19 —	“.	21.	45.		“.	7.	55 —	“.	29.	-.
	“.	56.	2.—	“.	23.	-		“.	10.	19 —	“.	30.	-.
	“.	58.	58 —	“.	24.	15.		“.	12.	12 —	“.	31.	15.

Observed time and distance of ☽'s Eastern limb from *a*. Aquilæ with Sextant. *. East.—

	Time.			Distance.				Time.			Distance.		
	h	m	s	°	′	″		h	m	s	°	′	″
P.M.	11.	22.	7.—	82.	16.	45.	P.M.	11.	36.	47.—	82.	14.	30.
	“.	27.	7.—	“.	16.	15		“.	39.	34.—	“.	14.	-
	“.	30.	23.—	“.	15.	30.		“.	43.	2.—	“.	13.	15.
	“.	32.	27.—	“.	15.	15.		“.	46.	8.—	“.	13.	30.
	“.	34.	39.—	“.	15.	15.		“.	48.	16.—	“.	13.	-

[Clark:] *14th of April Sunday* 1805.

a fine morning, a dog came to us this morning we suppose him to be left by the Inds who had their camps near the Lake we passed yesterday not long sence, I observed several single Lodges built of stiks of [c]otten timber in different parts of the bottoms. in my walk of this [day] which was through the wooded bottoms and on the hills for several miles back from the river on the S.S. I saw the remains of two Indian incampmints with wide beeten tracks leading to them. those were no doubt the camps of the Ossinnaboin Indians (a Strong evidence is hoops of Small Kegs were found in the incampments) no other nation on the river above the *Sioux* make use of Spiritious licquer. The Ossinniboins is said to be pasionately fond of Licquer, and is the principal inducement to their putting themselves to the trouble of catching the fiew wolves and foxes which they furnish, and receive their [liquor] always in small Kegs. The Ossinniboins make use of the Same kind of Lodges which the Sioux and other Indians on this river make use of. Those lodges or tents are made of a number of dressed buffalow Skins sowed together with sinews & deckerated with the tales, & Porcupine quils, when open it forms a half circle with a part about 4 Inches wide projecting about 8 or 9 Inches from the center of the Streight Side for the purpose of attaching it to a pole to it the hight they wish to raise the tent, when the[y] errect this tent four poles of equal length are tied near one end, those poles are elevated and 8, 10 or 12 other poles are anexed forming a circle at the ground and lodging in the forks of the four attached poles, the tents are then raised, by attaching the projecting part to a pole and incumpassing the poles with the tent by bringing the two ends together and attached with a cord, on land as high as is necessary, leaveing the lower part open for about 4 feet for to pass in & out, and the top is generally left open to admit the smoke to pass. The Borders of the river has been so much hunted by those Indians who must have left it about 8 or 10 days past and I prosume are now in the neighbourhood of British establishments on the Ossinniboin; the game is scerce and verry wild.

The River continues wide and the current jentle not more rapid than the current of the Ohio in middle State. The bottoms are wide and low and the moist parts of them contain Som wood such as cotton Elm & small ash, willow rose bushes &c. &c. & next to the hills Great quantity of wild Isoop, [hyssop] the hills are high broken in every direction, and the mineral appearance of Salts continue to appear in a greater perportion, also Sulpher, coal & bitumous water in a smaller quantity, I have observed but five burnt hills, about the little Missouri, and I have not seen any Pumey stone above that River I saw Buffalow on the L.S. crossed and dureing the time of dinner killed a Bull, which was pore, we made use of the best of it, I saw a village of Burrowing dogs on the L. S. passed a Island above which two small creeks falls in on the L.S. the upper of which is the largest and we call Shabonas Creek after our interpreter who incamped several weeks on this creek and is the highest point on the Missouri to which a white man has been previous to this time. Capt. Lewis walked out above this creek and killed an Elk which he found so meager that it was not fit for use, and joined the boat at Dusk at our camp on the S.S. opposit a high hill several parts of which had sliped down. on the side of those hills we Saw two white bear running from the report of Capt. Lewis Shot, those animals assended those Steep hills with supprising ease & verlocity, they were too far to discover their prosise colour & size. Saw several gees nests on trees, also the nests & egs of the Magpies, a large grey owl killed, booted & with ears &c.

Course distance &c. the 14th of April

S. 45° W.	2½	miles to the mouth of a small creek at the upper part of a wood bottom in a bend to L.S.
West	3½	miles to a point of wood land on the L.S.
N. 85° W.	2	miles to a point on the S. S. opposit a bluff
N. 80° W	1¾	ms. to a point on S. S. passd. a bluff on the L. S.
West	1	mile to a small Island opsd. the *upper point* the river washes the base of the hill on both sides, which we call Sunday Isld. &c.
N. 70° W.	3¼	miles to a pt. of wood land on the S.S. the Island & its sand bars Occupy half the distance. passed 2 small creeks on the L.S. the upper the largest.
	14	

[Lewis:] *Monday April 15th 1805.*

Set out at an early hour this morning. I walked on shore, and Capt. Clark continued with the party it being an invariable rule with us not to be both absent from our vessels at the same time. I passed through the bottoms of the river on the Stard side. they were partially covered with timber, were extensive, level and beatifull. in my walk which was about 6 miles I passed a small rivulet of clear water making down from the hills, which on tasting, I discovered to be in a small degree brackish. it possessed less of the glauber salt, or alumn, than those little streams from the hills usually do. in a little pond of water fromed by this rivulet where it entered the bottom, I heard the frogs crying for the first time this season; their note was the same with that of the small frogs which are common to the lagoons and swam[p]s of the U. States. I saw great quantities of gees feeding in the bottoms, of which I shot one. saw some deer and Elk, but they were remarkably shy. I also met with great numbers of Grouse or *prarie hens* as they are called by the English traders of the N.W. these birds appeared to be mating; the note of the male, is kuck, kuck, kuck, coo, coo, coo. the first part of the note both male and female use when flying. the male also dubbs (*drums with his wings*) something like the pheasant, but by no means as loud. After breakfast Capt. Clark walked on the Std shore, and on his return in the evening gave me the following account of his ramble. "I assended to the high country, about 9 miles distant from the Missouri. the country consists of beatifull, level and fertile plains, destitute of timber. I saw many little dranes, which took their rise in the river hills, from whence as far as I could see they run to the N. E." these streams we suppose to be the waters of Mous river a branch of the Assiniboin which the Indians informed us approaches the Missouri very nearly, about this point. "I passed," continued he, a Creek about 20 yards wide, which falls into the Missouri; the bottoms of this creek are wide level and extreemly fertile, but almost entirely destitute of timber. the water of this creek as well as all those creeks and rivulets which we have passed since we left Fort Mandan was so strongly impregnated with salts and other miniral substances that I was incapable of drinking it. I saw the remains of several camps of the Assinniboins; near one of which in a small ravene, there was a park which they had formed of timber and brush, for the purpose of taking the cabrie[1] or Antelope. it was constructed in the following manner. a strong pound was first made of timbers, on one side of which there was a small apparture, sufficiently large to admit an Antelope; from each side of this apparture, a curtain was extended to a considerable distance, widening as they receded from the pound." we passed a rock this evening standing in the middle of the river, and the bed of the river was formed principally of gravel. we encamped this evening on a sand point on Lard. side. a little above our encampment the river was confined to a channel of 80 yards in width.

Courses and distances of the 15th. April.

		miles.
N.	to a point of wood on Lard. side, opposite to a high hill	2.
N. 18. W.	to a point of wood on the Stard. side opposite to the lower point of an Island in a Lard. bend of the river	5.
N. 20. E.	to a bluff point on Stard. passed the upper part of the Island at 2 Miles	3¼
N. 30. E.	to a point of woodland on Lard. side.	2½
N. 10. W.	on the Lard. point	½
N. 15. W.	on the Lard. point	¼
N. 12. W.	to the lower part of a bluff on the Stad. side, passing a creek on Stard.	1½
N. 52. W.	to a high bluff on the Stad. side	2.
N. 75. W.	to a point of woodland on the Stard. Sid.	3.
N. 16. W.	to a point of Woodland on Lard. side	3.
	miles	23.

Point of Observation No. 4.

Apl. 15th. 1805. On the Stad. shore, one mile above the extremity of the 2nd. course of this day, I took two altitudes of the sun with the Sextant and artificial horizon.

	Time h	m	s.	Altitudes. °	′	″
A. M.	9.	9.	33	69.	20.	45.
	10.	3.	28.	84.	24.	15.

Chronometer to fast at the time of observation on mean time.

---

[1] A common name for the American antelope; corrupted from Spanish *cabra*, "goat." — Ed.

[**Clark:**] *15th of April Monday 1805*

Set out at an early hour, Cap^{t} Lewis walked on shore and Killed a goose, passed a Island in a bend to the L.S. the wind hard from the S.E. after brackfast I walked on Shore and assended to the high Countrey on the S.S. and off from the Missouri about three miles the countrey is butifull open fertile plain the dreans [drains] take theer rise near the clifts of the river and run from the river in a N E derection as far as I could See, this is the part of the River which Mouse river the waters of Lake Winnipec approaches within a fiew miles of Missouri, and I believe those dreans lead into that river. we passed a creek about 20 yd^{s} wide on the S.S. the bottoms of this creek is extensive & fertile, the water of this as also, all the Streams which head a fiew miles in the hills discharge water which is black & unfit for use (and can safely say that I have not seen one drop of water fit for use above fort Mandan except Knife and the little Missouris Rivers and the Missouri, the other Streams being so much impregnated with mineral as to be verry disagreeble in its present state. I saw the remains of Several camps of ossinniboins, near one of those camps & at no great distance from the mouth of the aforesaid creek, in a hollow, I saw a large Strong pen made for the purpose of catching the antelope, with wings projecting from it widining from the pen.

Saw several gangs of Buffalow and som elk at a distance, a black bear seen from the Perogues to day. passed a rock in the Middle of the river, some smaller rocks from that to the L. Shore, the dog that came to us yesterday morning continues to follow us, we camped on a sand point to the L.S.

Course distance &^{c} he 15th of April

North	2	m. to a p^{t} of wood on the L^{d} Si^{d} a high hill on the S^{d} Si^{d}
N. 18° W.	5	miles to a point of wood on the S^{d} Si^{d} op^{sd} the lower point of an Island L. Bend
N. 20° E.	3¼	miles to a Bluff point on the S^{d} Si^{d} passed the upper part of the Island at 2 miles
N. 30° E.	2½	miles to a point of woodland on the L. Side
N. 10° .W	½	a mile on the La^{d} point

N. 15° W.	¼	of a mile on the L. p^t here the waters of Mouse river is near
N. 12° W.	1½	miles to the lower part of a Bluff on the S^d Side passing a creek on the S. Side. Goat pen creek
N. 52° W.	2	miles to a high Bluff on the S^d Side
N. 75° W.	3	miles to a p^t of woodland on the S. Side
N. 16° W.	3	miles to a point of woods on the L. S.
	23	

[Lewis:] *Tuesday April 16th 1805.*

Set out very early this morning. Capt. Clark walked on shore this morning, and killed an Antelope, rejoined us at ½ after eight A.M. he informed me that he had seen many Buffaloe Elk and deer in his absence, and that he had met with a great number of old hornets nests in the woody bottoms through which he had passed. the hills of the river still continue extreemly broken for a few miles back, when it becomes a fine level country of open fertile lands. immediately on the river there are many fine leavel extensive and extreemly fertile high plains and meadows. I think the quantity of timbered land on the river is increasing. the mineral appearances still continue. I met with several stones today that had the appearance of wood first carbonated and then petrefyed by the water of the river, which I have discovered has that effect on many vegitable substances when exposed to it's influence for a length of time. I believe it to be the stratas of coal seen in those hills which causes the fire and birnt appearances frequently met with in this quarter. where those birnt appearances are to be seen in the face of the river bluffs, the coal is seldom seen, and when you meet with it in the neighbourhood of the stratas of birnt earth, the coal appears to be presisely at the same hight, and is nearly of the same thickness, togeter with the sand and a sulphurious substance which ususually accompanys it. there was a remarkable large beaver caught by one of the party last night. these anamals are now very abundant. I have met with several trees which have been felled by them 20 Inches in diameter. bark is their only food; and they appear to prefer that of the Cotton wood and willow;

as we have never met with any other species of timber on the Missouri which had the appearance of being cut by them. we passed three small creeks on the Star^d. side. they take their rise in the river hills at no great distance. we saw a great number of geese today, both in the plains and on the river I have observed but few ducks, those we have met with are the Mallard and blue winged Teal.

Courses and distances of 16th. April.

S. 8°0. W. to a point of woodland on the Star^d. side	3.
N. 36. W. to a point of woodland on the Lar^d. side.	2½
S. 60. W. to a point of wood on the Sta^d. side, opposite to a bluff which commences 1 mile below on the Lar^d. side	3½
N. 25. W. to a point of woodland on the Lar^d. side	2½
S. 70. W. to a point of woodland on the Lar^d. side, passing a point of wood and large sand bar on the Star^d. side	6.
S. 65. W. along the Lar^d point of woods to our encampment of this evening	½
Miles	18.

Note. The distances we are obliged to pass around the sand bars is much greater than those here stated from point to point.

[Clark:] *16th. of April Tuesday 1805*

Wind hard from the S. E I walked on shore and Killed an antilope which was verry meagre, Saw Great numbers of Elk & some buffalow & Deer, a verry large Beaver cought this morning. Some verry handsom high planes & extensive bottoms, The mineral appearances of coal & Salt together with some appearance of Burnt hil[l]s continue. a number of old hornets nests Seen in every bottom more perticularly in the one opposit to the place we camped this night. the wooded bottoms are more extensive to day than Common. passed three small creeks on the S. S. to day which take their rise in the hills at no great distance, Great numbers of Gees in the river & in the Plains feeding on the Grass.

Course Distance &c. April 16th

S. 80° W.	3	miles to a point of wood land on the Sd. Side.
N. 36° W.	2½	miles to a point of wood land on the L. Side
S. 60° W	3½	miles to a point of wood on the Sd. Side opsd. a bluff which commences 1 mile below on the Larboard Side.
N. 25° W.	2½	miles to a pt. of wood land on the L. Side.
S. 70° W.	6	miles to a point of Wood land on the L. Side, passing a point of wood land on the Sd. Side, passing a large Sand bar Sd.
S. 65° W.	½	a mile along the L. Point of wood.
	18	

[Lewis:] *Wednesday April 17th. 1805.*

A delightfull morning, set out at an erly hour. the country th[r]ough which we passed to day was much the same as that discribed of yesterday; there wase more appearance of birnt hills, furnishing large quanties of lava and pumice stone; of the latter some pieces were seen floating down the river. Capt. Clark walked on shore this morning on the Stard. side, and did not join us untill half after six in the evening. he informed me that he had seen the remains of the Assinniboin encampments in every point of woodland through which he had passed. we saw immence quantities of game in every direction around us as we passed up the river; consisting of herds of Buffaloe, Elk, and Antelopes with some deer and woolves. tho' we continue to see many tracks of the bear we have seen but very few of them, and those are at a great distance generally runing from us; I the[re]fore presume that they are extreemly wary and shy; the Indian account of them dose not corrispond with our experience so far. one black bear passed near the perogues on the 16th. and was seen by myself and the party but he so quickly disappeared that we did not shoot at him. at the place we halted to dine on the Lard. side we met with a herd of buffaloe of which I killed the fatest as I concieved among them, however on examining it I found it so poar that I thought it unfit for uce and only took the tongue; the party killed another which was still more lean. just before we encamped this evening we saw some tracks of Indians who had passed about 24 hours; they left four rafts of tim[ber] on the Star^{d}. side, on which they had passed. we supposed them to have been a party of the Assinniboins who had been to war against the rocky Mountain Indians, and then on their return. Capt. Clark saw a Curlou to-day. there were three beaver taken this morning by the party. the men prefer the flesh of this anamal, to that of any other which we have, or are able to procure at this moment. I eat very heartily of the beaver myself, and think it excellent; particularly the tale, and liver we had a fair wind today which enabled us to sail the greater part of the distance we have travled, encamped on the Lar^{d}. shore the extremity of the last course.

Courses and distances of the 17th.

S. 70. W.	to a point of willows on the Star^{d}. side	3.
S. 75. W.	along the Star^{d}. point, opposite to a bluff	½.
N. 75. W.	to a wood in a bend on the S^{td} side	3.
N. 50. W.	to a point of woodland Star^{d}. side	3.½.
S. 60. W.	to a point of woodland on Star^{d}. side opposite to a bluff on Lard, just above which, a creek falls in on the Lar^{d}. about 10 yards wide.	.¾
N. 80. W.	to a willow point on the Lar^{d}. side.	3.¼
S. 85. W.	to a point of woodland Lar^{d}. opposite to a bluff on Star^{d}. side	3.¾
West.	Along the Lar^{d}. point, opposite to a high bluff above which a small run falls in	1.
S. 40. W.	along the same point of woodland Lar^{d}. side.	1
S. 30. W.	along the Lar^{d}. side to a willow point	.¼
S. 14. W.	to the upper part of the high timber on the Star^{d}. side	4.
S. 28. W.	to a point of woodland on the Lar^{d}. side where we encamped for the night	2
	Miles	.26

[Clark:] *17th of April Wednesday 1805*

a fine morning wind from the S E. Gen^{ly} to day handsom high extencive rich Plains on each side, the mineral appearances continue with greater appearances of coal, much greater appearance of the hills haveing been burnt, more Pumice Stone & Lava washed down to the bottoms and some Pumice

Stone floating in the river, I walked on the S.S. saw great numbers of Buffalow feeding in the Plains at a distance Capt. Lewis killed 2 Buffalow buls which was near the water at the time of dineing, they were so pore as to be unfit for use. I saw Several Small parties of antelopes large herds of Elk, Some white wolves, and in a pond (formed on the S.S. by the Missouries changeing its bead) I seen Swan, Gees, & different kinds of Ducks in great numbers also a Beaver house. Passed a small creek on the S.S. & several runs of water on each side, Saw the remains of Indian camps in every point of timbered land on the S.S. in the evining a thunder gust passed from the S W. without rain, about sunset saw some fresh Indians track and four rafts on the shore S.S. Those I prosume were Ossinniboins who had been on a war party against the Rockey Mountain Indians. Saw a curlow, some verry large beaver taken this morning. those animals are made use of as food and preferred by the party to any other at this season

Course distance &c 17th of April 1805

S. 70° W.	3	miles to a point of willows on the S.Sd.
S 75° W.	½	miles on the Sd. Side opposid a Bluff
N. 75° W.	3	miles to a wood in a bend to the Sd. Side
N. 50° W	3½	miles to a point of wood Land Sd. Side
S 60° W	¾	of a mile to a pt. of wood land on the S. Sd. opposit to a Bluff on the Ld. Side just above which a creek falls in on the Labd. about 10 yds. wide.
N. 80° W.	3¼	miles to a willow point on the L. Sd. a Lake & creek Std. Halls Strand lake
S. 85° W.	3¾	miles to a L. pt. of wood land opposit to a bluff on the Starboard Side.
West	1	mile along the L. pt. of wood land, a high bluff on the S.S. above which a run falls in burnt hills
S. 40° W.	1	mile along the same point of wood land Lard. S.
S. 30° W.	¼	of a mile on the Lad. Side of a willow point.
S. 14° W.	4	miles to the upper part of a high timber on the Starboard Side.
S. 28° W.	2	miles to a point of wood land on the L. Side where we camped for the night.
mls.	26	

Note The distance we are obliged to go round sand bars &c. is much greater than those called for in the courses from point to point &c.

[Lewis:] *Thursday April 18th 1805.*

A fine morning, set out at an early hour. one Beaver caught this morning by two traps, having a foot in each; the traps belonged to different individuals, between whom, a contest ensued, which would have terminated, most probably, in a serious rencounter had not our timely arrival at the place prevented it. after breakfast this morning, Capt. Clark walked on Stad. shore. while the party were assending by means of their toe lines, I walked with them on the bank; found a species of pea bearing a yellow flower, and now in blume; it seldom rises more than 6 inches high, the leaf & stalk resembles that of the common gardin pea, the root is perenial. (see specimen of vegitables No. 3.) I also saw several parsels of buffaloe's hair hanging on the rose bushes, which had been bleached by exposure to the weather and became perfectly white. it [had] every appearance of the wool of the sheep, tho' much finer and more silkey and soft. I am confident that an excellent cloth may be made of the wool of the Buffaloe. the Buffaloe I killed yesterday had cast his long hare, and the poil which remained was very thick, fine, and about 2 inches in length. I think this anamal would have furnished about five pounds of wool.[1] we were detained to-day from one to five P. M. in consequence of the wind which blew so violently from N. that it was with difficulty we could keep the canoes from filling with water altho' they were along shore; I had them secured by placing the perogues on the out side of them in such manner as to break the waves off them. at 5 we proceed, and shortly after met with Capt. Clark, who had killed an Elk and a deer and was wating our arrival. we took the meat on board and continued our march untill nearly dark when we came too on the Stard. side under a boald well-timbered bank which sheltered us from the wind which had abated but not yet ceased. here we encamped, it being the extremity of the last course of this day.

---

[1] When Jolliet first encountered the buffalo, he observed the possibility of using its wool — "with the wool of these oxen he could make cloth, much finer than most of that which we bring from France." Marest says that the Illinois made from this hair various articles, as leggings, girdles, and pouches. See *Jes. Relations*, lviii, p. 107; lxvi, p. 231. Catlin recommends (*N. Amer. Inds.*, i, p. 263) the utilization of the buffalo's hair for woollen manufactures. — ED.

Courses and distances of the 18th April.

South	to a sand point on the Stard side	3.
N. 75°. W.	to a point of Woodland on Lard side	2.½
N. 85. W.	along the Lard point	½
S. 25. E.	to a sand point Stard side	2.
S. 60. W.	to a willow point Stard side	1.
S. 65. W.	along the Stard shore to a point of timbered land, opposite to a bluff on Lard	½
N. 25. W.	to a copse of wood on stard side, in a bend	2.
S. 50. W.	to a point of timbered land on Stard side where we encamped for the night	1 ½
	Miles	13

Point of Observation No. 5.

On the Stard shore at the extremity of the fifth course of this day

Observed Meridian Altd of ⊙'s L. L. with Octant by the back Observation	79° 12' 00"
Latitude deduced from this observatn	

[Clark:] *18th of April Thursday 1805*

Set out at an early hour one Beaver & a Musrat cought this morning, the beaver cought in two traps, which like to have brought about a missunderstanding between two of the party &c. after brackfast I assended a hill and observed that the river made a great bend to the South, I concluded to walk thro' the point about 2 miles and take Shabono, with me, he had taken a dost of Salts &c. his squar followed on with her child, when I struck the next bend of the [river] could see nothing of the Party, left this man & his wife & child on the river bank and went out to hunt, Killed a young Buck Elk, & a Deer, the Elk was tolerable meat, the Deer verry pore, Butchered the meat and continued untill near Sunset before Capt Lewis and the party came up, they were detained by the wind, which rose soon after I left the boat from the N W. & blew verry hard untill verry late in the evening. We camped on the S.S. in an excellent harbor, Soon after we came too, two men went up the river to set their beaver traps they met with a Bear and being without their arms thought prodent to return &c. The wild cheries are in bloom, Great appearance of Burnt hills Pumice Stone &c. the coal & salt appearance continues, the water in the small runs much better than below. Saw several old Indian camps, the game, such as Buffalow Elk, antelopes & Deer verry plenty

Course distance &C. 18th of April

South	3	miles to a point on the Std. Side
N. 75° W.	2½	miles to a wood point on the L. Side
N. 85° W.	½	a mile along the Lad. Side
S. 25° E	2	miles to a sand point on the Sd. Side
S. 60° W.	1	mile to a pt. of Willows on the Sd. Side
S. 65° W	½	mile along the Sd. pot. to a point of timbered land opsd. a Bluff on the Lad. Side
N. 25° W	2.	miles to a Copse of woods on the Sd. Side
S. 50° W.	1½	miles to the upper part of a wood on the Stad. Side & camped
miles	13	

[Lewis:] *Friday April 19th. 1805.*

The wind blew so hard this morning from N.W. that we dared not to venture our canoes on the river. Observed considerable quantities of dwarf Juniper on the hill sides (see specimen No. 4)[1] it seldom rises higher then 3 feet. the wind detained us through the couse of this day, tho' we were fortunate in having placed ourselves in a safe harbour. the party killed one Elk and a beaver today. The beaver of this part of the Missouri are larger, fatter, more abundant and better clad with fur than those of any other part of the country that I have yet seen; I have remarked also that their fur is much darker.

[Clark:] *19th. of April Friday 1805*

a blustering windey day the wind so hard from the N.W. that we were fearfull of ventering our Canoes in the river, lay by all day on the S. Side in a good harber, the Praries appear to Green, the cotton trees bigin to leave, Saw some plumb bushes in full bloom, those were the plumb bushes which I have seen for some time. Killed an Elk an[d] a Beaver to day. The beaver of this river is much larger than usial, Great deal of Sign of the large Bear,

---

[1] This should be No. 104. See "Scientific Data: Botany," in vol. vi, *post.* — Ed.

[Lewis:] *Saturday April 20th 1805.*

The wind continued to blow tolerably hard this morning but by no means as violently as it did yesterday; we determined to set out and accordingly departed a little before seven. I walked on shore on the N. side of the river, and Capt Clark proceeded with the party. the river bottoms through which I passed about seven miles were fertil and well covered with Cottonwood some Boxalder, ash and red Elm. the under brush, willow, rose bushes Honeysuccles, red willow, goosbury, currant and servicebury & in the open grounds along the foot of the river hills immence quantities of the hisop.[1] in the course of my walk I killed two deer, wounded an Elk and a deer; saw the remains of some Indian hunting camps, near which stood a small scaffold of about 7 feet high on which were deposited two doog slays with their harnis. underneath this scaffold a human body was lying, well rolled in several dressed buffaloe skins and near it a bag of the same materials conta[in]ing sundry articles belonging to the disceased; consisting of a pare of mockersons, some red and blue earth, beaver's nails, instruments for dressing the Buffalo skin, some dryed roots, several platts of the sweet grass, and a small quantity of Mandan tobacco. I presume that the body, as well as the bag containing these articles, had formerly been placed on the scaffold as is the custom of these people, but had fallen down by accedent. near the scaffold I saw the carcase of a large dog not yet decayed, which I supposed had been killed at the time the human body was left on the scaffold; this was no doubt the reward, which the poor doog had met with for performing the [blank space in MS.] friendly office to his mistres of transporting her corps to the place of deposit. it is customary with the Assinniboins, Mandans, Minetares &c who scaffold their dead, to sacrefice the favorite horses and doggs of their disceased relations, with a view of their being servicable to them in the land of sperits. I have never heard of any instances of human sacrefices on those occasions among them.

---

[1] In the MS. occurs here a red-ink interlineation (cancelled, however, by another pen), "copy this for Dr. Barton." As previously explained, in Biddle's text most of the natural history notes are omitted, because he had intended that this material should be worked up by Dr. Benjamin Smith Barton. The latter failed to do this; and the often elaborate observations of Lewis and Clark on the fauna, flora, and silva of the Great West have therefore been hitherto practically lost to the scientific world. — ED.

The wind blew so hard that I concluded it was impossible for the perogues and canoes to proceed and therefore returned and joined them about three in the evening. Capt. Clark informed me that soon after seting out, a part of the bank of the river fell in near one of the canoes and had very nearly filled her with water. that the wind became so hard and the waves so high that it was with infinite risk he had been able to get as far as his present station. the white perogue and several of the canoes had shiped water several times but happily our stores were but little injured; those which were wet we put out to dry and determined to remain untill the next morning. we sent out four hunters who soon added 3 Elk 4 gees and 2 deer to our stock of provisions. the party caught six beaver today which were large and in fine order. the Buffaloe, Elk and deer are poor at this season, and of cours are not very palitable, however our good health and apetites make up every necessary deficiency, and we eat very heartily of them. encamped on Star^{d} side; under a high well timbered bank.

Courses and Distances of this day.

		Miles
South	to the upper part of a timbered bottom at a bluff on the Lar^{d} side	1½
West	to a point of high timber on the Sta^{d} Si^{d} passing over a large sand point on St^{d} side	1½
N. 45°. W.	to a large tree in a bend on star^{d} side opposite a large sand point	1½
S. 45°. W.	to a point of low willows on Stard side	2
	Miles	6½

Clark:] *20th of April Satturday 1805*

Wind a head from the N W. we set out at 7 oClock proceeded on, soon after we set out a Bank fell in near one of the canoes which like to have filled her with water, the wind became hard and waves so rough that we proceeded with our little canoes with much risque, our situation was such after setting out that we were obliged to pass round the 1st Point or lay exposed to the blustering winds & waves, in passing round the Point several canoes took in water as also our large Perogue but without injuring our stores &c. much I proceeded on to the upper part of the 1st bend and came too at a butifull Glade on the S.S. about 1 mile below Capt Lewis who had walked thro' the point, left his Coat & a Deer on the bank which we took on board, a short distance below our Camp I saw some rafts on the S. S. near which, an Indian woman was scaffeled in the Indian form of Deposing their Dead and fallen down She was or had been raised about 6 feet, inclosed in Several robes tightly laced around her, with her dog Slays, her bag of Different coloured earths paint small bones of animals beaver nales and Several other little trinkets, also a blue jay, her dog was killed and lay near her. Capt. Lewis joined me soon after I landed & informed me he had walked several miles higher, & in his walk killed 2 Deer & wounded an Elk & a Deer, our party shot in the river four beaver & cought two, which were verry fat and much admired by the men, after we landed they killed 3 Elk 4 Gees & 2 Deer we had some of our Provisions &c. which got a little wet aired, the wind continued so hard that we were compelled to delay all day. Saw several buffalow lodged in the drift wood which had been drouned in the winter in passing the river; saw the remains of 2 which had lodged on the side of the bank & eat by the bears.

Course distance &c. 20th of April 1805

South	1½	miles to the upper part of a timbered bottom at a bluff on the Lad Side
West	1½	miles to a high timber on the Sd Side passing over a large Sand point on S.S.
N. 45° W.	1½	mile to a tree in a Glade in a bend to the Starboard Side a sand pt opsd
S. 45° W.	2	miles to a point of low willows on the Sd Side.
	6½	

This morning was verry cold, some snow about 2 oClock from flying clouds, Some frost this morning & the mud at the edge of the water was frosed

[Lewis:] *Sunday April 21st 1805.*

Set out at an early hour this morning. Capt Clark walked on shore; the wind tho' a head was not violent. the country through which we passed is very simelar in every respect to that through which we have passed for several days. We saw immence herds of buffaloe Elk deer & Antelopes. Capt. Clark killed a buffaloe and 4 deer in the course of his walk today; and the party with me killed 3 deer, 2 beaver, and 4 buffaloe calves. the latter we found very delicious. I think it equal to any veal I ever tasted. the Elk now begin to shed their horns. passed one large and two small creeks on the Lard side, tho' neither of them discharge any water at present. the wind blew so hard this evening that we were obliged to halt several hours. we reached the place of incampment after dark, which was on the Lard side a little above *White earth* river which discharges itself on the Stard side. immediately at the mouth of this river it is not more then 10 yards wide being choked up by the mud of the Missouri; tho' after leaving the bottom lands of this river, or even sooner, it becomes a boald stream of sixty yards wide and is deep and navigable. the course of this river as far as I could see from the top of *Cut bluff*, was due North. it passes through a beatifull level and fertile vally about five miles in width. I think I saw about 25 miles up this river, and did not discover one tree or bush of any discription on it's borders. the vally was covered with Elk and buffaloe. saw a great number of gees today as usual, also some swan and ducks.

Courses and Distances of this day.

°		mils
S. 18. E.	to a sand point St^{d} opposite to a bluf La^{d}	1 ½
N. 75. W.	to a point of high timber on St^{d} opposite a blff.	½
N. 40. W.	to a willow point on Lar^{d} opposite to a bluff.	3.½
N. 60. W.	to a point of woodland on Star^{d}. side, oposite to a bluff, just below which on the Lar^{d} side a creek falls in.	4.½
N. 25. E.	to a point of wood land on Lar^{d} opposite to a high bluff.	2.
N. 10. W.	to the upper part of a bluff Star^{d} and in a Star^{d} bend.	2.
S. 50. W.	to the upper point of the timbered bottom on Lar^{d} side below a high bluff point which we called *Cut bluff*, at ½ mile Pass White Earth river on Star^{d}	2 ½
		16 ½

[Clark:] *21st of April Sunday* 1805.

Set out early the wind gentle & from the N.W. the river being verry crooked, I concluded to walk through the point, the countrey on either side is verry similar to that we have passed, Saw an emence number of Elk & Buffalow, also Deer Antelopes Geese Ducks & a fiew Swan, the Buffalow is about Calveing I killed a Buffalow & 4 Deer in my walk to day, the party killed 2 deer 2 beaver & 4 Buffalow Calves, which was verry good veele. I saw old camps of Indians on the L. Side, we passed 1 large & 2 small creeks on the L. Side neither of them discharge any water into the river, in the evening the wind became verry hard a head, we made camp at a late hour which was on the L. Side a little above the mouth of *White Earth* River which falls in on the Sta^{d} Side and is 60 yds. wide, several ml^{s} up

Corse	miles	distance &c. 21^{d} of ap^{l}
S 18° E	1½	ml. to a sand p^{t} S. S. ops^{d} a bluff on the L.S.
N. 75° W	½	to a p^{t} of high timber on the S.S^{d} ops^{d} a Bluff
N. 40° W	3½	to a willow p^{t} L. S^{d} ops^{d} a Bluff on the S.S^{d}
N. 60° W	4½	to a p^{t} of wood land on the S.S^{d} ops^{d} a bluff just below which a creek falls in on the L.S.
N. 25° E	2	to a p^{t} of wood land on the L. S^{d} oppos^{d} to a high bluff on the Star^{d} Side
N. 10° W	2	to the upper part of a low bluff on the S.S^{d} ops^{d} to a p^{t} of timber on the L. Side
N 50° W	2½	miles to the upper part of a timber at a high short bluff on the Lar^{d} Side, passed white earth river at ½ mile on the S^{d} Side
miles	16½	

[Lewis:] *Monday April 22nd 1805.*

Set out at an early hour this morning; proceeded pretty well untill breakfa[s]t, when the wind became so hard a head that we proceeded with difficulty even with the assistance of our toe lines. the party halted and Cp^{t} Clark and myself walked to the white earth river which approaches the Missouri very near at this place, being about 4 miles above it's entrance. we found that it contained more water than streams of it's size generally do at this season. the water is much clearer than that of the Missouri. the banks of the river are steep and not more than ten or twelve feet high; the bed seems to be composed of mud altogether. the salts which have been before mentioned as common on the Missouri, appears in great quantities along the banks of this river, which are in many places so thickly covered with it that they appear perfectly white. perhaps it has been from this white appearance of it's banks that the river has derived it's name. this river is said to be navigable nearly to it's source, which is at no great distance from the Saskashawan, and I think from it's size the direction which it seems to take, and the latitude of it's mouth, that there is very good ground to believe that it extends as far North as latitude 50°.[1] this stream passes through an open country generally. the broken hills of the Missouri about this place exhibit large irregular and broken masses of rocks and stones; some of which tho' 200 feet above the level of the water seem at some former period to have felt it's influence, for they appear smoth as if woarn by the agetation of the water. this collection consists of white & grey gannite, a brittle black rock, flint, limestone, freestone, some small specimens of an excellent pebble and occasionally broken stratas of a stone which appears to be petrefyed wood; it is of a black colour, and makes excellent whetstones. Coal or carbonated wood pumice stone lava and other mineral apearances still continue. the coal appears to be of better quality; I exposed a specimen of it to the fire and found that it birnt tolerably well, it afforded but little flame or smoke, but produced a hot and lasting fire. I asscended to the top of the cutt bluff this morning, from whence I had a most delightfull view of the country, the whole of which except the vally formed by the Missouri is void of timber or underbrush, exposing to the first glance of the spectator immence herds of Buffaloe, Elk, deer, & Antelopes feeding in one common and boundless pasture. we saw a number of bever feeding on the bark of the trees alonge the verge of the river, several of which we shot, found them large and fat. walking on shore this evening I met with a buffaloe calf which attatched itself to me and continued to follow close at my heels untill I embarked and left it.[2] it appeared allarmed at my dog which was probably the cause of it's so readily attatching itself to me. Capt Clark informed me that he saw a large drove of buffaloe pursued by wolves today, that they at length caught a calf which was unable to keep up with the herd. the cows only defend their young so long as they are able to keep up with the herd, and seldom return any distance in surch of them.

---

[1] White Earth River rises in the Coteau du Missouri, near the 49th parallel. — Ed.

[2] Catlin mentions (*N. Amer. Indš.*, i, 255, 256) the docile and affectionate disposition of the buffalo calf; he was able to lure to his camp a dozen of them, who were successfully fed on the milk of a domestic cow. He succeeded in transporting one of these to the Chouteau farm near St. Louis, where it throve well. — Ed.

Courses and distances of 22nd of April. 1805.

		miles
N. 60°. W.	to a point of woodland on the Lard side.	2.½
W.	along the woodland on Lard shore	1
S. 70. W.	to the lower point of a bluff in a bend on stard side	1.
S. 20. W.	to the upper part of the stard bluff.	2.
S. 60. E.	to a point of woods in a bend on Stard	1.
S. 30. E.	to a willow point on the Stard side.	2.
N. 65. E.	to an object in a bend on Lard where we encamped for the evening	1 ½
	Miles	.11.

Point of Observation No. 6. — April 22nd 1805.

On the Lard shore one mile above the *cut bluff*

Observed time and distance of ☉'s and ☽'s nearest limbs, with Sextant, the ☉ East.

	Time. h m s	Distance. ° ' "		Time. h m s	Distance. ° ' "
A.M.	10. 44. 3.	— 84. 20. 45	A.M.	11. 1. 54.	— 84. 15. - .
	" . 46. 16.	— " . 20. 30.		" . 4. 25.	— " . 14. - .
	" . 48. 8.	— " . 20. - .		" . 6. 8.	— " . 13. 45.
	" . 49. 28.	— " . 19. 45.		" . 7. 2.	— " . 12. 45
	" . 50. 24.	— " . 19. 30		" . 8. 3.	— " . 12. 45
	" . 51. 27.	— " . 19. 30		" . 9. 4.	— " . 12. 37½
	" . 52. 35.	— " . 19. - .		" . 10. 20.	— " . 12. 30
	" . 53. 40.	— " . 18. 45.		" . 12. 40.	— " . 12. - .

Observed equal altitudes of the ☉ with Sextant

	h m s			h m s
A.M.	11. 21. 49.	—	P.M.	5. 13. 38.
	" . 23. 38	—		". 15. 31.
	" . 25. 29.	—		". 17. 20.

Altitude by Sextant at the time of observation 77°. 52' 45"

[Clark:] *22nd of April Monday 1805*

a verry cold morning Some frost, we set out at an early hour and proceeded on verry well untill brackfast at which time the wind began to blow verry hard ahead, and continued hard all day we proceeded on with much dificuelty with the assistance of the toe Ropes. Capt. Lewis & my self walked to the River which is near the Missouri four miles above its mouth, this river is 60 yards wide and contains a greater perportion of water at this time than is common for Rivers of its size it appears navagable as fur as any of the party was, and I am told to near its source in morrasses in the open Plains, it passes (as far as we can see which is 6 or 7 Leagus) thro' a butifull extinsive vallee, rich & fertile and at this time covered with Buffalow, Elk & antelopes, which may be Seen also in any other direction in this quarter. this river must take its rise at no great distance East of the Saskashawan, and no doubt as far N. as Latd. 50°.

Some of the high plains on the broken rivers [banks] of the river contains great quantity of Pebble Stones of various sizes, The Stratum of coal is much richer than below, the appearances of Mineral & burnt hills still continue the river rising a little, Saw an emence number of beaver feeding on the waters edge & swiming killed several, Capt. Lewis assended a hill from the top of which he had a most inchanting prospect of the Countrey around & the meanderings of the two rivers, which is remarkable crooked. a buffalow calf which was on the shore alone followed Cap Lewis some distance, I observed a large drove of buffalow prosued by wolves cought one of their calves in my view, those animals defend their young as long as they can keep up with the drove

Course & Distance 22nd of April

	miles	
N. 60° W.	2½	to a point of wood land on the Ld. Side
West	1	along the wood on the Ld. point
S. 70° W.	1	to the lower point of a bluff in a bend to the Starboard Side
S. 20° W.	2	to the upper part of the Said bluff on the Starboard Side
S. 60° E	1	to a wood in a bend to the Sd. Side
S. 30° E	2	to a willow point on the Sd. Side
N. 65° E	1½	to an object in a bend to the L. S. and camped
	11	

[Lewis:] *Tuesday April 23rd*

Set out at an early hour this morning. about nine A.M. the wind arose, and shortly after became so violent that we were unabled to proceed, in short it was with much difficulty and some risk that I was enabled to get the canoes and perogues into a place of tolerable safety, there being no timber on either side of the river at this place. some of the canoes shiped water, and wet several parsels of their lading, which I directed to be opened and aired. we remained untill five in the evening when the wind abating in some measure, we reloaded, and proceeded. shortly after we were joined by Capt. Clark who had walked on shore this morning, and passing through the bottom lands had fallen on the river some miles above, and concluding that the wind had detained us, came down the river in surch of us. he had killed three black-taled, or mule deer, and a buffaloe Calf, in the course of his ramble. these hard winds, being so frequently repeated, become a serious source of detention to us. incamped on the Star^d side.[1]

Courses and distances of the 23rd April.

		Miles
S. 25. E.	to a point of timbered land on Star^d -	2.½
S.	along this Star^d point of woodland. a high bluff opposite	1.
S. 78. W.	to a cops of woods, under a hill on Star^d in a bend	4.
S. 14. E.	to a point of high timber in a Lar^d bend passing the extremity of a little bay S^{td}	4 ½
S. 25. W.	to a point of woodland on the Lar^d side.	1 ½
		13 ½

[Clark:] *23rd of April 1805*

A cold morning at about 9 oClock the wind as usial rose from the N W and continued to blow verry hard untill late in the evening I walked on Shore after brackfast in my walk on the S Side passed through extensive bottoms of timber intersperced with glades & low open plains, I killed 3 mule or black tail Deer, which was in tolerable order, Saw Several others, I also killed a Buffalow calf which was verry fine, I struck the river above the Perogus which had come too in a bend to the L.S. to shelter from the wind which had become violently hard, I joined Cap^t Lewis in the evening & after the winds falling which was late in the evening we proceeded on & encamped on the S.S. The winds of this countrey which blow with some violence almost every day, has become a serious obstruction in our progression onward, as we cant move when the wind is high with[out] great risque, and [if] there was no risque the winds is generally a head and often too violent to proceed

---

[1] This was above Painted Wood Creek. — ED.

Course & Distance 23^d April

S. 25° E	2½	miles to a point of timbered land on the Starboard Side
South	1	mile on the S^d point, of wood land a high Bluff opposit.
S. 78° W.	4	miles to a copse of woods under a hill to the S^d Side in a bend
S. 14°. E.	4½	miles to a point of high timber in a larboard bend, passing the enterence of a little bay to S.S.
S. 25° W.	1½	miles to a point of woods on the L^d Side
miles	13½	

[Lewis:] *Wednesday April 24th*

The wind blew so hard during the whole of this day, that we were unable to move. notwithstanding that we were sheltered by high timber from the effects of the wind, such was it's violence that it caused the waves to rise in such manner as to wet many articles in the small canoes before they could be unloaded. we sent out some hunters who killed 4 deer & 2 Elk, and caught some young wolves of the small kind. Soar eyes is a common complaint among the party. I believe it origenates from the immence quantities of sand which is driven by the wind from the sandbars of the river in such clouds that you are unable to discover the opposite bank of the river in many instances. the particles of this sand are so fine and light that they are easily supported by the air, and are carried by the wind for many miles, and at a distance exhibiting every appearance of a collumn of thick smoke. so penitrating is this sand that we cannot keep any article free from it; in short we are compelled to eat, drink, and breath it very freely. my pocket watch, is out of order, she will run only a few minutes without stoping. I can discover no radical defect in her works, and must therefore attribute it to the sand, with which, she seems plentifully charged, notwithstanding her cases are double and tight.

[Clark:] *24th of April Wednesday 1805*

The wind rose last night and continued blowing from the N. & N W. and sometimes with great violence, untill 7 oClock P.M, Several articles wet in the Perogues by their takeing water &c. as the wind was a head we could not move to day Sent out hunters, they killed 4 Deer 2 Elk & cought some young wolves of the small kind, The party complain much of the Sand in their eyes, The sand is verry fine and rises in clouds from the Points and bars of the river, I may say that dureing those winds we eat Drink & breeth a preportion of sand.

[Lewis:] *Thursday April 25th 1805.*

The wind was more moderate this morning, tho' still hard; we set out at an early hour.[1] the water friezed on the oars this morning as the men rowed. about 10 oclock A.M. the wind began to blow so violently that we were obliged to lye too. my dog had been absent during the last night, and I was fearfull we had lost him altogether, however, much to my satisfaction he joined us at 8 oclock this morning. The wind had been so unfavorable to our progress for several days past, and seeing but little prospect of a favourable chang; knowing that the river was crooked, from the report of the hunters who were out yesterday, and beleiving that we were at no very great distance from the Yellow stone River; I determined, in order as mush as possible to avoid detention, to proceed by land with a few men to the entrance of that river and make the necessary observations to determine it's position, which I hoped to effect by the time that Capt. Clark could arrive with the party;

---

[1] I remarked, as a singular circumstance, that there is no dew in this country, and very little rain. Can it be owing to the want of timber? — Gass (p. 114).

accordingly I set out at 11 OC^{k} on the Lar^{d} side, accompanyed by four men. we proceeded about four miles, when falling in with some buffaloe I killed a yearling calf, which was in good order; we soon cooked and made a hearty meal of a part of it, and renewed our march. our rout lay along the foot of the river hills. when we had proceeded about four miles, I ascended the hills from whence I had a most pleasing view of the country, particularly of the wide and fertile vallies formed by the missouri and the yellowstone rivers, which occasionally unmasked by the wood on their borders disclose their meanderings for many miles in their passage through these delightfull tracts of country. I could not discover the junction of the rivers immediately, they being concealed by the wood; however, sensible that it could not be distant I determined to encamp on the bank of the Yellow stone river which made it's appearance about 2 miles South of me. the whol face of the country was covered with herds of Buffaloe, Elk & Antelopes; deer are also abundant, but keep themselves more concealed in the woodland. the buffaloe Elk and Antelope are so gentle that we pass near them while feeding, without apearing to excite any alarm among them; and when we attract their attention, they frequently approach us more nearly to discover what we are, and in some instances pursue us a considerable distance apparenly with that view. in our way to the place I had determined to encamp, we met with two large herds of buffaloe, of which we killed three cows and a calf. two of the former, wer but lean, we therefore took their tongues and a part of their marrow-bones only. I then proceeded to the place of our encampment with two of the men, taking with us the Calf and marrowbones, while the other two remained, with orders to dress the cow that was in tolerable order, and hang the meat out of the reach of the wolves, a precaution indispensible to it's safe keeping, even for a night. we encamped on the bank of the yellow stone river, 2 miles South of it's confluence with the Missouri. On rejoining Cap^{t}. Clark, the 26th in the evening, he informed me, that at 5. P.M. after I left him the wind abated in some measure and he proceeded a few miles further and encamped.

The courses and distances of this day (25th.) being as follow.

		Miles
N. 68° W.	to a point of woodland on Lard. side	2.½
West	to a tree in a low plain, in a bend on Std.	1.¼
South.	to the upper part of a low bluff in a bend on Stard. side	1.½
East.	to a point of timbered land on Stard. side.	2.½
S. 28° E.	along the Stard. point, opposite a bluff	.¾
S. 20° W.	along the Stard. point opposite a bluff	1.
N. 65° W.	to the upper part of a timbered bottom in a bend on Stard. side	3.
S. 72° W.	to the lower point of some timber in a bend on Stard. side	1.¾
	miles.	14 ¼

[Clark:] *25th. of April Thursday 1805*

The wind was moderate & ahead this morning, we set out at an early hour The morning cold, some flying clouds to be seen, the wind from the N: ice collected on the ores this morning, the wind increased and became so violent about 1 oClock we were obliged to lay by our canoes haveing taken in some water, the Dog which was lost yesterday, joined us this morning.

finding that the winds retarded our pregression for maney days past, and no app[e]arance of an alteration, and the river being [so] crooked that we could never have 3 miles fair wind, Capt. Lewis concluded to go by land as far as the Rochejhone or yellow Stone river, which we expect is at no great distance by land and make Some Selestial observations to find the situation of its mouth, and by that measure not detain the Perogues at that place any time for the purpose of makeing those necessary observations he took 4 men & proceeded on up the Missouri on the L. Side, at 5 oClock the wind luled and we proceeded on and incamped

Course Distance &c 25th of April

N. 68° W.	2½	miles to point of wood land on the Larboard Side
West	1¼	miles to a tree in a bend to the Std Side in a low plain
South	1½	miles to the upper part of a low bluff in a bend to the Sd Side
East	2½	miles to a point of timbered land on the Starboard Side.
S. 28° E.	¾	on the S.td point. Bluff opsd
S 20° W.	1	mile on the Std point bluff opsd
N. 65° W	3	miles to the upper part of a timbered bottom in a bend to the S.Sd
S. 72° W.	1¾	mile to the lower part of some timber in a bend to the S. Side
	14¼	

[Lewis:] *Friday April 26th 1805.*

This morning I dispatched Joseph Fields up the yellowstone river with orders to examine it as far as he could conveniently and return the same evening; two others were directed to bring in the meat we had killed last evening, while I proceeded down the river with one man in order to take a view of the confluence of this great river with the Missouri, which we found to be two miles distant on a direct line N.W. from our encampment. the bottom land on the lower side of the yellowstone river near it's mouth, for about one mile in width appears to be subject to inundation; while that on the opposite side of the Missouri and the point formed by the junction of these rivers is of the common elivation, say from twelve to 18 feet above the level of the water, and of course not liable to be overflown except in extreem high water, which dose not appear to be very frequent. there is more timber in the neighbourhood of the junction of these rivers, and on the Missouri as far below as the White-earth river, than there is on any part of the Missouri above the entrance of the Chyenne river to this place. the timber consists principally of Cottonwood, with some small elm, ash and boxalder. the under growth on the sandbars and verge of the river is the small leafed willow; the low bottoms, rose bushes which rise to three or four fe[e]t high, the redburry, servicebury, and the redwood; the high bottoms are of two discriptions, either timbered or open; the first lies next to the river and it's under brush is the same with that of the low timbered bottoms with the addition of the broad leafed willow, Goosbury, choke cherry, purple currant, and honeysuckle bushis; the open bottoms border on the hills, and are covered in many parts by the wild hyssop which rises to the hight of two feet. I observe that the Antelope, Buffaloe Elk and deer feed on this herb; the willow of the sandbars also furnish a favorite winter food to these anamals as well as the growse, the porcupine, hare, and rabbit. about 12 O[c]lock I heard the discharge of several guns at the junction of the rivers, which announced to me the arrival of the pa[r]ty with Capt Clark; I afterwards learnt that they had fired on some buffaloe which they met with at that place, and of which they killed a cow and several Calves; the latter are now fine veal. I dispatched one of the men to Capt Clark requesting him to send up a canoe to take down the meat we had killed and our baggage to his encampnt, which was accordingly complyed with. after I had completed my observations in the evening I walked down and joined the party at their encampment on the point of land formed by the junction of the rivers; found them all in good health, and much pleased at having arrived at this long wished for spot, and in order to add in some measure to the general pleasure which seemed to pervade our little community, we ordered a dram to be issued to each person; this soon produced the fiddle, and they spent the evening with much hilarity, singing & dancing, and seemed as perfectly to forget their past toils, as they appeared regardless of those to come. in the evening, the man I had sent up the river this morning returned, and reported that he had ascended it about eight miles on a streight line; that he found it crooked, meandering from side to side of the valley formed by it; which is from four to five miles wide. the corrent of the river gentle, and it's bed much interrupted and broken by sandbars; at the distance of five miles he passed a large Island well covered with timber, and three miles higher a large creek falls in on the S.E. side above a high bluff in which there are several stratas of coal. the country bordering on this river as far as he could percieve, like that of the Missouri, consisted of open plains. he saw several of the bighorned anamals in the cou[r]se of his walk; but they were so shy that he could not get a shoot at them; he found a large horn of one of these anamals which he brought with him. the bed of the yellowstone river is entirely composed of sand and mud, not a stone of any kind to be seen in it near it's entrance. Capt Clark measured these rivers just above their confluence; found the bed of the Missouri 520 yards wide, the water occupying 330. it's channel deep. the yellowstone river including it's sandbar, 858 y$^{ds.}$ of which, the water occupyed 297 yards; the depest part 12 feet; it was falling at this time & appeard to be nearly at it's summer tide. the Indians inform that the yellowstone river is navigable for perogues and canoes nearly to it's source in the Rocky Mountains, and that in it's course near these mountains it passes within less than half a day's march of a navigable part of the Missouri. it's extreem sources are adjacent to those of the Missouri, river platte, and I think probably with some of the South branch of the Columbia river.[1] the first part of its course lies through a mountanous rocky country tho' well timbered and in many parts fertile; the middle, and much the most extensive portion of the river lies through a delightfull rich and fertile country, well covered with timber, intersperced with plains and meadows, and well watered; it is some what broken in many parts. the lower portion consists of fertile open plains and meadows almost entirely, tho' it possesses a considerable proportion of timber on it's borders. the current of the upper portion is extreemly rappid, that of the middle and lower portions much more gentle than the Missouri. the water of this river is turbid, tho' dose not possess as much sediment as that of the Missouri. this river in it's course recieves the waters of many large tributary str[e]ams principally from the S.E. of which the most considerable are the Tongue and bighorn rivers (*& Clark's fork*) the former is much the largest, (*rather the smallest — next in size Clarkes fork, and the Big horn the largest by much.*) and heads with the river Platte and Bighorn river, as dose the latter with the Tongue river and the river Platte. a suficient quantity of limestone may be readily procured for building near the junction of the Missouri and yellowstone rivers. I could observe no regular stratas of it, tho' it lies on the sides of the river hills in large irregular masses, in considerable quantities; it is of a light colour, and appears to be of an excellent quality.

---

[1] The name Yellowstone is simply the English of the French name Roche Jaune, itself without doubt translated from an earlier Indian appellation. Chittenden thinks that this name originated from the yellow color of the rocks which form the walls of the Grand Cañon of the Yellowstone; see his *Yellowstone National Park* (Cincinnati, 1895), pp. 1-7. The name Yellowstone appears to have been first recorded (1798) by David Thompson, the British explorer. — ED.

The courses and distances of the 26th as the party ascended the Missouri, are as follow

		Miles
S. 45. E.	to a point of woodland on the Star^d side	2½
S. 40. W.	along the Sta^d point, opposite a bluff	1½
N. 75. W.	to the commencement of the wood in a bend on Star^d side	3.
South.	to the point of land formed by the junction of the Missouri and yellow stone rivers	1.
	Miles —	8.-

Point of Observation N^o 7. April 26th 1805.

On the Lar^d bank of the yellowstone river 2 miles S.E. of it's junction with the Missouri observed Equal altitudes of the ⊙ with Sextant and artificial horizon.

	h	m	s			h	m	s	
A.M.	9.	41.	13.	—	P.M.	6.	49.	3.	Alt^d given by Sextant at the
	".	42.	52	—		".	50.	41.	*time of observation*
	".	44.	31.	—		".	52.	17.	48° 57'. 45"

Chronometer too fast mean time [blank space in MS.]

☞. the clouds this morning prevented my observing the moon with *a*. Aquilæ; and as the moon was not again observeable untill the 1st of May, I determined not to wait, but reather to relinquish for the present the obtaining the necessary data to fix the longitude of this place.

Observed Meridian altitude of ⊙'s L. L. with Octant by the back observation 73° 47'

Latitude deduced from this observation. [blank space in MS.]

[Clark:] *26th of April Friday 1805*

last night was verry cold. the Thermometer stood at 32 abov 0 this morning. I set out at an early hour, as it was cold I walked on the bank, & in my walk Shot a beaver & 2 Deer, one of the Deer in tolerable order, the low bottom of the river is generaly covered with wood[,] willows & rose bushes, red berry, wild cherry & red or arrow wood intersperced with glades The timber is Cottonwood principally, Elm small ash also furnish a portion of the timber. The clay of the bluffs appear much whiter than below, and contain several Stratums of coal, on the hill sides I observe pebbles of different size & colour. The river has been riseing for several days, & raised 3 inches last night, at 12 oClock arrived at the forks of the Roche Johne & Missouri and formed a camp on the point. Soon after George Drewyer came from Capt Lewis & informed me that he was a little way up the Rochejohne and would join me this evining, I sent a canoe up to Capt Lewis and proceeded [to] measure the width of the [river], and find the debth. The Missouri is 520 yards wide above the point of Yellow Stone and the water covers 330 yards, the YellowStone River is 858 yards wide includeing its sand bar, the water covers 297 yards and the deepest part is 12 feet water, it is at this time falling, the Missouri rising The Indians inform that the Yellow Stone River is navagable for Perogues to near its source in the Rocky Mountains, it has many tributary streams, principally on the S.E. side, and heads at no great distance from the Missouri, the largest rivers which fall into it is Tongue river which heads with the waters of River Platt, and Bighorn river which also heads with Platt & Tongue R the current of this river is said to be rapid near its mouth it is verry jentle, and its water is of a whitish colour much clearer of Sediment than the Missouri, the Countrey on this river is said to be broken in its whole course & contains a great deel of wood, the countrey about its mouth is verry fine, the bottoms on either side is wooded with Cotton wood, ash, Elm, &c near the banks of the river back is higher bottoms and covered with red berry, Goose berry & rose bushes &. interspersed with small open Glades, and near the high land is Generally open rich bottoms. at our arrival at the forks I observed a Drove of Buffalow Cows & Calves on a sand bar in the point, I directed the men to kill the fattest Cox, and 3 or 4 calves, which they did and let the others pass, the cows are poor, calves fine veele.

Course & Distance 26th of April

S. 45° E	2½	miles to a point of wood land on the Starboard Side
S. 40° W.	1½	miles on the S. pt a bluff opposit
N. 75° W.	3	miles to the commencement of a wood bottom in a bend to the Std Side
South	1	mile to the junction of Rochejhone or yellowstone River & the Mis[s]ouri
	8	

Capt Lewis joined me in the evening after takeing equal altitudes a little way up the Yellowstone river the countrey in every direction is plains except the moul[d] bottoms of the river, which are covered with some indifferent timber such as Cotton wood, Elm & small ash, with different kind of S[h]rubs & bushes on the forks about 1 mile from the point at which place the 2 rivers are near each other a butifull low leavel plain commences, and extends up the Missouri & back, this plain is narrow at its commencement and widens as the Missouri bends north, and is bordered by an extencive wood land for many miles up the Yellow Stone river, this low plain is not Subject to over flow, appear to be a fiew inches above high water mark and affords a butifull commanding situation for a fort near the commencement of the Prarie, about [blank space in MS.] miles from the Point & [blank space in MS.] yards from the Missouri a small lake is Situated, from this lake the plain rises gradually to a high butifull countrey, the low Plain continues for some distance up both rivers on the Yellow Stone it is wide & butifull opsd the point on the S. Side is some high timbered land, about 1½ miles below on the same side a little distance from the water is an elivated plain. Several of the party was up the Yellow Stone R several miles, & informed that it meandered through a butifull countrey Joseph Fields discovered a large creek falling into the Yellowstone River on the S E. Side 8 miles up near which he saw a big horned animal, he found in the Prarie the horn of one of those animals which was large and appeared to have laid several years I Saw maney buffalow dead on the banks of the river in different places some of them eaten by the white bears & wolves all except the skin & bones, others entire, those animals either drounded in attempting to cross on the ice dureing the winter or swiming across to bluff banks where they could not get out & too weak to return we saw several in this Situation. emence numbers of antelopes in the forks of the river, Buffalow & Elk & Deer is also plenty. beaver is in every bend. I observe that the Magpie Goose duck & Eagle all have their nests in the Same neighbourhood, and it is not uncommon for the Magpie to build in a few rods of the eagle, the nests of this bird is built verry strong with sticks covered verry thickly with one or more places through which they enter or escape, the Goose I make no doubt falls a pray to those vicious eagles

[Lewis:] *Saturday April 27th 1805*

Previous to our seting-out this morning I made the following observations.

Point of observation N^{o} 8.

Suns magnetic azimuth by Circumferentor	N. 81° E.
Time by Chronometer A.M.	$\overset{h}{9}.\ \overset{m}{27}.\ \overset{s}{14}.$
Altitude by sextant	44° 56′ 30″
Sun's magnetic azimuth by Circumf^{tr}	N. 82° E.
Time by Chronometer A. M.	$\overset{h}{9}.\ \overset{m}{34}.\ \overset{s}{29}.$
Altitude by Sextant	$\overset{\circ}{47}.\ \overset{\prime}{22}.\ \overset{\prime\prime}{-}.$
Sun's Magnetic azimuth by Circumf^{tr}	N. $8\overset{\circ}{3}$. E.
Time by Chronometer. A.M.	$\overset{h}{9}.\ \overset{m}{42}.\ \overset{s}{17}.$
Altitude by Sextant	49. 56. 30.

This morning I walked through the point formed by the junction of the rivers; the woodland extends about a mile, when the rivers approach each other within less than half a mile; here a beatifull level low plain commences and extends up both rivers for many miles, widening as the rivers recede from each other, and extending back half a mile to a plain about 12 feet higher than itself; the low plain appears to be a few inches higher than high water mark and of course will not be liable to be overflown; tho' where it joins the high plain a part of the Missouri when at it's greatest hight, passes through a channel of 60 or 70 yards wide and falls into the yellowstone river. on the Missouri about 2½ miles from the entrance of the yellowstone river, and between this high and low plain, a small lake is situated about 200 yards wide extending along the edge of the high plain parallel with the Missouri about one mile. on the point of the high plain at the lower extremity of this lake I think would be the most eligible site for an establishment between this low plain and the Yellow stone river their is an extensive body of timbered land extending up the river for many miles. this site recommended is about 400 yards distant from the Missouri and about double that distance from the river yellow stone; from it the high plain, rising very gradually, extends back about three miles to the hills, and continues with the same width between these hills and the timbered land on the yellowstone river, up that stream, for seven or eight miles; and is one of the ha[n]dsomest plains I ever beheld. on the Missouri side the hills sircumscribe it's width, & at the distance of three miles up that river from this cite, it is not more than 400 yards wide. Capt Clark thinks that the lower extremity of the low plane would be most eligible for this establishment; it is true that it is much nearer both rivers, and might answer very well, but I think it reather too low to venture a permanent establishment, particularly if built of brick or other durable materials, at any considerable expence; for so capricious, and versatile are these rivers, that it is difficult to say how long it will be, untill they direct the force of their currents against this narrow part of the low plain, which when they do, must shortly yeald to their influence; in such case a few years only would be necessary, for the annihilation of the plain, and with it the fortification.[1] I continued my walk on shore; at 11. A. M. the wind became very hard from N.W. insomuch that the perogues and canoes were unable either to proceede or pass the river to me; I was under the necessity therefore of shooting a goose and cooking it for my dinner. the wind abated about 4. P.M. and the party proceeded tho' I could not conveniently join them untill night. altho' game is very abundant and gentle, we only kill as much as is necessary for food. I believe that two good hunters could conveniently supply a regiment with provisions. for several days past we have observed a great number of buffaloe lying dead on the shore, some of them entire and others partly devoured by the wolves and bear. those anamals either drownded during the winter in attempting to pass the river on the ice during the winter or by swiming acr[o]ss at present to bluff banks which they are unable to ascend, and feeling themselves too weak to return remain and perish for the want of food; in this situation we met with several little parties of them. beaver are very abundant, the party kill several of them every day. The Eagles, Magpies, and gees have their nests in trees adjacent to each other; the magpy particularly appears fond of building near the Eagle, as we scarcely see an Eagle's nest unaccompanyed with two or three Magpies nests within a short distance. The bald Eagle are more abundant here than I ever observed them in any part of the country.

Courses and distances 27th April 1805.

		Miles
N. 9° E.	to the upper part of the timber on Lard. in the point, the same being the commencement of the low plain, at which the Missouri and yellowstone rivers are about 250 yards distant.	1.
West.	to the lower part of the timber in the bend on Lard. side	1.

---

[1] A conclusion justified by the notable changes which have occurred during the century past, in the courses of these rivers at their confluence. — ED.

N. 32. W.	to a point of the timbered bottom on Lard. opposite to a low bluff, between two points of wooded bottom ½ a mile distant from each other; a beautifull plain back. several high open situations, between the woodlands on the Stard. side	3
West.	to a point of small willows on the Stard. side,[1] opposite a low white bluff bordering a beautifull rising plain; some woodland below this bluff on the Lard. side, and a thick wooded bottom on Stard. side. on this course the river is wide, and crouded with sandbars. a little below the low bluff on the Lard. side, a timbered bottom commences; here the country rises gradually from the river on the Lard. side	3 –
	Miles	8.

[Clark:] *27th of April Satturday 1805*

after take[ing] the azmuth of the Sun & brackfasting we set out wind moderate & a head, at 11 oClock the wind rose and continued to blow verry hard a head from the N. W. untill 4 oClock PM, which blew the sand off the Points in such clouds as almost covered us on the opposit bank, at 4 I set out from my unpleasent Situation and proceeded on, Capt. Lewis walked on shore in the Point to examine & view the Countrey and could not get to the boats untill night, Saw great numbers of Goats or antilopes, Elk, Swan Gees & Ducks, no buffalow to day I saw several beaver and much sign, I shot one in the head which imediately sunk, altho the game of different kinds are in abundance we kill nothing but what we can make use of

Course, distance the 27th of April

N. 9° E	1	mile to the upper part of the wood in the point and commencement of a butifull elivated plain at which place the Yellow Stone river is about 250 yards distant from the Mi[s]souri

---

[1] At the site of old Fort Union — a post built in 1830 by the American Fur Company; see Chittenden's account of it (*Amer. Fur Trade*, pp. 959, 960). — Ed.

West	1	mile to the lower part of the timber in a bend to the Lar^{d} Side back of which and on the river below is [a] high bottom, and the upper plains are not so high as below and butifull as far as can be seen
N. 32° W	3	miles to a point of the timbered bottom on the La^{d} Side opposit a low bluff between two points of wooded bottom ½ a mile distant from each a butifull plain back, several high open situations between the wood land in the S. bend.
West	3	miles to a point of small Willows on the S^{d} Side opposit a low white bluff bordering a butifull riseing Plain, some wood land below this bluff on the L.S. and a thick wooded bottom on the S. Side in this course the river is wide and crouded with sand bars. a little above the low bluff on the L.S. a timbered bottom commences. here the countrey runs gradually from the river on the L.S.
miles	8	

CHAPTER VIII

PART I

FROM THE YELLOWSTONE TO THE MUSSELSHELL

Lewis's Journal, April 28—May 5, 1805
Clark's Journal, April 28—May 5

[Lewis:] *Sunday April 28th 1805.*

SET out this morning at an early hour; the wind was favourable and we employed our sails to advantage. Capt Clark walked on shore this morning, and I proceeded with the party. the country through which we passed today is open as usual and very broken on both sides near the river hills, the bottoms are level fertile and partially covered with timber. the hills and bluffs exhibit their usual mineral appearances, some birnt hills but no appearance of Pumicestone; coal is in great abundance and the salts still increase in quantity; the banks of the river and sandbars are incrusted with it in many places and appear perfectly white as if covered with snow or frost. the woods are now green, tho' the plains and meadows appear to abate of the verdure those below exhibited some days past. we past three small runs today, two falling in on the Stard. and one on the Lard. side, they are but small afford but little water and head a few miles back in the hills. we saw great quantities of game today; consisting of the common and mule deer, Elk, Buffaloe, and Antelopes; also four brown bear, one of which was fired on and wounded by one of the party but we did not get it; the beaver have cut great quantities of timber; saw a tree nearly 3 feet in diameter that had been felled by them. Capt. Clark in the course of his walk killed a deer and a goose; & saw three black bear; he thinks the bottoms are not so wide as they have been for some days past.

Courses and distances 28th of April.

		Miles
North.	to a point of timber on Lard. side.	2 ¼
N. 40° W.	to the upper part of the point on Lard. opposite to a high rugged bluf	1.
S. 56. W.	to a high bluff on the Lard. side just above a timbered bottom, and opposite a point of woodland on Stard. side	2 ¾
S. 85. W.	to the center of a bend on Lard. side.	1.
N. 25. W.	to a point of timbered land on Lard. passing a point on Stard. side at 1 ¼ Mls.	3.
N. 18. W.	to the lower point of the timber in a bend on Stard. side	2.
S. 4. W.	to a point of woodland on Stard. side.	4.
S. 10. W.	to a high bluff point on Lard. side, the river making a considerable bend to S.E.	2.
N. 80. W.	to a point of woodland on the Lard. side	2.
N. 45. W.	to a high bluff point on the Stard. side.	1.
S. 80. W.	to a point of woodland on Stard. side.	3.
	Miles —	24.

[Clark:] *28th of April Sunday* 1805

a fine day river falling, wind favourable from the S.E. and moderate, I walked on shore to view the countrey, from the top of the high hills, I beheld a broken & open countrey on both Sides, near the river some verry handsom low plains, I killd a Deer & a goose, saw three black bear great numbers of Elk antelopes & 2 Gangues of Buffalow. The hills & Bluffs show the stratums of coal, and burnt appearances in maney places, in and about them I could find no appearance of Pumice Stone, the wood land have a green appearance, the Plains do not look so green as below. The bottoms are not so wide this afternoon as below. Saw four bear this evening, one of the men Shot at one of them. The antilopes are nearly red, on that part which is Subject to change i.e. the sides & ⅔ of the back from the head, the other part as white as Snow, 2 small runs fall in on the S. Side and one this evening on the Lard Side those runs head at a fiew miles in the hills and discharge but little water, the Bluffs in this part as also below Shew different stratums of coal or carbonated wood, and coloured earths, such as dark brown, yellow a lightish brown, & a dark red &c

Course & distance the 28th of April

N.	2¼	miles to a point of timber on the Lad Side
N. 40° W.	1	to the upper part of the point on the L. Side opposit is a high rugid Bluff on the S.S.
S. 56° W.	2¾	To a high bluff on the Ld Side opposit to a point of woods & just above a wood
S. 85° W.	1.	To the center of a bend on the Lad Side
N. 25° W.	3.	To a point of timbered land on the Ld Side passing a point on the St Side at 1¼ miles
N. 18° W.	2.	To the lower point of a timber in a bend to the Starboard Side.
S. 4° W.	4.	To a point of wood Land on the Sd Side
S. 10° W.	2.	To a high bluff point on the L. Side the river makeing a considerable bend S.E.
N. 80° W.	2.	to a point of wood land on the Lard Side
N. 45° W.	1	to a high Bluff pt on the Std Side
S. 80° W.	3	To a point of wood land on the Std Side
	24	

[Lewis:] *Monday April 29th 1805.*

Set out this morning at the usual hour; the wind was moderate; I walked on shore with one man. about 8. A.M. we fell in with two brown or yellow [*white*] bear; both of which we wounded; one of them made his escape, the other after my firing on him pursued me seventy or eighty yards, but fortunately had been so badly wounded that he was unable to pursue so closely as to prevent my charging my gun; we again repeated our fir[e] and killed him. it was a male not fully grown, we estimated his weight at 300 lbs not having the means of ascertaining it precisely. The legs of this bear are somewhat longer than those of the black, as are it's tallons and tusks incomparably larger and longer. the testicles, which in the black bear are placed pretty well back between the thyes and contained in one pouch like those of the dog and most quadrupeds, are in the yellow or brown bear placed much further forward, and are suspended in separate pouches from two to four inches asunder; it's colour is yellowish brown, the eyes small, black, and piercing; the front of the fore legs near the feet is usually black; the fur is finer thicker and deeper than that of the black bear. these are all the particulars in which this anamal appeared to me to differ from the black bear;[1] it is a much more furious and formidable anamal, and will frequently pursue the hunter when wounded. it is asstonishing to see the wounds they will bear before they can be put to death. the Indians may well fear this anamal equiped as they generally are with their bows and arrows or indifferent fuzees, but in the hands of skillfull riflemen they are by no means as formidable or dangerous as they have been represented.[2] game is still very abundant we can scarcely cast our eyes in any direction without percieving deer Elk Buffaloe or Antelopes. The quantity of wolves appear to increase in the same proportion; they generally hunt in parties of six eight or ten; they kill a great number ot the Antelopes at this season; the Antelopes are yet meagre and the females are big with young; the wolves take them most generally in attempting to swim the river; in this manner my dog caught one drowned it and brought it on shore; they are but clumsey swimers, tho' on land when in good order, they are extreemly fleet and dureable. we have frequently seen the wolves in pursuit of the Antelope in the plains; they appear to decoy a single one from a flock, and then pursue it, alturnately relieving each other untill they take it. on joining Capt Clark he informed me that he had seen a female and faun of the bighorned anamal; that they ran for some distance with great aparent ease along the side of the river bluff where it was almost perpendicular; two of the party fired on them while in motion without effect. we took the flesh of the bear on board and proceeded. Capt. Clark walked on shore this evening, kille^{d} a deer, and saw several of the bighorned anamals. there is more appearance of coal today than we have yet seen, the stratas are 6 feet thick in some instances; the earth has been birnt in many places, and always appears in stratas on the same level with the stratas of coal. we came too this evening in the mouth of a little river, which falls in on the Star^{d} side. this stream is about 50 yards wide from bank to bank; the water occupyes about 15 yards. the banks are of earth only, abrupt, tho' not high — the bed, is of mud principally. Capt Clark, who was up this streeam about three miles, informed me that it continued about the same width, that it's current was gentle and it appeared navigable for perogues it meanders through an extensive, fertile, and beautifull vally as far as could bee seen about N. 30°. W. there was but one solitary tree to be seen on the banks of this river after it left the bottom of the Missouri. the water of this river is clear, with a brownish yelow tint. here the highlands receede from the Missouri, leaving the vally formed by the river from seven to eight miles wide, and reather lower then usual. This stream my friend Capt. C. named Marthas river.[1]

---

[1] By "white bear," here and elsewhere in Lewis and Clark's journals, must not be understood the white or polar bear of Arctic regions, but the animal now known as "grizzly bear" (*Ursus horribilis*), first adequately described by our explorers. It was technically named in 1815. — Ed.

[2] As no wound except through the head or heart is mortal, they frequently fall a sacrifice if they miss their aim. He rather attacks than avoids a man, and such is the terror which he has inspired, that the Indians who go in quest of him paint themselves and perform all the superstitious rites customary when they make war on a neighboring nation. — Biddle (i, p. 200).

Courses and distances of the 29th of April.

		Miles
N. 45°. W.	to a point of woodland on Lar^{d} side opposite to a high bluff on Star^{d}	3.
West.	to a point of woodland Star^{d} opposite to a bluff	2.
N. 80. W.	along the Star^{d} point opposite a high sharp bluff	1.½
N. 45. W.	to a point of woodland Lar^{d} opposite to a bluff	2.
N. 55. W.	to a point of woodland Lar^{d} opposite to a bluff	3.
N. 65. W.	to a bluff point on Star^{d} side	1.¼
S. 30 W.	to the upper point of the high timber on the Lar^{d} side in a bend of the river	3

---

[1] In the MS. here follows a line afterward crossed out, "in honour of Miss M.," followed by another initial which cannot be deciphered — but in Clark's entry, *post*, we read, "in honor to the Selebrated M. F." This river is now known as the Big Muddy. — ED.

S. 85 W.	to a point of woodland on Stard. opposite a bluff	1¼
N. 55. W.	to the commencement of a bluff on Stard. side, passing a sand point at 2½ miles on Lard. side	3.½
S. 75. W.	to a point of woodland on Lard. passing the poit. of a sandbar on Stard., the river making a deep bend to the South	1.½
S. 75. W.	to the entrance of a (*Marthys*) river in a bend on Stard. where we encamped for the night. this stream we call [blank space in MS.]	3.
		25

[Clark:] *29th of April Monday 1805*

Set out this morning at the usial hour. the wind is moderate & from the N.E. had not proceeded far eer we Saw a female & her faun of the Bighorn animal on the top of a Bluff lying, the noise we made allarmed them and they came down on the side of the bluff which had but little slope being nearly purpindicular, I directed two men to kill those anamals, one went on the top and the other man near the water they had two shots at the doe while in motion without effect, Those animals run & Skiped about with great ease on this declivity & appeared to prefur it to the leavel bottom or plain. Capt. Lewis & one man walkd on shore and he killed a yellow Bear & the man with him wounded one other, after getting the flesh of the bear on bord which was not far from the place we brackfast, we proceeded on Saw 4 gangus of buffalow and great numbers of antelopes in every direction also saw Elk and several wolves, I walked on Shore in the evening & killed a Deer which was so meager as to be unfit for use. The hills contain more coal, and has a greater appearance of being burnt that [than] below, the burnt parts appear on a parrilel with the straitums of coal, we came too in the mouth of a Little river on the S.S. which is about 50 or 60 yards from banks to bank, I was up this Stream 3 miles it continues its width and glides with a gentle current, its water is about 15 yards wide at this time, and appears to be navagable for canoes &c. it meanders through a butifull & extencive vallie as far as can be Seen about N 30° W. I saw only a single tree in this fertile vallie The water of the River is clear of a yellowish colour, we call this river Martheys river in honor to the Selebrated M.F. Here the high land widen from five to Eight miles and much lower than below. Saw several of the big horn animals this evening. The Wolves distroy great numbers of the antilopes by decoying those animals singularly out in the plains and prosueing them alternetly, those antelopes are curious and will approach any thing which appears in motion near them &^{c}

Course & Distance the 29th of April

	miles	
N. 45° W	3	to a point of wood land on the L^d Side ops^d to a high Bluff on the Star^d Side
West	2	to a wood land on the St^d Side ops^d a Bluff
N 80° W.	1½	on the St^d point, a high Sharp bluff
N. 45° W.	2	to a point of wood land on the L. Side, a high bluff opposit on the S.S.
N. 55° W.	3	to a point of timbered land on the Lard Side a Bluff on the S. Side
N. 65° W	1¼	to a Bluff point on the Star^d Side.
S. 30° W.	3	to the upper point of a high timber on the L. Side in a lard bend of the river
S. 85° W.	1¼	to a p^t of timber on Star^d S^d ops^d a bluff
N 55° W.	3½	to the commencement of a bluff on S.S. pass^g a sand p^t at 2½ miles on the Lar^d S^d
S 75° W.	1½	to a point of wood land on the passing a sand bar the river makeing a Deep bend to the South
N. 75° W.	3	to the enterence of a river on the Star^d Side in a bend,
	25	where we encamped for the night.

[Lewis:] *Tuesday April* 30th 1805.

Set out at sunrise. the wind blew hard all last night, and continued to blow pretty hard all day, but not so much, as to compell us to ly by. the country as usual is bare of timber; the river bottoms are level and fertile and extensive, but possess but little timber and that of an indifferent quality even of it's kind; principally low cottonwood, either too small for building, or for plank, or broken and dead at top and unsound in the center of the trunk. saw great quantities of game as usual. Cap^{t} Clark walked on shore the greater part of the day, the Interpreter, Charbono and his Indian woman attended him. past some old Indian lodges built of drift wood; they appear to be of antient date and not recently inhabited. I walked on shore this evening and killed a buck Elk, in tolerable order; it appeared to me to be the largest I had seen, and was therefore induced to measure it; found it five feet three inches from the point of the hoof, to the top of the sholders; the leg and hoof being placed as nearly as possible in the same position they would have been had the anamal been standing.

Courses and distances of 30th April.

		Miles
S. 15° W.	to a point of timbered land on the Star^{d} side passing a sand point at ¾ of a M^{e} Lar^{d}	2 ½
S. 22. W.	to the upper point of the high timber in the center of a bend Lar^{d} side at the commencement of a bluff	1 ½
S. 85. W.	to a point of timbered land on Star^{d} side opposite to a bluff.	1.
S. 75. W.	to a point of timber at the upper part of a bluff in a bend on Lar^{d} side.	.½
N. 40. W.	to the point of a sandbar on the Lar^{d} side, passing a willow point at two miles and a large sandbar on Star^{d}	5.
S. 40. W.	to a point of woodland on Star^{d} opposite to a bluff on Lar^{d} the river making a considerable bend on Lar^{d} side	3 ½
N. 70. W.	to a point of woodland on the Lar^{d} side, passing, at the commencement of this course, a large sand Island in the Lar^{d} bend.	3.
S. 25. W.	to the upper part of the high timber on the Lar^{d} side.	2 ½
West.	to a point of high timber on the Lar^{d} side, a large sand island in the bend to the Star^{d} side.	3 ½
N. 80. W.	to a point of high woods on the Lar^{d} side opposite to which we encamped on a sandbar Star^{d} side[1]	1
	Miles	24.

---

[1] At the present town of Brockton, Mont. — Ed.

[Clark:] *30th of April Tuesday 1805*

The wind blew hard from the N E all last night, we Set out at Sunrise the wind blew hard the greater part of the day and part of the time favourable, we did not lie by to day on account of the wind. I walked on Shore to day our interpreter & his squar followed, in my walk the squar found & brought me a bush something like the currunt, which she said bore a delicious froot and that great quantitis grew on the Rocky Mountains. This shrub was in bloom has a yellow flower with a deep cup, the froot when ripe is yellow and hangs in bunches like cheries, Some of those berries yet remained on the bushes. The bottoms above the mouth of the last river is extencive level & fertile and covered with indifferent timber in the points, the upland appear to rise gradually, I saw Great numbers of antelopes, also scattering Buffalow, Elk, Deer, wolves, Gees, ducks & Crows. I Killed 2 Gees which we dined on to day. Capt Lewis walked on Shore and killed an elk this evening, and we came too & camped on the S.S. the countrey on both sides have a butifull appearance.

Course & Distance the 30th of April

	miles	
S. 15° W.	2½	to a point of timbered land on the Sd Side passed a sand point at ¾ of a mile L.S.
S 22° W.	1½	to the upper point of the high timber on the Ld Side in a bend a Bluff on the Lard
S 85° W.	1	to a point of timbered land on the Std Side opposit to a bluff on the Lard Side
S 75° W	½	to a point of timber at the upper part of a bluff in a bend to the Lard Side
N. 40° W.	5	to a point of a Sand bar on the Lard Side passing a Willow point at 2 miles, and a large Sand bar on S.S.
S. 40° W.	3½	to a point of wood land on Std Side opposit to a Bluff on the L. Side the [river] makeing a considerable bend L.S
N. 70° W.	3	to a point of wood land on the Lard Side passing at the commencement of this course a large sand Island in the Lard bend.

S. 25° W.	2½	miles to the upper part of a high timber on the Lar^d Side
West	3½	to a point of high timber on the Lar^d Side a large sand Island in the bend to the St^d Side.
N. 80° W	1	to a point of high woods on the Larboard Side
	24	

[Lewis:] *Wednesday May 1st 1805.*

Set out this morning at an early [hour], the wind being favourable we used our sales which carried us on at a good pace untill about 12 OC^k when the wind became so high that the small canoes were unable to proceed one of them which seperated from us just befor the wind became so violent, is now lying on the opposite side of the river, being unable to rejoin us in consequence of the waves, which during those gusts run several feet high. we came too on the Lar^d shore in a handsome bottom well stocked with cottonwood timber; here the wind compelled us to spend the ballance of the day. we sent out some hunters who killed a buffaloe, an Elk, a goat and two beaver. game is now abundant. the country appears much more pleasant and fertile than that we have passed for several days; the hills are lower, the bottoms wider, and better stocked with timber, which consists principally of cottonwood, not however of large size; the under-growth willow on the verge of the river and sandbars, rose bushes, red willow and the broad leafed willow in the bottom lands; the high country on either side of the river is one vast plain, intirely destitute of timber, but is apparently fertile, consisting of a dark rich mellow looking lome. John Shields sick today with the rheumatism. Shannon killed a bird of the plover kind. weight one pound. it measured from the tip of the toe, to the extremity of the beak, 1. foot 10. Inches; from tip to tip of wings when extended 2 F. 5 I.; Beak 3 ⅝ inches; tale 3⅛ inches; leg and toe 10 In: the eye black, piercing, prominent and moderately large. the legs are flat thin, slightly imbricated and of a pale sky blue colour, being covered with feathers as far as the mustle extends down it, which is about half of it's length. it has four toes on each foot, three of which, are connected by a web, the fourth is small and placed at the heel about the ⅛ of an inch up the leg. the nails are black and short, that of the middle toe is extreemly singular, consisting of two nails the one laping on or overlaying the other, the upper one somewhat the longest and sharpest. the tale contains eleven feathers of equal length, & of a bluish white colour. the boddy and underside of the wings, except the large feathers of the 1st & 2nd joints of the same, are white, as are also the feathers of the upper part of the 4th joint of the wing and part of those of the 3rd adjacent thereto. the large feathers of the 1st or pinion and the 2nd joint are black; a part of the larger feathers of the 3rd joint on the upper side and all the small feathers which cover the upper part of the wings are black, as are also the tuft of long feathers on each side of the body above the joining of the wing, leaving however a stripe of white between them on the back. the head and neck are shaped much like the grey plover, and are of a light brickdust brown; the beak is black and flat, largest where it joins the head, and from thence becoming thiner and tapering to a very sharp point, the upper chap being ⅛ of an inch the longest turns down at the point and forms a little hook. the nostrils, which commence near the head are long, narrow, connected and paraellel with the beak; the beak is much curved, the curvature being upwards in stead of downwards as is common with most birds; the substance of the beak precisely resembles whalebone at a little distance, and is quite as flexable as that substance. their note resembles that of the grey plover, tho' is reather louder and more varied, their habits appear also to be the same, with this difference; that it sometimes rests on the water and swims which I do not recollect having seen the plover do. this bird which I shall henceforth stile the *Missouri plover*, generally feeds about the shallow bars of the river, to collect it's food which consists of [blank space in MS.], it immerces it's beak in the water and throws it's head and beak from side to side at every step it takes.[1]

---

[1] The avocet (*Recurvirostra Americana*). — Ed.

Courses and distances of this day

		Miles
N. 88. W.	to the upper point of some high timber in a bend on the Star^{d} side	1 ½
South.	to the upper point of a timbered bottom Lar^{d} S^{d}	2
S., 26° W.	to a bluff on the Lar^{d} side	1 ½
S. 60° W.	to a single tree on a point Lar^{d} side.	1.
West.	to a point of woodland Lar^{d} side.	2.
S. 60° W.	to a point of woodland just beneath the upper point of an elivàted plane on Star^{d} side. one mile short of which we encamped on the Lar^{d}	2
		10.

[Clark:] *May the 1st Wednesday 1805.*

We set out at sun rise under a stiff Breeze from the East, the morning cool & cloudy. one man J. Shields sick with rhumetism. one of the men (Shannon) shot a Gull or pleaver, which is about the Size of an Indian hen, with a Sharp pointed bill turning up & 4 Inches long, the head and neck of a light brown, the breast, the under feathers of the 2nd and 3^{d} joint of the wings, the Short feathers on the upper part of the 3rd joint of the wings, down the back the rump & tail white. The large feathers of the 1st joints of the wing the upper feathers of the 2^{d} joints of the wings, on the body on the joints of the wing and the bill is black. the legs long and of a skie blue. The feet webed &c. This fowl may be properly stiled the Missouri Pleaver. the wind became verry Hard and we put too on the L. Side, as the wind continued with some degree of violence and the waves too high for the Canoes we were obliged to stay all day

Course & Distance 1st of May

	miles	
N. 88° W.	1 ½	to the upper point of some high timber in a bend to the St^{d} Side
South	2	to the upper part of a timber L^{d} Side
S. 26° W.	1 ½	to a Bluff on the Lar^{d} Side
S 60° W	1	to a Single tree on a point [on] the Lar^{d} Side
West	2	to a point [of] wood land Lar^{d} Side
S. 60° W.	2	to a wood at the upper part of an elivated plain on the S. Side, one mile short of which we camped
	10	

[Lewis:] *Thursday May 2nd 1805.*

The wind continued violent all night nor did it abate much of it's violence this morning, when at daylight it was attended with snow which continued to fall untill about 10 A.M. being about one inch deep, it formed a singular contrast with the vigitation which was considerably advanced. some flowers had put forth in the plains, and the leaves of the cottonwood were as large as a dollar. sent out some hunters who killed 2 deer 3 Elk and several buffaloe; on our way this evening we also shot three beaver along the shore; these anamals in consequence of not being hunted are extreemly gentle, where they are hunted they never leave their lodges in the day, the flesh of the beaver is esteemed a delecacy among us; I think the tale a most delicious morsal, when boiled it resembles in flavor the fresh tongues and sounds of the codfish, and is usually sufficiently large to afford a plentifull meal for two men. Joseph Fields one of the hunters who was out today found several yards of scarlet cloth which had been suspended on the bough of a tree near an old indian hunting cam[p], where it had been left as a sacrefice to the deity by the indians, probably of the Assinniboin nation, it being a custom with them as well as all the nations inhabiting the waters of the Missouri so far as they are known to us, to offer or sacrefice in this manner to the deity wat-ever they may be possessed off which they think most acceptable to him, and very honestly making their own feelings the test of those of the deity offer him the article which they most prize themselves. this being the most usual method of we[r]shiping the great sperit as they term the deity, is practiced on interesting occasions, or to produce the happy eventuation of the important occurrances incident to human nature, such as relief from hungar or mallady, protection from their enemies or the delivering them into their hands, and with such as cultivate, to prevent the river's overflowing and distroying their crops &c. s[a]crefices of a similar kind are also made to the deceased by their friends and relatives. the are was very piercing this evening the [water] friezed on the oars as they rowed. the wind dying at 5.P.M. we set out.

Courses and distance 2nd May.

S. 70° E.	to the upper point of the timber on the Lar^{d} side in a bend, passing a point of timber on the Lar^{d} side at ¼ of a mile	2
S. 10° E.	to a point of wood land on the Star^{d} side	½
S. 30° W.	to a point of low timber on the Lar^{d} side, a little above which on the Star^{d} side, we encamped, having passed some wider fertile bottoms and beatifull high level plains	2
		4½

every thing which is incomprehensible to the indians they call *big medicine*, and is the opperation of the presnts [presence — Ed.] and power of the *great sperit*. this morning one of the men shot the indian dog that had followed us for several days, he would steal their cooked provision.

[Clark:] *May 2nd Thursday 1805*

The wind blew verry hard all the last night, this morning about sunrise began to Snow, (The Thermomt^{r} at 28. abov 0) and continued untill about 10 oClock, at which time it seased, the wind continued hard untill about 2 P.M. the Snow which fell to day was about 1 In deep, a verry extraodernarey climate, to behold the trees Green & flowers spred on the plain, & Snow an inch deep. we Set out about 3 oClock and proceeded on about five ½ miles and encamped on the St^{d} Side, the evening verry cold, Ice freesing to the Ores. I shot a large beaver & Drewyer three in walking on the bank, the flesh of those animals the party is fond of eating &c.

Course & Distance 2^{d} May

S. 70° E.	2	miles to the upper point of the timber on the Lar^{d} Side in a bend, passing a point of timber on the L.S. at a quarter of a mile
S. 10° E	½	mile to a point of wood Land on the Starboard Side
S. 30° W	2	miles to a point of Low timber on the Lar^{d} Side a little above which on the Starboard Side we encamped
	4½	

2 deer and 3 Elk killed

[Lewis:] *Friday May 3rd 1805.*

The morning being very could we did not set out as early as usual; ice formed on a kettle of water ¼ of an inch thick. the snow has melted generally in the bottoms, but the hills still remain covered. on the lard side at the distance of 2 miles we passed a curious collection of bushes which had been tyed up in the form of a faciene [fascine — ED.] and standing on end in the open bottom it appeared to be about 30 feet high and ten or twelve feet in diameter, this we supposed to have been placed there by the Indians, as a sacrefice for some purpose. The wind continued to blow hard from the West but not so strong as to compel us to ly by. Capt Clark walked on shore and killed an Elk which he caused to be butch[er]ed by the time I arrived with the party, here we halted and dined being about 12 OCk our usual time of halting for that purpose. after dinner Capt. Clark pursued his walk, while I continued with the party, it being a rule which we had established, never to be absent at the same time from the party. the plains or high lands are much less elivated than they were, not being more than from 50 to 60 feet above the river bottom, which is also wider than usual being from 5 to 9 Ms in width; traces of the ancient beds of the river are visible in many places through the whole extent of this valley. since the hills have become lower the appearance of the stratas of coal burnt hills and pumice stone have in a great measure ceased; I saw none today. we saw vast quantities of Buffaloe, Elk, deer principally of the long tale kind, Antelope or goats, beaver, geese, ducks, brant and some swan. near the entrance of the river mentioned in the 10th course of this day, we saw an unusual number of Porcupines from which we determined to call the river after that anamal, and accordingly denominated it *Porcupine river.*[1] this stream discharges itself into the Missouri on the Stard side 2000 miles above the mouth of the latter, it is a beatifull bold runing stream, 40 yards wide at it's entrance; the water is transparent, it being the first of this discription that I have yet seen discharge itself into the Missouri; before it enters a large sand bar through which it discharges itself into the missouri it's banks and bottom are formed of a stiff blue and black clay; it appears to be navigable for canoes and perogues at this time and I have no doubt but it might be navigated with boats of a considerable size in high water. it's banks appear to be from 8 to ten feet high and seldom overflow; from the quantity of water furnished by this river, the appearance of the country, the direction it pursues, and the situation of it's entrance, I have but little doubt but it takes it's source not far from the main body of the Suskashawan river, and that it is probably navigable 150 Miles; perhaps not very distant from that river. should this be the case, it would afford a very favorable communication to the Athebaskay country, from whence the British N.W. Company derive so large a portion of their valuable furs. Capt. Clark who ascended this river several miles and passed it above where it entered the hills informed me on his return that he found the general width of the bed of the river about one hundred yards, where he passed the river the bed was 112 yards wide, the water was knee deep and 38 yard in width; the river which he could observe from the rising grounds for about 20 miles, bore a little to the East of North. there was a considerable portion of timber in the bottom lands of this river. Capt Clark also met with limestone on the surface of the earth in the course of his walk. he also saw a range of low mountains at a distance to the W of N, their direction being N.W. the country in the neighbo[rhood] of this river, and as far as the eye can reach, is level, fertile, open and beatifull beyond discription. ¼ of a mile above the entrance of this river a large creek falls in which we called *2000 Mile Creek.* I sent Rubin Fields to examine it, he reported it to be a bold runing stream, it's bed 30 yards wide. we proceeded about 3 miles above this creek and encamped on the Star^d shore. I walked out a little distance and met with 2 porcupines which were feeding on the young willow which grow in great abundance on all the sandbars; this anamal is exceedingly clumsy and not very watchfull I approached so near one of them before it percieved me that I touched it with my espontoon. found the nest of a wild goose among some driftwood in the river from which we took three eggs. this is the only nest we have met with on driftwood, the usual position is the top of a broken tree, sometimes in the forks of a large tree but almost invariably, from 15 to 20 feet or upwards high.

---

[1] Now Poplar River; the name Porcupine is in our day applied to a branch of Milk River. — ED.

Courses and distances May 3rd 1805.

		Miles
N. 50° W.	to a point of high timber in a bend Star^d	¾
S. 65° W.	to a point of high timber in the center of a bend on Lar^d side	2¼
N. 40. W.	to a point of woodland Star^d side	1.
N. 55° W.	to some dead timber in a Star^d bend	2½
South	to the upper part of the high timber in a bend on the Lar^d side.	3
S. 80° W.	to a point of woodland Star^d side	½
S. 85° W.	to the commencement of the timber on the Lar^d side in a bend	1¼
North.	to the upper part of the high timber in a bend on the Star^d, passing a sand point at ½ mile on Lar^d	1½
S. 65° W.	to a point of woodland on the Lar^d side.	½
S. 75° W.	to a point of woodland on the Star^d side, at the entrance of a large river on the Star^d side, called Porcupine R.	1¾
S. 45° W.	to the high timber on the lar^d side, passing the entrance of 2000 mile Creek at ¼ of a mile on Lar^d side.	3.
N. 40° W.	to some high timber on the Star^d side, just above an old channel of the river on the Star^d where we encamp^d	½
	Miles	18½

[Clark:] *May 3rd Friday 1805*

we Set out reather later this morning than useal owing to weather being verry cold, a frost last night and the Therm^t stood this morning at 26 above 0. which is 6 degrees b[e]low freeseing. the ice that was on the Kettle left near the fire last night was ¼ of an inch thick. The snow is all or nearly all off the low bottoms, the Hills are entireley covered; three of our party found in the back of a bottom 3 pieces of scarlet one brace in each, which had been left as a sacrifice near one of their swet houses, on the L.S. we passed to day a curious collection of bushes tied up in the shape of *faccene* about 10 feet diamuter, which must have been left also by the natives as an offering to their medison which they [are] convinced protected or gave them relief near the place, the wind continued to blow hard from the West, altho not sufficently so to detain us. I walked on shore and killed an Elk & had him bucchered by the time the Perogus came up which was the usial time of dineing. The high lands are low and from 5 to 9 miles apart and there is evident marks of the bead [bed] of the river having been changed frequently but little appearance of the coal & burnt hills to day. Great numbers of Buffalow, Elk, Deer, antilope, beaver, Porcupins, & water fowls seen to day, such as, Geese, ducks of dif^{t} kinds, & a fiew Swan. I continued my walk on shore after dinner, and arrived at the mouth of a river on the S^{t} Side, which appeared to be large, and I concluded to go up this river a few miles to examine it accordingly I set out North 1 mile thro wood or timbered bottom, 2 miles through a butifull leavel plain, and 1 mile over a high plain about 50 feet higher than the bottom, & came to the little river, which I found to be a butifull clear Stream of about 100 yds from bank to bank, (I waded this river at the narrowest part and made it 112 steps from bank to bank and at this place which was a kind of fording place the water was near Knee deep, and 38 steps wide, the bottom of a hard stiff Black clay, I observed a Great perportion of timber in the bottoms of this river as far as I could See which was to the East of N. 18 or 20 miles, it appears to be navagable at this time for canoes, and from appearances must be navagable a long distance for Perogus & boats in high water. This river we call *Porcupines* from the great number of those anamals found about it's mouth. a Short distance above about ¼ mile and on the Lar^{d} Side a large Creek falls in, which R. Fields went to examine & reports that it is a bold running stream 30 yds wide as this creek is 2000 miles up the Missouri we call it the 2000 mile Creek, we proceeded on 3 miles & camped on the S.S. here I joined Cap^{t} Lewis who had in my absence walk^{d} on the upper Side of Porcupine River for some distance. This river from its size & quantity of water must head at no great distance from the Saskashawan on this river I saw emence herds [of] Elk & Buffalow & many deer & Porcupine. I also saw the top of a mountain which did not appear verry high to the West of N. & bore N W. I saw on the high land limestone & pebble. The countrey about the mouth of this river and as far as the eye can reach is butifull open countrey. The greater part of the snow is melted.

Course & Distance 3^{d} of May 1805

	mile	
N. 50° W	¾	to a point of high timber on the St^{d} Side in a bend
S. 65° W.	2¼	to a point of high timber on the L^{d} S^{d} about the middle of a bend L.S.
N. 40° W	1	mile to a point of wood land St^{d} Side
N. 55 W	2½	miles to some dead timber in St^{d} bend
South	3	to the upper part of a timber in a bend to the Lar^{d} Side
N. 80° W.	½	to a p^{t} of wood land St^{d} Side
S. 85° W.	1¼	to the commencement of a timber on the Lar^{d} Side in a bend
North	1½	to the upper part of the high timber in a bend on the Star^{d} Side passing a Sand point at ½ a mile
S. 65° W.	½	to a point of wood Land on the L^{d} Side
S 75° W.	1¾	to a point of wood land on the St^{d} Side at the mouth of a large river on the St^{d} Side
S 45° W	3	m. to a high timber on the Lar^{d} Side passed the mouth of 2000 mile Creek at ¼ of a mile on the Lard Side
N. 40° W.	½	to some high timber on the S. Side just above an old channel of the river St^{d} Side. encamped
	18½	

[Lewis:] *Saturday May 4th 1805.*

We were detained this morning untill about 9 OC^{k} in order to repare the rudder irons of the red perogue which were broken last evening in landing; we then set out, the wind hard against us. I walked on shore this morning, the weather was more plesant, the snow has disappeared; the frost seems to have effected the vegetation much less than could have been expected the leaves of the cottonwood the grass the box alder willow and the yellow flowering pea seem to be scarcely touched; the rosebushes and honeysuckle seem to have sustaned the most considerable injury. The country on both sides of the Missouri continues to be open level fertile and beautifull as far as the eye can reach which from some of the eminences is not short of 30 Miles. the river bottoms are very extensive and contain a much greater proportion of timber than usual; the fore part of this day the river was bordered with timber on both sides, a circumstance which is extreemly rare and the first which has occurred of any thing like the same extent since we left the Mandans. in the after part of the day we passed an extensive beautifull plain on the Star^{d} side which gradually ascended from the river. I saw immence quantities of buffaloe in every direction, also some Elk deer and goats; having an abundance of meat on hand I passed them without firing on them; they are extreemly gentle the bull buffaloe particularly will scarcely give way to you. I passed several in the open plain within fifty paces, they viewed me for a moment as something novel and then very unconcernedly continued to feed. Cap^{t} Clark walked on shore this evening and did not rejoin us untill after dark, he struck the river several miles above our camp and came down to us. we saw many beaver some [of] which the party shot, we also killed two deer today. much sign of the brown bear. passed several old Indian hunting camps in the course of the day one of them contained two large lodges which were fortifyed with old driftwood and fallen timber; this fortification consisted of a circular fence of timber lade horizontally laping on and over laying each other to the hight of 5 feet. these pounds are sometimes built from 20 to 30 feet in diameter and covered over with the trunks and limbs of old timber. the usual construction of the lodges we have lately passed is as follows. three or more strong sticks the thickness of a man's leg or arm and about 12 feet long are attatched together at one end by a with of small willows, these are then set on end and spread at the base, forming a circle of ten twelve or 14 feet in diameter; sticks of driftwood and fallen timber of convenient size are now placed with one end on the ground and the other resting against those which are secured together at top by the with and which support and give the form to the whole, thus the sticks are laid on untill they make it as thick as they design, usually about three ranges, each piece breaking or filling up the interstice of the two beneath it, the whole forming a connic figure about 10 feet high with a small apperture in one side which answers as a door. leaves bark and straw are sometimes thrown over the work to make it more complete, but at best it affords a very imperfect shelter particularly without straw which is the state in which we have most usually found them.

Courses and distances of the 4th of May

S. 80° W.	to a point of timber on the Stard side	3.
S. 72° W.	to a point of woodland on the Stard side river wide and filled with sandbars	5.
S. 50° W.	to the mouth of a small creek in a deep bend on Lard side, a sand Island opposite	1 ½
N. 10° W.	to a point of woodland on the Lard side passing a Stard point at 1 ¼ miles	3.
S. 45° W.	to a willow point on the Stard side, the river making a considerable bend to the N. an open plain on the Stard	4
S. 70° W.	to a point of timbered land on the Stard where we encamped.	1 ½
	Miles	18.

At noon the sun was so much obscured that I could not obtain his maridian Altitude which I much wished in order to fix the latitude of the entrance of Porcupine river. Joseph Fields was very sick today with the disentary had a high fever I gave him a doze of Glauber salts, which operated very well, in the evening his fever abated and I gave him 30 drops of laudnum.

[Clark:] *May 4th Satturday 1805*

The rudder Irons of our large Perogue broke off last night, the replaceing of which detained us this morning untill 9 oClock at which time we set out the wind a head from the west, The countrey on each side of the Missouri is a rich high and butifull the bottoms are extencive with a great deal of timber on them all the fore part of this day the wood land bordered the river on both Sides, in the after part a butifull assending plain on the St^d Side we camped on the St^d Side a little above. we passed a Small Creek on the L. Side near which I saw where an Indian lodge had been fortified many year past. Saw great numbers of anamals of different kinds on the banks, I saw the black martin to day. in the evening I walk^d on Shore on the St^d Side & Struck the river Several miles above our camp & did not get to Camp untill some time after night. we have one man Sick. The river has been falling for several days passed; it now begins to rise a little, the rate of rise & fall is from one to 3 inches in 24 hours

Course & Distance the 4th of May

	miles	
S. 80° W.	3,	to a point of timber on the Star^d Side.
S. 72° W.	5.	to a point of wood land on the St^d Side. river wide & maney sand bars
S. 50° W	1½	to the mouth of a creek in a Deep bend to the Lard. Side. a sand Is^d ops^d
N 10° W.	3.	to a point of wood Land on the Lar^d Side passing a point S Side 1¼ miles.
S 45° W.	4	to a willow point on the Star^d Side, the river makeing a considerable [bend] arround to the North an open plain
S. 70° W.	1½	to a point of timbered land on the Star^d Side, where we encamped
miles	18	

[Lewis:] *Sunday May 5th 1805*

A fine morning I walked on shore untill after 8 A.M. when we halted for breakfast and in the course of my walk killed a deer which I carried about a mile and a half to the river, it was in good order. soon after seting out the rudder irons of the white perogue were broken by her runing fowl on a sawyer, she was however refitted in a few minutes with some tugs of raw hide and nales. as usual saw a great quantity of game today; Buffaloe Elk and goats or Antelopes feeding in every direction; we kill whatever we wish, the buffaloe furnish us with fine veal and fat beef, we also have venison and beaver tales when we wish them; the flesh of the Elk and goat are less esteemed, and certainly are inferior. we have not been able to take any fish for some time past. The country is as yesterday beatifull in the extreme. saw the carcases of many Buffaloe lying dead along the shore partially devoured by the wolves and bear. saw a great number of white brant also the common brown brant, geese of the common kind and a small species of geese which differ considerably from the common canadian goose;[1] their neck head and beak are considerably thicker shorter and larger than the other in proportion to it's size, they are also more than a third smaller, and their note more like that of the brant or a young goose which has not perfectly acquired his notes, in all other rispects they are the same in colour habits and the number of feathers in the tale, they frequently also ascociate with the large geese when in flocks, but never saw them pared off with the large or common goose. The white brant ascociate in very large flocks, they do not appear to be mated or pared off as if they intended to raise their young in this quarter, I therefore doubt whether they reside here during the summer for that purpose. this bird is about the size of the common brown brant or two thirds of the common goose, it is not so long by six inches from point to point of the wings when extended as the other; the beak head and neck are also larger and stronger; their beak legs and feet are of a redish or flesh-coloured white. the eye is of moderate size, the puple of a deep sea green incircled with a ring of yellowish brown. it has sixteen feathers of equal length in the tale; their note differs but little from the common brant, their flesh much the same, and in my opinion preferable to the goose, the flesh is dark. they are entirely of a beatifull pure white except the large feathers of the 1st and second joints of the wings which are jut [jet] black. form and habits are the same with the other brants; they sometimes ascociate and form one common flock. Capt Clark found a den of young wolves in the course of his walk today and also saw a great number of those anamals; they are very abundant in this quarter, and are of two species the small woolf or burrowing dog of the praries are the inhabitants almost invariably of the open plains; they usually ascociate in bands of ten or twelve sometimes more and burrow near some pass or place much frequented by game; not being able alone to take a deer or goat they are rarely ever found alone but hunt in bands; they frequently watch and seize their prey near their burrows; in these burrows they raise their young and to them they also resort when pursued; when a person approaches them they frequently bark, their note being precisely that of the small dog. they are of an intermediate size between that of the fox and dog, very active fleet and delicately formed; the ears large erect and pointed the head long and pointed more like that of the fox; tale long and bushey; the hair and fur also resembles the fox tho' is much coarser and inferior. they are of a pale redish brown colour. the eye of a deep sea green colour small and piercing. their tallons are reather longer than those of the ordinary wolf or that common to the atlantic States, none of which are to be found in this quarter, nor I believe above the river Plat.[1] The large woolf found here is not as large as those of the atlantic states. they are lower and thicker made shorter leged. their colour which is not effected by the seasons, is a grey or blackish brown and every intermediate shade from that to a creen [cream] coloured white; these wolves resort [to] the woodlands and are also found in the plains, but never take refuge in the ground or burrow so far as I have been able to inform myself. we scarcely see a gang of buffaloe without observing a parsel of those faithfull shepherds on their skirts in readiness to take care of the mamed wounded. the large wolf never barks, but howls as those of the atlantic states do. Capt. Clark and Drewyer killed the largest brown bear this evening which we have yet seen. it was a most tremendious looking anamal, and extreemly hard to kill notwithstanding he had five balls through his lungs and five others in various parts he swam more than half the distance acoss the river to a sandbar, & it was at least twenty minutes before he died; he did not attempt to attack, but fled and made the most tremendous roaring from the moment he was shot. We had no means of weighing this monster; Capt. Clark thought he would weigh 500 lbs. for my own part I think the estimate too small by 100 lbs. he measured 8. Feet 7½ Inches from the nose to the extremety of the hind feet, 5 F. 10½ Ins. arround the breast, 1 F. 11. I. arround the middle of the arm, & 3.F. 11.I. arround the neck; his tallons which were five in number on each foot were 4⅜ Inches in length. he was in good order, we therefore divided him among the party and made them boil the oil and put it in a cask for future uce; the oil is as hard as hogs lard when cool, much more so than that of the black bear. this bear differs from the common black bear in several respects; it's tallons are much longer and more blont, it's tale shorter, it's hair which is of a redish or bey brown, is longer thicker and finer than that of the black bear; his liver lungs and heart are much larger even in proportion with his size; the heart particularly was as large as that of a large Ox. his maw was also ten times the size of black bear, and was filled with flesh and fish. his testicles were pendant from the belly and placed four inches assunder in seperate bags or pouches. this animal also feeds on roots and almost every species of wild fruit.

---

[1] Of these birds, the small goose described is scientifically known as *Bernicla hutchinsi*; the Canadian goose is *B. canadensis*. The brown brant is *B. brenta*, and the white brant *Chen hyperboreus*; the last-named bird goes much farther north to breed. — Ed.

---

[1] A description of the coyote (*Canis latrans*), followed by that of the common wolf (*C. lupus occidentalis*). Coues thinks that Lewis is mistaken as to the habitat of the latter: "in some of its varieties, it was found in most parts of North America, though it is now exterminated from settled regions" (*L. and C.*, i, p. 297). — Ed.

The party killed two Elk and a Buffaloe today, and my dog caught a goat, which he overtook by superior fleetness, the goat it must be understood was with young and extreemly poor. a great number of these goats are devowered by the wolves and bear at this season when they are poor and passing the river from S.W. to N.E. they are very inactive and easily taken in the water, a man can out swim them with great ease; the Indians take them in great numbers in the river at this season and in autumn when they repass to the S.W.

	Courses and distances of May 5th 1805.	Ml.
S. 70° W.	to the willows on the lower point of an Island near the Stard. shore, opposite a low bluff	3
S. 72° W.	to some high timber on a projecting point on the Stard. side opposite a pot. Lard. passing the upper part of Isld. at 2 miles	2½
S. 30° W.	to a point of woodland on the Stard. opposite a low bluff on Lard. side	2½
N. 48° W.	to a point of woodland on the Lard. side	2¼
N. 45° W.	to the extremity of the sand bar from the Lard. point	1¾
South.	to a willow point on the Stard. side short of which we encamped on Stard	5
	Miles	17.

Point of observation No. 9.

On the Lard. shore near the fourth course of this day, observed meridian Altitude of the ⊙'s L. L. with Octant by the back observation to be 68° 47′; the latitude deduced from which is 45° 46′ 5″.6. I do think this observation can be depended on as it was reather late before I could commence it, the sun was about to decline or perhaps had declined a few minutes.

[Clark:] *5th of May Sunday* 1805

We set out verry early and had not proceeded far before the rudder Irons of one of the Perogus broke which detained us a short time Capt Lewis walked on shore this morning and killed a Deer, after brackfast I walked on shore Saw great numbers of Buffalow & Elk Saw also a Den of young wolves, and a number of Grown Wolves in every direction, the white & Grey Brant is in this part of the Missouri I shot at the white brant but at so great a distance I did not kill, The Countrey on both sides is as yesterday handsom & fertile. The river rising & current Strong & in the evening we saw a Brown or Grisley beare on a sand beech, I went out with one man Geo Drewyer & Killed the bear, which was verry large and a turrible looking animal, which we found verry hard to kill we Shot ten Balls into him before we killed him, & 5 of those Balls through his lights This animal is the largest of the carnivorous kind I ever saw we had nothing that could way him, I think his weight may be stated at 500 pounds, he measured 8 feet 7½ In: from his nose to the extremity of the Toe, 5 feet 10½ In: arround the breast, 1 feet 11 Ins: around the middle of the arm, 3 feet 11 In: arround the neck his tallents was 4 Inches & ⅜ long, he was [in] good order, and appeared verry different from the common black bear in as much as his tallents (*talon or nail*) were blunt, his tail short, his liver & lights much larger, his maw ten times as large and contained meat or flesh & fish only. we had him skined and divided, the oile tried up & put in Kegs for use. we camped on the Stad Side, our men killed three Elk and a Buffalow to day, and our Dog cought an antilope a fair race, this animal appeared verry pore & with young.

Course & Distance 5th of May

S. 70° W.	3	miles to the willows on the lower point of an Island near the Sd Side opposit a low bluff.
S. 72° W.	2½	miles to some high timber on a projecting point on the Stad Side opsd a pt L.S., passed the Isd at 2 miles
S. 30° W.	2½	miles to a point of wood land on the Stard Side opsd a low Bluff L. Side
N. 48° W	2¼	miles to a point of wood land on the Lard Side
N. 45° W.	1¾	miles to the extremity of the sand bar from the Lard point
South	5	miles to a willow point on the Stard Side short of which we encamped
miles	17	

END OF VOL. I